Owner's manual

Passat, Passat Estate, Passat Alltrack

Edition 05.2016



Scanned by CamScanner

Key to symbols

Refers to a section within a chapter that contains important information and safety notes ⚠ that should always be observed.

The arrow indicates that the section is continued on the next page.

The arrow indicates the end of a section.

Indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.

Indicates a registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

→⚠ →▲ →▲ Symbols like these refer you to warnings within the same section or on a given page. They draw your attention to possible risks of accident or injury and explain how they can be avoided.

→ⓘ Cross reference to information about possible damage to your vehicle within the same section or on a given page.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which will lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to minor or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

ⓘ *NOTICE*

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which could cause vehicle damage if you do not observe the warning.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information on the protection of the environment.

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Thank you for choosing Volkswagen

By purchasing this Volkswagen, you have become the owner of a vehicle fitted with the most up-to-date technology and a multitude of convenience functions for your use and enjoyment.

Before using your vehicle for the first time, please read and observe the information in this owner's manual. It will quickly help you to become familiar with your vehicle and all of its functions as well as making you aware of dangers to yourself and others and of how these dangers can be avoided.

If you have any further questions about your vehicle, or if you think that the vehicle wallet has not covered everything, please get in touch with your Volkswagen dealership. They will always be happy to deal with your questions, suggestions or problems.

We hope you enjoy driving your new vehicle. Happy motoring.

Volkswagen AG

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Table of Contents

About this owner's manual 4

Owner's manual

Safety
- General notes 6
- Sitting position 7
- Seat belts 9
- Airbag system 19
- Transporting children safely 28
- In an emergency 37

Vehicle overviews
- Exterior views 40
- Overview of the driver side 46
- Vehicle interior 48

Driver information
- Instrument cluster 54
- Operating the instrument cluster 73
- Overview of warning and indicator lamps 75
- Operation and display in the Infotainment system 78

Open and close
- Vehicle key set 89
- Central locking system 91
- Doors 99
- Boot lid 102
- Windows 110
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112

Steering wheel
- Adjusting the steering wheel position 114

Seats and head restraints
- Front seats 115
- Rear seats 119
- Head restraints 121
- Seat functions 123

Lights
- Controls 126
- Light functions 131
- Headlights 135

Visibility
- Wipers 136
- Mirrors 139
- Protection from the sun 142

Heating and fresh air system and air conditioning system
- Heating and fresh air system, ventilation, cooling system 145
- Auxiliary heater and ventilation 154

Driving
- Notes on driving 158
- Starting and stopping the engine 166
- Start/stop system 171
- Manual gearbox: selecting a gear 172
- Dual clutch gearbox DSG® 174
- Steering 181
- Driving profile selection 183
- Downhill speed control (dual clutch gearbox DSG) 186
- Hill Descent Control (Alltrack) 187
- Before driving off-road for the first time (Alltrack) 188

Driver assist systems
- Cruise control system 194
- Speed limiter 198
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 202
- Area monitoring system (Front Assist) including City Emergency Brake 212
- Pedestrian monitoring 217
- Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) 221
- Traffic Jam Assist 224
- Emergency Assist 225
- Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert 226

Parking and manoeuvring
- Parking 231
- Warning and indicator lamps 232
- Electronic parking brake 232
- ParkPilot 235
- Rear view camera system (Rear View) 241
- Park Assist 247
- Area View 252
- Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257
- Brake support systems 260

Practical equipment
- Stowage area 265
- Drink holder 269
- Ashtrays and cigarette lighter 270
- Sockets in the vehicle 272

Multimedia
- Subwoofer 274

Car-Net
- Introduction 276
- Volkswagen Car-Net services 277
- Applications (apps) 278

Transporting items
- Stowing luggage 279
- Luggage compartment cover (Estate) 280
- Luggage compartment floor 282
- Net partition 286
- Luggage compartment equipment 288
- Roof carrier 296
- Towing a trailer 299

Fuel
- Safety notes for handling fuel 309
- Filling the tank 309
- Fuel types 311
- Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®) 314
- Engine management system and exhaust purification system 317

Vehicle care
- Notes on vehicle care 319
- Vehicle washing 320
- Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior 321
- Vehicle interior care and cleaning 324

If and when
- Vehicle tool kit 327
- Wiper blades 328
- Changing bulbs 329
- Fuses 336
- Jump starting 342
- Tow-starting and towing 345

Checking and refilling
- In the engine compartment 350
- Service fluids and consumables 353
- Washer fluid 354
- Engine oil 354
- Coolant 359
- Brake fluid 362
- Vehicle battery 363

Wheels and tyres
- Tyre monitoring systems 369
- Wheels and tyres 376
- Hubcaps 389
- Changing a wheel 391
- Breakdown set 396

Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts
- Accessories and parts 400
- Repairs and technical modifications 400
- Repairs and faults in the airbag system 401
- Information stored in the control units 402
- Mobile telephones in the vehicle 403

Consumer information
- Information stickers and plates 404
- Notes on the Volkswagen Emergency call service 405
- Radio reception and aerials 405
- Component protection 405
- Volkswagen repair information 406
- Declaration of conformity 406
- Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres 406
- Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles 406
- Information about vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle) 407

Technical data
- Information on technical data 408
- Vehicle identification data 409
- Dimensions 410
- Fuel tank capacity 411
- Petrol engines 411
- Diesel engines 417

Abbreviations 426

Index 428

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

About this owner's manual

- This owner's manual is valid for all models and versions of the Passat.
- An alphabetical index is included at the end of this manual.
- A list of abbreviations at the end of the manual explains the abbreviations used.
- Directions and positions such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.
- Illustrations help with orientation and should be regarded as a general guide.
- This owner's manual was written for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles the controls may sometimes be different from those displayed in illustrations or described in the text → page 46.
- Short definitions appear in a different colour before some sections of this manual. They provide a summary of the function and use of a system or feature. More detailed information about the features, conditions and limitations of systems and equipment can be found in the relevant sections.
- Any technical changes that may be made to the vehicle after publication of this booklet are contained in a supplement that is included with the vehicle wallet.

All equipment and models are described without indicating whether the equipment is optional or specific to the model type. This means that your vehicle may not have some of the equipment described, or it may only be available in certain markets. The scope of equipment fitted in your vehicle can be found in the sales documentation and you can contact your Volkswagen dealership for further information.

All data in this owner's manual correspond to the information available at the time of going to print. Because the vehicle is constantly being developed and further improved, there may be differences between your vehicle and the data in this owner's manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall form the basis for any legal claim.

Please ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle if you lend or sell the vehicle to someone else.

Standard booklets in the vehicle wallet:

- Service schedule
- Owner's manual

Additional booklets in the vehicle wallet (optional):

- Supplements
- Infotainment system (including mobile phone interface)
- *Other supplements* ◁

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Safety

General notes

Preparing for a journey and driving safely

Observe the following information both before and during every journey to ensure your own safety, and the safety of all passengers and other road users → ▲:

- ✓ Check that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
- ✓ Check the tyre pressure → page 369 and fuel level → page 309.
- ✓ Ensure that you have a good, clear view through all of the windows.
- ✓ Air intake to the engine must not be obstructed, and the engine must not be covered with any kind of insulating materials → ▲ in *Safety notes on working in the engine compartment* on page 351.
- ✓ Secure any objects and luggage in the stowage compartments, the luggage compartment or on the roof → page 279.
- ✓ Ensure that you are able to operate the pedals freely at all times.
- ✓ Secure any children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and size → page 28.
- ✓ Adjust the front seats, head restraints and mirrors properly in accordance with the size of the occupants → page 7.
- ✓ Wear shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.
- ✓ The floor mat in the footwell on the driver side must leave the pedal area free and must be securely fastened.
- ✓ Assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position while driving. This also applies to all passengers → page 7.
- ✓ Fasten your seat belt correctly before setting off and keep it properly fastened throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers → page 9.
- ✓ Each vehicle occupant must sit in a seat of their own and must have their own seat belt.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability is impaired, e.g. by medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic, e.g. by passengers, telephone calls, opening menus and making adjustments to settings.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Observe traffic regulations and speed limits.
- ✓ When travelling long distances, stop and take a break regularly – at least every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle using a system that is suitable for their weight and size.

Driving abroad

In some countries, special safety standards and emissions-related legislation apply that may differ from the construction of the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends that you visit your Volkswagen dealership before travelling abroad to find out about any legal requirements and the following issues at your destination:

- ✓ Are any technical modifications required for driving the vehicle abroad, e.g. switching the headlights over?
- ✓ Are the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment and spare parts available for service and repair work?
- ✓ Are there any Volkswagen dealerships in the destination country?
- ✓ For petrol engines: is unleaded petrol with the correct octane number available?
- ✓ For diesel engines: is diesel with a low sulphur level available?
- ✓ Are the correct engine oil (→ page 354) and other service fluids that comply with Volkswagen specifications available in the destination country?
- ✓ Will the navigation function on the factory-fitted infotainment system work with the navigation data available in the destination country?
- ✓ Are special tyres necessary for travelling in the destination country? ▶

Checks when filling the tank

Do not perform any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools to hand → page 350! The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Please ensure that the following are checked regularly, preferably every time you fill the tank:

- ✓ Windscreen washer fluid level → page 136
- ✓ Engine oil level → page 354
- ✓ Engine coolant level → page 359
- ✓ Brake fluid level → page 362
- ✓ Tyre pressure → page 369
- ✓ Vehicle lighting → page 126 necessary for traffic safety:
  - Turn signals
  - Side lights, dipped beam headlights and main beam headlights
  - Tail light cluster
  - Brake lights
  - Rear fog light
  - Number plate lights

Information on changing bulbs → page 329.

⚠ DANGER

Please observe important safety information about the front passenger front airbag → page 30, *Basic information on fitting and using child seats.*

⚠ WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair perception, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Always observe current traffic regulations and speed limits, and think ahead when driving. Correct interpretation of a driving situation can make the difference between reaching your destination safely and having an accident with serious injuries.

3G0012720AC

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of Genuine Parts.

NOTICE

Observe the instructions and information relating to vehicles with N1 approval → page 407, *Information about vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle).*

Servicing the vehicle is not only about vehicle maintenance – it also ensures that your vehicle remains roadworthy and in perfect working order. Servicing work should therefore be carried out in accordance with the service schedule. Some work may have to be carried out before the due date of the next service if the vehicle is subjected to severe operating conditions. Severe operating conditions are, for example, regular stop and go driving and driving in areas with high levels of dust. Further information can be obtained from your Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop. ◁

Sitting position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position 8
- Correct sitting position 8

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of 5 seats: 2 at the front and 3 at the rear. Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, in the event of a collision or accident, or if the airbags are triggered. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to the fastening of seat belts.
- The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight → page 28, *Transporting children safely* and → page 19, *Airbag system*.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion. Never place your feet on the seat or dash panel, for example, and never ride with your feet out the window. When you are sat like this, the airbag and seat belt cannot provide optimal protection and could actually increase the risk of injury during an accident.

The dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 7.

If the seat belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can only provide optimal protection if the seat belt routing is correct. Assuming an incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by a seat belt. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all occupants transported in the vehicle, especially children.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that can be dangerous for all vehicle occupants.

Whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Do not sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Every incorrect sitting position in the vehicle increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- All vehicle occupants must maintain a correct sitting position and wear their seat belt properly while the vehicle is in motion.
- Sitting in an incorrect position, not fastening your seat belt, or not leaving adequate space between the occupants and the airbags could inflict critical or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags deploy, and strike an occupant sitting in an incorrect position.

Correct sitting position

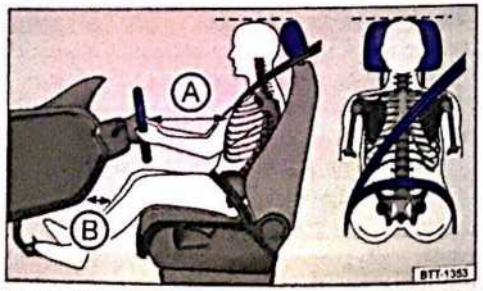


Fig. 1 Correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel, correct seat belt routing and correct head restraint adjustment.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 7.

The following details the correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers.

If any vehicle occupants cannot assume a correct sitting position due to their physical build, they should contact a qualified workshop to find out about possible special modifications. The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if a correct sitting position is assumed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends the following seating position for your own safety and to reduce the level of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

The following applies to all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible → Fig. 1.
- We recommend short people push the head restraint fully downwards, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint.
- For taller people, push the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- Keep both feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly → page 9.

Additional points for the driver:

- In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, place the head restraints as close as possible to the back of your head.
- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your breastbone is at least 25 cm → Fig. 1 Ⓐ, and you can hold the outside edge of the steering wheel at the sides with both hands, with your arms slightly bent → page 114.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.
- Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly bent and so that the distance from the dash panel to your knees is at least 10 cm → Fig. 1 Ⓑ.
- Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Always leave both feet in the footwell, to help ensure you maintain control of the vehicle at all times.

Additional points for the front passenger:

- In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, place the head restraints as close as possible to the back of your head.
- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is deployed.

Seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Warning lamp 11
- Frontal collisions and the laws of physics 12
- What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts 12
- Seat belt protection 13
- Checklist "Using seat belts" 14
- Fastening and unfastening seat belts 14
- Seat belt routing 15
- Seat belt height adjuster 16
- Belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter 17
- Service and disposal of belt tensioners 17
- Proactive occupant protection system 18

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. If the belt webbing, belt connections, belt retractor or seat belt buckle become damaged, the seat belt in question should be replaced immediately by a qualified workshop → ▲. The qualified workshop must use correct spare parts that are

Scanned by CamScanner

compatible with the vehicle, model, and model year. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly.

- Seat belts are the most effective means of reducing the risk of serious and fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Seat belts must always be fastened properly when the vehicle is in motion to protect the driver and all vehicle occupants.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants and also in urban traffic.
- While the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and height. They must also wear correctly fastened seat belts → page 28.
- Only start driving when all passengers have correctly fastened their seat belts.
- Only ever insert the latch plate into the buckle of the associated seat, and always ensure that it engages properly. Using a buckle that does not belong to the seat that you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.
- Avoid allowing foreign bodies or liquids to enter the slot for the seat belt buckle. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.
- Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.
- Never travel when children or babies are being carried on somebody's lap and fastened with the same belt.
- Never travel wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged seat belts are very dangerous and can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belt may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.
- Have damaged seat belts immediately replaced by new seat belts that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Seat belts subjected to stress and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself. All repairs to the seat belts, belt retractors and buckles must be carried out by a qualified workshop. ◁

Warning lamp



Fig. 2 Warning lamp in the instrument cluster.



Fig. 3 Seat belt status for the rear seats in the instrument cluster display.

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Driver seat belt is not fastened.	Fasten seat belts.
	The front passenger seat belt is not fastened, if the front passenger seat is occupied.	
	Objects on the front passenger seat.	Remove objects from the front passenger seat and stow them safely.
	Seat belt not fastened for a rear seat passenger.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Seat belt fastened for a rear seat passenger.	

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

A signal tone will be given for a few seconds if the seat belts are not fastened as the car pulls off and reaches a speed of more than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph), or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. The warning lamp will also flash → Fig. 2.

The warning lamp does not switch off until the driver and front passenger fasten their seat belts while the ignition is switched on.

Belt status display for the rear seats

After the ignition has been switched on, the belt status display → Fig. 3 on the instrument cluster display shows the driver whether the rear seat passengers have fastened their seat belts. The symbol indicates that the passenger on this seat has fastened "their" seat belt and the symbol indicates that the seat belt is not fastened.

The belt status display will be shown for approximately 30 seconds if a seat belt is fastened or unfastened on the rear seats. The display can be hidden by pressing the button in the instrument cluster.

If a seat belt for one of the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion, the belt status display will flash for a maximum of 30 seconds. If the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) a signal tone will also be given. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly. ◁

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

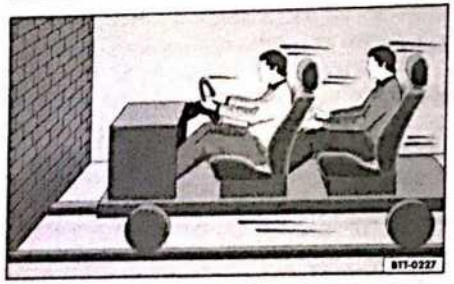


Fig. 4 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a brick wall.

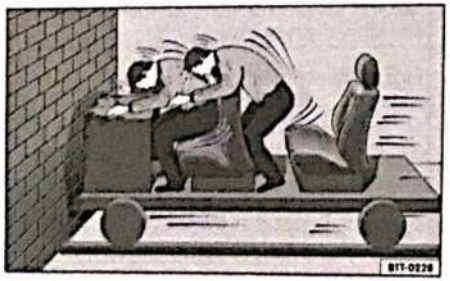


Fig. 5 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle striking a brick wall.

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple. As soon as the vehicle is in motion → Fig. 4 both the moving vehicle and its passengers gain "kinetic energy".

The higher the vehicle speed and the heavier the weight of the vehicle, the greater the amount of energy that will have to be released in the event of an accident.

However, the most significant factor is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) to approximately 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four.

The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the heavier the weight, the greater the amount of energy that will be released in the event of an accident.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not connected to the vehicle. In the event of a frontal collision they will continue to move forwards at the same speed at which the vehicle was travelling before impact, until something stops them. Because the occupants in our example are not restrained by seat belts, in the event of a collision the entire amount of kinetic energy will be released only at the point of impact against the wall → Fig. 5.

Even at speeds of approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) to approximately 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). These forces are even greater at higher speeds.

This example applies not only to frontal collisions, but to all accidents and collisions. ◁

What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts



Fig. 6 An unbelted driver is thrown forwards. ▶



Fig. 7 The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forwards, hitting the belted driver.

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

Many people believe that they can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision. This is not true.

Even at low speeds, the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that occupants cannot brace themselves with their arms and hands. In a frontal collision, vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts will be thrown forward and will make unchecked contact with parts of the vehicle interior, e.g. the steering wheel, dash panel, or windscreen → Fig. 6.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When triggered, the airbags only provide additional protection. Airbags are not triggered in all kinds of accidents. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their seat belt and wear it correctly while the vehicle is in motion. This reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat.

Each airbag can only be triggered once. To achieve best possible protection, seat belts must always be worn properly. This also ensures that protection is provided in accidents in which the airbag is not triggered. Any vehicle occupants not wearing a seat belt can be thrown out of the vehicle and sustain more severe or even fatal injuries as a result.

It is also important for the rear seat occupants to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forwards violently in an accident. Rear passengers who are not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves and the driver, but also other people in the vehicle → Fig. 7. ◁

Seat belt protection



Fig. 8 Driver restrained by a properly positioned seat belt during a sudden braking manoeuvre.

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

Correctly fastened seat belts can make a major difference. When fastened properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and considerably reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, wearing seat belts properly reduces the risk of being thrown from the vehicle → Fig. 8.

Passengers wearing seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to reduce kinetic energy. The amount of energy generated will thus decrease, thereby reducing the risk of injury.

The examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts substantially reduce the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why seat belts must be fastened before every trip – even if you are only planning to drive a very short distance. Ensure that all passengers also wear their seat belts properly.

Accident statistics have shown properly worn seat belts to be an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. This is why wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Although the vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. For example, the front airbags will only be triggered in certain types of frontal collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off. ◁

Checklist "Using seat belts"

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

Checklist

Using seat belts → ▲:

- ✓ Check the condition of all seat belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep the seat belts clean.
- ✓ Never let any foreign bodies and liquids get on to the seat belt, the latch plate or into the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- ✓ Do not trap or damage the seat belt and latch plate, for example when closing the door.
- ✓ Never remove, modify or repair the seat belt or any part of the belt fixture system.
- ✓ Always fasten the seat belt correctly before every journey and keep it fastened while the vehicle is in motion.

Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim:

- Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.
- Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.

Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist. However, the twist should not be in part of the seat belt that comes into direct contact with the body. The twist should be corrected immediately by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Regularly check to see if the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect condition.
- Always keep the seat belt clean.
- Do not allow the belt webbing to become jammed, damaged or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Always keep the latch plate and slot in the buckle free from foreign bodies and liquids. ◁

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

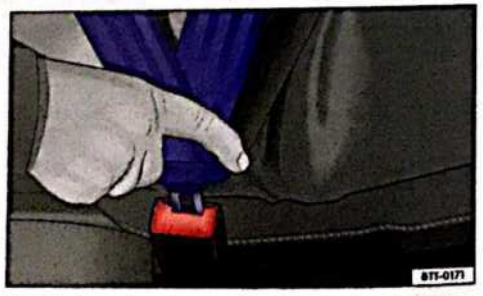


Fig. 9 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle. ▶



Fig. 10 Removing the latch plate from the buckle.

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

If worn properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting position during an accident or braking manoeuvre, providing maximum protection → ▲.

Fastening the seat belts

Fasten seat belts before every trip.

- Always adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly → page 7.
- Fold the rear seat backrest back until it clicks into place → ▲.
- Take hold of the latch plate and pull it evenly across your chest and pelvis. Do not twist the belt → ▲.
- Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle belonging to the occupied seat → Fig. 9.
- Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

Unfastening the seat belts

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary → ▲.

- Press the red button in the buckle → Fig. 10. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly according to the occupant's height.
- Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre. ◁

Seat belt routing

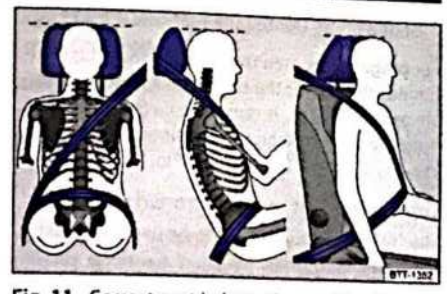


Fig. 11 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment.



Fig. 12 Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy.

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

Seat belts only provide an optimum level of protection during an accident when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt routing reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Correct seat belt routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore you must always fasten your seat belt and ensure that the seat belt routing is correct.

Assuming an incorrect sitting position can cause severe or fatal injuries → page 7, *Sitting position*. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Correct seat belt routing

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the seat belt if necessary.

For **pregnant women** the seat belt must be positioned evenly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis. It must also lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen – this applies in every stage of pregnancy → Fig. 12.

Correct seat belt routing according to height

The following equipment can be used to adjust the seat belt routing:

- Seat belt height adjuster for the front seats → page 16.
- Height-adjustable front seats → page 7.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre.

- The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if the seat belt shifts from harder body parts in the direction of softer body parts (e.g. stomach).
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.
- The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the chest.
- The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis. Tighten the seat belt if necessary.
- For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must be as low as possible over the pelvis and lie flat around the bulge of the belly.
- Do not twist the belt webbing while the seat belt is being worn.
- Never hold the seat belt away from the body by hand.
- The belt webbing should not lie over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.
- Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar items to alter the seat belt routing.

If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a qualified workshop to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. ◁

Seat belt height adjuster

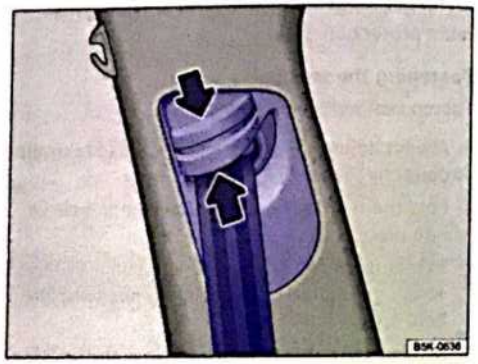


Fig. 13 Next to the front seats: belt height adjuster.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

The seat belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt on the shoulder so that it can be fastened properly:

- Push the shoulder belt guide together in the direction of the arrows and hold → Fig. 13.
- Push the shoulder belt guide up or down so that the seat belt lies over the middle of the shoulder → page 15, *Seat belt routing*.
- Let go of the shoulder belt guide.
- Pull sharply on the seat belt to check whether the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the seat belt height when the vehicle is in motion. ◁

Belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

The seat belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle safety concept → page 19 and include the following important functions:

Automatic belt retractor

Every seat belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder part of the belt. Full freedom of movement is made possible when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, if the belt is pulled out quickly or during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic belt retractor is locked.

Fastened seat belts on the front seats may be tensioned automatically by the proactive occupant protection system in critical situations, for example during an emergency stop or when oversteering or understeering. Both seat belts are once again released if the accident is prevented or the critical situation is over. The proactive occupant protection system is ready to be triggered again → page 18, *Proactive occupant protection system*.

Belt tensioners

The seat belts for the front seat vehicle occupants, and in some cases those on the outer rear seats, are equipped with belt tensioners.

The belt tensioners are activated by sensors during severe frontal, side and rear collisions. They tighten the seat belts against the direction in which they are pulled. Any slack in the seat belt is retracted, which can reduce the passenger's movement forwards or in the direction of the impact. The belt tensioner works together with the airbag system. If the side airbags are not activated, the belt tensioner will not be activated if the vehicle rolls over.

A fine dust may be produced when the airbags are triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

Reversible belt tensioning (proactive occupant protection system)

Reversible belt tensioning may trigger temporarily in certain driving situations, for example during a sudden braking manoeuvre or when oversteering and understeering → page 18, *Proactive occupant protection system*.

Belt tension limiter

The belt tension limiter reduces the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the body during an accident.

All safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements → page 17. ◁

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

Seat belts may become damaged during any work on the belt tensioners or while removing or refitting any vehicle parts in conjunction with any other repair work. This damage will not always be noticeable. The consequence may be that the belt tensioners could function incorrectly, or not function at all, in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly, or if they are repaired by a non-professional. As a result, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Any repairs, adjustments or removal and refitting of parts in the belt tensioners or seat belts should always be carried out by a qualified workshop and never by yourself → page 400.
- Belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.

The airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal.

Proactive occupant protection system

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 10.

The proactive occupant protection system is an assistance system that initiates action to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations. However, the system cannot prevent a collision.

The full range of functions of the proactive occupant protection system will only be available if the function is activated in the infotainment system, the **Sport** and **Off-road** driving profiles are not active, and there are no malfunctions → page 18.

Displays

Display	Solution
Proactive occupant protection not available	Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
Proactive occupant protection: function restricted	

Basic functions

Depending on country-specific legal requirements and also on the vehicle equipment level, the following functions may be initiated, either singularly or jointly, in critical situations (e.g. emergency braking or over or understeering) as of a speed of approximately 30 km/h (18 mph):

- Temporary tensioning of the fastened front seat belts.
- Automatic closing of the side windows and the glass roof, leaving them open by a gap.

Additional information for vehicles with an area monitoring system (Front Assist)

In vehicles fitted with the area monitoring system (Front Assist) → page 212, the probability of a collision with the vehicle ahead is also calculated within the system limits. The can trigger the proactive occupant protection system if it detects a probable collision with the vehicle ahead.

Settings in the infotainment system

The proactive occupant protection system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system using the button CAR and the and Driver assistance function buttons → page 78.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked ☑, the function is active and will provide the maximum level of assistance.

The proactive occupant protection system will be reactivated every time the ignition is switched on.

Additional information for vehicles with driving profile selection

In vehicles with driving profile selection → page 183, the proactive occupant protection system is adjusted to the specific vehicle settings in the **Sport** or **Offroad** driving profiles.

Error message

A message will be shown in the instrument cluster if there is a malfunction or fault in the proactive occupant protection system.

The proactive occupant protection system should be checked by a qualified dealership if it does not function as described in this chapter.

Function limitations

The proactive occupant protection system will not be available, or will be available only to a limited extent, in the following situations:

- When the TCS or ESC are switched off, and when the vehicle is reversing → page 260.
- → page 9 or → page 19 indicate a fault in the ESC, belt tensioner or in the airbag control unit.
- The temporary tensioning for the front passenger seat is switched off if the front passenger front airbag is deactivated.
- If there is a system fault in the area monitoring system (Front Assist) → page 212.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the proactive occupant protection system cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the proactive occupant protection system tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The system cannot prevent a collision. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The system cannot detect objects in all situations.
- The proactive occupant protection system does not react to people, animals, objects crossing in front of the vehicle, or objects which are hard to make out.
- Reflective objects such as safety barriers, tunnel entrances, heavy rain and ice can impair the function of the proactive occupant protection system and thus prevent it from detecting a collision risk.
- Incorrect system activation can occur.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never change settings in the infotainment system when the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Types of front passenger front airbag system 20
- Indicator lamp 21
- Description and function of the airbags 22
- Front airbags 23
- Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch 24
- Side airbags 25
- Curtain airbags 26
- Knee airbags 27

The vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and front passenger. The front airbags can provide front seat occupants with additional chest and head protection if the seat, seat belts, head restraints and, in the case of the driver, steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags are meant only for additional protection. The airbags are not a substitute for seat belts. Seat belts must always be worn, even when the front seats are equipped with front airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely solely on the airbag system for your protection.

- Even if an airbag is triggered, it only offers auxiliary protection.
- The airbag system offers the best level of protection, and reduces the risk of injury, when seat belts are properly worn → page 9, *Seat belts*.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants and also in urban traffic.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of injury increases if there are any objects located between the vehicle occupants and the deployment area of the airbag when it

Scanned by CamScanner

is triggered. This will alter the deployment zone of the airbag, or the objects will be flung against the body.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the front passenger seat. The objects could enter the deployment zone of the airbag during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbag is activated.
- Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once. The system will have to be replaced if the airbags have been triggered.

- Airbags that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must immediately be replaced with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter any components of the airbag system.

⚠ WARNING

Fine dust particles or steam may be released when the airbags trigger. This is normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

- The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes and cause breathing difficulties, particularly for people suffering from asthma or people who have (had) other respiratory problems. To help reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors for more fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, you should wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- Do not let the dust get into your eyes or into open wounds.
- If dust has entered your eyes, rinse them with water.

⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents cause the surface of the airbag modules to become porous. In an accident that triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.

- Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents. ◁

Types of front passenger front airbag system

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

Volkswagen offers two different front airbag systems for front passengers:	
A	**B**
Features of the front passenger front airbag that can only be switched off by a qualified workshop.	**Features of the front passenger front airbag that can be switched off manually using the key-operated switch → page 24.**
– Indicator lamp in the instrument cluster. – Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.	– Indicator lamp in the instrument cluster. – PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF, indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console.
Name: airbag system.	**Name: airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation.**

Volkswagen offers two different front airbag systems for front passengers:	
A	**B**
Features of the front passenger front airbag that can only be switched off by a qualified workshop.	**Features of the front passenger front airbag that can be switched off manually using the key-operated switch → page 24.**
	– PASSENGER AIRBAG ON indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console. – Key-operated switch in the side of the dash panel on the passenger side (only visible when the door is open). – Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.
Name: airbag system.	**Name: airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation.**

Indicator lamp



Fig. 14 In the upper section of the centre console: [A] indicator lamp showing deactivated front passenger front airbag, [B] indicator lamp showing activated front passenger front airbag.

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

Lit up	Location	Possible cause	Solution
	Instrument cluster.	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
OFF	Upper section of the centre console → Fig. 14 [A].	Fault in the airbag system.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
		Front passenger front airbag switched off.	Check whether the airbag should stay switched off.
ON	Upper section of the centre console → Fig. 14 [B].	Front passenger front airbag switched on.	No solution – the indicator lamp will disappear automatically approximately 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, or after the front passenger front airbag is switched on using the key-operated switch. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

When the front passenger front airbag is **switched off**, if the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console is **not permanently** lit, or if it is lit together with the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster, a fault in the airbag system may have occurred → ▲.

⚠ WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- The airbag system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Never fit a child seat to the front passenger seat or remove a child seat that is already fitted. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident in spite of the fault.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts. ◁

Description and function of the airbags

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants during frontal and side collisions by reducing their movement in the direction of the collision.

When an airbag is triggered, it is inflated by a gas generator. This causes the airbag covers to break, and the airbags inflate forcefully to cover their deployment zones within milliseconds. Once a vehicle occupant wearing a seat belt starts to sink into the inflated airbag, the gas inside the airbag starts to escape to cushion the occupant and slow down their movement. This can reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries, such as swelling, bruising, burning and grazing. The deployment of the airbag can also produce frictional heat.

Airbags provide no protection for the arms or lower body. Exception: in vehicles with a knee airbag, the knee area of the driver will be protected.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact, the vehicle speed and the type of object with which the vehicle collides. Therefore, visible damage to the vehicle does not always mean that the airbag should have been triggered.

The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage in an accident do not necessarily give an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds and reference values, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. It is therefore impossible to cover every possible kind and angle of impact that would trigger the airbags. Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, and the vehicle speed.

Airbags only serve as a supplement to the three-point seat belt in some accident situations when the vehicle braking is sufficient to trigger the airbags. Airbags can only be triggered once and only in certain situations. The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations in which the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered. For example, if the vehicle collides with a further vehicle following the initial collision, or is hit by another vehicle.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position ⚠ → page 7. ▶

Components of the vehicle safety concept

The following vehicle safety equipment makes up the vehicle's safety concept to reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. Some of this equipment may not be fitted in your particular vehicle. It may not be available at all in some countries.

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Belt tensioner for the driver, front passenger and, if applicable, for the rear outer seats.
- Belt tension limiter for the driver, front passenger and, if applicable, for the rear outer seats.
- Belt height adjuster for the front seats.
- Warning lamp and belt status display.
- Front airbags for driver and front passenger.
- Side airbags for the driver, front passenger and, if applicable, for the rear outer seats.
- Curtain airbags on the left and right.
- If applicable, knee airbag for the driver.
- Airbag indicator lamp .
- PASSENGER AIRBAG **OFF** indicator lamp in top area of the centre console.
- PASSENGER AIRBAG **ON** indicator lamp in top area of the centre console.
- Control units and sensors.
- Height-adjustable head restraints optimised for rear impact.
- Adjustable steering column.
- If applicable, anchor points for child seats on the rear outer seats and on the front passenger seat.
- If applicable, securing points for the top tether for child seats.

Situations when the front, knee, side and curtain airbags will not be triggered:

- If the ignition is switched off when a collision occurs.
- If the level of deceleration measured by the control unit is too low during a collision at the front of the vehicle.
- During a minor side collision.
- During rear collisions.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- If the speed in a collision is lower than the reference value specified in the control unit. ◁

Front airbags

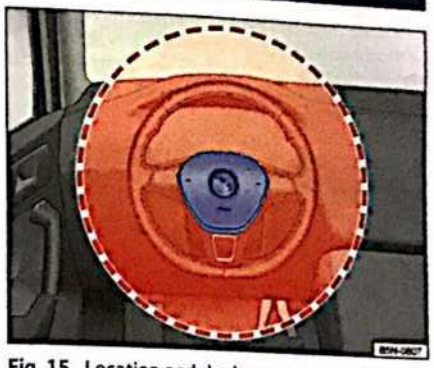


Fig. 15 Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag.

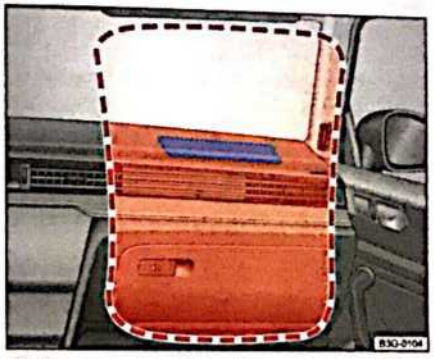


Fig. 16 Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision. Always keep as far away from the front airbag as possible → page 7, *Sitting position*. This allows the front airbags to inflate fully when triggered, thus providing maximum protection.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel → Fig. 15 and the front airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel → Fig. 16. The airbag locations are identified by the text "AIRBAG". ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

The areas inside the red lines are covered by the front airbags when the front airbags are triggered (deployment zone). You must never leave or attach any objects in these areas → ⚠. Any factory-fitted accessories will not be struck if the driver and front passenger front airbags are deployed.

⚠ DANGER

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the front airbags clear.
- Never attach any objects, such as drink or telephone holders, to the covers of the airbags or anywhere in the airbag deployment zone.
- No other people, animals or objects may be carried between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment zone. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- Do not attach any objects, e.g. mobile navigation devices, to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.
- Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit in the dash panel on the front passenger side, and do not modify them in any way.

⚠ WARNING

The front airbags are deployed in front of the steering wheel → Fig. 15 and dash panel → Fig. 16.

- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Contact a qualified workshop if your physical build makes this impracticable.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dash panel is as large as possible. ◁

Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch



Fig. 17 In the dash panel on the front passenger side: key-operated switch for switching the front passenger front airbag on and off.

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

The front passenger front airbag must be disabled if you fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat.

Enabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → page 89, *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the spare key into the key-operated switch on the dash panel → Fig. 17 until you feel the second point of resistance. Approximately half of the spare key is then inside the key-operated switch → ⓘ.
- The spare key can then be turned to position ON relatively gently.
- Remove the spare key from the key-operated switch and reinsert it into the vehicle key → ⓘ.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- Check that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console does *not* light up when the ignition is switched on → page 21.

Disabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → page 89, *Vehicle key set*. ▶
- Insert the spare key into the key-operated switch on the dash panel → Fig. 17 until you feel the second point of resistance. Approximately half of the spare key is then inside the key-operated switch → ⓘ.
- The spare key can then be turned to position OFF relatively gently.
- Remove the spare key from the key-operated switch and reinsert it into the vehicle key → ⓘ.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF will light up steadily in the upper section of the centre console → page 21.

Identifying characteristics for a disabled front passenger front airbag

The **only** sure sign that the front passenger front airbag has been deactivated is when the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator lamp is displayed in the upper section of the centre console (OFF lights up yellow steadily) → page 21.

If the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console is **not lit up steadily**, or if it lights up at the same time as indicator lamp in the instrument cluster, do not attach any child restraint system to the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The front passenger front airbag should only be switched off in exceptional circumstances.

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, only switch the front passenger front airbag on and off when the ignition is switched off.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.
- Only switch the front passenger front airbag off if, in exceptional circumstances, a child seat has to be attached to the front passenger seat.
- Switch the front passenger front airbag back on again as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used.

ⓘ NOTICE

Turning the spare key when inserted incorrectly can damage the key-operated switch.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not leave the spare key in the key-operated switch, as this could result in damage to the door trim, dash panel, key-operated switch or spare key when the front passenger door is closed. ◁

Side airbags

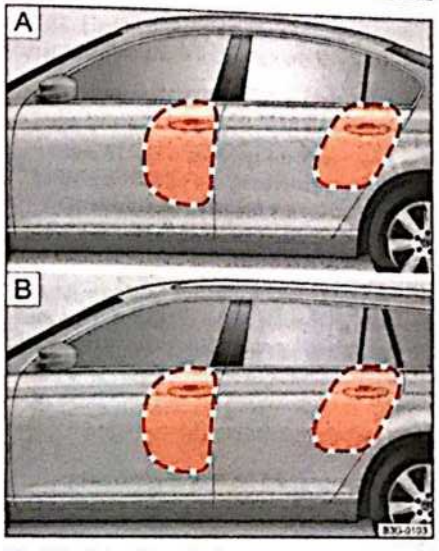


Fig. 18 Side airbag deployment zones.

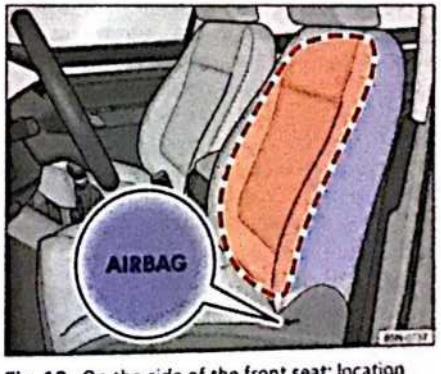


Fig. 19 On the side of the front seat: location and deployment zone of the side airbag ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, side airbags may also be fitted for the front seats and rear outer seats.

- The side airbags for the front seats are located in the outer seat backrest cushions of the driver seat and front passenger seat → Fig. 19.
- If fitted, the side airbags for the rear outer seats are located in the outer seat backrest cushions of the individual rear seat backrests.

The side airbag installation locations are identified by the "AIRBAG" label.

The areas inside the red lines → Fig. 18 and → Fig. 19 are covered by the side airbags when the side airbags are triggered (deployment ranges). You must never leave or attach any objects in these areas → ⚠.

During a side collision, the side airbags will be deployed on the side of the vehicle which is impacted, thus reducing the risk of injury to the areas of the vehicle occupants' bodies facing the impact.

⚠ WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the side airbags clear.
- Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories to the doors.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle. Otherwise the side airbag may not be able to inflate once triggered.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the driver and front passenger seat could hinder the proper function of the side airbag and cause serious injury.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.
- If too much pressure is applied to the backrest side bolster, the side airbags may not be triggered correctly, may not trigger at all, or may trigger unexpectedly.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.

Curtain airbags



Fig. 20 On the left-hand side of the vehicle (Saloon): installation location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag.



Fig. 21 On the left-hand side of the vehicle (Estate): installation location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

In the interior, one curtain airbag is fitted above the doors on both the driver and front passenger sides → Fig. 20 or → Fig. 21.

The curtain airbag installation locations are identified by the "AIRBAG" label.

The area in the red frame → Fig. 20 or → Fig. 21 is covered by the curtain airbag when the curtain airbag is triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in this area → ⚠.

In a side collision the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle.

In a side collision, the curtain airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact for vehicle occupants on the front seats and outer rear seats.

⚠ WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the curtain airbags clear.
- Never secure any items to the cover or in the deployment zone of the curtain airbag.
- Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories to the doors.
- Do not install any sunblinds onto the side windows unless they have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle.
- Only push the sunblinds over to the side windows if no items are attached to them (e.g. pens or the remote control for a garage door).

Knee airbags



Fig. 22 On the driver side: Installation location of the knee airbag.



Fig. 23 On the driver side: deployment zone of the knee airbag.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 19.

The knee airbag on the driver side is located in the lower part of the dash panel.

The locations of the knee airbags are indicated by the "AIRBAG" label → Fig. 22.

The area in the red frame → Fig. 23 is covered by the knee airbag when the knee airbag is triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in this area → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Do not use any objects, e.g. key rings, that could interfere with the deployment zone of the knee airbag.
- Never secure any items on the cover or in the deployment zone of the knee airbag.
- The knee airbag is deployed in the area in front of the driver's knees. Adjust the driver seat so there is at least a 10 cm gap between the knees and the location of the knee airbag. Contact a qualified workshop if your physical build makes this impracticable.

Scanned by CamScanner

Transporting children safely

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Types of child seat 29
- Basic information on fitting and using child seats 30
- Securing systems 31
- Securing a child seat with ISOFIX 32
- Securing child seats with the upper strap (top tether) 33
- Securing child seats with a seat belt 34
- Folding the integrated child seat in and out 35
- Seat belt routing for an integrated child seat 36

Using child seats can reduce the risk of injury to the child if there is an accident. Always use child seats when driving with children.

Note the following:

- Child seats are classified into groups depending on the size, age and weight of child for which they are designed.
- Various securing systems are used to secure child seats in the vehicle.

For safety reasons child seats should always be fitted to the rear seats. They should only be fitted to the front passenger seat in exceptional cases → page 30.

Volkswagen recommends using child seats from Volkswagen's range of accessories. These child seats were developed and approved for use in Volkswagen vehicles.

⚠ WARNING

If children are not secured or are inadequately secured, they are at greater risk of serious or even fatal injury. Please note the following:

- Children who are either under 12 years of age or less than 150 cm tall must not be carried in the vehicle if they are not secured in a suitable child seat while the vehicle is in motion. Regulations in some countries may differ, and must be complied with.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in a suitable child seat. The seat used must be appropriate to the child's height, weight and age.
- Never fasten more than one child into one child seat.
- Under no circumstances should children or babies be held in a passenger's or drivers lap while driving.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in a child seat.
- Never allow a child to be carried in a vehicle without being properly secured, and never allow a child to stand up or to kneel on a seat, or to sit incorrectly while the car is in motion. This is particularly important for children carried on the front passenger seat. In an accident, children may sustain serious injuries to themselves and others.
- The child seat can only provide maximum protection if the seat belt is fastened correctly. Always ensure that the seat belt is routed as specified in the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer. If the seat belt is routed incorrectly it may cause injuries even in a minor accident.
- After an accident, it is vital to replace any child seats that were in use during the accident, as they could have sustained non-visible damage.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the integrated child seat can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Incorrect routing of the vehicle seat's seat belt can cause injuries to the stomach and in the neck area.
- Always strap children in correctly and make sure that they assume the correct sitting position.
- Any modifications to the integrated child seat must be made only by a qualified workshop.
- Any parts of the seat that are damaged or that have been subjected to loads in an accident must be replaced.

! NOTICE

Observe the instructions and information relating to vehicles with N1 approval→ page 407, *Information about vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle).*

Types of child seat

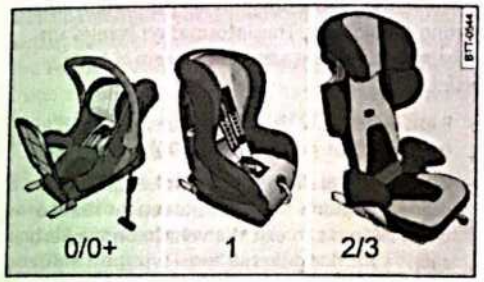


Fig. 24 Some typical child seats.

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

Only use child seats that have been officially approved and are suitable for the child.

Standards for child seats

Regulations ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129[1] apply to child seats within the European Union. Both regulations apply simultaneously. Child seats which have been tested in accordance with these standards carry an orange ECE approval label. This ECE approval label may include the following information on the child seat:

- Weight class
- Size class
- Approval category (universal, semi-universal, vehicle-specific or i-Size)
- Approval number

On child seats that are approved under regulation ECE-R 44, the eight-digit approval number on the ECE approval label must begin with 03 or 04. This shows that the seat is admissible for use. Older child seats with an approval number beginning with 01 or 02 are not admissible.

Child seats by weight class

Class	Child's weight
Group 0	up to 10 kg
Group 0+	up to 13 kg
Group 1	9 to 18 kg
Group 2	15 to 25 kg
Group 3	22 to 36 kg

- **Weight class 0/0+**: group 0/0+ or 0/1 rear-facing infant carriers → Fig. 24 are the best option for the period from birth to 18 months.
- **Weight class 1**: group 1 (up to about 4 years old) or group 1/2 (up to about 7 years old) with an integral belt system are the best for children over the relevant weight limit.
- **Weight classes 2/3**: groups 2 and 3 include child seats with a backrest, and booster seats with no backrest. Child seats with a backrest have integrated seat routing and side cushions, and so provide better protection than booster seats with no backrest. Volkswagen therefore recommends the use of child seats with a backrest. Group 2 child seats are for children up to the age of about 7, group 3 child seats for those older than 7.

Not every child will fit in the child seat specified for their weight group. Likewise, not every seat will fit in every vehicle. Therefore it is vital to check that the child fits properly in their child seat and that the child seat can be securely fastened in the vehicle.

Child seats by approval categories

Child seats can be classified as universal, semi-universal or vehicle-specific (all in accordance with regulation ECE-R 44), or as i-Size (in accordance with regulation ECE-R 129).

- **Universal**: child seats with universal approval are approved for use in all vehicles. No type list is required. ISOFIX child seats with universal approval must also be securing using a strap over the top of the vehicle seat (top tether).
- **Semi-universal**: semi-universal approval requires other safety devices for attaching the seat (that require additional testing) in addition to the standard requirements for universal ▶

[1] Regulation ECE-R 129 has not yet been implemented by the state authorities in all countries.

Scanned by CamScanner

approval. Child seats with semi-universal approval come with a type list. The seats should only be used in vehicles that are included on this list.

- **Vehicle-specific:** child seats with vehicle specific approval must have undergone dynamic testing in each model of vehicle for which it is approved. These child seats also come with a type list.
- **i-Size:** child seats classified as must conform to the installation and safety requirements prescribed in regulation ECE-R 129. Contact the child seat manufacturer to find out which child seats are approved for this vehicle in accordance with i-Size.

Basic information on fitting and using child seats



Fig. 25 Illustration: airbag label on the sun visor.



Fig. 26 Illustration: airbag label on the B-pillar.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

Country-specific requirements

The standards and regulations governing the use of child seats and child seat securing mechanisms differ from country to country. Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat. Legislation and legal requirements take precedence over the information given in this owner's manual.

Information on fitting a child seat

Observe the following general information when fitting a child seat. This information is relevant whatever child seat securing system is being used.

- Read and follow the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer → ▲.
- Whenever possible, fit all child seats to the rear seat behind the front passenger seat so that children can exit the vehicle on the kerb side.
- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag if fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
- When fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat push the passenger seat back as far as it will go → page 7.
- Always leave sufficient space around the child seat. If necessary, adjust the position of the seat in front of it. When doing so, ensure that the driver or front passenger can still maintain a correct sitting position → page 7.
- The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest angle so that the child seat lies flush against the backrest. Once it has been installed, if the child seat is touching the head restraint and therefore cannot be positioned flush against the backrest, push the head restraint all the way up, or remove it and stow it securely in the vehicle → page 7.

Airbag sticker

The vehicle may be provided with stickers giving key information about the front passenger front airbag. The information on these stickers may vary from country to country. The stickers may be found:

- On the driver and/or front passenger sun visor → Fig. 25.
- On the B-pillar on the passenger side → Fig. 26.

It is essential to note the warning information shown on these stickers before installing a rear-facing child seat → ⚠.

Risks involved in carrying children on the front passenger seat

If you are using a **rear-facing child seat**, the front passenger front airbag can cause critical or potentially fatal injuries when it inflates → ⚠.

Rear-facing child seat may only be used on the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag has been deactivated. An indicator lamp in the centre console lights up steadily when the front passenger front airbag has been effectively deactivated. Deactivating the front passenger front airbag → page 19.

If using a **front-facing child seat**, do not deactivate the front passenger front airbag. When fitting the child seat, ensure that it is as far away as possible from the front passenger front airbag. The front passenger front airbag can cause severe injuries when it inflates → ▲.

Some child seats are not suitable for use on the front passenger seat. The child seat must be specially authorised by the manufacturer for use on the front passenger seat in vehicles with front and side airbags. Volkswagen dealerships keep an up-to-date list of authorised child seats.

Risks presented by side airbags

Any child on the front passenger seat may be hit on the head and severely injured by the front side airbag inflating → ▲.

DANGER

If you use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat the child in it is at increased risk of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag. If the front passenger front airbag cannot be deactivated no rear-facing child seat may be used.
- Only use child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbag.

WARNING

Child seats present a risk of injury if incorrectly installed.

- Always read and observe the installation instructions and warning information provided by the child seat manufacturer.

WARNING

Using a front-facing child seat on the front passenger seat presents a risk of injury.

- Move the front passenger seat as far back and as high as it can be set, to create the largest possible distance between the child seat and the front passenger front airbag.
- Move the backrest to the upright position.
- Adjust the seat belt height adjuster to the highest position.
- Only use child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbag.

WARNING

To help avoid injuries caused by inflation of a head airbag or side airbag:

- Ensure that no children are seated within the airbag deployment zones.→ page 19
- Do not place any objects in the side airbag deployment zones.

Securing systems

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

Different countries use different securing systems for safely fitting child seats in the vehicle.

Key terms for securing systems

- **ISOFIX:** ISOFIX is a standardised securing system for fitting child seats in the vehicle quickly and safely. The ISOFIX attachment system creates a rigid connection between the child seat and the car body.

Any compatible child seat features two rigid attachment arms that engage with ISOFIX attachment points between the seat and the rear seat backrest (on the outer rear seats). The ISOFIX securing system as described here is specific to the EU → page 32. An upper strap (top tether) and/or support foot may sometimes have to be used in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points described above.

Scanned by CamScanner

– **Three-point automatic seat belt.** It is better to secure child seats using the ISOFIX system, if available, rather than with a three-point automatic seat belt → page 34.

Additional securing points:

– **Top tether:** this strap at the top of the child seat is routed over the rear seat backrest and hooked onto an anchor ring. In the Saloon, the anchor points are located in the stowage area behind the rear seats, and in the Estate, they are located on the rear of the rear seat backrest in the luggage compartment → page 33. Top tether anchor points are marked with an anchor symbol.

– **Support foot:** some child seats are propped up with a support foot resting on the floor of the vehicle. This support foot helps prevent the child seat tipping forward in a crash. Child seats with a support foot can only be used on the front passenger seat and the outer rear seats → ▲.

Recommended child seat securing systems

Volkswagen recommends that child seats are secured as follows:

– **Infant carrier or rear-facing child seat:** ISOFIX *and* support foot.

– **Front-facing child seat:** ISOFIX *and* top tether and possibly support foot also.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the support foot can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that the support foot is always correctly and safely installed.

Securing a child seat with ISOFIX



Fig. 27 On vehicle seat: markings identifying the ISOFIX anchoring points for child seats.

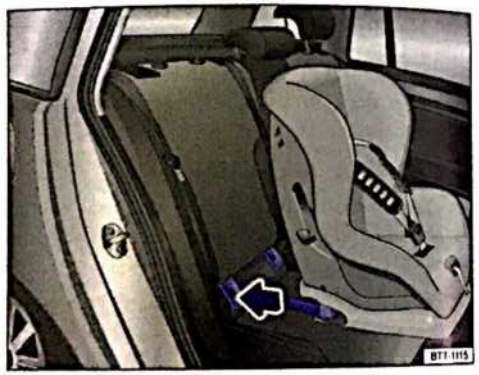


Fig. 28 Fitting a typical ISOFIX child seat with the attachment arms.

📖 Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

Quick guide to ISOFIX and i-Size installation

The table below shows the options for securing ISOFIX or i-Size child seats to ISOFIX anchor points at the various possible seats in the vehicle.

Group	Size class	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Centre rear seat
Group 0: up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D	X		X
	C	X		X

Group	Size class	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Centre rear seat
Group 1: 9 to 18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C	X		X
	B	X		X
	B1	X		X
	A	X		X
Group 2: 15 to 25 kg	–	X	IL-SU	X
Group 3: 22 to 36 kg	–	X	IL-SU	X
i-Size child restraint system	–	X	i-U	X

– **Size class:** the size class shown corresponds to the permissible weight range of the child using the seat. The size class is indicated on the ECE test certificate for child seats with universal or semi-universal approval. A size class indication is affixed to the child seat.

– **X:** seat not suitable for securing an ISOFIX or i-Size child seat in this group.

– **IL-SU:** seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with "semi-universal" approval. Observe the vehicle list supplied by the child seat manufacturer.

– **IUF:** seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with "universal" approval.

– **i-U:** seat suitable for installing a front-facing or rear-facing i-Size child seat with "universal" approval.

– **i-UF:** seat suitable for installing a front-facing i-Size child seat with "universal" approval.

Installing child seats with ISOFIX ISOFIX/i-Size

The location of the ISOFIX anchor points is shown by a symbol → Fig. 27.

– Observe the instructions → page 30, *Basic information on fitting and using child seats*.

– Pull off any protective caps that may be fitted on the ISOFIX anchoring points.

– Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points → Fig. 28 as shown by the arrows. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.

– Pull on both sides of the child seat to check whether the seat has clicked properly into place.

– If the child seat is fitted with a support foot, the foot must sit firmly on the floor of the vehicle.

Securing child seats with the upper strap (top tether)



Fig. 29 Illustration: retaining rings for the top tether in the stowage area behind the rear seats (Saloon).

Scanned by CamScanner

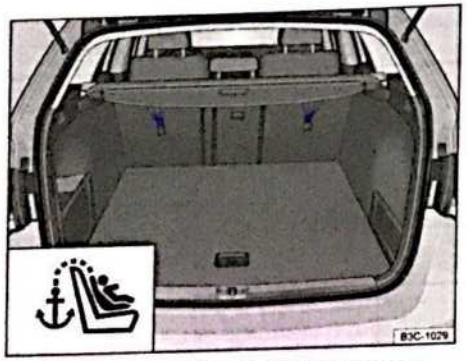


Fig. 30 Top tethers fitted in the luggage compartment (Estate).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

ISOFIX child seats with "universal" approval must be secured with an upper strap (top tether) in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points.

Only secure the strap to the top tether anchor rings. Retaining rings for use with the top tether are marked by a symbol and sometimes also with "TOP TETHER".

- Observe the instructions → page 30, *Basic information on fitting and using child seats.*
- Push the head restraint on the vehicle seat fully upwards or remove it.
- Position the child seat in the centre of the seat cushion on the vehicle seat.
- Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points → Fig. 28 as shown by the arrows. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
- *Saloon*: fold up the cover in the shelf behind the rear seat backrest → Fig. 29.
- *Estate*: remove the luggage compartment cover → page 280.
- *Saloon*: fasten the upper strap of the child seat to the corresponding anchor ring marked top tether in the stowage area behind the rear seats → Fig. 29.
- *Estate*: guide the upper strap of the child seat towards the rear into the luggage compartment and hook it into the corresponding top tether anchor ring → Fig. 30.
- Tighten the upper strap so that the top of the child seat rests against the rear seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Only secure the strap to the top tether anchor rings. Failure to do so could lead to severe injuries.

- Each anchor ring can hold only *one* child seat restraining strap.
- Never fasten the strap to any other fastening rings.

Depending on the market and model, 2 or 3 retaining rings may be installed in the stowage area behind the rear seats or in the luggage compartment behind the rear seat backrest. ◁

Securing child seats with a seat belt

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

If you want to fit a child seat from the "universal" (u) approval category in your vehicle, you must first ensure that it is approved for the seat position in question. Important information is given on the orange ECE approval label on the child seat. Installation options are shown in the table below.

Group	Child's weight	Front passenger seat		Seats on the rear bench seat
		Front passenger front airbag is activated	Front passenger front airbag is deactivated	
Group 0	up to 10 kg	x	u	u
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	x	u	u
Group 1	Rear facing	9 to 18 kg	x	u	u
	Forward facing	9 to 18 kg	u	x	u
Group 2		15 to 25 kg	u	x	u
Group 3		22 to 36 kg	u	x	u

u: universal; x: seat not suitable for securing a child seat in this group.

Securing a child seat using the seat belt

- Observe the instructions → page 30, *Basic information on fitting and using child seats.*
- The seat belt height adjuster must be at the highest setting.
- Fasten the seat belt or guide it through the child seat as described in the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it locks securely with a click. ◁

Folding the integrated child seat in and out

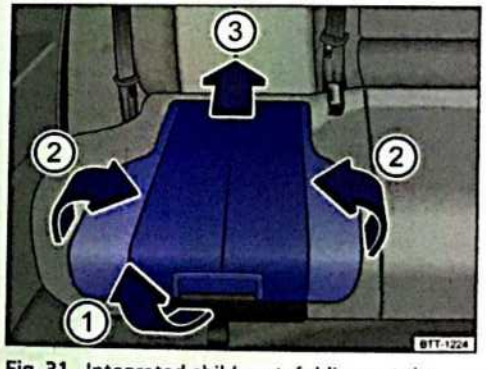


Fig. 31 Integrated child seat: folding out the seat cushion and bolsters.

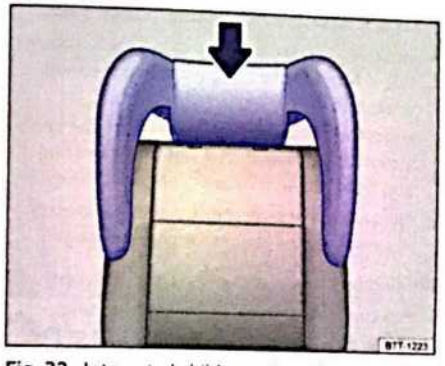


Fig. 32 Integrated child seat: installing side head restraints.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

The integrated child seat is suitable for children in group 2 (15-25 kg) and group 3 (22-36 kg), as specified in the ECE-R 44 standard.

Volkswagen recommends you do **not** use the integrated for children less than 115 cm in height. Volkswagen recommends child seats from the Volkswagen range of accessories for smaller children.

Always fold in the seat cushion when the integrated child seat is not being used.

Child seat head restraint with side panels

The integrated child seat can be fitted with a *child seat head restraint with side panels* → Fig. 32. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Only use the child seat head restraint if the child can sit comfortably.
- The child's head must not protrude beyond the child seat head restraint and the shoulders must not come into contact with the side panels of the child seat head restraint.
- If this is the case, use the vehicle head restraint instead of the child seat head restraint.

Installing the child seat head restraint

- Remove the vehicle seat head restraint and stow it securely in the vehicle → page 123.
- Make sure that the belt guide on the window side is fitted to the child seat head restraint → page 36.
- Insert the child seat head restraint in the corresponding rear seat backrest until the child seat head restraint securely engages → Fig. 32.
- Pull on the rear seat and rear seat backrest to ensure that they are both securely engaged.

Folding out the seat cushions and bolsters

- Pull the release lever on the seat padding → Fig. 31 ① forwards in the direction of the arrow.
- Push the seat padding ③ to the rear in the direction of the arrow until it engages.
- Fold both seat bolsters ② up in the direction of the arrow.

Folding the seat cushion back

- Pull the seat padding forwards using the release lever.
- Place your hand on the *middle* of the seat cushion and push it down until it engages securely → ⓘ. The seat bolsters fold in automatically.

Removing the child seat head restraint

- Unfasten the belt guide.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and without damaging the trim.
- Release the child seat head restraint from the guide insert and slide it upwards.
- Remove the child seat head restraint.
- Install the vehicle seat head restraint → page 7.

NOTICE

When folding back the integrated child seat, press only in the middle of the seat cushion. The seat cushion could otherwise become jammed and will not engage securely. ◁

Seat belt routing for an integrated child seat

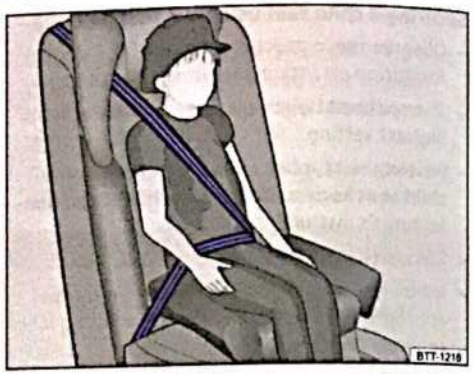


Fig. 33 Integrated child seat: correct seat belt routing.



Fig. 34 Integrated child seat: seat belt routing with belt guide.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 28.

Correct seat belt routing

Ensure that the shoulder section of the seat belt lies on the centre of the child's shoulder and that the lap part of the seat belt always lies on or below their pelvic ridge and not across their stomach → Fig. 33. ▶

- Guide the seat belt under the side head restraint.
- Take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across the chest and pelvis.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it locks securely with a click.
- Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is also securely locked in the buckle.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the child's shoulder, never across their neck, face, over or under their arm or behind their back. If required, use the belt guide to optimise the route of the belt across the child's shoulder.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie on or below the child's pelvic ridge, never across their stomach.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the seat belt if necessary.

Attaching the belt guide

The belt guide can be used to optimise the route of the belt across the child's shoulder → Fig. 34.

- Attach the belt guide on the window side of the side head restraint using the press stud.
- Unfasten the top press stud on the belt guide.
- Guide the belt under the side head restraint and through the belt guide.
- Re-fasten the press stud.

WARNING

The seat belt will offer the optimum level of protection from severe and fatal injuries only when the seat belt routing is correct.

- The seat belt must always lie flat and securely against the child's body.
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie approximately on the centre of the child's shoulder and never across their neck or upper arm and must always lie securely against the child's upper body.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie on or below the child's pelvic ridge, never across their stomach, and must always lie securely against the child's body.
- If necessary, tighten the belt so that it lies securely against the child's body. ◁

In an emergency

Making you and your vehicle safe

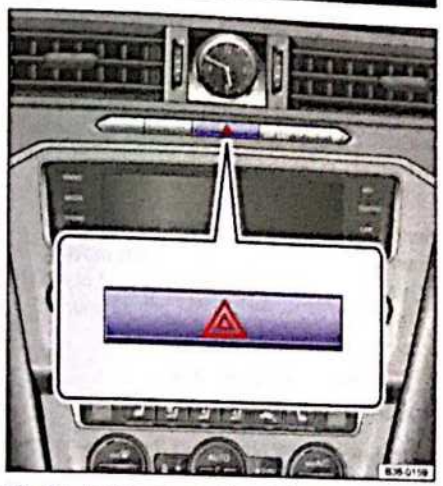


Fig. 35 In the upper section of the centre console: button for the hazard warning lights.

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of a broken-down vehicle. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights and wear a high-visibility vest → page 38.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order → ▲:

1. Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface → ▲.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights using the ⚠ button → Fig. 35.
3. Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 232.
4. Move the gear lever to the neutral position → page 172 or move the selector lever to P → page 174.
5. Switch off the engine → page 166.
6. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
7. Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Checklist (Continued)

8. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
9. Allow the engine to cool down and, if necessary, seek expert assistance.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on, for example if you are being towed, you can still indicate a change in direction or lane change by operating the turn signal. The warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

Switch on the hazard warning lights:

- When traffic ahead suddenly starts moving more slowly or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam, to will warn vehicles behind you.
- When there is an emergency.
- When the vehicle breaks down.
- When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

⚠ WARNING

Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Never leave other persons alone in the vehicle, particularly children or people requiring assistance. This applies in particular when the doors are locked. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.

! NOTICE

When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the rear lights, the rear spoiler or large panels. This could damage the vehicle and loosen the spoiler.

The vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – even when the ignition is switched off.

If you brake hard at speeds over approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake lights will flash to warn the traffic behind you. If you then continue to brake, the hazard warning lights will be switched on automatically at speeds under approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). The brake light will light up steadily. Once the vehicle starts to accelerate, the hazard warning lights will switch off again. ◁

First aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher

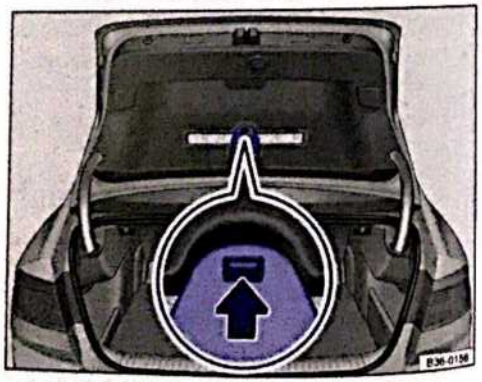


Fig. 36 In the boot lid: holder for the warning triangle (Saloon). ▷



Fig. 37 In the boot lid: holder for the warning triangle (Estate).

High-visibility waistcoat

Each of the front door trims contains a stowage compartment for a high-visibility jacket → page 48.

Warning triangle (Saloon)

When the boot lid is open, press the retaining lug → Fig. 36 (close-up view) in the direction of the arrow, fold down the holder and remove the warning triangle.

Warning triangle (Estate)

When the boot lid is open, turn the lock for the bracket by 90° in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 37, fold down the bracket and remove the warning triangle.

First aid kit

Depending on the vehicle model, a first aid kit may be located in a foam rubber holder under the luggage compartment floor → page 282 or in one of the side stowage areas in the luggage compartment → page 288.

The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements. Observe the expiry dates of the contents.

Fire extinguisher

There may be a fire extinguisher in a holder in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must comply with the valid legal requirements. It must be fully functional and checked regularly. See the test certificate on the fire extinguisher.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung though the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always secure the fire extinguisher, high-visibility waistcoat, first aid kit and warning triangle safely in the holders. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Vehicle overviews

Exterior views

Front view

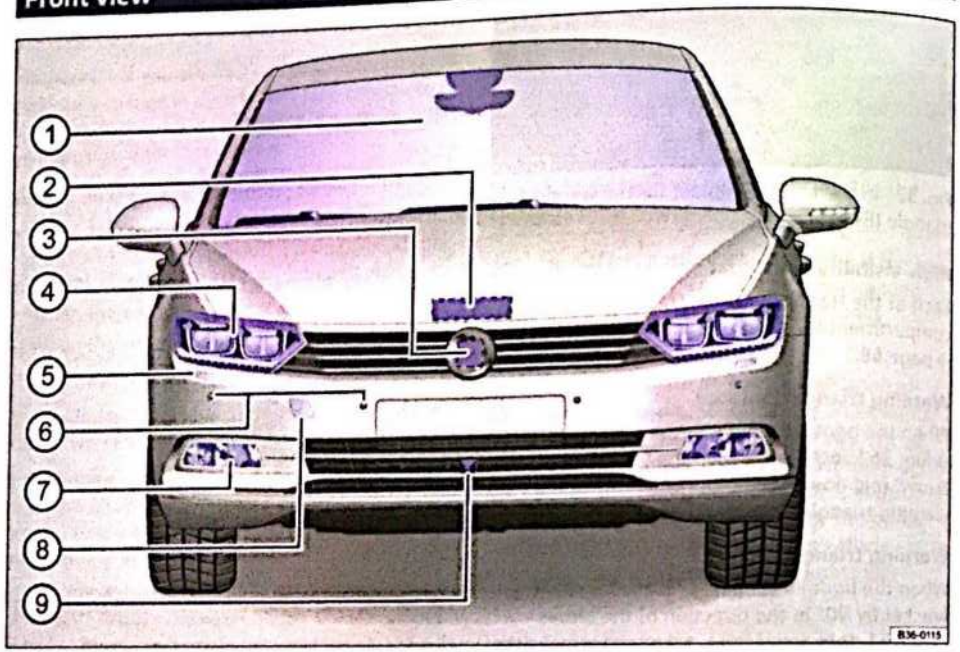


Fig. 38 Overview of the front of the vehicle.

Key to Fig. 38:

① Windscreen with:
- Windscreen wipers 136
- Rain/light sensor 136
- Windscreen heating 145
- Sensor for automatic headlight control 126
- Sensor for main beam assist (Light Assist) 126
- Camera window for assist systems 194
- Vehicle identification number 408

② Bonnet opening lever 350

③ Radar sensor behind the Volkswagen badge for:
- ACC 202
- Area monitoring system (Front Assist) including City Emergency Brake 212
- Pedestrian monitoring 217
- Traffic Jam Assist 224
- Emergency Assist 225

④ Headlights ..... 126, 329 ▶

⑤ Headlight washer system 136

⑥ Front ParkPilot or Park Assist sensors 235, 247

⑦ Bulbs in the front bumper for:
- Fog lights 126, 329
- Daytime running lights 126, 329
- Static cornering light 126, 329

⑧ Mounting for the front towing eye behind a cover 345

⑨ Camera for Area View 252

Items ④ to ⑦ are in the same location on the right and left sides of the vehicle. ◁

Side view

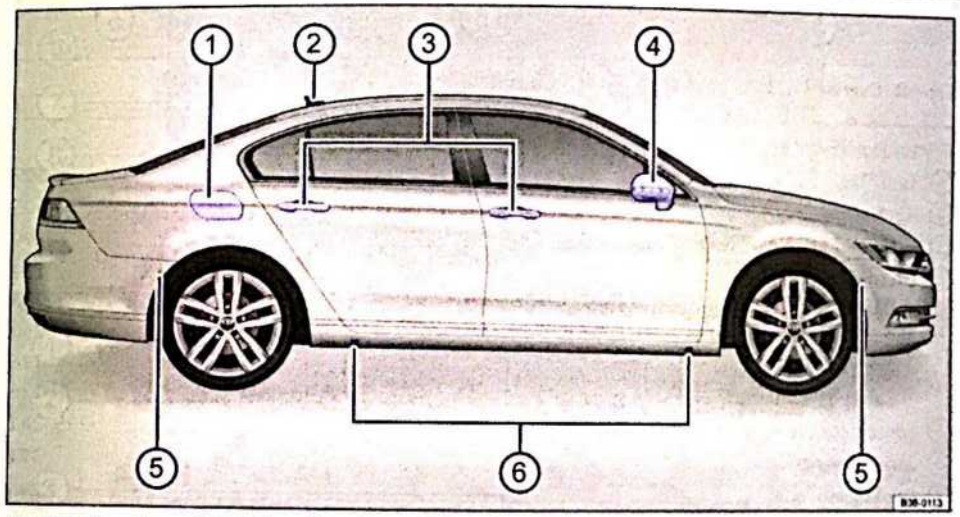


Fig. 39 Overview of the right side of the vehicle (Saloon). ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

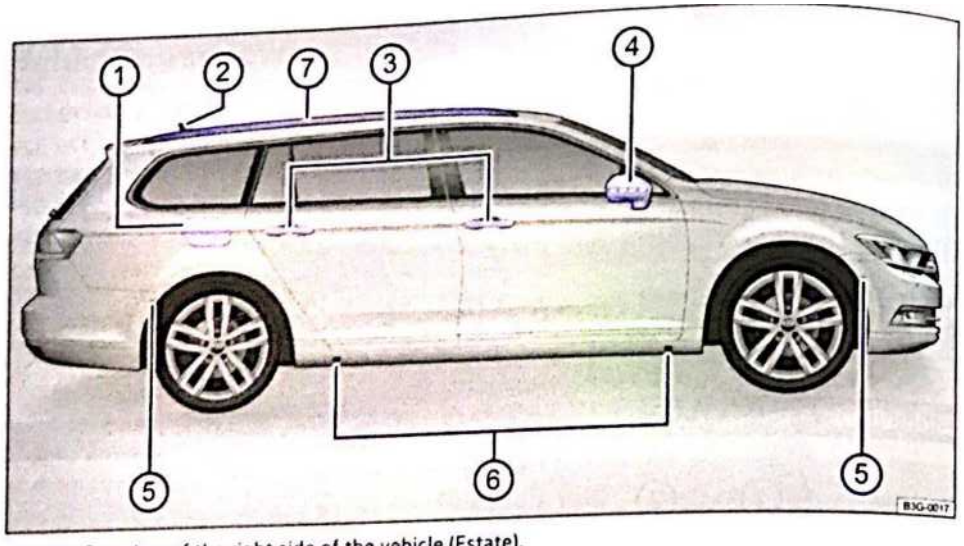


Fig. 40 Overview of the right side of the vehicle (Estate).

Key for Fig. 39 and Fig. 40:

① Tank flap	309
② Roof aerial	405
③ Exterior door release lever	99
④ Exterior mirrors	139
– Display of lane change assist system (Side Assist)	226
– Camera for Area View	252
– Additional turn signal	126
– Surround lighting	126
⑤ Sensors for the ParkPilot or Park Assist	235, 247
⑥ Jacking points	391
⑦ Roof railing	296

Items ③ to ⑥ are also in the same location on the other side of the vehicle. ◁

Rear view

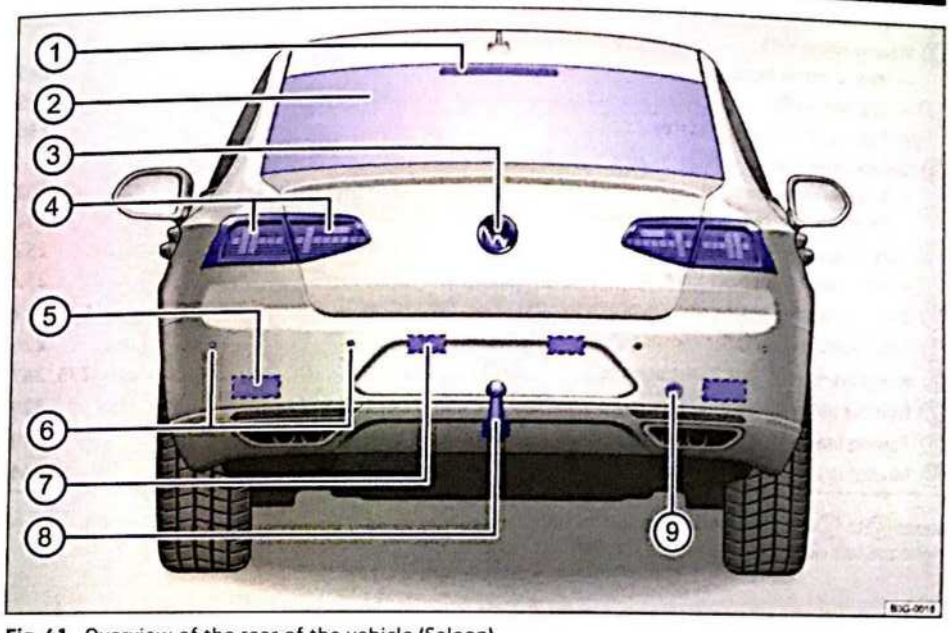


Fig. 41 Overview of the rear of the vehicle (Saloon).

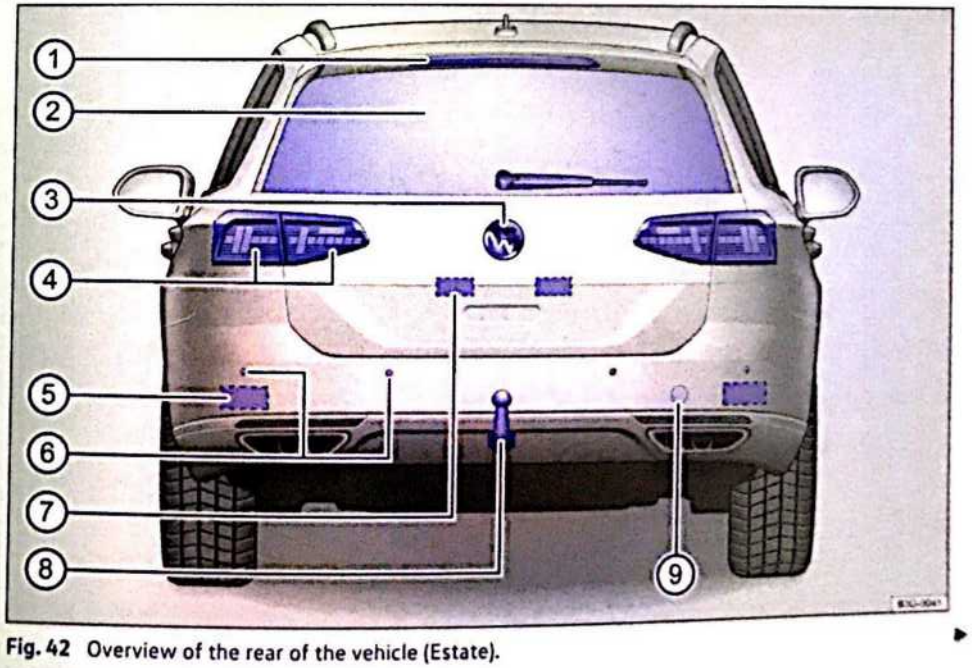


Fig. 42 Overview of the rear of the vehicle (Estate). ▷

Scanned by CamScanner

Key for Fig. 41 and Fig. 42:

① High-mounted brake light

② Rear window with:
- Rear window heating 145
- Window aerial 405
- Rear window wiper (Estate) 136

③ Volkswagen badge:
- To release the boot lid 102
- With reversing camera (Rear View) 241
- With camera for Trailer Assist 257
- With camera for Area View 252

④ Tail light cluster 126, 329

⑤ Side Assist system radar sensor behind the bumper 226

⑥ Rear ParkPilot or Park Assist sensors 235, 247

⑦ Number plate light 329

⑧ Towing bracket 299

⑨ Mounting for the rear towing eye behind a cover 345

Items ④ to ⑦ are in the same location on the right and left sides of the vehicle. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Overview of the driver side

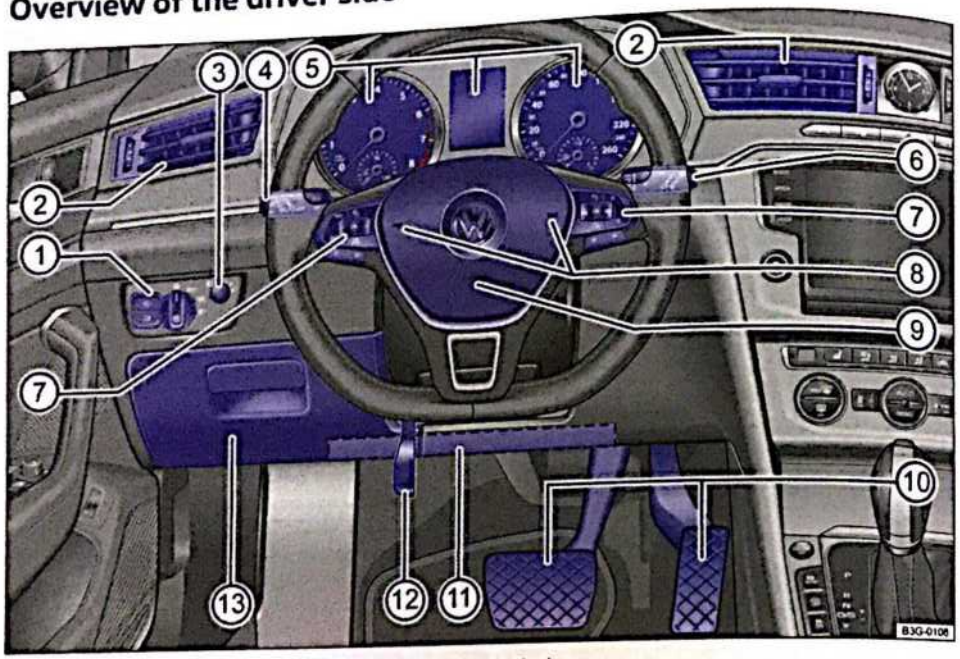


Fig. 43 Overview of the driver side (left-hand drive vehicles).

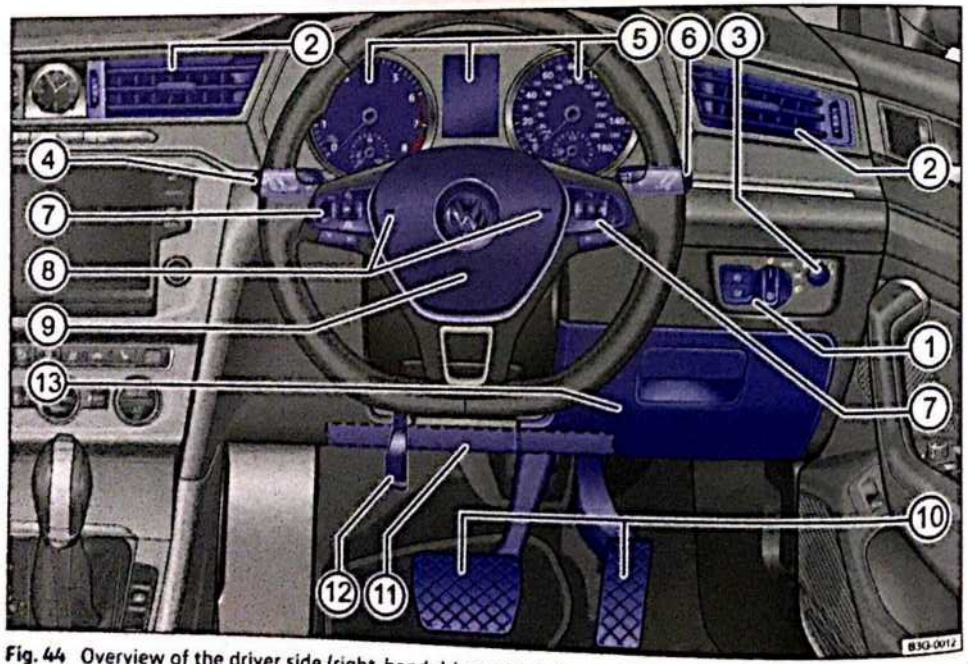


Fig. 44 Overview of the driver side (right-hand drive vehicles).

Key for Fig. 43 and Fig. 44:

① Light switch and buttons for: 126
- Daytime running lights
- Automatic headlight control **AUTO**
- Side light and dipped beam headlights
- Fog lights

② Vent 145

③ Control for
- Headlight range control 126
- Head-up Display 54

④ Lever 126
- For main beam headlights
- For headlight flasher
- For turn signal
- For parking lights
- With switches and buttons for operating the cruise control system and the speed limiter **ON – CANCEL – OFF**, RES/+ – SET/–, 194, 198
- With button for driver assist systems 73

⑤ Instrument cluster:
- Instruments 54
- Display 54
- Warning and indicator lamps 75

⑥ Lever 136
- For switching on the windscreen wipers **HIGH – LOW**
- For the windscreen interval wipe and switching on the rain/light sensor **INT**
- For adjusting the wipe intervals and the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor
- For switching off the windscreen wipers **OFF**
- For flick wipe **1x**
- For the windscreen wash and wipe system
- For the rear window wiper (Estate)
- For the wash and wipe system on the rear window (Estate)
- With buttons for operating the Volkswagen information and Infotainment systems TRIP, OK/RESET 54, 78

⑦ Controls on the multifunction steering wheel 73
- Buttons for operating the cruise control system and the speed limiter RES, SET, CNL 194, 198
- Buttons for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control RES, SET 202
- Infotainment system volume control
- Buttons for operating the Volkswagen information system OK
- Opening the main telephone menu or accepting a telephone call
- Activating voice commands
- Audio, navigation

⑧ Horn

⑨ Driver front airbag 19

⑩ Pedals 158

⑪ Location of the knee airbag in the dash panel 19

Scanned by CamScanner

⑫ Lever for adjusting the steering column 7
⑬ Stowage compartment 265

Next to the driver seat: (not shown): button for interior monitoring → page 91

Vehicle interior

Overview of the passenger side

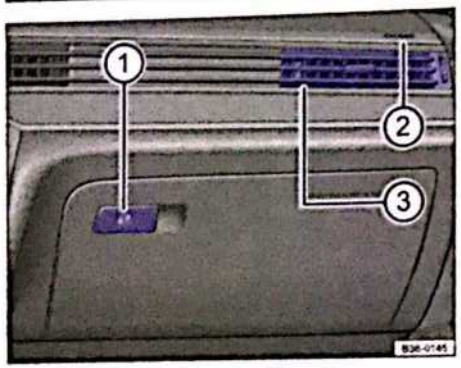


Fig. 45 Overview of the front passenger side (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles.

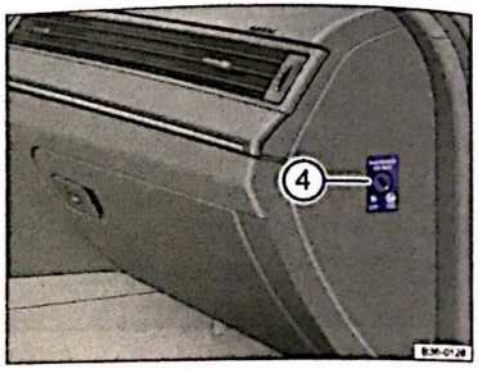


Fig. 46 Dash panel near open front passenger door (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles.

Key for Fig. 45 and Fig. 46:

① Opening lever with lock for the stowage compartment 266
② Location of front passenger front airbag in the dash panel 19
③ Vent ◀ - ▶ 145
④ To the side of the dash panel: key-operated switch for disabling the front passenger front airbag 19

Driver door

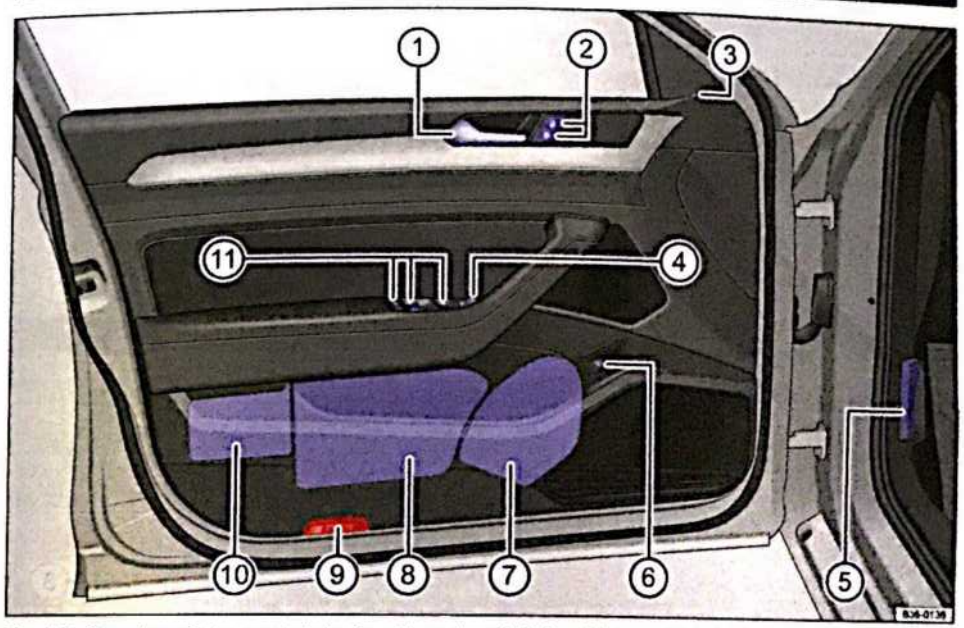


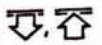
Fig. 47 Overview of the controls in the driver door (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles.

Key to Fig. 47:

① Door release lever 99
② Central locking buttons for locking and unlocking the vehicle 91
③ Central locking system indicator lamp 91
④ Switch:
– For the exterior mirror setting L – 0 – R 139
– For Trailer Assist L – 0 – R 257
– For the exterior mirror heating – 139
– For folding in the exterior mirrors 139
⑤ Bonnet release lever 350
⑥ Boot lid release button 102
⑦ Bottle holder 269
⑧ Stowage compartment 265
⑨ Door light or reflector
⑩ Compartment for high-visibility vest 37
⑪ Buttons for operating the electric windows 110
– Electric windows
– Safety button for the rear electric windows

Scanned by CamScanner

Symbols in the headliner

Symbol	Meaning
	Buttons for interior and reading lights → page 126.
	Switch for the glass roof → page 112.
	Buttons for the sun blind (Estate) → page 112. ◁

Luggage compartment (Estate)

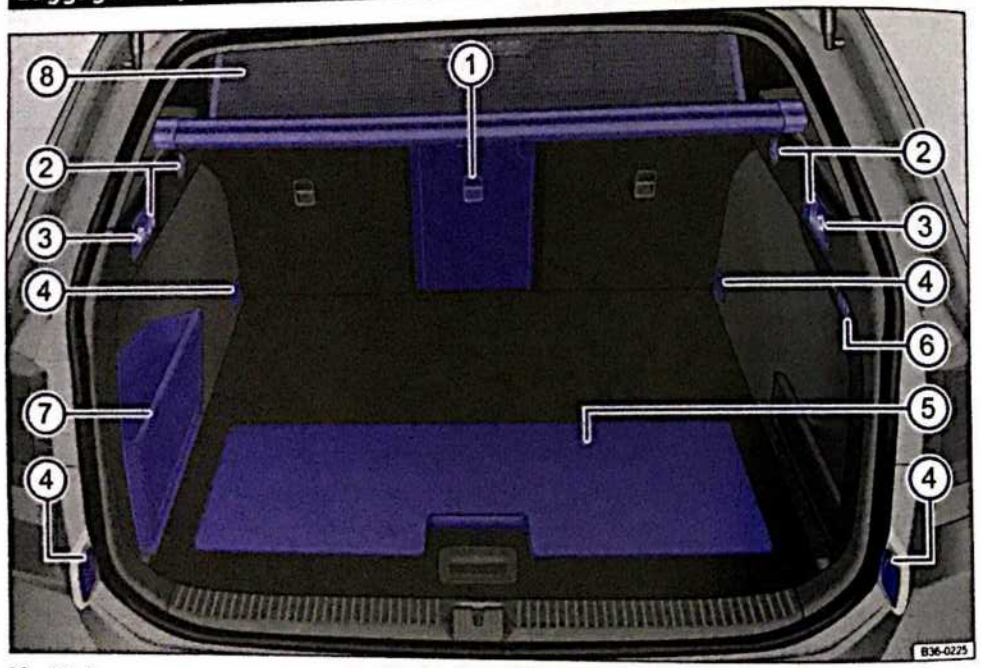


Fig. 48 Luggage compartment overview (variant 1). ▶



Fig. 49 Luggage compartment overview (variant 2).

Key for Fig. 48 or Fig. 49:

①	Load-through hatch	288
②	Bag hook	288
③	Remote release lever	119
④	Fastening rings	288
⑤	Dividable luggage compartment floor	282
⑥	Button for unlocking the ball head	299
⑦	Side stowage compartment, left	288
⑧	Net partition	286
⑨	Top tether anchor rings (child seats)[1]	28
⑩	12-volt socket	272
⑪	Movable fastening rings	288
⑫	Side stowage compartment, right	288
⑬	Loading edge protection	
⑭	Tensioning strap	288
⑮	Moveable luggage compartment floor	282
⑯	Luggage compartment floor	282
	Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the following may be located under the luggage compartment floor:	
	– Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel	369
	– Breakdown set	396 ▶

[1] There are 2 or 3 anchor rings in the luggage compartment, depending on the national market version.

Scanned by CamScanner

– Vehicle tool kit 327
– Subwoofer 391
⑰ Luggage compartment cover ..... 280 ◁

Upper section of the centre console

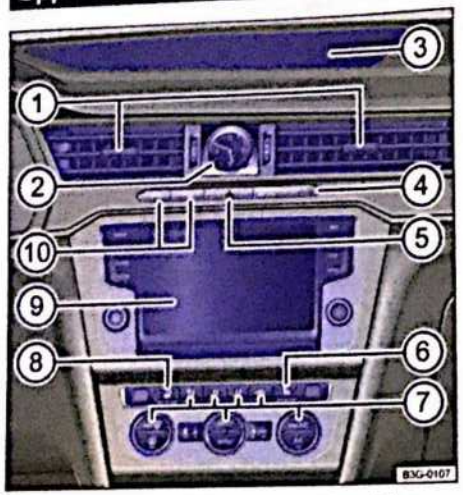


Fig. 50 Overview of the upper section of the centre console.

Key to Fig. 50:

① Vents ◀ - ▮▮▮ - ▶ 145
② Analogue clock 54
③ Air outlets for indirect ventilation 145
④ Indicator lamp for the front passenger front airbag switch-off function 19
⑤ Hazard warning lights on/off button 37
⑥ Button for seat heating and seat ventilation, front right 145
⑦ Controls for:
– Heating and fresh air system 145
– Air conditioning system (manual) 145
– Climatronic 145
– Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system) 154
⑧ Button for seat heating and seat ventilation, front left 145
⑨ Infotainment system (factory-fitted)
– Operating display 78
– Infotainment system → Booklet *Infotainment system*
⑩ Buttons for:
– ParkPilot 235
– Area View 252
– Park Assist 247
– Trailer Assist ..... 257 ◁

Lower section of the centre console

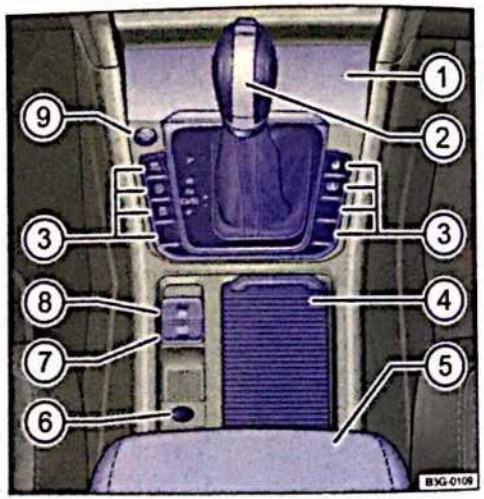


Fig. 51 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (left-hand drive vehicles). ▶

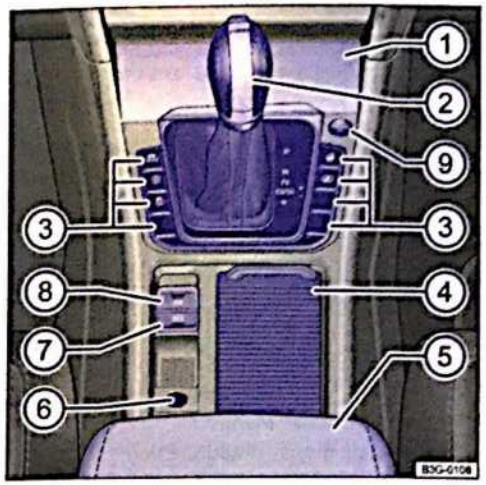


Fig. 52 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (right-hand drive vehicles).

Key for Fig. 51 and Fig. 52:

① Stowage compartment in the front centre console 265
– With 12-volt socket 272
– With ashtray and cigarette lighter 270
– With USB socket or MEDIA-IN socket → Booklet *Infotainment system*
– "Comfort" mobile phone interface → Booklet *Infotainment system*
② Lever for:
– Manual gearbox 172
– DSG® dual clutch gearbox 174
③ Buttons for:
– Traction control system (TCS) 260
– Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 260
– Electronic Stability Control sport mode (ESC Sport) 260
– Steering wheel heating 145
– – Sun blind for the rear window 142
– Driving profile selection 183
– Start/stop system 171
④ Drink holders behind a cover[1] 269
⑤ Centre armrest at front with stowage compartment 7, 265
⑥ Cigarette lighter or 12-volt socket 270, 272
⑦ Auto Hold function AUTO HOLD 232
⑧ Electronic parking brake 232
⑨ Button for starting and switching off the engine (Press & Drive) START - ENGINE - STOP ..... 166 ◁

[1] This cover is not available in all vehicle models.

Lower section of the centre console

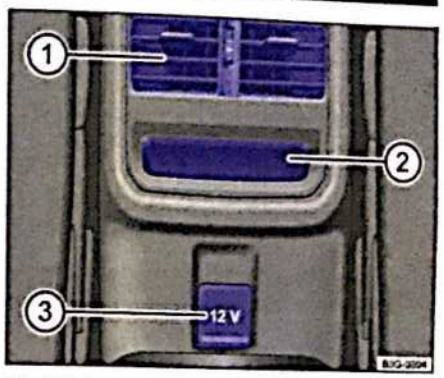


Fig. 53 Overview of the rear section of the centre console (type 1).

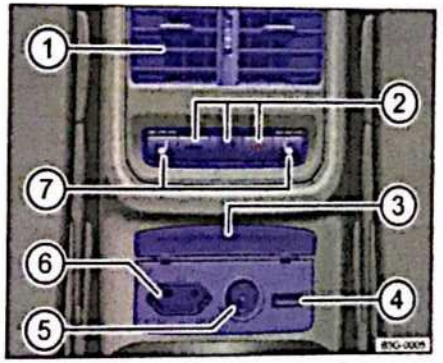


Fig. 54 Overview of the rear section of the centre console (type 2).

In some models, the content shown here may be provided in different combinations. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Key for Fig. 53:

① Vents ◀ - |||· - ▶ → page 145
② Stowage compartment
③ 12-volt socket with cover flap → page 272

Key for Fig. 54:

① Vents ◀ - |||· - ▶ → page 145
② Controls for setting the temperature for the rear seats → page 145
③ Cover opened
④ USB socket ⇤ → Booklet *Infotainment system*
⑤ 12-volt socket → page 272
⑥ 230-volt Euro socket → page 272
⑦ Button for the left rear seat heating ☑ and the right rear seat heating ☑ → page 145

Driver information

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Analogue instrument cluster 55
- Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display) 55
- Head-up Display 57
- Displays 58
- Instrument cluster menus 60
- Driving data display (Multifunction display) 60
- Warning and information messages 62
- Driver Alert System (recommendation for rest breaks) 63
- Dynamic Road Sign Display 64
- Time 67
- Lap timer 68
- Fuel gauge 69
- Warning lamp and coolant temperature display 70
- Service interval display 71

The vehicle is equipped either with an analogue or a digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display).

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never use the menus on the instrument cluster display while the vehicle is in motion.

After starting the engine with a discharged vehicle battery, or after the battery has been changed, system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

Analogue instrument cluster

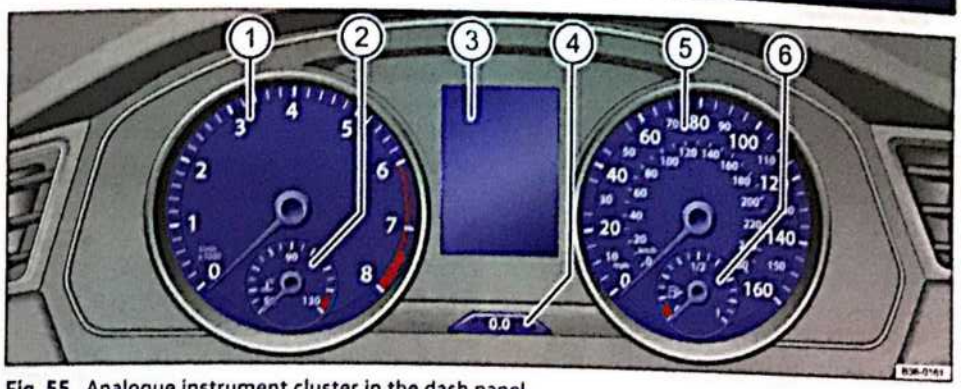


Fig. 55 Analogue instrument cluster in the dash panel.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

Descriptions of the instruments → Fig. 55:

① **Rev. counter** (running engine speed in revolutions x 1,000 per minute).

The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used in each gear when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. You should change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D/S** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone → ⓘ.

② **Coolant temperature display** → page 70.

③ **Displays** → page 58.

④ **Reset, set and display button** → page 58.

⑤ **Speedometer**

⑥ **Fuel gauge** → page 69.

NOTICE

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- The needle on the rev counter should only briefly point into the red area, as engine damage may otherwise be incurred.

Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and reduce engine noise.

Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)

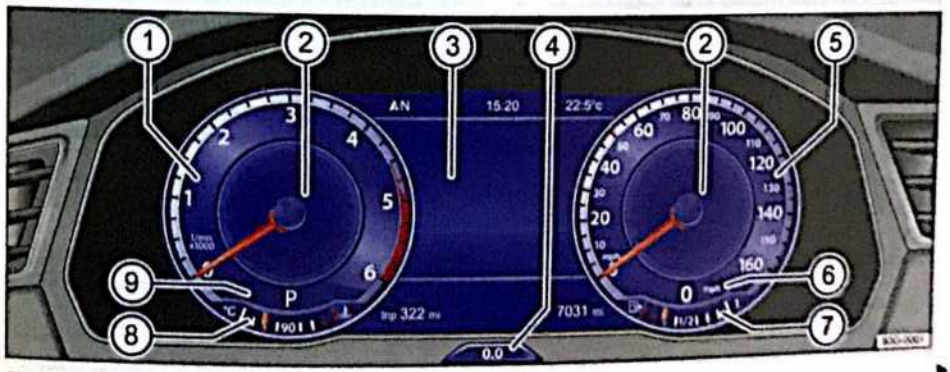


Fig. 56 Active Info Display in the dash panel.

Scanned by CamScanner

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The "Active Info Display" is a digital instrument cluster with high-resolution TFT colour display. To complement the standard dials such as the rev counter and speedometer, users can choose from various "information profiles" to view additional data.

Descriptions of the instruments → Fig. 56:

① **Rev. counter** (running engine speed in revolutions x 1,000 per minute).

The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used in each gear when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. You should change up a gear or move the selector lever to D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone → ①.

② **Data as selected via an information profile.** Precisely what data is shown depends on which information profile has been selected. The example above shows the "Classic" profile with no additional information shown.

③ **Displays** → page 58.

④ **Reset, set and display button** → page 58.

⑤ **Speedometer**

⑥ **Digital speed display.**

⑦ **Fuel gauge** → page 69.

⑧ **Coolant temperature display** → page 70.

⑨ **Current gear / selector lever position** → page 172 or → page 174.

Information profiles

To select a range of specific information profiles, go to the **Views** menu item in the instrument cluster display → page 60. The Active Info Display shows additional information in the centre of the dials → Fig. 56 ② depending on the information profile you have selected. The following information profiles are available:

- **Classic.** No additional information shown.
- **Consumption and range.** Current consumption is shown graphically and average consumption is shown digitally in the rev counter. The remaining range is shown digitally in the speedometer.
- **Efficiency.** Average consumption is shown digitally and current consumption is shown graphically in the rev counter. In the speedometer, a symbol: eco is shown if the current driving style is fuel-efficient, and a graphic display helps the driver save fuel.
- **Navigation.** If route guidance is *active*: the remaining distance to the set destination and an estimated time of arrival are shown in the rev counter, and arrows to aid navigation are shown in the speedometer. If route guidance is *inactive*: the current altitude is shown in the rev counter, and a compass is shown in the speedometer.
- **Driver assistance.** Graphic representation of various driver assist systems, or digital display of the driving time in the rev counter. The speedometer meanwhile shows arrow navigation or a compass.

Navigation map in the Active Info Display

With some vehicle equipment levels, the Active Info Display is able to display a detailed map. To show this map, select the **Navigation** menu item in the Volkswagen information system → page 60.

The navigation map can be shown in two sizes. If the larger version is selected, the Active Info Display dials will be smaller. To select the preferred map size:

- Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel → page 60 again to switch between map sizes as required.
- **OR:** press the △ or ▽ arrow button on the multifunction steering wheel to select the required map size. A frame appears around the selected option.
- Confirm the selection by pressing the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

NOTICE

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- The needle on the rev counter should only briefly point into the red area, as engine damage may otherwise be incurred.

Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and reduce engine noise.

Head-up Display



Fig. 57 Next to the steering wheel: Head-up Display control (arrow).



Fig. 58 On the dash panel above the steering wheel: examples of information shown in the Head-up Display

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The Head-up Display projects selected information or warning messages from the assist systems or the Infotainment system into the driver's field of vision.

Switching the Head-up Display on or off

Press the control → Fig. 57 to switch the Head-up Display on or off.

Adjusting the height

Proceed as follows to adjust the height of the Head-up Display and individually adapt the angle:

- Put your seat in the best possible position → page 7.
- Use the control → Fig. 57 to adjust the height of the Head-up Display as required.

Infotainment system setup

You can configure additional setup parameters for the Head-up Display in the Infotainment system.

To open the **Head-up Display settings** menu, press the CAR button and tap the ⚙ and Head-up display function buttons.

The following settings are available:

In the **Display** submenu:

- Adjust the Head-up Display brightness. If the surroundings become darker, the display brightness is automatically dimmed. The basic brightness is adjusted together with the instrument and switch lighting → page 128.
- Select the desired colour scheme. You can choose between a standard colour scheme and an alternative colour scheme.

In the **Contents** submenu:

- Select the content of the Head-up Display, e.g. Adaptive Cruise Control or Infotainment system. Some content cannot be deactivated, e.g. warning messages.

NOTICE

The Head-up Display may detach from the guide rail as a result of applying excessive pressure, e.g. during cleaning.

- Do not apply excessive pressure when cleaning the Head-up Display.

NOTICE

Do not place objects in the slot of the Head-up Display to prevent scratching the cover panel.

Sun glasses with polarisation filters and unfavourable lighting conditions may impair the effectiveness of the display.

Scanned by CamScanner

The ideal position to read the Head-up Display depends on your seat position and the height setting of the Head-up Display.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Displays

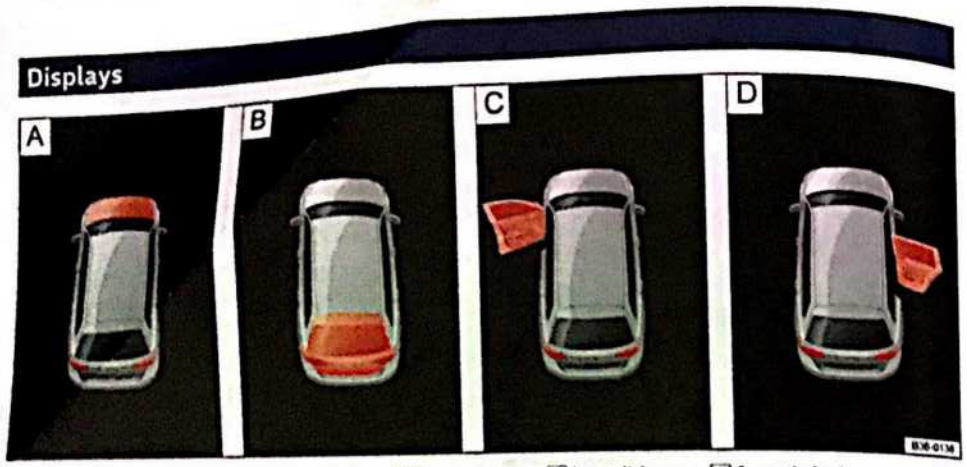


Fig. 59 On the instrument cluster display: A bonnet open, B boot lid open, C front left door open, D right rear door open.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

Potentially available information on the instrument cluster display

A variety of information can be displayed in the instrument cluster → Fig. 55 ③ or → Fig. 56 ③ (availability depends on the vehicle equipment):

- Open doors, bonnet and boot lid → Fig. 59
- Warning and information messages
- Mileage displays
- Time → page 67
- Radio and navigation information → Booklet *Infotainment system*
- Telephone information → Booklet *Infotainment system*
- Outside temperature
- Compass display
- Selector lever positions
- Gear-change indicator
- Driving data display (multifunction display) and menus for various settings → page 60
- Service interval display → page 71
- Speed warning function → page 60
- Speed warning for winter tyres
- Start/stop system status display → page 59
- Traffic signs detected by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system → page 64
- Status display for active cylinder management (ACT*) → page 160
- Economical mode
- Engine code
- Personalisation: welcome and user selection

Open doors, bonnet and boot lid

The instrument cluster display indicates if any doors, or the bonnet or boot lid, are open once the vehicle has been unlocked, and while the vehicle is in motion. In some cases, a signal tone is also given. Different instrument cluster designs will have different displays.

Key for Fig. 59:

A **Do not drive on!** The bonnet is open or not properly closed → page 350.

B **Do not drive on!** The boot lid is open or not properly closed → page 102.

C **Do not drive on!** The front left door is open or not properly closed → page 99.

D **Do not drive on!** The rear right door is open or is not properly closed → page 99.

Selector lever positions (dual clutch gearbox DSG*)

The gear selected is displayed on the side of the selector lever and on the display in the instrument cluster. The instrument cluster display may show which gear has been selected if the lever is in D/S, or in Tiptronic mode → page 174.

Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature falls below approximately +4°C (+39°F), the temperature display also shows a snowflake symbol ❄. This symbol remains lit up until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F) → ▲.

Heat radiated from the engine may cause the temperature display to show a slightly higher value than the actual outside temperature if the vehicle is stationary, the auxiliary heater → page 154 is switched on or the vehicle is travelling at a very low speed.

The measuring range lies between -45°C (-49°F) and +76°C (+169°F).

Gear-change indicator

When driving in Tiptronic mode, the instrument cluster display is able to recommend a gear to save fuel → page 159.

Mileage displays

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *trip recorder* (**trip**) shows the distance travelled since the trip recorder was last reset. The final digit shows distances of 100 m.

- To reset the trip recorder to 0, briefly press the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 55 or → page 55.

Start/stop system status display

The instrument cluster display shows information about the current status → page 171.

Speed warning for winter tyres

A display in the instrument cluster indicates when the set maximum speed has been exceeded → page 60.

Speed warning settings can be made and adjusted in the Infotainment system using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Tyres function buttons → page 78.

Compass display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster display shows the vehicle's current direction of travel in short form, e.g. NW for northwest, when the ignition is switched on.

The graphic compass display is also shown when the Infotainment system is switched on and route guidance is not active.

Economical mode

While driving, the instrument cluster will show whether the vehicle is in economical mode, for example due to active cylinder management (ACT*) → page 160 or if the automatic gearbox is coasting → page 174.

Engine code

Press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 55 or → page 55 (for approximately 15 seconds) to show the vehicle's engine code (EC) in the display. The ignition should be switched on but the engine should not be running.

⚠ WARNING

Streets and bridges can be iced over at outside temperatures above freezing point.

- The snowflake symbol indicates that there is a risk of black ice.
- There may be black ice on the roads even when outside temperatures are above +4°C (+39°F), even when no snowflake symbol is displayed.
- You should never rely solely on the outside temperature display!

Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary. In displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the indicator lamps.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system.

If several warning reports are detected, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

Scanned by CamScanner

If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified.

Instrument cluster menus

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The range of content and layout of the menus and information displays depend on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

A qualified workshop may be able to program and modify other functions, depending on the model. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Some menu items can be accessed only when the vehicle is stationary.

Driving data → page 60

Assist systems

- Lane keeping system on/off → page 221
- Area monitoring system on/off → page 212
- Pedestrian Monitoring on/off → page 217
- Lane change system (Side Assist) on/off → page 226
- Rear Traffic Alert on/off → page 226
- ACC (display only) → page 202

Views[1] → page 54

Navigation → Booklet *Infotainment system*

Audio → Booklet *Infotainment system*

Phone → Booklet *Infotainment system*

Vehicle status → page 62

Lap timer → page 68

Personalisation (user selection) → page 87

Driving data display (Multifunction display)

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The driving data display (multifunction display) shows a variety of travel and fuel consumption data. The driving data display is accessed on the instrument cluster → page 60.

Switching between displays

- *Vehicles without a multifunction steering wheel:* press the rocker switch TRIP on the windscreen wiper lever → page 73.
- *Vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel:* press the △ or ▽ button → page 73.

Driving data recorder

The driving data display (multifunction display) is fitted with 3 automatic recorders:

- **Since start**
- **Since refuel**
- **Long-term**

The currently selected memory is shown in the display.

Press the OK/RESET button on the wiper lever or press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel to switch between recorders when the ignition is switched on and the recorder is displayed.

Display	Function
Since start	Display and storage of gathered driving and consumption values from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued within approximately 2 hours of the ignition being switched off, the new values are also taken into account. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours.
Since refuel	Display and storage of the collected driving and consumption values. The memory is deleted automatically when the vehicle is refuelled.
Long-term	The memory collects journey data for any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes journey time or 1,999.9 km or 9,999.9 km distance travelled. If one of these maximum limits[a] is exceeded, the memory is automatically deleted and reset to 0.

[1] Only in vehicles with an Active Info Display.

[a] Changes depending on the instrument cluster version.

Deleting the driving data recorder manually

- Select the memory that you wish to delete.
- Press and hold the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever, or the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel, for approximately 2 seconds.

Personal selection of displays

You can set which driving data should appear in the instrument cluster using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Instrument cluster function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Examples of display

Display	Function
Consumption	The current fuel consumption is displayed in litres/100 km while the vehicle is in motion, and in litres/hour while the vehicle is stationary.
Av. consumption	The average fuel consumption will be shown after a distance of approximately 300 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Range	Approximate calculation of the distance in km that can still be travelled with the current fuel level under the current driving conditions. One factor used for calculating this figure is the current level of fuel consumption.
Convenience consumers	List of active convenience systems which can increase fuel consumption, e.g. the air conditioning.
SCR range **OR: Range**	Approximate distance (in km) that can be travelled with the remaining quantity of AdBlue® under current driving conditions. This information is shown only when the remaining range is less than 2,400 km. The AdBlue® remaining range cannot be deselected in the **Instrument cluster** submenu.
Travel time	Driving time in hours (h) and minutes (min) that has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.
Distance	The distance travelled in km since the ignition was switched on.
Average speed	The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Digital speed display	Current vehicle speed displayed digitally.
Speed warning --- km/h or **Warning at --- mph**	If the saved speed (within the range of 30 km/h (18 mph) and 250 km/h (155 mph)) is exceeded, an acoustic warning will be given, along with a visible warning if required.
Dynamic Road Sign Display	Show recognised traffic signals.
Oil temp.	Current temperature of the engine oil displayed digitally.

Scanned by CamScanner

Saving a speed for the speed warning

- Select the display **Warning at --- km/h** or **Warning at --- mph**.
- Press the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever, or the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel to save the current speed and activate the warning system.
- If necessary, use the TRIP rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever, or the △ or ▽ buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, within approximately 5 seconds to set the desired speed. Then press the OK/RESET or OK button again, or wait a few seconds. The speed is now saved and the warning is activated.
- *To deactivate*, press the OK/RESET or OK button. The stored speed will be deleted.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87. ◁

Warning and information messages

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Functional faults are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with information messages on the instrument cluster display → page 75. An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. Different instrument cluster designs will have different displays.

In addition, a list of current malfunctions can be opened manually. To do so, choose **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** in the menu → page 60.

Type of message	Symbol colour	Explanation
Priority 1 warning report	Red	The symbol flashes or lights up – sometimes accompanied by acoustic warnings. **Do not drive on!** Danger → ▲! Check the fault and correct the cause. Seek expert assistance if necessary.
Priority 2 warning report	Yellow	The symbol flashes or lights up – sometimes accompanied by acoustic warnings. Your vehicle could be damaged or break down if there is a fault, or if service fluids are running low → ⓘ. Check the fault as soon as possible. Seek expert assistance if necessary.
Information message	–	Information about various procedures within the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.
- Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and ensure that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass or fuel. ▷

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary. In displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the indicator lamps.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system.

If several warning reports are detected, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified. ◁

Driver Alert System (recommendation for rest breaks)



Fig. 60 On the instrument cluster display: Driver Alert System.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The Driver Alert System informs the driver if their driving shows signs of tiredness.

Function and operation by the user

The Driver Alert System determines the driving behaviour at the beginning of a journey and uses it to evaluate the tiredness of the driver. This is compared to the behaviour of the driver while actually driving. If the system detects that the driver may be tired, an acoustic warning signal will sound and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display → Fig. 60. The message on the instrument cluster display appears for about five seconds and may be repeated once. The last displayed message is saved by the system.

The message on the instrument cluster display can be switched off by pressing the OK/RESET button on the wiper lever or the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel → page 73. The message can be displayed again on the instrument cluster display using the multifunction display → page 62.

Functional limitations

The driving behaviour can be evaluated only when the speed is above 65 km/h (40 mph) up to approximately 200 km/h (125 mph).

Switching on and off

The Driver Alert System can be activated or deactivated using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Driver assistance function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Function limitations

The Driver Alert System has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Driver Alert System, or prevent it from working altogether:

- With speeds less than 65 km/h (40 mph).
- With speeds above 200 km/h (125 mph).
- On roads with bends.
- On bad roads.
- With poor weather conditions.
- With sporty driving.
- When towing a heavy/long trailer.
- When the driver is distracted.

The Driver Alert System is reset when:

- The ignition is switched off.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened and the driver door is open.
- The vehicle is stationary for longer than 15 minutes. ▷

Scanned by CamScanner

The Driver Alert System is automatically reset in case of long slow drives (speed less than 65 km/h (40 mph)). If the speed is increased, the system evaluates the driving behaviour again.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology used in the Driver Alert System cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the Driver Alert System tempt you into taking any risks when driving - this can cause accidents. During a long trip, plan regular and sufficient breaks.

- The driver is responsible at all times for their fitness to drive.
- Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.
- The system cannot always detect the driver's level of alertness. Observe the information in the section about function limitations → page 63.
- In certain situations, the system may wrongly interpret intentional driving manoeuvres as a lack of alertness from the driver.
- No urgent warning will be given in the event of the phenomenon known as "microsleep".
- Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.

The Driver Alert System has been developed for use only while driving on highways and good roads.

If there is a system fault, proceed to a qualified workshop immediately to have the system checked.

Dynamic Road Sign Display

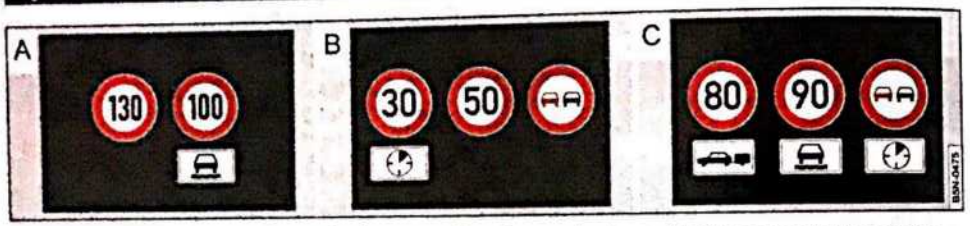


Fig. 61 On the instrument cluster display: examples of recognised speed limits or overtaking restrictions with accompanying additional signs.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

Dynamic Road Sign Display uses a camera in the base of the interior mirror to monitor standard traffic signs in front of the vehicle and notifies the driver of any detected speed limits or overtaking restrictions. Within the limits of the system, the system also displays additional signs, e.g. temporary restrictions, signs related to towing a trailer → page 299 or restrictions in wet weather conditions. In some cases the system can also display the current speed limits on non-signposted routes.

Availability:

At the time that this owner's manual went to print, Dynamic Road Sign Display is available in the following countries:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, San Marino, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom, Vatican City.

Displays

In addition to speed limits and overtaking restrictions, Dynamic Road Sign Display also detects the sign which indicates that all restrictions have been lifted on motorways and main roads in Germany. In all other countries, the current speed limit is displayed instead.

The road signs detected by Dynamic Road Sign Display are displayed on the instrument cluster → Fig. 61 and also on the Infotainment system, depending on which version is installed in the vehicle → page 78. Depending on the equipment level, a notification may also appear on the Head-up Display → page 54.

Dynamic Road Sign Display texts	Cause and solution
`No traffic signs available`	The system is in the initialisation phase. **OR:** the camera has not detected any regulatory or warning signs.
`Error: Dynamic Road Sign Display`	System fault. Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
`Speed warning currently not available.`	Fault in the Dynamic Road Sign Display system speed warning. Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
`Dynamic Road Sign Display: clean the windscreen!`	The area around the camera on the windscreen is dirty. Clean the windscreen.
`Dynamic Road Sign Display is currently restricted.`	No data transmission from the Infotainment system. Check whether valid map data are loaded on the Infotainment system. **OR:** the vehicle is located in an area that is not covered by the map stored on the Infotainment system.
`No data available`	Dynamic Road Sign Display is not supported in the country in which you are currently travelling.

Switching the Road Sign Display on and off in the instrument cluster display

The continuous display of traffic signs in the instrument cluster can be activated and deactivated using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the Infotainment system.

Display of traffic signs

After inspection and evaluation of the information from the camera, the Infotainment system and the current vehicle data, the Dynamic Road Sign Display shows up to 3 valid road signs → Fig. 61 B with the accompanying additional signs:

1st position: The road sign that currently applies for the driver is shown on the left-hand side of the display, e.g. a speed limit of **130 km/h (80 mph)** → Fig. 61 A.

2. position: Traffic signs that do not always apply e.g. **100 km/h (60 mph)** in wet conditions.

Additional sign: if the windscreen wiper is active while the vehicle is in motion, any traffic sign, for example with the additional "In wet" sign that now applies will be moved left to the first position.

3. position: Further traffic signs that do not always apply will be displayed in the third position, e.g. "overtaking temporarily not permitted" → Fig. 61 C.

Scanned by CamScanner

Speed warning function

When the Dynamic Road Sign Display detects that an applicable speed limit has been exceeded, it will issue an acoustic warning signal and display a message on the instrument cluster display.

The speed warning can be activated or completely deactivated using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78. The settings can be adjusted in increments of 5 km/h (3 mph) within a range between 0 km/h (mph) and 15 km/h (9 mph) above the permitted maximum speed.

Trailer mode

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle, the display of traffic signs that may apply to the vehicle when towing a trailer, e.g. applicable speed limits and no-overtaking signs, can be activated or deactivated using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

In trailer mode, the speed warning function display can be adjusted to the type of trailer or to legal requirements. The settings can be adjusted in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) within a range between 60 km/h (40 mph) and 130 km/h (80 mph). If a higher speed is set than is permitted for driving with a trailer in the country in which you are currently travelling, Dynamic Road Sign Display automatically issues a warning at the usual speed limit, e.g. at 80 km/h (50 mph) in Germany.

If the speed warning for the trailer is deactivated, Dynamic Road Sign Display issues warnings as if the vehicle was being driven without a trailer.

Function limitations

Dynamic Road Sign Display is subject to system-related limitations. The following conditions can restrict the function of Dynamic Road Sign Display, or prevent it from working altogether:

- In poor visibility, e.g. snow, rain, fog or heavy spray.
- When dazzled, e.g. by oncoming traffic or sunlight.
- At high speeds.
- If the camera is covered or dirty.
- When traffic signs are located outside of the camera's field of view.
- If traffic signs are partially or fully covered, e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles.
- If there are non-standard traffic signs.
- If the traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- Variable traffic signs on gantries (changeable traffic sign display using LEDs or other light sources).
- When the Infotainment system is using old maps.
- When vehicles are fitted with traffic sign stickers, e.g. speed restrictions on HGVs.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the Dynamic Road Sign Display cannot overcome the laws of physics and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by Dynamic Road Sign Display tempt you into taking any risks when driving, as this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Poor visibility, darkness, snow, rain and fog can cause traffic signs to be not displayed or be incorrectly displayed by the system.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of Dynamic Road Sign Display may be impaired.

⚠ WARNING

Driving recommendations and traffic symbols displayed by Dynamic Road Sign Display may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Not all traffic signs can be recognised by the system and displayed correctly.
- Traffic signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Always replace damaged or worn wiper blades as soon as possible to avoid streaks in the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.

NOTICE

- The use of old map data in the Infotainment system can lead to road signs being displayed incorrectly.
- Dynamic Road Sign Display only has limited availability if the Infotainment system is set to waypoint navigation mode.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Time

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

- To set the time (on all vehicle clocks), press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 55 or → page 55 while the doors are closed until the word **Time** appears in the display.
- Release the button 0.0. The time is shown in the instrument cluster display and the hour setting is marked.
- Then press the 0.0 button repeatedly until the required hour is displayed. Press and hold the 0.0 button to scroll through quickly.
- Once you have set the hour, wait until the minutes display in the instrument cluster is marked.
- Then press the 0.0 button repeatedly until the required minute is displayed. Press and hold the 0.0 button to scroll through quickly.
- Release the 0.0 button to finish setting the clock.

The analogue clock adjusts itself a few seconds after ignition is switched on.

You can also set the time in the Infotainment system using the CAR button and the and Time and date function buttons → page 78.

Scanned by CamScanner

Lap timer

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

If fitted, the lap timer can be displayed on the instrument cluster → page 60.

The lap timer enables you to time your own laps manually in the vehicle on a race track, store the times and compare them with best times.

The following higher-level menus can be displayed:

- **Lap timer**
- **Lap** (with the current lap number)
- **Statistics**

Switching between the menus

- *Vehicles without a multifunction steering wheel:* press the rocker switch TRIP on the windscreen wiper lever → page 73.
- *Vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel:* press the △ or ▽ button → page 73.

The following tables provide examples of how the menus on the instrument cluster display are structured. The actual scope of the menus and the names of the individual menu items depend on the instrument cluster design and the vehicle electronics.

Menu displays and functions

Lap timer menu	
Submenu	**Function**
Start	Starts the lap timer. If laps have already been completed and are recorded in the statistics, timing will start from the following lap. A new first lap can only be started if the statistics are reset in the **Statistics** menu beforehand.
Since start	Timing starts when the vehicle drives off. If the vehicle is already in motion, timing will begin when the vehicle has come to a temporary standstill.
Statistics	**Statistics** will be displayed in the menu.

Lap menu	
Submenu	**Function**
Stop	Active timing is interrupted. This will not end the lap.
Continue	Paused timing resumes.
Split time	An interval period will be displayed for approximately 5 seconds. Active timing continues in parallel to this.
New lap	Timing of the current or paused lap is stopped and a new lap starts. The time of the completed lap will be carried over to the statistics.
Abort lap	Timing of the active lap is ended and deleted. It is not entered into the statistics.
End	Active timing is stopped. The lap is automatically entered into the statistics.

Statistics menu	
Submenu	**Function**
–	Overview of lap times most recently attained: – Quickest lap time, – Slowest lap time, – Average time taken to complete a lap – Overall time. A maximum of 99 laps and a maximum overall duration of 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds is possible. If one of the two limits is reached, timing can only be started again if the statistics have been reset beforehand.
Back	It returns to the previous menu.
Reset	All stored statistics data will be reset.

⚠ WARNING

You should avoid operating the lap timer whilst driving.

- Only set lap timer predefined settings and access statistics when the vehicle is stationary.
- When the vehicle is in motion, use the lap timer only in driving situations which are easy to control.

◁

Fuel gauge

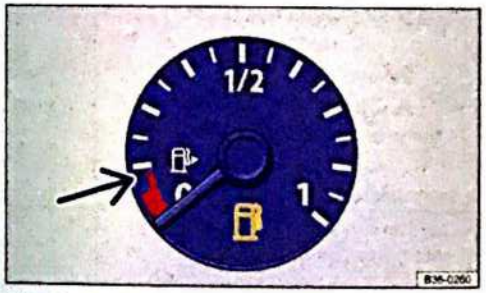


Fig. 62 In the instrument cluster: fuel gauge for petrol and diesel.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

Fuel gauge

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Fuel tank almost empty. Reserve volume → page 408, *Technical data* (red marking → Fig. 62) is being consumed. Refuel as soon as possible → page 309.
a)	Water in fuel in vehicles with a diesel engine. Reduce the vehicle speed immediately and drive to the nearest qualified workshop at a medium engine speed and avoiding high engine loading. **OR:** if the warning lamp lights up immediately after filling the tank, switch off the engine and seek expert assistance.
a)	The tank cap is not closed properly. Stop the vehicle and close the tank cap properly.

a) Displayed in colour only with an instrument cluster with colour display.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

When the indicator lamp lights up, the auxiliary heater and the fuel-powered supplementary heater are switched off automatically. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

WARNING

Driving with an insufficient fuel level can lead to the vehicle coming to a standstill in traffic, potentially causing accidents and serious injuries.

- When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.
- The steering, all driver assist systems and brake support systems will not function if the engine "splutters" or stops completely due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.
- Always fill the fuel tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

- To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.
- Do not run the tank empty. Irregular filling periods can cause backfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system. This could cause damage to the catalytic converter!

The small arrow next to the petrol pump symbol → Fig. 62 in the display instrument shows you the side of the vehicle on which the tank flap is located.

Warning lamp and coolant temperature display

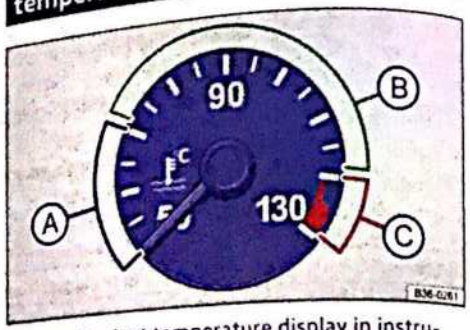


Fig. 63 Coolant temperature display in instrument cluster: Ⓐ cold; Ⓑ normal; Ⓒ warning.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

In normal driving conditions, the needle will be in the middle section of the scale. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high ambient temperatures.

Flashes	Needle position → Fig. 63	Possible Cause/solution
	Ⓒ Warning area	Coolant temperature too high. **Do not drive on!** Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Switch off the engine and allow it to cool down until the needle returns to the normal zone. Checking the coolant level → page 359.
	Ⓑ Normal area	Coolant level too low. After the engine has cooled down, check the engine coolant level and refill if the level is too low → page 359. If the coolant level is adequate, the problem lies in a fault in the engine coolant system.
	-	Fault in the engine cooling system. **Do not drive on!** Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Seek expert assistance.
-	Ⓐ Cold area	The engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine revs and heavy engine loads until the engine is warm.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly in the instrument cluster as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

Service interval display



Fig. 64 In the instrument cluster display: example instrument cluster display showing that a service is due.

Scanned by CamScanner

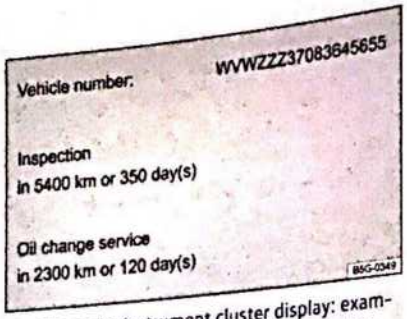


Fig. 65 In the instrument cluster display: example service information display on the Infotainment system

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 54.

The service displays are shown on the instrument cluster → Fig. 64 and in the infotainment system → Fig. 65.

Versions and displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster and of the infotainment system are available.

Service schedules at Volkswagen are divided into two categories, oil change service and inspections. The service interval display provides information on the next service which includes an oil change and on the next scheduled inspection. Scheduled services can also be found in the service schedule.

In vehicles with **fixed oil change service**, services take place at predefined intervals.

The service intervals are calculated on an individual basis in vehicles with **flexible oil change service**. Advances in technology have brought about a considerable reduction in servicing requirements. An oil change service must only be carried out when required by the vehicle. The individual conditions in which the vehicle is used, as the driver's personal driving style, are taken into account. The service reminder is displayed 30 days before the service is due. The distance is rounded to the nearest 100 km; the remaining time is rounded to full days.

Service alert

If an oil change service or inspection is due soon, a service alert will appear the next time the ignition is switched on.

The number of kilometres or amount of time shown correspond to the maximum number of kilometres or maximum time that can still be driven before the next service.

Service

For a **scheduled oil change** or a **scheduled inspection** a signal tone will be given when the ignition is switched on and the spanner symbol will be displayed for several seconds on the instrument cluster display. One of the following displays will also appear → Fig. 64:

Inspection now!
Oil service now!
Oil service and inspection now!

Accessing service schedules

You can access the current service schedule when the ignition is switched on, the engine is not running, and the vehicle is stationary:

- Press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 55 or → page 55 until the word **Service** appears in the display.
- Release the button 0.0. The current service message will be shown in the display.

Service information → Fig. 65 can also be displayed in the Infotainment system by pressing the CAR button and the ⚙ and Service function buttons → page 78.

Resetting the service interval display

If the oil change service or the inspection was not performed by a Volkswagen workshop, the display can be reset as follows:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the 0.0 button in the instrument cluster → page 55 or → page 55.
- Restart the ignition.
- Release the 0.0 button if one of the following messages appears on the instrument cluster display:

Reset oil change service?
Reset inspection service?

- Press the 0.0 button on the instrument cluster → page 55 or → page 55 to confirm.

If the oil change service has been reset manually, the service interval display switches to fixed service intervals, even in vehicles with **flexible oil change service**.

The service message will disappear after a few seconds when the engine is running, or when the OK/RESET button on the windscreen wiper lever or the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel is pressed → page 73.

If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods in vehicles with flexible service, the system cannot calculate the time at which the next service is due. The information shown in the service interval display may therefore be incorrect. If this is the case, please observe the maximum permissible service intervals listed in the → Booklet *Service Schedule*.

Operating the instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Operation with the wiper lever 73
- Operation using the multifunction steering wheel 74
- Button for driver assist systems 74

Some menu items can be accessed only when the vehicle is stationary.

The buttons in the windscreen wiper lever → page 74 are not fitted in vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel → page 73.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never open the menus on the instrument cluster display while the vehicle is in motion.

Operation with the wiper lever

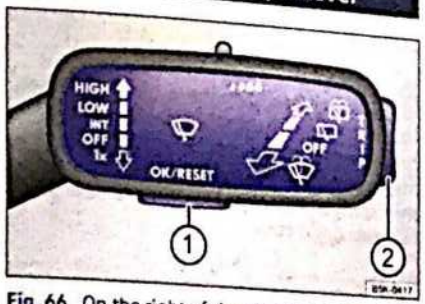


Fig. 66 On the right of the steering column: buttons on the wiper lever (in vehicles without multifunction steering wheel).

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 73.

If any priority 1 → page 54 warning messages are displayed, you will be unable to open any menus. Some warnings can be confirmed and hidden using the button → Fig. 66 ①.

Selecting the menu or Infotainment system display

- Switch on the ignition.
- Personalisation: select user.
- If a message or vehicle pictogram is displayed, press the button → Fig. 66 ① on the wiper lever, several times if required.
- Press and hold the rocker switch → Fig. 66 ② to display the menus → page 60 or to return to menu selection from a menu or an information display.
- Press the rocker switch up or down to browse through the menus.
- To open the displayed menu or information display, press the button → Fig. 66 ① on the wiper lever or wait until the menu or information display opens automatically after a few seconds.

Changing settings in menus

- Press the rocker switch → Fig. 66 ② up or down in the displayed menu until the required menu item is selected. A frame appears around the selected option.
- Press the button → Fig. 66 ① to make the required change. A "tick" indicates that the particular system or function is active.

Scanned by CamScanner

Returning to menu selection

In the menu, select the **Back** menu option to exit the menu.

If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified.

Operation using the multifunction steering wheel

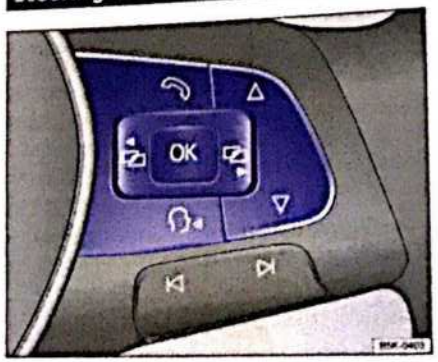


Fig. 67 Right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: controls for using the menus and information displays in the instrument cluster.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 73.

If any priority 1 → page 54 warning messages are displayed, you will be unable to open any menus. Some warnings can be confirmed and hidden using the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 67.

Selecting the menu or Infotainment system display

- Switch on the ignition.
- Personalisation: select user.
- If a message or the vehicle pictogram is displayed, press the OK button → Fig. 67, several times if required.
- Press the ⊟ or ⊡ button to display a menu or browse through a menu → Fig. 67.
- To open the displayed menu or information display, press the OK button → Fig. 67 or wait until the menu or information display opens automatically after a few seconds.

Changing settings in menus

- Press the arrow buttons △ or ▽ → Fig. 67 in the displayed menu until the required menu item is selected. A frame appears around the selected option.
- Press the OK button → Fig. 67 to make the required change. A "tick" indicates that the particular system or function is active.

Returning to menu selection

Press the ⊟ or ⊡ button → Fig. 67.

If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified.

Button for driver assist systems

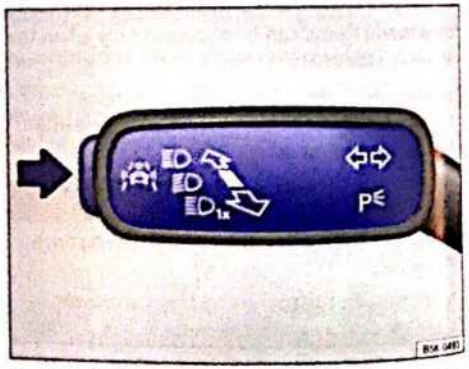


Fig. 68 On the turn signal and main beam lever on the left of the steering column: button for driver assist systems.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 73.

You can switch the driver assist systems listed in the **Assist systems** menu → page 54 on and off using the button on the turn signal and main beam lever.

Switching individual driver assist systems on and off

- Press the button → Fig. 68 in the direction of the arrow to open the **Assist systems** menu.
- Select the driver assist system and switch it on or off → page 73. A "tick" indicates that a driver assist system is switched on.
- Mark and confirm your selection by pressing the OK/RESET button on the wiper lever, or by pressing the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Driver assist systems can also be switched on and off in the Infotainment system by pressing the CAR button and the ⚙ and Driver assistance function buttons → page 78.

The button for the driver assist systems may also be installed in vehicles that are not equipped with compatible driver assist systems. In these cases, the button will not work.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

The warning and indicator lamps indicate various warnings → ▲, faults → ⓘ or certain functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out once the engine is running or the vehicle is in motion.

In addition, text notifications may be shown on the instrument cluster display to provide further information or to prompt you to carry out certain actions → page 54, *Instrument cluster*.

In some models, symbols may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of warning lamps.

Signal tones are given when some warning or indicator lamps light up.

For details on indicator lamps which light up in the light switch see Chapter "Lighting" → page 126.

Symbol	Meaning → ▲
	Central warning lamp. Observe the additional information on the instrument cluster display.
	Do not drive on! The electronic parking brake is switched on → page 232.
	Do not drive on! Brake fluid level too low → page 362 or fault in the brake system → page 231.
	Do not drive on! Coolant level too low → page 359, engine coolant temperature too high or fault in the cooling system → page 70.
	Do not drive on! Engine oil pressure too low → page 354.
	Flashing: **Do not drive on!** Fault in the electronic steering column lock → page 181.
	Lit up: electromechanical steering not functioning → page 181.
	The engine cannot be restarted! AdBlue® fill level is too low → page 314.
	The engine cannot be restarted! Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → page 314.
	Driver or front passenger seat belt not fastened → page 9. **OR:** there are objects on the front passenger seat → page 9.
	Brake or take avoiding action! Collision warning from area monitoring system (Front Assist) → page 212. **OR:** collision warning from Pedestrian Monitoring → page 217.
	Depress the brake pedal. → page 174, → page 202.
	Fault in the alternator → page 363.
	Water in fuel in vehicles with a diesel engine → page 309.
	Central warning lamp. Observe the additional information on the instrument cluster display.

Scanned by CamScanner

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	Brake pads worn. Go to a qualified workshop immediately. All brake pads should be checked and replaced as necessary → page 162.
	Lit up: ESC fault or switched off for system-related reasons → page 260. **OR:** together with ABS indicator lamp: ABS faulty → page 260. **OR:** the vehicle battery has been reconnected → page 260.
	Flashing: ESC/TCS is taking corrective action → page 260.
	TCS switched off manually → page 260. **OR:** ESC switched off manually → page 260. **OR:** ESC Sport switched on manually → page 260. **OR:** Offroad driving profile active (Alltrack) → page 183.
	ABS faulty or not functioning → page 260.
	Electronic parking brake fault → page 232.
	Rear fog light switched on → page 126.
	Partial or complete failure of the vehicle lighting[a], excluding cornering light → page 329.
	Lit up: there is a fault that affects the exhaust gas → page 317.
	Flashing: misfiring, which damages the catalytic converter → page 317.
	Lit up: diesel engine is preheating before starting → page 166.
	Flashing: fault in engine management system (diesel engine) → page 317.
EPC	Fault in engine management system (Electronic Power Control) → page 317.
	Engine speed limited (to guard against overheating)→ page 317.
	Diesel particulate filter has become saturated with soot → page 317.

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	Towing bracket ball head not locked → page 299.
	Lit up: electromechanical steering reduced or the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected → page 181.
	Flashing: steering column is twisted or is not unlocked/locked → page 181.
	Lit up: tyre pressure too low → page 369.
	Flashing: fault in tyre monitoring system → page 369.
	Fault in the rain/light sensor → page 136.
	Fault in wipers → page 136.
	Washer fluid level too low → page 136.
	Fuel tank almost empty → page 69.
	Lit up: engine oil level too low → page 354.
	Flashing: engine oil system fault → page 354.
	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system → page 19.
OFF	Airbag switched off (PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF) → page 19.
ON	Airbag switched on (PASSENGER AIRBAG ON) → page 19.
	AdBlue® level is low → page 314.
	Selective catalytic reduction system faulty or not refilled using norm-compliant AdBlue® → page 314.
	Tank cap not closed properly → page 309.
	Lane Assist switched on but not active → page 221.
	ACC currently not available → page 202.
	Fault in DSG® dual clutch gearbox: gearbox fault → page 174.
	Manual gearbox: high clutch temperature or clutch fault → page 172.

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	Area monitoring system (Front Assist) is deactivated → page 212. **OR:** Pedestrian Monitoring deactivated → page 217.
	Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC) → page 183.
	Turn signal, left or right → page 126.
	Hazard warning lights switched on → page 37.
	Trailer turn signal → page 126.
	Lit up: depress the brake pedal. → page 166, → page 174, → page 232.
	Flashing: the lock button on the selector lever is not engaged → page 174.
	The vehicle is being held by the Auto Hold function → page 232.
	Lit up: cruise control system active → page 194.
	Lit up: Adaptive Cruise Control active → page 202.
	Lit up: the speed limiter is switched on and active → page 198.
	Flashing: the set speed of the speed limiter has been exceeded → page 198.
	Lane Assist is switched on and active → page 221.
	The main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated → page 126.
	Manual gearbox: clutch is not transmitting the full engine torque → page 172.
	AdBlue® level is low → page 314.
	When displayed in white: Hill Descent Control active (Alltrack) → page 187.
	When displayed in grey: Hill Descent Control not active. System switched on, but not regulating (Alltrack) → page 187.

Symbol	Meaning → ⚠
	When displayed in white: Offroad driving profile active (Alltrack) → page 183.
	When displayed in grey: Offroad driving profile not active. System switched on, but not regulating (Alltrack) → page 183.
	ACC is active. No vehicle has been detected ahead → page 202.
	When displayed in white: ACC active. Vehicle detected ahead → page 202.
	When displayed in grey: ACC not active. System switched on, but not regulating → page 202.
	Main beam control (Light Assist) or dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist) is active → page 126.
	Service alert / service due → page 71.
	Mobile telephone battery charge level. Only for factory-fitted mobile phone interface → Booklet *Infotainment system.*
	The outside temperature is below +4°C (+39°F) → page 54.
	The start/stop system is available, automatic engine stop is active → page 171.
	The start/stop system is not available. **OR:** the start/stop system has switched on the engine automatically → page 171.
eco	Economical mode → page 58.
	Note about information in the vehicle wallet.

a) A separate display appears in the instrument cluster if there is a dynamic cornering light fault.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

Scanned by CamScanner

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and ensure that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass or fuel.
- Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.
- Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down sufficiently.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here → page 350.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamp ☼ lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the brake pads checked or any worn brake pads replaced.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Operation and display in the Infotainment system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Vehicle settings menu (CAR button) 79
- Performance monitor 83
- Lap timer 85
- Personalisation 87

The Infotainment system brings together key vehicle systems in a central operating unit, e.g. menu settings, radio or navigation system.

General information on operating the unit

The following section contains information on the settings that can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu. Basic information on operating the Infotainment system and on warning and safety instructions are contained in a separate manual → Booklet *Infotainment system*.

Systems settings and display of vehicle information

Press the infotainment button CAR then touch function buttons to show information or make settings. For example, touching the ↩ function button in the **Vehicle status** menu queries the current status of the systems and displays system faults.

- Vehicle settings (setup) → page 79.
- Think Blue. Trainer. → page 161
- Performance monitor → page 83.
- Lap timer → page 85.
- Off-road display → page 188.
- Auxiliary heater settings → page 154.
- Active media.
- Driving data.
- Vehicle status.
- Convenience consumers.
- Radio station selection.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

When starting the engine after the vehicle battery has discharged, or after the battery has been changed, system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) and user accounts may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

Vehicle settings menu (CAR button)

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 78.

Opening the Vehicle settings menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the infotainment system.
- Press the CAR infotainment button.
- Touch the ⚙ function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
- Touch the corresponding function button to open additional menus in the **Vehicle settings** menu, or to adjust settings in the menu points.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked ☑, the respective function is switched on.

Touching the ↩ function button takes you back to the previous menu.

Menu overview

The following menu overview is an example of the infotainment system menu structure. The size and layout of the Volkswagen information system menu depends on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

Menu	Submenu	Settings options	Further information
ESC system	–	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: – Traction control system (TCS), – Electronic Stability Control (ESC), – Electronic stabilisation program sport mode (ESC Sport).	→ page 260
Tyre settings	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System	Select load level: – Standard – Convenience – Full load	→ page 369
	Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator	Store the tyre pressures SET.	
	Winter tyres	Activation or deactivation of the speed warning. Setting the speed warning value.	→ page 369

Scanned by CamScanner

Menu	Submenu	Settings options	Further information
Driver assist settings	ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)	Activation or deactivation of the last selected distance. The following functions can be set: - Gearbox programme, - Active distance setting (measured time interval to the vehicle ahead) when the ACC is switched on.	→ page 202
	Front Assist (area monitoring system)	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Area monitoring system, - Advance warning, - Distance warning display.	→ page 212
	Pedestrian monitoring	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Pedestrian Monitoring, - Advance warning.	→ page 217
	Lane Assist (lane departure warning system)	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Lane departure warning system, - Adaptive lane guidance.	→ page 221
	Side Assist (lane change assist system)	Activation and deactivation of the lane change assist system (Side Assist). Setting the brightness of the display in the exterior mirror.	→ page 226
	Dynamic Road Sign Display	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Show detected traffic signs in the driving data display (multifunction display). -Trailer recognition (display of traffic signs for vehicles with a trailer). - Activation and deactivation of the speed warning.	→ page 64
	Driver Alert System	Activation or deactivation of the Driver Alert System.	→ page 63
	Proactive occupant protection	Activation and deactivation of the proactive occupant protection system.	→ page 9
Parking/manoeuvring settings	ParkPilot	Activation and deactivation of ParkPilot. Activation or deactivation of automatic activation of the ParkPilot. The following functions can be set: - Front and rear volume, - Front and rear tone, - Reduced audio volume.	→ page 235
	Rear Traffic Alert	Activation and deactivation of Rear Traffic Alert.	→ page 226

Menu	Submenu	Settings options	Further information
Light settings	Light Assist	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Dynamic Light Assist, - Dynamic cornering light, - Automatic dipped headlights (when raining), - Lane change flash. The following functions can be set: - Travel mode (right-hand or left-hand drive).	→ page 126
	Interior lighting	The following functions can be set: - Instrument and switch lighting, - Footwell lighting.	
	Coming Home/ Leaving Home function	The following functions can be set: - Duration that the Coming Home function is switched on, - Duration that the Leaving Home function is switched on,	
Background lighting	-	The following functions can be set, depending on the vehicle equipment: - Overall brightness of the background lighting - Brightness of individual areas of the background lighting - Colour of certain areas of the background lighting.	→ page 126
Mirror and wiper settings	Mirrors	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Synchronous setting of the exterior mirrors, - Mirror lowering function in reverse gear, - Folding in when parked.	→ page 139
	Wipers	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: - Automatic wipe function when it is raining, - Rear window wiping in reverse gear (Estate).	→ page 136

Scanned by CamScanner

Menu	Submenu	Settings options	Further information
Settings for opening/closing	Window operation	Activation and deactivation of the convenience opening function for the windows.	→ page 110
	Central locking system	Setting door unlocking. Activation or deactivation of automatic locking. Activation and deactivation of the Easy Open function.	→ page 91
	Luggage compartment cover	Activation or deactivation of the automatic opening of the luggage compartment cover (Estate).	→ page 280
Instrument cluster settings	Multifunction display	The following displays can be activated or deactivated: - Current fuel consumption, - Average fuel consumption, - Top-up volume, - Convenience consumers, - Eco tips, - Travel time, - Distance, - Average speed, - Digital speed display, - Speed warning function, - Oil temperature, - Dynamic Road Sign Display. The following data can be reset: - Driving data "since start", - Driving data "long-term".	→ page 54
Head-up Display settings	Display	The following functions can be set: - Brightness, - Colour scheme.	→ page 54
	Contents	The following displays can be activated or deactivated: - Cruise control system, - ACC, - Dynamic Road Sign Display, - Route guidance, - Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist).	
Time and date setup	-	The following functions can be set: - Clock time source (manual, GPS), - Time, - Set summer time automatically, - Time zone, - Time format (12h, 24h), - Date, - Date format.	-
Units setup	-	The following functions can be set: - Distance, - Speed, - Temperature, - Volumes, - Consumption, - Pressure.	-
Service	-	The following data are displayed: - Vehicle identification number, - Date of next inspection, - Date of next oil change service.	→ page 54
Factory settings	-	The following settings can be reset: - All settings, - Driver assistance, - Parking/manoeuvring, - Lights, - Mirror and wipers, - Opening/closing, - Multifunction display (driving data).	-

Performance monitor

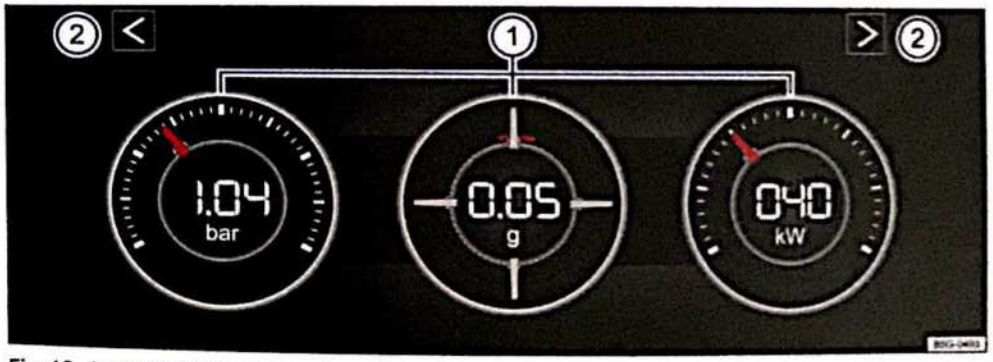


Fig. 69 In the Infotainment system: performance monitor.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 78.

The performance monitor is a display for sporty driving. The digital instruments display real-time values for engine power, temperature and acceleration that are determined by sensors on the vehicle. This provides the driver with an overview of driving dynamics.

Key for Fig. 69:

① Display areas.

② Arrow buttons for changing to the lap timer.

Opening the performance monitor

– Press the CAR button on the Infotainment system.

– Touch the **Selection** function button.

– Touch the **Sport** function button.

Scanned by CamScanner

– **OR:** press and hold the MENU button on the Infotainment system.
– Touch the **Vehicle** function button.
– Touch the **Selection** function button.
– Touch the **Sport** function button.
– **OR:** press the CAR button on the Infotainment system repeatedly until the performance monitor is displayed.

If you would like to switch between the performance monitor and the lap timer → page 85, touch one of the arrow buttons on the left and right above the instruments → Fig. 69 ②.

Selecting instruments and setting units

The display can show a maximum of three instruments at the same time. Each instrument can be selected for each display area → Fig. 69 ① (left, middle, right).

To change instruments, swipe vertically over the display. The currently selected instrument will then disappear and a new instrument will appear.

The units can be set for some instruments in the Infotainment system → page 78.

The following instruments can be displayed:

– **Charge pressure display:** the charge pressure display → Fig. 69 ① (left) shows the pressure in the charge air system between the turbocharger and engine (in the unit "bar"). The further to the right the needle on the scale, the higher the engine power output.
– **Accelerometer (G-meter):** The accelerometer (G-meter) → Fig. 69 ① (centre) shows the acceleration value in the centre (in the unit "g"). The red marking in the grid-type area shows the acceleration level and the direction of the acting force (in the opposite direction according to physical laws). If you drive to the left, for example, the red marking will move in the right area of the instrument (and vice versa). The red marking moves down when you accelerate and moves up when you brake. The level of acceleration is indicated by the position of the red marking which moves outwards. If the acceleration increases, the red marking will move away from the centre area.
– **Power display:** the power display → Fig. 69 ① (right) shows the current engine power output as a digital value and on the surrounding scale (in kW).
– **Engine coolant temperature display:** the display corresponds to the temperature display on the instrument cluster → page 70. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is lit up or flashing → page 359.
– **Oil temperature display:** the needle is in the middle area under normal driving conditions. If the needle is in the bottom left area, this means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid excessively high speeds and acceleration when the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is lit up or flashing → page 354.

Adapting the display areas to the driving situation

Choose the three possible instruments corresponding to your individual driving style and the driving situation.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

NOTICE

When starting from cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine.

Due to the performance assessment principle used in the vehicle, the displayed values will not necessarily be physically accurate.

Lap timer

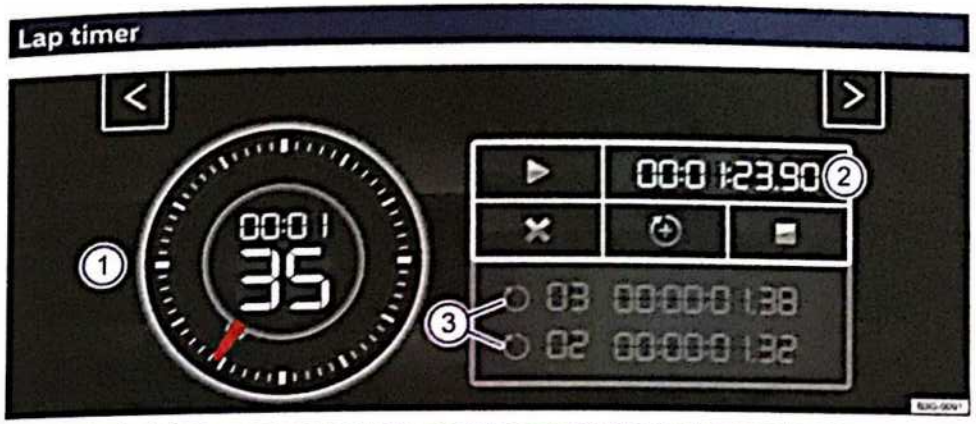


Fig. 70 In the Infotainment system: lap timer with stopwatch, function button and lap times.

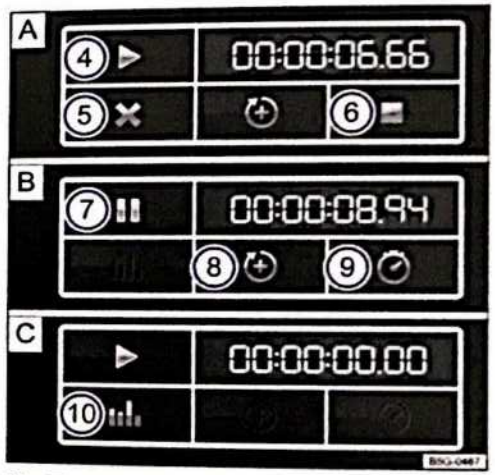


Fig. 71 Function button in the Infotainment system: time measurement for A paused, B current and C completed lap.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 78.

The lap timer provides you with the option of timing your own laps manually in the vehicle on a race track, storing the times and comparing them with previously measured best times.

Key to → Fig. 70 and → Fig. 71:
① Stopwatch
② Function button with current lap time
③ Stored lap times
④ Start or continue time measurement
⑤ Cancel current lap
⑥ End time measurement
⑦ Pause time measurement
⑧ Start new lap
⑨ Display intermediate time
⑩ Display statistics

Opening the lap timer

To access the lap timer, you must first open the performance monitor → page 83:

– Press the CAR button on the Infotainment system.
– Touch the **Selection** function button.
– Touch the **Sport** function button to call up the performance monitor.
– Touch one of the arrow buttons → Fig. 69 ② in the performance monitor to change to the lap timer.
– **OR:** press and hold the MENU button on the Infotainment system.
– Touch the **Vehicle** function button.
– Touch the **Selection** function button.
– Touch the **Sport** function button to call up the performance monitor.
– Touch one of the arrow buttons → Fig. 69 ② in the performance monitor to change to the lap timer.

Scanned by CamScanner

– OR: press the CAR button on the Infotainment system repeatedly until the performance monitor is displayed.
– Touch one of the arrow buttons → Fig. 69 ② in the performance monitor to change to the lap timer.

You can change between the lap timer and performance monitor at any time using the arrow buttons → Fig. 69 ② and → Fig. 70.

Measuring lap times

The stopwatch measures the lap time in two areas:

Function	Operation
Start or continue time measurement	Touch the function button to start or continue ▶ → Fig. 71 A ④.
	Time measurement is not possible when the ignition is switched off. A message is shown on the display.
	Press **Start** to start time measurement. Time measurement starts as soon as the vehicle moves forwards.
	A new lap can be started only after the statistics data has been reset.
End time measurement	Touch the function button to end measurement ■ → Fig. 71 A ⑥.
Pause time measurement	Touch the function button to pause measurement ❚❚ → Fig. 71 B ⑦.
Start new lap	Touch the function button to add a new lap → Fig. 71 B ⑧. The last lap time is stored and a new lap starts. The overall time of the laps driven is shown in the statistics.
Cancel current lap	Touch the function button to cancel the current lap → Fig. 71 A ⑤.
	During a running time measurement, touch the function button to pause measurement ❚❚ B ⑦. Time measurement is cancelled and the lap time is deleted. --: --:--.-- is displayed in the statistics.
Display intermediate time	Touch the function button for the intermediate time ① → Fig. 71 B ⑨. The stopwatch → Fig. 70 ① stops for a few seconds and the intermediate time is displayed.
Display statistics	After ending or cancelling time measurement, touch the function button for the statistics → Fig. 71 C ⑩. The statistics show the number of laps, the overall time, the fastest and slowest laps, the average value of all lap times and all lap values.
	Touch the ↩ function button to go back to the previous menu.
Reset data in the statistics	Touch the function button for statistics → Fig. 71 C ⑩. Delete the data by touching the **Reset** function button.

A maximum of 99 laps and a maximum time of 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds can be recorded. If one of these limits has been reached, the data in the statistics must be deleted before a further time measurement.

The red needle and the numerical value in the centre show the running time in seconds. The smaller display in the inner area shows minutes and hours.

The display on the right side shows the current lap time with an accuracy of 1/100 seconds. There is no difference between the stopwatch and lap times if there are not yet any laps with intermediate times stored in the lap timer.

⚠ WARNING

Avoid operating the lap timer when the vehicle is in motion if possible.

- Preset lap timer settings and access statistics only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When the vehicle is in motion, use the lap timer only in driving situations which are easy to control. ◁

Personalisation

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 78.

Using personalisation, you can save your own vehicle settings, such as air conditioning system, instrument cluster or lighting settings, in a user account. You have four user accounts available. Users are identified using the vehicle key upon unlocking the vehicle. One user account is assigned to each vehicle key.

Changes to the setup will be assigned to the active user account and saved upon locking the vehicle or changing the user account.

Welcome and user account selection

When personalisation is activated, the name of the current user account appears on the instrument cluster display for approximately 10 seconds after you switch on the ignition.

During this time, you can select a user account using the buttons on the wiper lever or multifunction steering wheel → page 73.

When you select a user account, the saved vehicle settings are activated.

User management and setup

When the ignition is switched on you can use the **Personalisation** menu in the Infotainment system for user management and setup. Please proceed as follows to access the menu:

– Press the CAR infotainment button.
– Press the ⚙ function button and touch **Personalisation**.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked ☑, the respective function is switched on.

Menu	Submenu	Setup
Personalisation	**Active**	Switch personalisation on and off
Driver selection	**Driver 1** **Driver 2** **Driver 3** **Driver Guest**	– Select a user account. – Rename a user account (except **Driver Guest** user account). – Copy the setup of the current user account into another user account. – Reset the user account selected to the default setup. The user name will not be changed and it will still be assigned to the same vehicle key.
Settings	**Key assignment**	**Manually** A vehicle key has been permanently assigned to a particular user account. **Automatically** The vehicle key is automatically assigned to the new, selected user account.
	Assign key to current user account	Assign a vehicle key to a user account.
	Reset all	Reset the setups of all user accounts, user account names and all vehicle key assignments to default. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Switching user account

Select a user account in the **Personalisation** menu or in the **Vehicle status** menu.

- Press the CAR infotainment button.
- Touch the function button and select the desired user account.

Manually assigning vehicle keys to user accounts

You can assign a vehicle key to the currently active user account. For this purpose, select **Manual** key assignment.

- Touch the Settings function button.
- Select **Personalisation**
- Touch the Assign key to current user account function button.
- Press the button on the vehicle key within five seconds → page 89.

Automatically assigning vehicle keys to user accounts

If you have selected **Automatic** key assignment, the following vehicle key is assigned to the user account upon changing the user account:

- *Vehicles without Keyless Access:* vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.
- *Vehicles with Keyless Access:* vehicle key that is identified first by the personalisation function upon opening the driver door.

Personalised vehicle setup

Vehicle equipment including the following can be personalised:

- Open and close (single door unlocking, window convenience opening etc.)
- Light and vision (daytime running lights, cornering light, lane change flash etc.)
- Air conditioning system (temperature settings, ventilation etc.)
- Assistance systems (ParkPilot, ACC, Dynamic Road Sign Display etc.)
- Driver profile selection (driver profiles etc.)
- Multi-function display and instrument cluster (selection of displays)
- Infotainment system (brightness and saved stations)
- Seat setup (seat position)

A new vehicle key will be assigned to the current user account. To assign the vehicle key to a different user account, select the user account you want and manually assign it to the vehicle key.

Open and close

Vehicle key set

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Vehicle key 89
- Spare key 90
- Replacing the button cell 91

DANGER

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm, or other button cells, can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- Always keep the vehicle key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of the reach of children.
- Call for medical help immediately you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Otherwise, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.

Vehicle key

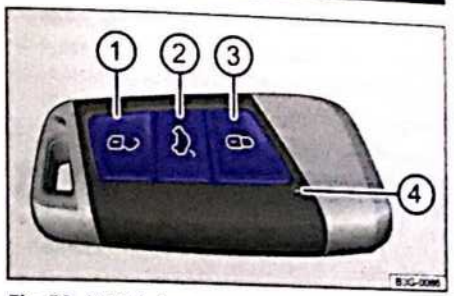


Fig. 72 Vehicle key.

Please refer to ⚠ and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 89.

Key to Fig. 72:

1. Central locking button: unlock the vehicle.
2. Unlock the boot lid.
3. Central locking button: lock the vehicle.
4. Indicator lamp.

Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

The indicator lamp on the vehicle key flashes when you press a button. If it does not light up, the button cell (battery) in the vehicle key needs to be changed → page 91.

Buttons on the vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance → page 91.

If the vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked using the vehicle key → Fig. 72, the vehicle key will have to be re-synchronised or the button cell (battery) in the vehicle key replaced → page 91.

Synchronising the vehicle key

It may no longer be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle with the remote control if the button is pressed repeatedly outside of the effective range of the vehicle key. If this is the case, the vehicle key should be re-synchronised as follows:

- Stand directly beside the vehicle.
- Press the button on the vehicle key twice in quick succession.

OR:

Scanned by CamScanner

– Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → page 90.
– Remove the cover of the door handle in the driver door → page 99.
– Stand directly beside the vehicle.
– Press the button on the vehicle key.
– Unlock the vehicle with the spare key within one minute.
– Replace the spare key in the vehicle key.
– Replace the door handle cover on the lock cylinder.

Replacement key

You will need to quote the vehicle identification number when ordering a vehicle key.

Several vehicle keys can be activated for use with one vehicle.

You can obtain new vehicle keys at your nearest Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop.

NOTICE

Every vehicle key contains electronic components. Protect the key from damage, moisture and excessive vibration.

Press the buttons on the key only if the corresponding function is actually needed. Pressing a button when the function is not required could lead to the vehicle being unlocked unintentionally or the alarm going off. This also applies even when you are not within the effective range.

The function of the vehicle key can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. a two-way radio or mobile telephone).

Obstacles between the vehicle key and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weak button cell reduce the range of the vehicle key.

If the buttons on the vehicle key → Fig. 72 or one of the central locking buttons → page 91 are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle will then be unlocked. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

Spare key

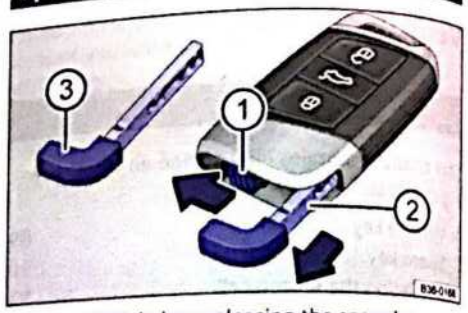


Fig. 73 Vehicle key: releasing the spare key.

Please refer to ⚠ and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 89.

Key to Fig. 73:

① Slide the catch in the direction of the arrow.
② Pull the spare key out in the direction of the arrow.
③ Lock or unlock the vehicle with the spare key.

A spare key is located in the vehicle key → Fig. 73 ③. It can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle manually.

The spare key can be used to perform the following functions:

– Switching the front passenger front airbag on or off manually using the key-operated switch → page 19.
– Locking and unlocking the stowage compartment on the front passenger side → page 265.
– Manually locking and unlocking the vehicle → page 102.

Replacing the button cell

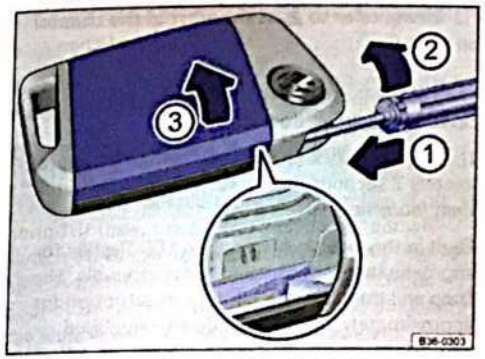


Fig. 74 Vehicle key: opening the battery compartment cover.

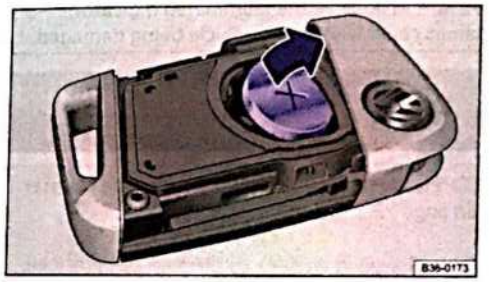


Fig. 75 Vehicle key: replacing the button cell.

Please refer to ⚠ and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 89.

Volkswagen recommends having the button cell replaced at a Volkswagen dealership or by a qualified workshop → ⓘ.

Changing the button cell (battery)

– Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → page 90.
– Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into the outer slot of the spare key on the vehicle key by approximately 1 cm in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 74 ①.
– Turn the flat-blade screwdriver clockwise until the cover opens → Fig. 74 ②.
– Slide the battery compartment cover in the direction of the arrow and remove → Fig. 74 ③.
– Using a suitable thin object, lever the button cell out of the battery compartment → Fig. 75.
– Insert the new button cell into the battery compartment in the opposite direction to the arrow → Fig. 75.
– Press the battery compartment cover onto the vehicle key housing in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place → Fig. 74.
– Replace the spare key in the vehicle key.

NOTICE

- The vehicle key can be damaged if the battery is not changed properly.
- Unsuitable batteries can damage the vehicle key. Replace discharged batteries only with new batteries of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Make sure the polarity is correct when inserting the battery.

Dispose of discharged batteries in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.

Central locking system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Indicator lamp 92
– Central locking 92
– Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside 93
– Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 94
– Locking and unlocking vehicle with keyless access 94
– SAFELOCK 96
– Anti-theft alarm 97
– Interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm 98
– Locking the vehicle after the airbag has been triggered 99

The central locking system enables you to lock or unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap from one point.

Scanned by CamScanner

The central locking system will only function when all doors and the boot lid are fully closed. The vehicle *cannot* be locked if the driver door is open.

In vehicles with the keyless access locking and starting system, the vehicle can be locked *only* once the ignition has been switched off, **OR** the driver has switched off the engine before leaving the vehicle.

Leaving an unlocked vehicle stationary for long periods can discharge the vehicle battery and prevent the engine from starting.

Automatic locking (theft protection)

If the vehicle is unlocked but not opened, it will lock again automatically after approximately 45 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the central locking system could lead to serious injury.

- The central locking system locks all doors. Locking the vehicle from the inside may prevent the doors from being opened unintentionally and unauthorised third parties from entering the vehicle. However, locked doors can delay assistance to passengers inside the vehicle in the event of an accident or emergency.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.
- Never leave anyone inside a locked vehicle. People in the vehicle could become trapped in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Doors and the boot lid should therefore only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87. ◁

Indicator lamp

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

The central locking system indicator lamp is located in the driver door → page 48.

The vehicle is locked: red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds, firstly at short intervals and then more slowly.

Fault in the locking system: red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds at short intervals. The lamp will then light up without interruption for approximately 30 seconds. Go to a qualified workshop.

! NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged. ◁

Central locking

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

Central locking enables you to lock or unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap from a single point.

The doors → page 101 and the boot lid → page 109 can be locked or unlocked manually if the vehicle key or central locking fails.

Certain central locking functions can be activated or deactivated using the CAR Infotainment button and the and Open and close function buttons → page 78.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle can lock itself automatically at speeds of approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) and above → page 78. The indicator lamp in the central locking button will light up yellow when the vehicle is locked → Fig. 77.

Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)

If one of the following conditions applies, all vehicle doors and the boot lid will be automatically unlocked → page 78:

- The vehicle is stopped and a door is opened from the inside.
- In an accident, when airbags have triggered → page 99.

Automatic unlocking gives emergency response crew access to the vehicle.

If the buttons on the vehicle key → Fig. 72 or one of the central locking buttons → Fig. 77 are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked for a few seconds. If no door or the boot lid are opened during this time the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The entire vehicle will be unlocked if the sensor is touched twice, even if a single door has already been unlocked. ◁

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside

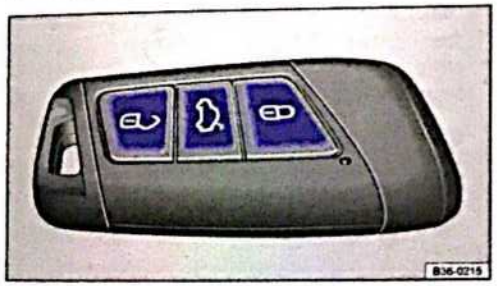


Fig. 76 Vehicle key: central locking.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

- *To unlock:* press the button. Press and hold for convenience opening.
- *To lock:* press the button. Press and hold for convenience closing.
- Applies to vehicles with keyless access locking and starting system: touch the sensors → page 94. Individual doors or the entire vehicle are unlocked.
- Press the button → page 102. The boot lid is released.

In vehicles with SAFELOCK, press the *once* to lock the vehicle using SAFELOCK → page 96. Press the button *twice* to lock the vehicle without SAFELOCK.

Please note: depending on the central locking function that has been set in the Infotainment system → page 78, all of the doors and the boot lid may be unlocked only when the button is pressed *twice*.

- When the vehicle is locked, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.
- When unlocking the vehicle, all turn signals will flash *twice* as confirmation.

If the turn signals do *not* flash to confirm locking the vehicle:

- at least one of the doors or the boot lid is not closed.
- **OR:** not all windows and the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof are closed.

The vehicle cannot be locked if the driver door is still open.

Convenience opening and closing

- See Windows – Functions → page 110.
- See Glass roof – Functions → page 112.

Depending on the mirror function set in the Infotainment system, the exterior mirrors fold out when the vehicle is unlocked using the button and surround lighting is switched on → page 139.

The entire vehicle will be unlocked if the sensor is touched twice, even if a single door has already been unlocked. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside

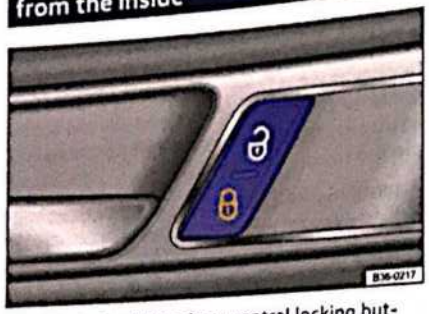


Fig. 77 In the driver door: central locking button.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

- : unlock the vehicle.
- : lock the vehicle.

The central locking button works only when the driver door is closed.

The central locking buttons do not work if the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock the vehicle from the inside:

- The indicator lamp in the → Fig. 77 button lights up yellow when all doors are closed and locked.
- The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated.
- It is not possible to open the doors and the boot lid from the *outside*.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle. The indicator lamp in the button goes out. The unopened doors and boot lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.

In vehicles with SAFELOCK: SAFELOCK is **not** activated → page 96.

In some cases, the vehicle automatically unlocks all doors and the boot lid → page 78 when:

- The button is pressed → Fig. 77.
- The vehicle comes to a standstill and the vehicle key is removed.
- One door is opened, depending on menu setting in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Locking and unlocking vehicle with keyless access

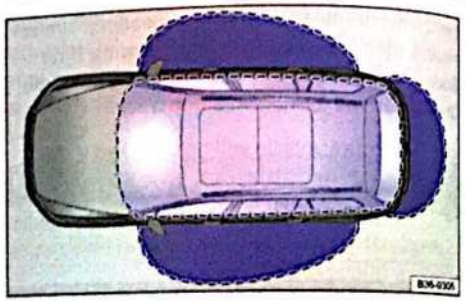


Fig. 78 Keyless Access locking and starting system: operating range.

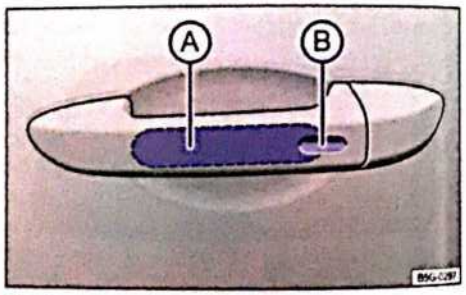


Fig. 79 Keyless Access locking and starting system: sensor Ⓐ for locking on the inside of the door handle and sensor Ⓑ for unlocking on the outside of the door handle.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

Keyless access is a locking and starting system that allows the vehicle to be locked or unlocked without actively using a key. There just needs to be a valid vehicle key within range of the vehicle → Fig. 78. The vehicle or the boot lid will be locked or unlocked → ⓘ when the sensors on the front door handles are touched → Fig. 79 or when the Volkswagen badge in the boot lid is activated → page 102.

General notes

If a valid vehicle key is within range → Fig. 78, the Keyless Access locking and starting system authorises the key to obtain access to the vehicle. The following functions can then be performed without active use of the vehicle key:

- Unlocking the vehicle using the sensors in the door handles → Fig. 79 Ⓐ or the Volkswagen badge in the boot lid → page 102.
- Locking the vehicle using the sensors in the door handles → Fig. 79 Ⓑ.
- *Press & Drive:* press the start button to start the engine → page 166. A valid vehicle key must be located in the vehicle interior.
- *Easy Open*: opens the boot lid based on a foot movement underneath the rear bumper → page 102.
- Applies to Estate: Easy Close: automatically closes the boot lid → page 102.

All the turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle is unlocked, and *once* to confirm that it is locked.

If the vehicle is locked and then the doors and boot lid are closed, but the most recently used vehicle key is located inside the vehicle, it will **not immediately** lock. All turn signals on the vehicle flash *four times*.

Unlocking and opening the doors

- Touch sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓐ.
- Open the door.

Closing and locking the doors

- Switch off the ignition.
- Close the door.
- Touch sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓑ on the outside *once*.

For vehicles with SAFELOCK: closing and locking doors

- Switch off the ignition.
- Close the door.
- *Locking with SAFELOCK:* touch the sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓑ on the outside of the door handle *once*.
- *Locking without SAFELOCK:* touch the sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓑ on the outside of the door handle *twice*.

Locking and unlocking the boot lid

If the vehicle is locked, the boot lid will be unlocked automatically when you open it using the handle button if a valid vehicle key is located within the operating range of the boot lid → Fig. 78.

The boot lid is locked automatically after it is closed. If the vehicle is completely unlocked, the boot lid will **not** lock automatically when closed.

Response when locking the vehicle with a second vehicle key

If the vehicle is locked from the outside with a second valid vehicle key, any key located inside the vehicle will be blocked and unable to start the engine → page 166. To allow the key to start the engine again, press the button on the vehicle key located in the vehicle → Fig. 76.

Automatic switch-off of the sensors

If the vehicle has not been locked or unlocked for a long period of time, the sensors on the door handles will switch off automatically.

If a sensor on the door handle is operated an unusually high number of times, the sensor will be briefly deactivated.

The following steps reactivate the sensors:

- Some time has passed.
- **OR:** the vehicle is unlocked using the button on the vehicle key.
- **OR:** the boot lid is opened.
- **OR:** unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key → page 101.

Convenience functions

To use convenience closing for all of the electric windows and for the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof, hold your finger on the sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓑ on the outside of the driver or front passenger door handle for a few seconds until the windows or the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof have closed.

Certain sensor functions can be adjusted using the CAR Infotainment button and the and Open and close function buttons → page 78. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

⚠ CAUTION

Once a valid vehicle key enters the operating range of the boot lid, the Easy Open function can sometimes be triggered and the boot lid can open unexpectedly, e.g. by sweeping underneath the rear bumper, if there is a powerful jet of water or steam, or when performing maintenance or repair work in the rear bumper area. If the boot lid is opened by mistake it can cause damage to persons in the path of the boot lid and material damage.

- Always ensure there are no valid vehicle keys left unattended in the operating range of the boot lid.
- Always switch off the sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open) via the Infotainment system before any maintenance and repair works.
- Always switch off the Easy Open function via the Infotainment system before washing the vehicle.
- Always switch off the sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open) via the Infotainment system before fitting a bicycle carrier or hitching a trailer → page 299.

NOTICE

The sensors in the door handles can be activated by a powerful jet of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is located within their operating range. If at least one window is open and sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓑ in a door handle is permanently activated, all windows close. It is possible that all windows will open if the jet of water or steam is moved away from the door handle sensor → Fig. 79 Ⓐ briefly and then moved back onto it → page 94, *Locking and unlocking vehicle with keyless access*.

It may not be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle using keyless access if the vehicle battery or the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged. The vehicle can be unlocked or locked manually using the spare key → page 102.

The unlock function is deactivated for a few seconds so that you can check that the vehicle has been locked properly.

If the message **Keyless fault** appears on the instrument cluster display, there may be a fault in the Keyless Access system. Go to a qualified workshop.

Depending on the mirror function set in the infotainment system, the exterior mirrors fold out when the vehicle is unlocked using the sensor on the door handle of the driver or front passenger door and the surround lighting is switched on → page 139.

If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a corresponding display will be shown on the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is obstructed by another radio signal or is covered by another item, e.g. a mobile telephone accessory or an aluminium suitcase → page 166.

The function of the sensors may be limited if they become very dirty.

If the vehicle has a DSG® dual clutch gearbox it can only be locked if the selector lever is in position **P**.

The entire vehicle will be unlocked if the sensor is touched twice, even if a single door has already been unlocked.

SAFELOCK

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have SAFELOCK and an anti-theft alarm → page 97.

SAFELOCK deactivates the door release levers if the vehicle has been locked. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside → ⚠.

Locking a vehicle with SAFELOCK

– Press the 🔒 button on the vehicle key *once* → page 93.

Locking a vehicle without SAFELOCK

– Press the 🔒 button on the vehicle key *twice* in quick succession → page 93.
– Applies to vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle *twice* in quick succession → page 94.
– Press the central locking button 🔒 in the driver door once → page 94.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the instrument cluster display may indicate that SAFELOCK is active (**SAFELOCK**).

Deactivating SAFELOCK

SAFELOCK can be deactivated in any of the following ways:

– Press the 🔓 button on the vehicle key *twice* → page 91.
– Applies to vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle *twice* → page 94.
– Switch on the ignition.

Before locking the vehicle, press the button for switching off the interior monitor and anti-tow alarm 🚘 once → page 98.

The following applies when SAFELOCK is deactivated:

– The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using the door release lever.
– The anti-theft alarm → page 97 is active.

The interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm → page 98 are deactivated.

The interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm → page 98 can be reactivated by pressing the 🚘 button again.

⚠ WARNING

Always take care when using the SAFELOCK as serious injuries may occur.

- Never leave anybody in the vehicle if the vehicle has been locked using the vehicle key. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside once the SAFELOCK is activated.
- Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency service personnel to gain access to the vehicle and provide assistance when needed. In an emergency, people locked inside the vehicle would not be able to leave the vehicle by unlocking the doors.

Anti-theft alarm

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

The anti-theft alarm is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The anti-theft alarm can sound an acoustic alarm for up to five minutes and trigger a visible warning if any of the following unauthorised actions are performed while the vehicle is locked:

– A door unlocked mechanically with the spare key is opened and the ignition is not switched on within approx. 15 seconds.
– A door is opened.
– The bonnet is opened.
– The boot lid is opened.
– The ignition is switched on using an invalid key.
– The vehicle battery is disconnected.
– There is movement inside the vehicle (in vehicles with interior monitoring) → page 98.
– The vehicle is towed (vehicles with anti-tow alarm) → page 98.
– The vehicle is lifted (vehicles with anti-tow alarm) → page 98.
– The vehicle is transported on a car ferry or by rail (vehicles with anti-tow alarm or interior monitoring) → page 98.
– A trailer that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed → page 299.

Switching off the alarm

– Unlock the vehicle using the unlock button 🔓 on the vehicle key.
– **OR** switch on the ignition using a valid vehicle key.
– In vehicles with Keyless Access, the alarm can be switched off by gripping the door handle → page 94.

The alarm will be triggered again if a person gains access to the same or a different secured zone after the alarm has been switched off.

The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated if the vehicle is locked from the inside using the central locking button 🔒.

Scanned by CamScanner

If you unlock the driver door mechanically using the spare key, only the driver door is unlocked, and not the whole vehicle. The doors are released (but not unlocked) and the central locking button is activated only when the ignition is switched on.

The anti-theft alarm will not function correctly if the vehicle battery is weak or discharged. ◁

Interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm

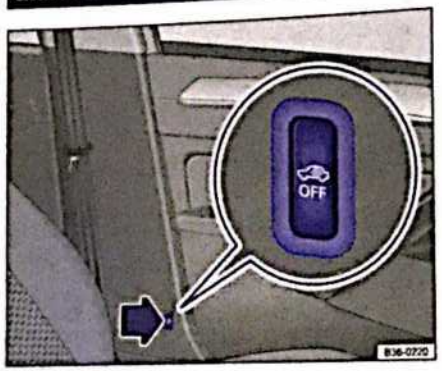


Fig. 80 Next to the driver seat: button for switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm.

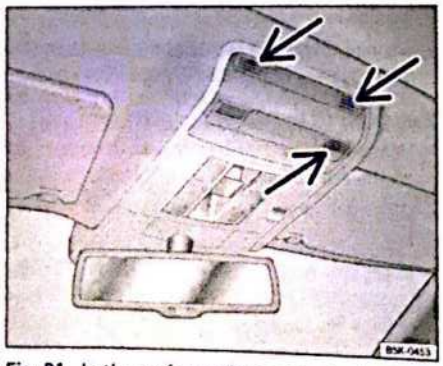


Fig. 81 In the roof console: sensors for the interior monitoring system (arrows).

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

The interior monitoring triggers an alarm if movement is detected in the interior of a locked vehicle → Fig. 81.

The anti-tow alarm will be triggered if the vehicle is lifted.

Switching on the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

Lock the vehicle. When the anti-theft alarm is switched on, the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm → Fig. 80 are also active.

OR: press the button → Fig. 80. A yellow indicator lamp in the button lights up.

Switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

- Switch off the ignition and open the driver door.
- Press the button → Fig. 80. A yellow indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- Close all doors and the boot lid.
- Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key. The interior monitoring system and anti-towing alarm are deactivated until the next time the vehicle is locked.

It is recommended that you deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If any people or animals are to remain inside the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is to be loaded onto another vehicle.
- If the vehicle is being transported.
- If the vehicle is going to be towed with one axle off the ground.
- If the vehicle is to be parked in a two-storey garage.
- If the vehicle is to be parked in a car wash.

When interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm have been deactivated by pressing the button → Fig. 80, these functions can be reactivated by pressing the button again. The yellow indicator lamp switches off.

Risk of false alarm

Interior monitoring can only work properly if the vehicle is completely closed. Comply with legal regulations. A false alarm can be triggered in any of the following situations:

- If one or more windows are fully or partly open.
- If the glass roof is fully or partly open.
- If lightweight items such as loose pieces of paper or items hung from the interior mirror are left in the vehicle.
- If a mobile telephone that is left in the vehicle vibrates.
- If the vehicle is being transported.
- If the vehicle is being parked in a two-storey garage.
- If the vehicle is in a car wash.

If doors or the boot lid are still open when the anti-theft alarm is activated, only the anti-theft alarm is activated. Interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm are not activated until all doors and the boot lid are closed.

The SAFELOCK is deactivated when the interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm are switched off → page 96. ◁

Locking the vehicle after the airbag has been triggered

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 92.

In the event of an accident in which an airbag is triggered, the locked doors will be unlocked automatically to allow rescue personnel access to the vehicle interior.

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are activated during an accident. Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle can be locked as follows after an accident.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open and close any door once.
- Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key → page 91.
- **OR:** press the central locking button in the driver door → page 91. ◁

Doors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Display 100
- Childproof lock 100
- Unlocking and locking the driver door manually 101
- Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually 102

If for example the vehicle key or central locking fails, the doors, boot lid and glass roof can be locked and, with some exceptions, unlocked manually.

WARNING

Any door that is not properly closed could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe injuries.

- Stop as soon as possible and close the door.
- Ensure that the door is properly closed and that the lock has engaged. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Doors should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.

WARNING

Any door being held open by the door arrester could close unexpectedly in strong winds or if the vehicle is on a slope. This could lead to injuries.

- Always keep a good grip on the handle when opening and closing doors.

WARNING

The opening/closing paths of the doors and boot lid are potential danger areas where injury can occur.

- The doors and boot lid must therefore only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their path.

WARNING

Careless manual opening and closing of the doors can cause serious injury. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and windows cannot be opened from the inside.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

NOTICE

When opening or closing the vehicle manually, remove parts carefully and fit them again correctly in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Display

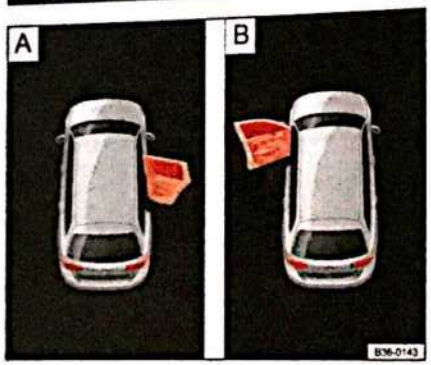


Fig. 82 On the instrument cluster display: A right rear door or B front left door open or not closed properly.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

A symbol in the instrument cluster display → Fig. 82 indicates if one or more doors are not closed properly. **Do not drive on!** Open the relevant door and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

WARNING

If the doors are not closed properly, they can open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to severe injuries.

- Stop as soon as possible and close all doors.
- After closing the doors, always check that they are all properly secured in the lock carrier.

The symbol can differ depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

Childproof lock

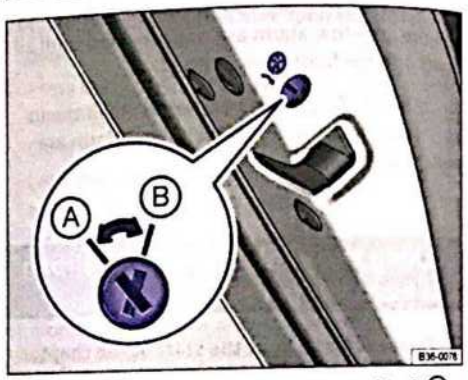


Fig. 83 In the left rear door: childproof lock Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on.

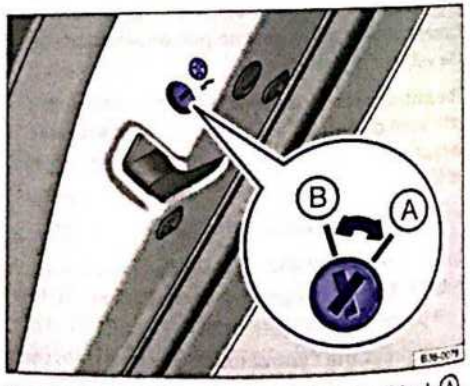


Fig. 84 In the right rear door: childproof lock Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

Key for Fig. 83 or Fig. 84:

Ⓐ Childproof lock is switched off.

Ⓑ Childproof lock is switched on.

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside, e.g. so that children cannot open the doors accidentally while the vehicle is in motion.

When the childproof lock is activated the door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the childproof lock on and off

- Unlock the vehicle and open the appropriate rear door.
- Use the spare key to turn the slot to the appropriate position.

WARNING

The door cannot be opened from the inside when the childproof lock is activated.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that these people lock themselves in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

Unlocking and locking the driver door manually

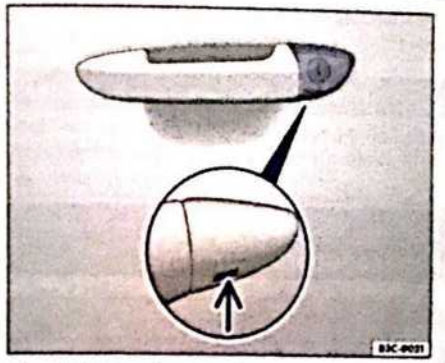


Fig. 85 Driver door handle: prising off the cover.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

If locked manually, all doors are locked. If unlocked manually, only the driver door is unlocked. Observe information on the anti-theft alarm → page 91.

- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → page 89.
- Insert the spare key from below into the opening in the cover on the driver door handle → Fig. 85 (arrow).
- Pull the driver door handle while carefully levering the cover upwards.
- Insert the spare key into the lock cylinder and lock or unlock the vehicle. You may need to pull the driver door handle slightly as you do this.
- Press the spare key into the opening of the vehicle key until the spare key engages → page 89.
- Pull the driver door handle and fit the cover on the lock cylinder working from the rear to the front.

Things to note when unlocking manually:

- The anti-theft alarm stays active when the vehicle is unlocked. However, the alarm will not be triggered → page 91.
- The alarm will be triggered when the driver door is opened → page 91.

Scanned by CamScanner

- The vehicle must be started manually once unlocked → page 166.
- When the ignition is switched on, the electronic immobiliser detects a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is manually locked using the spare key → page 91.

Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually

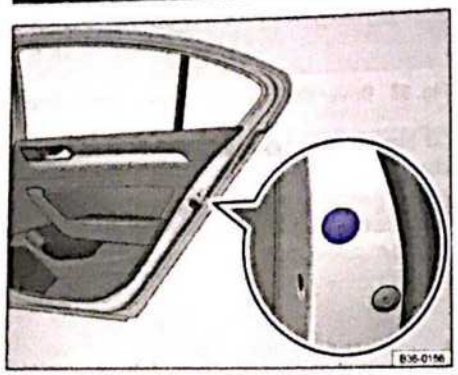


Fig. 86 In the end face of the right-hand door: manual lock covered by a rubber seal.

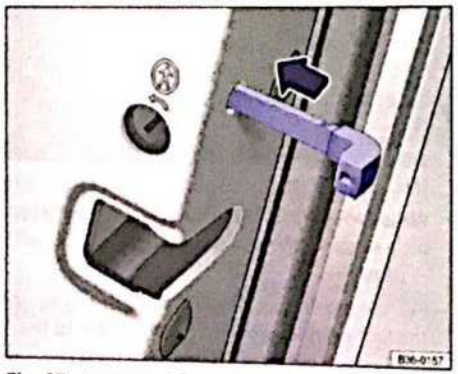


Fig. 87 In the end face of the right-hand door: locking the vehicle manually with the spare key.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 99.

The front passenger door and the rear doors can be locked manually. This does not activate the anti-theft alarm.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber seal from the end face of the door. The seal is marked by a lock symbol → Fig. 86.
- Remove the spare key from the vehicle key → page 89.
- Insert the spare key into the vertical slot and turn the spare key away from the vehicle → Fig. 87.
- Put the rubber seal back in place and close the door fully.
- Ensure that the door is locked.
- The vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

The manually locked door will be unlocked again when the vehicle is unlocked or the relevant door is opened from the inside.

The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle.

Boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Display 103
- Unlocking and opening the boot lid manually 104
- Closing and locking the boot lid manually 105
- Electric opening and closing of boot lid 106
- Unlocking the boot lid manually 109

If the vehicle key or central locking fails, the doors, boot lid and glass roof can be locked and, with some exceptions, unlocked manually.

Automatic locking (theft protection)

If the vehicle is unlocked but not opened, it will lock again automatically after approximately 45 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect and unsupervised unlocking, opening or closing of the boot lid can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The boot lid should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its operating or pivot range.
- Never close the boot lid of the Estate with your hand on the rear window. The rear window may shatter and cause injuries.
- After closing the boot lid, check to ensure that it is closed and locked correctly so that it does not open while the vehicle is in motion. The closed boot lid must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Always keep the boot lid closed while the vehicle is moving so that no poisonous exhaust fumes can enter the vehicle interior.
- Never open the boot lid if a load is attached to it, e.g. a rack or luggage carrier. In the same way, it may not be possible to open the boot lid if there are objects, e.g. bicycles, attached to it. Once opened, the boot lid may close under its own weight due to the additional load. Support the boot lid as necessary or remove the load from the surface.
- Close and lock the boot lid and all vehicle doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, thereby trapping themselves inside. Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could use the vehicle key or central locking button to lock the vehicle and thereby trap themselves inside.

⚠ WARNING

Careless manual opening and closing can cause serious injury.

- The doors and electric windows cannot be opened from the inside if the vehicle is locked from the outside.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

NOTICE

Before opening the boot lid, please check that there is enough space to open and close it, for example when in a garage.

NOTICE

Never use the opening mechanism to fix or hold a load. This could lead to damage that makes it impossible to close the boot lid.

NOTICE

Never use the rear window wiper (Estate) or the rear spoiler to attach or hold a load. This could result in damage caused by the rear window wiper or rear spoiler breaking off.

NOTICE

When opening or closing the vehicle manually, remove parts carefully and fit them again correctly in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Display

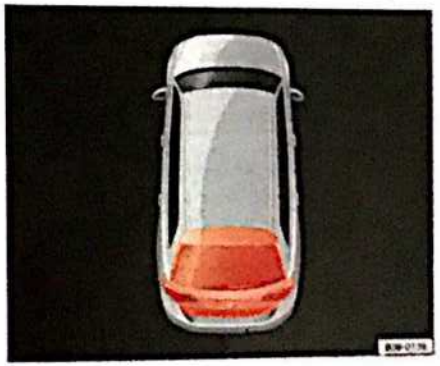


Fig. 88 On the instrument cluster display: the boot lid is open or has not been closed properly (Estate).

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner



Fig. 89 On the instrument cluster display: the boot lid is open or has not been closed properly (Saloon).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

The instrument cluster display → Fig. 88 or → Fig. 89 indicates if the boot lid is open or not closed properly. **Do not drive on!** Open the boot lid and close it again.

These symbols are also visible when the ignition is switched off. The display will go out shortly after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

⚠ WARNING

If the boot lid is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to severe injuries. Stop as soon as possible and close the boot lid. After closing the boot lid, always check that it is properly secured in the lock carrier. ◁

Unlocking and opening the boot lid manually

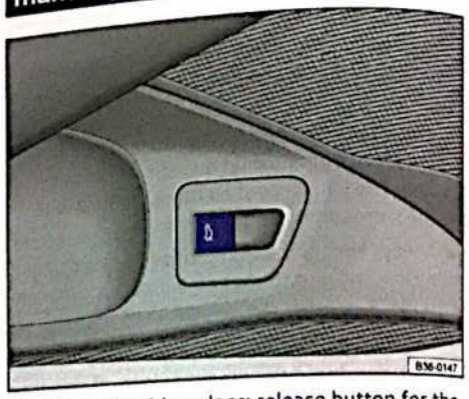


Fig. 90 In the driver door: release button for the boot lid.

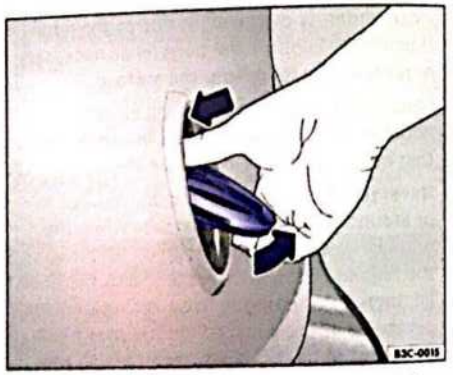


Fig. 91 In the boot lid: opening the boot lid using the Volkswagen badge.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

Unlocking and opening boot lid

- Press the 🔓 button on the vehicle key to unlock the vehicle including the boot lid.
- **OR:** pull the ⬓ button in the driver door upwards → Fig. 90. In the Saloon, the boot lid opens automatically. The button also works when the ignition is switched off.
- **OR:** briefly press and hold the ⬓ button on the vehicle key to unlock the boot lid individually. In the Saloon, the boot lid opens automatically. The doors remain locked.
- *Applies to Saloon:* press the top part of the Volkswagen badge → Fig. 91. The boot lid will then open.
- *Applies to Estate:* press the top part of the Volkswagen badge → Fig. 91 so that the bottom part of the badge pops out. Grip underneath the badge and lift up the boot lid.

If the boot lid is not opened within the next few minutes after unlocking, it automatically locks again.

⚠ WARNING

The boot lid may not always be detected as being unlocked if there is a carrier and items attached to it. The boot lid may open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion if it is unlocked.

- Before opening the boot lid, always remove any items of luggage that are on the luggage carrier attached to the boot lid.

ⓘ At outside temperatures of below 0°C (+32°F), the gas struts cannot always lift the partially opened boot lid automatically. If this happens, guide the boot lid further up by hand. ◁

Closing and locking the boot lid manually

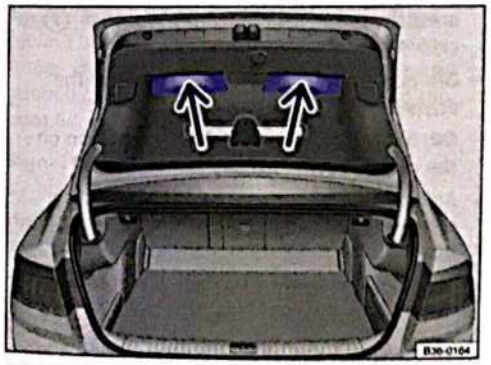


Fig. 92 Open boot lid: handle recesses for closing the boot lid (Saloon).

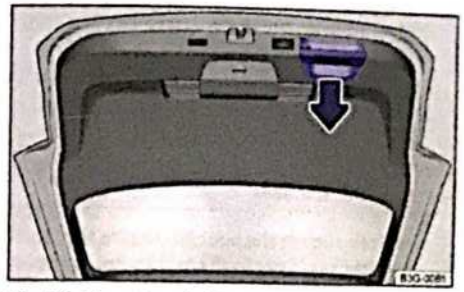


Fig. 93 Open boot lid: handle for closing the boot lid (Estate).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

Closing the boot lid

- Applies to Saloon: grip one of the handle recesses in the interior trim of the boot lid → Fig. 92 (arrows).
- Applies to Estate: grip the handle on the interior trim of the boot lid → Fig. 93 firmly with one hand.
- Pull the boot lid down with some force until it engages in the lock → ▲.
- Check that the boot lid is securely locked.

Locking the boot lid

The boot lid can be locked only when it is properly engaged.

- The boot lid is also locked by the central locking system.
- If the boot lid of a locked vehicle is unlocked using the ⬓ → page 104 button on the vehicle key, the boot lid will lock again as soon as it is closed.
- If the boot lid is closed but not locked, it will lock automatically once the vehicle reaches speeds between approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and 9 km/h (6 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended or leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, thereby trapping themselves inside. Temperatures inside a ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This could cause serious injuries or illness, or even have fatal consequences.

- When closing the boot lid, please ensure that there are no hands in the direct path of the boot lid as it moves.

Before closing the boot lid, ensure that the vehicle key is not in the luggage compartment.

Electric opening and closing of boot lid

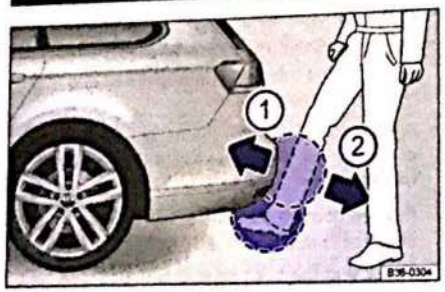


Fig. 94 Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open).

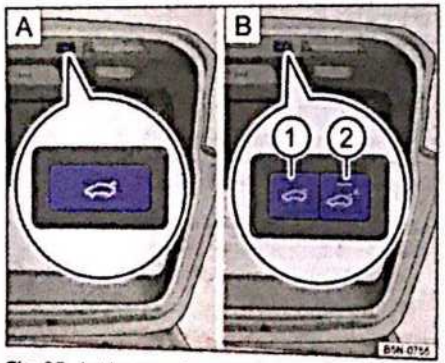


Fig. 95 In the open boot lid: button for electric closing of the boot lid.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

Opening the boot lid electrically

The boot lid opens automatically → ▲.

- Press the top part of the Volkswagen badge → Fig. 91.
- OR: pull up the button → Fig. 90 in the driver door. The button also works when the ignition is switched off.
- OR: briefly press and hold the button on the vehicle key. The boot lid opens automatically → ▲. The doors remain locked.
- Applies to vehicles with the keyless access locking and starting system and sensor-controlled opening: the boot lid can be opened by moving a foot in the sensor area below the rear bumper (Easy Open sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener) → Fig. 94.

Applies to Estate: to make it easier to load the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment cover can open automatically up to the centre of the compartment → page 78.

The boot lid can only be opened manually → page 104 when a trailer is hitched. The remote control point in the vehicle interior and the button on the vehicle key are then locked.

Closing the boot lid electrically

- Applies to Saloon: press the button in the open boot lid → Fig. 95 A → ▲.
- Applies to Estate: press the button in the open boot lid → Fig. 95 A or B ① → ▲.
- Applies to vehicles with the Keyless Access locking and starting system and Easy Close: press the Easy Close button → Fig. 95 B ② to close the boot lid automatically.
- OR: pull up the button → Fig. 90 in the driver door.
- OR: briefly press and hold the button on the vehicle key.
- Applies to the Estate: close the boot lid by moving it manually until the boot lid closes by itself.
- The boot lid returns to its end position and closes automatically → ▲.

In vehicles with the keyless access locking and starting system: if you try to lock the vehicle, close all the doors and close the boot lid electrically, but the most recently used vehicle key is in the vehicle, the boot lid will only jerk, and all the turn signals will flash *four times*. If the boot lid is closed by hand, the vehicle does **not lock immediately**. All turn signals on the vehicle flash *four times*.

Interrupting the opening or closing procedure

The boot lid opening and closing procedure can be interrupted:

- Press one of the buttons during the opening or closing procedure.
- Open or close the boot lid further by hand. You will need to use some force.
- Pressing one of the buttons again moves the boot lid back into the starting position → ▲.
- Applies to vehicles with the keyless access locking and starting system: the closing and locking process will be interrupted if the most recently used vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior. The boot lid will jerk and the turn signals will flash four times.

If the boot lid moves slowly or is blocked by an obstacle during the automatic opening or closing procedure:

- the opening or closing procedure is interrupted immediately. If it is in the process of closing, the boot lid will open again slightly.
- Check why the boot lid was unable to open or close.
- If required, the boot lid can then be opened or closed manually. You will need to use some force.

Things to note when towing a trailer

Applies to the Estate: once the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to the trailer, the electrically operated boot lid can be opened or closed **only** using the button on the boot lid.

Signal tones

Applies to the Estate: acoustic signals sound throughout the entire boot lid opening and closing process. Exception: if the boot lid is opened using the Volkswagen badge → Fig. 91 or closed using the buttons in the boot lid → Fig. 95 A or B ①.

Changing and storing the opening angle

If the area behind or above the vehicle is smaller than the path of the boot lid, the opening angle of the boot lid can be changed.

The boot lid must be at least half open in order to store a new opening angle.

- Stop the opening procedure at the desired open position.
- Press and hold the button → Fig. 95 A or B button ① in the open boot lid until the hazard warning lights being to flash.

The angle of opening will be stored.

Applies to the Estate: the hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal also sounds to confirm that the data has been stored.

Resetting and storing the opening angle

The opening angle must be reset and stored again in order for the boot lid to open fully again.

- Unlock the boot lid and open it to the stored position.
- Push the boot lid up as far as it will go by hand. You will need to use some force.
- Press and hold the button → Fig. 95 A or B button ① in the open boot lid until the hazard warning lights being to flash.

The opening angle is reset to the factory setting and stored.

Applies to the Estate: the hazard warning lights flash and an acoustic signal also sounds to confirm that the data has been stored.

Boot lid with sensor-controlled opening

Once a valid vehicle key is located in the operating range of the boot lid → Fig. 78, the boot lid can be unlocked and opened by moving your foot in the sensor area underneath the rear bumper → Fig. 94.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Stand in front of the middle of the rear bumper.
- Make quick movements with your foot and shin as close as possible to the bumper. Your shin must be placed in the upper area of the sensor, and your foot in the lower area → Fig. 94.
- Then quickly move your foot and shin away from the sensor area → Fig. 94. The boot lid opens itself.
- If the boot lid does not open, repeat the procedure after a few seconds.

The high-level brake light will light up once to show that the boot lid is being opened using Easy Open.

Scanned by CamScanner

The boot lid will lock again automatically, provided that the vehicle was locked beforehand and as long as there is no valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Easy Open is not available or has limited availability in the following situations (examples):

- If the rear bumper is dirty.
- If the rear bumper is dampened with salty water.
- If the electrically folding ball head is swivelled out → page 299.
- If a towing bracket has been retrofitted to the vehicle → page 299.

During heavy rain, Easy Open may experience a delay in opening the boot lid or the function may be deactivated automatically in order to prevent accidental activation.

Easy Open can be permanently switched on or off by pressing the CAR button and the ⚙ and Open and close function buttons on the Infotainment system → page 78.

Automatically closing the boot lid (Easy Close)

If a valid vehicle key is located within the operating range → Fig. 78 of the open boot lid, the boot lid can be closed automatically by pressing the Easy Close button → Fig. 95 B ②. The boot lid will close automatically only when the valid vehicle key is removed from the operating range → page 102.

- Switch off the ignition and close the driver door.
- If applicable, unhitch the trailer → page 299.
- Take a valid vehicle key and move to within the operating range → Fig. 78 of the boot lid, with the boot lid open to at least half its opening angle.
- Press the Easy Close button.
- If the Easy Close button → Fig. 95 B ② is flashing, the closing function is active. The boot lid remains open.
- The boot lid automatically closes once the valid vehicle key is removed from within the operating range of the open boot lid. The indicator lamp in the Easy Close button flashes slowly as the boot lid closes, and an acoustic signal may sound.
- If there is more than one valid vehicle key within the operating range of the open boot lid when you activate Easy Close, the boot lid will close automatically only once the last valid vehicle key has been removed from the operating range of the open boot lid.

Easy Close is unavailable or the system cancels the function and the boot lid is not automatically closed in one of the following situations:

- No valid vehicle key is located within the operating range of the open boot lid.
- **OR:** Easy Close button pressed several times.
- **OR:** there is more than one valid vehicle key in the luggage compartment upon activating Easy Close.
- **OR:** the valid vehicle key is located within the operating range of the open boot lid for more than 20 seconds after you have activated the Easy Close function. The indicator lamp in the Easy Close button flashes quickly to confirm that the function has been cancelled.
- **OR:** during automatic closing of the boot lid the button on the vehicle key, the Volkswagen badge on the boot lid or the button on the driver door is activated.
- **OR:** the valid vehicle key is moved back to within the operating range of the boot lid during closing. The indicator lamp in the button flashes quickly to confirm that the function has been cancelled. The boot lid is opened again.
- **OR:** the boot lid is prevented from closing automatically by stiff components or objects. The boot lid is opened again.

If a valid vehicle key is in the luggage compartment, and another valid key is within the operating range of the open boot lid when you activate Easy Close, the boot lid automatically closes once the vehicle key is removed from within the operating range of the open boot lid. The vehicle key inside the luggage compartment is locked inside the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If there is a large amount of snow or a heavy load on the boot lid, the boot lid may not open or, if it is already open, the boot lid may lower by itself and cause serious injuries due to the additional weight.

- Never open the boot lid if it is covered by a large amount of snow or a load is attached to it, e.g. a rack or luggage carrier.
- Remove the snow or luggage before opening the boot lid.

⚠ WARNING

Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended or leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid, thereby trapping themselves inside. Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This could cause serious injuries or illness, or even have fatal consequences.

NOTICE

Before opening or closing the boot lid, please check that there is enough space to open or close the boot lid, e.g. when towing a trailer or when in a garage.

Saloon: the boot lid may not be held in the intermediate position and will open on its own on steep downhill gradients.

The system switches off automatically in order to prevent overheating if it is used too frequently in a short space of time. The function can be used again as soon as the system has cooled down. Until then, the boot lid can be opened or closed by hand using more force than normal.

If the vehicle battery or fuse is disconnected or faulty when the boot lid is open, the boot lid must be fully closed once by hand.

Unlocking the boot lid manually



Fig. 96 In the boot lid: opening the holder for the warning triangle (Estate).

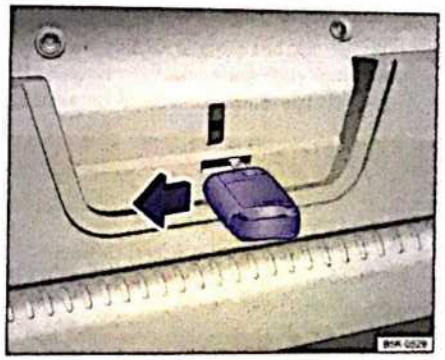


Fig. 97 In the boot lid: manual release for the boot lid (Saloon).

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

The boot lid can be opened manually if the vehicle battery is discharged or if there is a fault in the locking system.

- If necessary, fold the backrest of the rear bench seat forwards → page 123.
- Remove items of luggage so you can reach the boot lid from the inside.

Unlocking the boot lid manually

Applies to Saloon:

- Remove the round cover from the interior trim on the boot lid.
- Push the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 97. The boot lid is released.

Scanned by CamScanner

Unlocking the boot lid manually

Applies to Estate:

- Open the retainer for the warning triangle and remove the warning triangle → Fig. 96.
- Insert your index finger into the opening underneath the warning triangle and locate the release lever.
- Push the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 97. The boot lid is released.

Windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Opening and closing windows 110
- Electric window roll-back function 111

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated using the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.

NOTICE

During sudden rain showers, water can enter the vehicle interior via open windows and cause damage to the vehicle.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Opening and closing windows

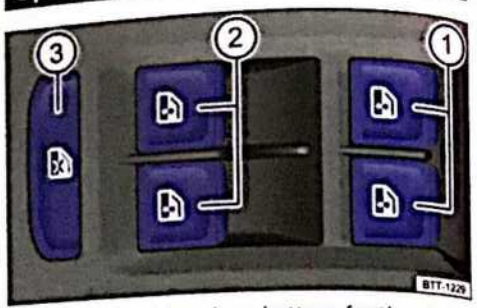


Fig. 98 In the driver door: buttons for the electric windows.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 110.

Key to Fig. 98:

① Buttons for the front windows.
② Buttons for the rear windows.
③ Safety button for the rear electric windows.

- *Opening:* press the button.
- *Closing:* press the button.
- *Stopping the one-touch function:* press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.
- Press the safety switch to disable the electric window buttons in the rear doors. The yellow indicator lamp in the button lights up.

The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened. After a few seconds, convenience opening/closing starts.

One-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing makes it possible to fully open and close the windows. The individual buttons do not have to be held down to do this.

One-touch closing: pull the button for the appropriate window up briefly into the second position.

One-touch opening: press the button for the appropriate window down briefly into the second position.

Stopping the one-touch function: press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.

Restoring one-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing is deactivated if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while the windows were not fully closed. The function will have to be reset.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Close all windows and doors.
- Pull up the button for the window and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
- Let go of the button then pull it up again and hold it in this position. One-touch opening and closing is now ready for operation.

The one-touch function can be restored for individual windows or for several windows at the same time.

Convenience opening and closing

The windows can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key when the ignition is switched off:

- Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key.
- In vehicles with Keyless Access: hold your finger on the sensor area in the door handle for several seconds until the windows are closed → page 91. The key must be located within the operating range.
- To interrupt the function, let go of the unlocking or locking button **OR** remove your finger from the sensor.

Convenience closing closes all windows in the doors and the glass roof.

A valid vehicle key must be located in the operating range. Once all windows and the glass roof have been closed, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.

A variety of settings related to window operation can be made using the Infotainment button CAR and the and Opening and closing function buttons → page 78.

WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated using the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.

One-touch opening and closing and the roll-back function will not work if there is a fault in the electric windows. Go to a qualified workshop.

Convenience opening and closing only works when one-touch opening and closing of the electric windows is active.

Electric window roll-back function

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 110.

The roll-back function for the electric windows can reduce the risk of crush injuries when closing the windows.

If the one-touch closing function for a window does not work because the mechanism is stiff or it is being obstructed, the window will automatically open again → ▲.

- Check to see why the window has not closed.
- Try to close the window again.
- If the window is again prevented from closing within a few seconds of the first attempt because it is stiff or obstructed, one-touch closing is switched off for several seconds.
- If the window still cannot close it will come to a stop at this point. To close the window **without the roll-back function**, press the button again within a few seconds → ▲.

Scanned by CamScanner

Closing the window without the roll-back function

- Try to close the window again within a few seconds by holding the button. **The roll-back function will be deactivated for a small section of the path of the closing window.**
- If the closing procedure takes longer than several seconds, the roll-back function will be reactivated. If it is still stiff or obstructed, the window will stop and will open itself automatically again.
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the window still cannot be closed.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the electric windows without the roll-back function can lead to severe injuries.

- Always close the window carefully.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the window, especially if a window is being closed when the roll-back function is not active.
- The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the window frame and sustaining injury.

The roll-back function is also activated if the windows are closed using the vehicle key for convenience closing.

Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Opening and closing the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 113
- Convenience opening and closing of the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 113
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof roll-back function 114

In the following section, the term tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof is used in all cases to denote both the panorama sliding/tilting sunroof of the Saloon and the panorama sliding/tilting sunroof with panorama roof at the rear in the Estate.

In contrast to the Saloon the glass roof in the Estate consists of two glass elements. The rear glass element is fixed and cannot be opened. A sun blind in also installed in the Estate.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the glass roof can cause serious injuries.

- Open and close the glass roof only when you are sure that nobody is in its operating area.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the car, particularly if they have access to the vehicle key. Unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition and operate the glass roof.
- The glass roof can still be operated for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door or front passenger door are not opened.

! NOTICE

- To avoid damage during cold weather, clear any ice and snow off the vehicle roof before opening or tilting the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof.
- Always close the glass roof when you leave the vehicle or it starts to rain. Any rain entering the vehicle when the glass roof is open or tilted could cause considerable damage to the electrical system. This can result in further damage to the vehicle.

Regularly remove foliage and other loose objects from the glass roof guide rails using a vacuum cleaner or by hand.

If the glass roof malfunctions, the roll-back function will not work properly. Go to a qualified workshop.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Opening and closing the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof

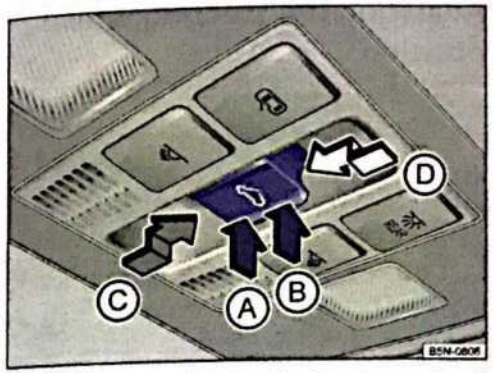


Fig. 99 In the roof: button for the glass roof.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 112.

The glass roof only works when the ignition is switched on. The glass roof can still be operated for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door or front passenger door are not opened.

In the Estate the sun blind automatically opens along with the glass roof, provided it had previously been completely closed or positioned in front of the glass roof. The sun blind remains in the previous position and does not close automatically with the roof. The sun blind can only be closed completely once the glass roof has been closed.

The button → Fig. 99 has 2 positions. In the first position the roof can be completely or partially tilted, opened or closed.

When set to position 2, the roof automatically returns to the final position when the button is pressed briefly. Press the button again to stop the one-touch function.

Tilting, opening and closing the glass roof

- *Opening the glass roof:* Push the rear area of the button → Fig. 99 Ⓑ to position 1. One-touch function: Push the rear area of the button Ⓑ to position 2.
- *Closing the opened glass roof:* Push the front area of the button Ⓐ to position 1. One-touch function: Push the rear area of the button Ⓐ to position 2.
- *Stopping one-stop function of the opening or closing procedure:* Push button Ⓐ or Ⓑ again.
- *Opening the glass roof:* Push the button Ⓒ rearwards to position 1. One-touch function up to the convenience position: Push the button Ⓒ briefly rearwards to position 2.
- *Closing the glass roof:* Push the button Ⓓ rearwards to position 1. Push the button Ⓓ briefly forwards to position 2 for the one-touch function.
- *Stopping one-stop function of the opening or closing procedure:* Push button Ⓒ or Ⓓ again.

Opening and closing the sliding headliner (Saloon)

Use the handle at the front near the roof opening to move the sliding headliner to the required position.

Convenience opening and closing of the tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 112.

Convenience opening and closing

The glass roof can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key:

- Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key. The glass roof is tilted or closed.
- In vehicles with Keyless Access: hold your finger on the sensor area in the door handle for several seconds until the glass roof is closed → page 91.
- Let go of the release button or unlock button to interrupt this function.

Convenience closing closes all windows in the doors and the glass roof. Once all windows and the glass roof have been closed, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.

Scanned by CamScanner

Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof roll-back function

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 112.

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of injury when closing the glass roof → ▲. The glass roof will open again immediately if it is unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed.

- Check to see why the glass roof has not closed.
- Try to close the glass roof again.
- If the glass roof cannot close, it will come to a stop at this point before retracting. In one-touch function a new closing motion will occur.
- If the glass roof still cannot be closed, close it without the roll-back function.

Closing the glass roof without the roll-back function

- Press the button → Fig. 99 within a few seconds of triggering the roll-back function and hold it in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 99 Ⓓ at position 2 until the glass roof has closed completely.
- **The glass roof will now close without the roll-back function.**
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the glass roof still cannot be closed.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the glass roof without the roll-back function can cause serious injuries.

- Always close the glass roof carefully.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the glass roof, especially if the roll-back function is not active.
- The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the roof frame and sustaining injury.

The roll-back function is also activated if you use the convenience closing function on the vehicle key to close the windows and the glass roof → page 113.

Steering wheel

Adjusting the steering wheel position

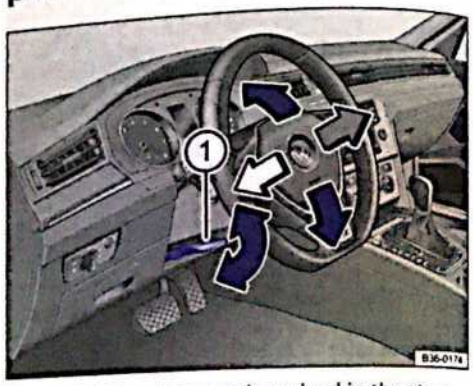


Fig. 100 Below the steering wheel in the steering column trim: lever for mechanical adjustment of the steering wheel position.

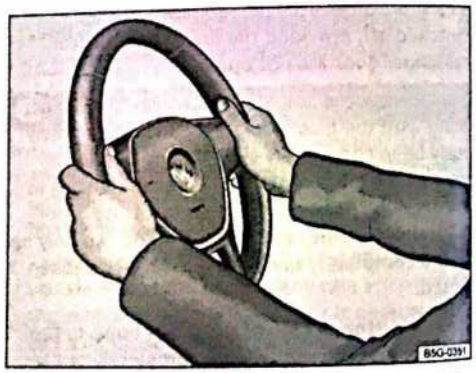


Fig. 101 On the steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position.

Adjust the steering wheel position **before** setting off and only when the vehicle is stationary → ▲.

- Push down the lever → Fig. 100 ①.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold it with both hands on the outside of the rim at the *9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions* → Fig. 101, with arms slightly bent.
- Push the lever up firmly until it is flush with the steering column trim → ▲.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering column position adjustment and incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- After adjusting the steering column, always move the lever → Fig. 100 ① up so that it engages securely. This prevents the steering column from moving spontaneously while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If you determine that a readjustment is necessary, stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.
- While driving, always keep both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the *9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions* → Fig. 101. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver front airbag is triggered.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner, e.g. on the hub of the steering wheel. If the driver front airbag is triggered, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Mechanically adjusting the front seat 116
- Electrically adjusting the front seat 117
- Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards 118

The following sections shows the options for adjusting the front seats. Always ensure that you set the correct sitting position → page 7.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the front seats to their correct position before any journey and ensure that any passenger has fastened their seat belt.

- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled and the distance to the dash panel in the knee area is at least 10 cm. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement then you must contact a qualified workshop so they can make any necessary modifications.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far back. The further back the backrest is tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect seat belt routing or an incorrect sitting position.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far forwards. When an airbag is triggered it could force the seat backrest backwards and injure vehicle occupants on the back seats.
- Adopt and maintain the greatest possible distance from the steering wheel and dash panel.
- You should always sit upright with your back against the seat backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Do not position any body part too close where the airbags are fitted.

3C0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

- The risk of serious injury is increased for passengers on the rear seat if they are not sitting upright because the seat belts are incorrectly positioned.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary. The seats could change position unexpectedly if you attempt to reposition them while the vehicle is in motion, leading to a loss of control of the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Only adjust the height and tilt of the seat or move it forwards and backwards when the area around the seat is clear.
- There should be no objects in the adjustment area of the front seats.
- To be able to make adjustments to the seats, the area around them must not be restricted by any items.
- Only adjust the height of the rear seat or move it forwards and backwards when the area around the seat is clear.
- The areas for adjusting and locking the seats must not be soiled.

⚠ WARNING

Cigarette lighters left in the vehicle can become damaged or may ignite unnoticed. This can cause serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Before moving seats forwards or backwards, always ensure that there are no cigarette lighters in the vicinity of moveable seat components.
- Before closing stowage areas or compartments, always ensure that there are no cigarette lighters in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas, compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle. Cigarette lighters may self-ignite as a result of high surface temperatures, particularly in summer.

Mechanically adjusting the front seat



Fig. 102 Front left-hand seat controls (type 1).



Fig. 103 Front left-hand seat controls (type 2).

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 115.

The layout of the controls on the front right-hand seat is a mirror image of the layout of the controls on the front left-hand seat.

The following section contains a description of all possible controls. The number of controls may vary depending on the version of the seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

Adjusting the seat position (type 1)

Key to Fig. 102:

① Move the lever to adjust the lumbar support.
② Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust the backrest.
③ If necessary, move the lever up or down several times to adjust the seat height.
④ Pull the lever to push the front seat forwards or backwards. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.

Adjusting the seat position (type 2)

Key to Fig. 103:

① Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust the backrest.
② If necessary, move the lever up or down several times to adjust the seat height.
③ If necessary, pull or push the lever several times to adjust the angle of the seat cushion.
④ Raise the handle and slide the seat cushion forwards or backwards.
⑤ Pull the lever to push the front seat forwards or backwards. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.

Electrically adjusting the front seat

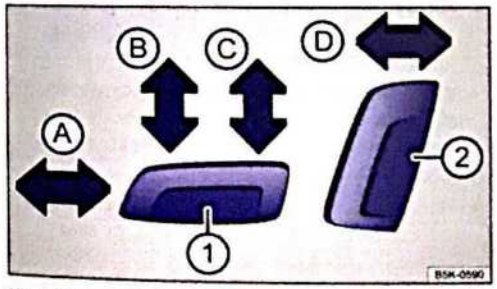


Fig. 104 Switches on the front left seat: adjusting the front seat forwards or backwards, adjusting the backrest and the seat cushion for height and tilt.

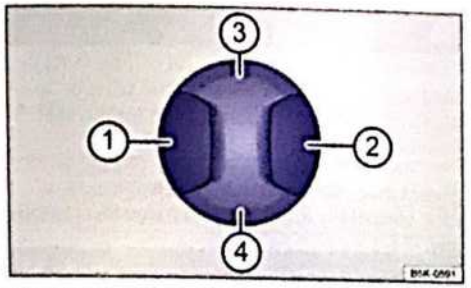


Fig. 105 Switch on the front left seat: adjusting the lumbar support.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 115.

The layout of the controls on the front right-hand seat is a mirror image of the layout of the controls on the front left-hand seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

Adjusting the seat position

Press switch in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 104:		
①	Ⓐ	Slides the seat forwards or backwards.
	Ⓑ	Adjusts the angle of the seat cushion.
	Ⓒ	Raises or lowers the seat.
②	Ⓓ	Adjusts the angle of the backrest.

Adjusting the lumbar support

Pressing the switch in the desired area → Fig. 105:	
① or ②	Adjusts the curve of the lumbar support.
③ or ④	Adjusts the height of the lumbar support.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to take due care and attention when using the electric front seats can cause severe injuries.

- The electrical front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle.
- In the event of an emergency, stop the electrical adjustment by pressing another switch.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

NOTICE

To avoid damaging the electrical components in the front seats, do not kneel on the seats or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.

It may not be possible to adjust the seat electrically if the battery charge level is too low.

Starting the engine will interrupt the seat adjustment procedure. ◁

Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards

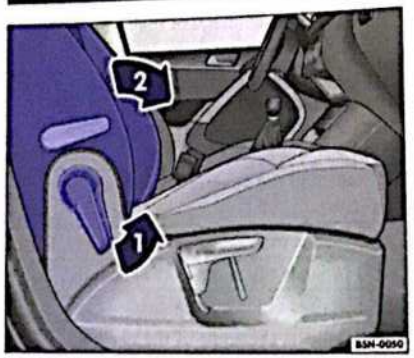


Fig. 106 Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 115.

The front passenger seat backrest can be folded forwards to a horizontal position.

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off if any items are transported on the front passenger seat after it has been folded forwards → page 19.

Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards

- Remove any items from the front passenger seat cushion → ⚠.
- Lower the front passenger seat down as far as possible → page 7.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible → page 7.
- Push the head restraint all the way down → page 7.
- Release the front passenger seat backrest in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 106 ①.
- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 106 ② until it is horizontal.
- When it is folded down, the front passenger seat backrest must click securely into place.

Folding back the front passenger seat backrest

- When folding back, check to ensure that there are no items or body parts near the hinges.
- To fold it back, release the front passenger seat backrest → Fig. 106 ① once again.
- Fold back the front passenger seat backrest so that it is upright.
- When it is folded up, the front passenger seat backrest must securely engage.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the front passenger seat backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards and backwards only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Ensure no persons, animals or objects are around the backrest when folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards.
- When the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards, the front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp OFF must light up.
- When folding forwards and backwards, keep all hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat hinges and seat release mechanism.
- Floor mats or other objects could get caught in the hinges on the front passenger seat backrest. This could cause the front passenger seat backrest to fail to engage securely when it is returned to the upright position.
- When being folded back, the front passenger seat backrest must be securely locked in the upright position. If the front passenger seat backrest is not locked properly it could move suddenly and cause severe injuries. ▷

⚠ WARNING

Open seat anchors and hinges of the folded front passenger seat backrest may cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

- Never transport people (adults or children) on the front passenger seat if the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- If the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards, you should only use the outer rear seat behind the driver seat. This also applies to children in child seats. ◁

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards 119

The following sections shows the options for adjusting the rear seats. Always ensure that you set the correct sitting position → page 7.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the rear seat can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The rear seat should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary as the rear seat could otherwise move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- The rear seat should only be adjusted when there is no one in the direct area.

⚠ WARNING

Cigarette lighters left in the vehicle can become damaged or may ignite unnoticed. This can cause serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Before moving seats forwards or backwards, always ensure that there are no cigarette lighters in the vicinity of moveable seat components.
- Before closing stowage areas or compartments, always ensure that there are no cigarette lighters in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas, compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle. Cigarette lighters may self-ignite as a result of high surface temperatures, particularly in summer.

NOTICE

- Items in the luggage compartment could cause damage when pushing the rear seat forwards or backwards.
- When the rear seat is moved forwards, objects could move into the space between the seat and luggage compartment floor. Remove any items or objects from this space before pushing the rear seat back. ◁

Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards

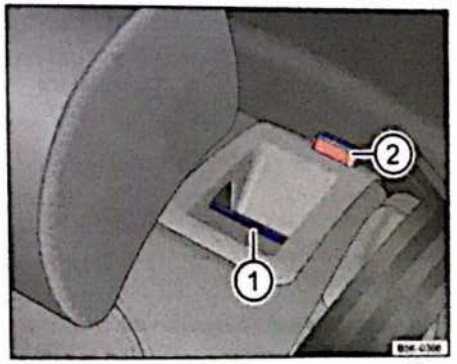


Fig. 107 Rear seat backrest: release button ①; red marking ②. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

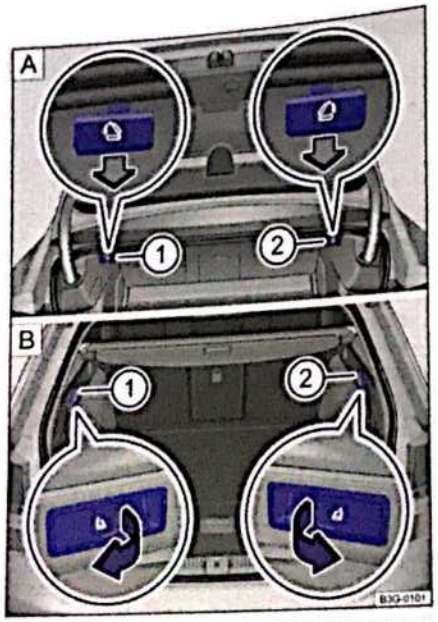


Fig. 108 In the luggage compartment: remote release lever for the left ① and the right ② parts of the rear seat backrest in the Saloon and Estate.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 119.

The rear seat is split for folding. Each part of the rear seat backrest can be folded down to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards.

Folding rear backrest forwards with the release button

- Push the head restraint all the way down → page 121.
- Slide the head restraint up one notch.
- Pull the release button → Fig. 107 ① forwards. The part of the rear seat backrest that has been unlocked folds down automatically.
- That section of the rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see the red marking → Fig. 107 ②.

Folding rear backrest forwards with the remote release button

- Push the head restraint all the way down → page 121.
- Slide the head restraint up one notch.
- Open the boot lid → page 102.
- Pull the remote release lever for the left → Fig. 108 ① or the right → Fig. 108 ② parts of the rear seat backrest in the direction of the arrow. The part of the rear seat backrest that has been unlocked folds down automatically.
- Close the boot lid if it is open → page 102.

The rear seat backrest is unlocked when you can see the red marking → Fig. 107 ②.

Folding back the rear seat backrest

- Fold back the rear backrest and push it firmly into the lock until it clicks securely into place →▲.
- The red marking → Fig. 107 ② must no longer be visible.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries can be caused if the rear backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- While folding the rear backrest, always ensure that no people, animals or other objects are in the way.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the rear seat backrest.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet or other body parts away from the seat area when folding the rear seat backrest forwards and backwards.
- Ensure that the rear seat backrest engages securely, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not work properly. This applies to the centre seat of the rear bench seat in particular. If a seat is occupied and the rear seat backrest has not clicked securely into place, the seat occupant and rear seat backrest may move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.
- The rear seat backrest has not been put back properly if you can see a red marking → Fig. 107 ②. Always ensure that the red marking is never visible when the rear seat backrest is in the upright position.
- Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards or is not clicked securely into place.

ⓘ NOTICE

Damage to the vehicle or to other objects could be caused if the rear bench seat backrest is folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- Before folding the rear seat backrests forwards, always adjust the front seats so that the rear head restraints or rear seat cushions do not rub against the front seats.
- Before folding down the rear seat back rest, always ensure that there are no objects located in its opening/closing path. ◁

Head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Adjusting the head restraints 121
– Removing and installing head restraints 122

The following section shows the options for adjusting and removing the head restraints. Always ensure that you set the correct sitting position → page 7.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted correctly.
- Each vehicle occupant must adjust the head restraint to suit their body size, to help reduce the risk of neck injuries in an accident. As far as possible, the upper edge of the head restraint must be level with the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head in the centre and as closely to the head restraint as possible.
- Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

ⓘ NOTICE

When removing or fitting head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof, the front seat backrest or other parts of the vehicle. This will prevent damage from occurring.

Adjusting the head restraints

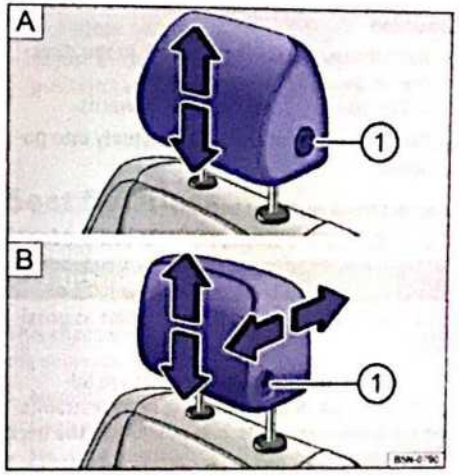


Fig. 109 Adjusting the front head restraint: A without moving it backwards and forwards, B moving it backwards and forwards.

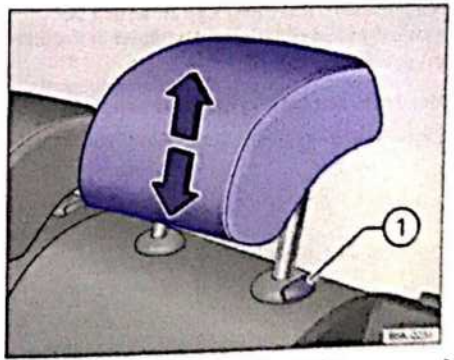


Fig. 110 Adjusting rear head restraint. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 121.

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The centre head restraint is designed solely for use with the centre rear seat. Therefore you should not install the head restraints in any of the other positions.

Adjusting the height of the head restraint

- Push the head restraint up in the direction of the arrow or push it down with the button pressed → Fig. 109 ① or → Fig. 110 ① → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 121.
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

Adjusting front head restraint in longitudinal direction

- Push the head restraint forwards in the direction of the arrow or press button → Fig. 109 Ⓑ ① and push it backwards.
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

Correct head restraint setting

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.

In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, place the head restraints on the front seats as close as possible to the back of your head.

Head restraint setting for shorter people

Push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then underneath the top edge of the head restraint. There may be a small gap between the head restraint and backrest in the lowest position.

Head restraint setting for taller people

Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

Removing and installing head restraints

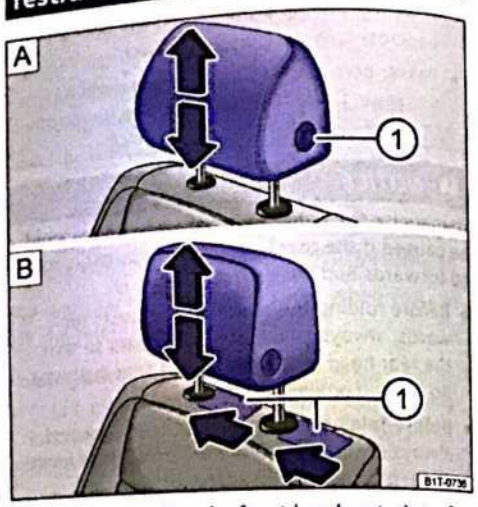


Fig. 111 Removing the front head restraints: for vehicles without Ⓐ and with Ⓑ longitudinally adjustable head restraints.

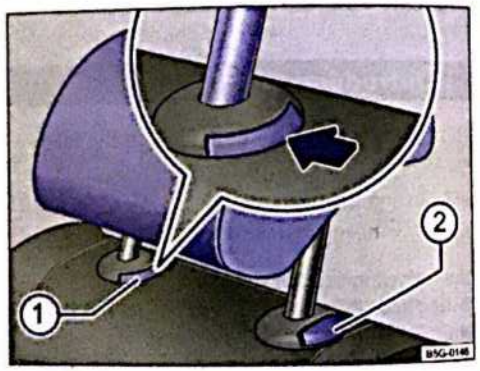


Fig. 112 Removing the rear head restraint.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 121.

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The front head restraints are intended solely for use with the front seats, and the centre rear head restraint is intended solely for use with the central seat in the rear bench seat. Therefore you should not install head restraints in any of the other positions.

Removing front head restraints for vehicles without longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- If necessary, adjust the backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
- Push the head restraint all the way up → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 121.
- Completely pull out the head restraint while pressing button → Fig. 111 Ⓐ ① fully down.

Fitting front head restraints for vehicles without longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Fully press and hold the button → Fig. 111 Ⓐ ① and push the head restraint downwards.
- Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed → page 121.

Removing front head restraints for vehicles with longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- If necessary, adjust the backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
- Push the head restraint fully towards the top and back → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 121.
- On both sides, insert a flat object, e.g. a plastic card, between the backrest cover and the cover of the rods holding the head restraint and release the rods simultaneously while applying slight pressure → Fig. 111 Ⓑ ①.
- Pull the head restraint out completely.

Fitting front head restraints for vehicles with longitudinally adjustable head restraints

- Pull both head restraint rods out as far as possible.
- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Push down the head restraint until both the rods are securely engaged.
- Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed → page 121.

Removing the rear head restraint

- Release the rear bench seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards → page 119.
- Push the head restraint all the way up → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 121.
- Press button → Fig. 112 ① on the head restraint guide.
- At the same time press button → Fig. 112 ② while a second person pulls the head restraint out fully.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow it to engage securely.

Fitting the rear head restraints

- Release the rear bench seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards → page 119.
- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Press and hold the button → Fig. 112 ② and push the head restraint downwards.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow it to engage securely.
- Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed → page 121.

Seat functions

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Memory function 124
- Centre armrest 125
- Massage function 125

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions can cause serious injuries.

- Always assume a correct sitting position before you drive and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to all passengers.
- Adjust the seat ventilation only when the vehicle is stationary.
- The memory function should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.
- Switch the massage function on and off only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the moving parts of the seats.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Memory function

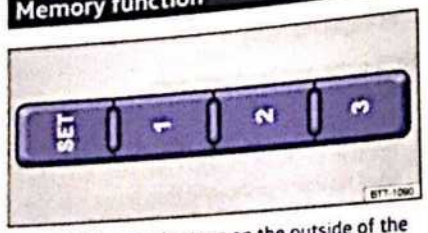


Fig. 113 Memory buttons on the outside of the driver seat.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 123.

The memory buttons can be used to store and recall settings for the driver seat and the exterior mirrors.

Memory buttons

You can assign individual settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors to each of the memory buttons.

Storing driver seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the driver seat and exterior mirror.
- Press the SET button for longer than one second → Fig. 113.
- Within approximately 10 seconds press the memory button you wish to use. A gong signal will sound to confirm that the settings have been saved.

Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the appropriate memory button.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area.
- The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle.

Accessing driver seat and exterior mirror settings

- While the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on, briefly touch the required memory button.
- OR: while the ignition is switched off, touch and hold the required memory button until the saved position is reached.
- The front passenger exterior mirror will leave the stored reversing position automatically if the vehicle drives forwards at a minimum speed of 15 km/h (10 mph) or if you turn the rotary knob from R to a different position → page 139.

Electric convenient entry and exit function

When the driver door is opened, the driver seat automatically moves to a position which makes it easy to enter and exit the vehicle.

The driver seat moves back to its original position automatically as soon as the driver door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

Personalisation

You can save and access your individual seat setting in a user account via the Personalisation function → page 87.

After switching off the ignition and locking the vehicle, the driver seat and exterior mirror settings are stored in the user account.

The driver seat and exterior mirror settings are called up again after the vehicle is unlocked and the driver door is opened.

The seat responds to selecting or changing a user account as follows:

- *Vehicle stationary or moving no faster than 5 km/h:* seat is moved. You can cancel the movement at any time by touching the appropriate function button in the Infotainment system or by pressing a button on the driver seat.
- *Vehicle moving faster than 5 km/h:* seat is not moved. All other setup configurations are adopted.

The driver seat and exterior mirror settings are not adjusted automatically if the driver door is opened later than approximately 10 minutes after the vehicle is unlocked.

Centre armrest

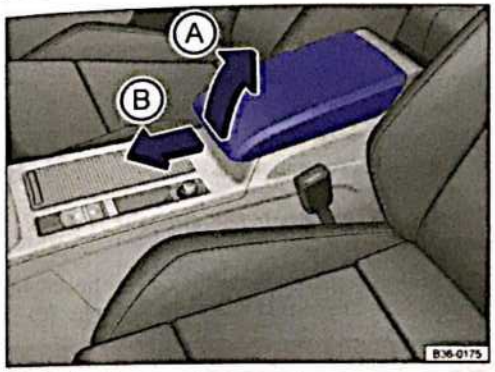


Fig. 114 Front centre armrest.

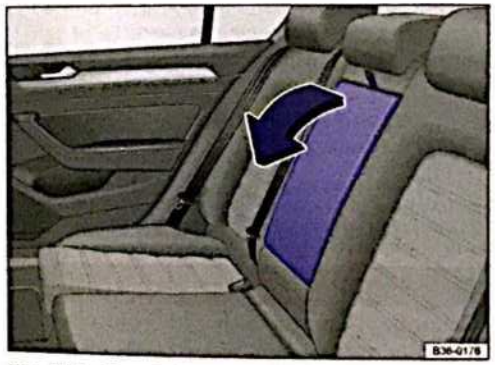


Fig. 115 Rear fold-out centre armrest.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 123.

Front centre armrest

To *lift*: push the centre armrest up gradually in the direction of arrow → Fig. 114 Ⓐ.

To *lower*: pull the centre armrest all the way up. Then lower the centre armrest.

To *adjust in longitudinal direction*: push the centre armrest fully to the front Ⓑ or fully to the rear until it engages.

Rear centre armrest

There may be a fold-out centre armrest in the backrest of the central rear bench seat.

To *fold it down*, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 115.

To *fold it back*: fold the centre armrest upwards in the opposite direction of the arrow → Fig. 115 and push it into the backrest as far as it will go.

⚠ WARNING

The centre armrest can obstruct the driver's arm movements. This can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the stowage compartments in the centre armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest. An incorrect seating position can cause serious injury.
- Never place hot drinks or fluids in the drink holders. These can be spilt during a braking or driving manoeuvre.

Massage function



Fig. 116 In the lower area of the driver seat: button for massage function.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 123.

When the massage function is switched on, the lumbar support moves and massages the lumbar region.

The in/out position of the lumbar support can be adjusted using the appropriate switch during a massage → page 7.

Switching the massage function on or off

To switch on, press the button in the seat control panel. To switch off, press the button again.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

The massage function is switched off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Lights

Controls

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Indicator lamps 127
- Instrument and switch lighting 128
- Switching lights on and off 128
- Headlight range control 130
- Interior and reading lights 131

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

The driver is responsible for the correct headlight position and the correct headlight setting.

WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.

- The light assist systems only provide assistance. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the correct vehicle lighting is switched on.
- Always switch the dipped beam headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.

WARNING

Setting headlights too high, and the incorrect use of the main beam, could distract and dazzle other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always ensure that the headlights are adjusted correctly.
- Never use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users could be dazzled.

In cool or damp weather, the interior of the headlights, tail lights and turn signals may mist up briefly. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the lighting system of your vehicle.

Indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 126.

Indicator lamps in the instrument cluster

Lit up / flashing	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely.	Check the vehicle lighting and change the appropriate bulb as required → page 329. If all of the bulbs are in working order, go to a qualified workshop. A separate display appears in the instrument cluster if there is a dynamic cornering light fault.
	Rear fog light switched on.	→ page 129.
	Turn signal, left or right. The indicator lamp will flash twice as fast if one of the turn signals on the vehicle is not working.	Check the vehicle lighting.
	Does not apply in China and Japan: trailer turn signal.	The indicator lamp goes out if a trailer turn signal or all trailer lights stop working. Check trailer lights.
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated.	→ page 128.
	Main beam control (Light Assist) or dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist) is active.	→ page 133.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

Indicator lamps in light switch

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲
	The fog light is switched on → page 128.
	The side lights are switched on → page 128.
	The dipped beam is switched on → page 128.
AUTO	The automatic headlight control and, if applicable, the daytime running lights are switched on → page 128.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel, oil etc.
- Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Instrument and switch lighting

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 126.

The brightness of the instrument and switch lighting as well as the basic brightness of the Head-up Display → page 54 can be adjusted in the Infotainment system using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Light function buttons → page 78.

The brightness setting is automatically adjusted to the changing light conditions in the vehicle.

When the light is switched off and the ignition switched on, the dash panel lighting (indicators and scales) is switched on. As the ambient light becomes lower, the lighting of these scales is automatically reduced and may be switched off entirely. This function is intended to remind the driver to switch on the dipped beam in good time, i.e. when driving through tunnels.

Switching lights on and off

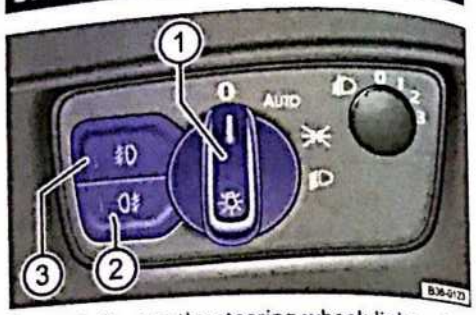


Fig. 117 Next to the steering wheel: light switch and buttons for fog lights.

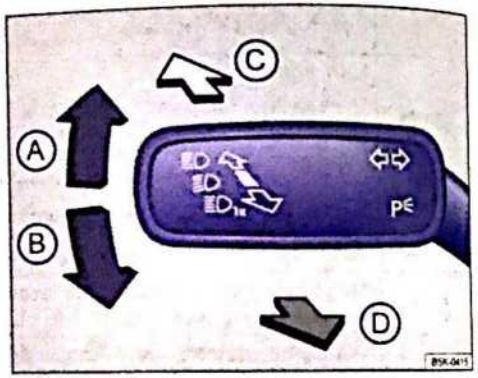


Fig. 118 On the steering column left: turn signal and main beam headlight lever.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 126.

Key to Fig. 117:

① Light switch ☼
② Rear fog light
③ Fog lights

In vehicles with a factory-fitted **towing bracket**: the vehicle's rear fog lights are switched off automatically if a trailer with rear fog lights is electrically connected to the vehicle → page 299.

Light switch positions when the ignition is switched off

0	The fog lights, dipped beam headlights and side lights are switched off.
AUTO	The orientation lighting can be switched on.
	Side lights or continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle switched on.
	Dipped beam headlights are switched off. The side lights will stay on as long as the driver door is closed.

Light switch positions when the ignition is switched on

0	Lights switched off and daytime running lights are switched on.
AUTO	The automatic headlight control and, if applicable, the daytime headlights are switched on.
	The side lights and daytime running lights are switched on.
	The dipped beam headlights are switched on.

Move the lever into the required position:

Ⓐ Right turn signal → ▲, → page 132.
OR: turn on right parking light. With the ignition switched off, move the lever into position from the centre position → page 131.
Move the lever to the basic position, to switch off the turn signals or the parking light.

Ⓑ Left turn signal → ▲, → page 132.
OR: turn on left parking light. With the ignition switched off, move the lever into position from the centre position → page 131.
Move the lever to the basic position, to switch off the turn signals or the parking light.

Ⓒ When the dipped beam is switched on: switch on the main beam → ▲. When the main beam is switched on, an indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster.

Ⓓ Operate the headlight flasher or switch off the main beam. The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as the lever is pulled. The indicator lamp lights up.

Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

Switching on automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights → page 131:

- Turn the light switch to the position when the ignition is on.
- Switch off the ignition.
- **OR:** switch on the left or right parking light → page 131.
- Lock the vehicle from the outside.

Fog lights

The indicator lamps or in the light switch or instrument cluster indicate that the fog lights are switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, the fog lights can be turned on with the light switch → Fig. 117 ① in the positions **AUTO**, side lights and dipped beam .

- Switching on the front fog lights : press the button → Fig. 117 ③. The indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- Switching on the rear fog light : press the button → Fig. 117 ②. The indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- Press the appropriate button again to switch off the fog lights. The indicator lamp in the button switches off.

WARNING

The side lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.

- Always switch the dipped beam headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.

WARNING

Incorrect use of turn signals, a failure to use turn signals, or forgetting to switch off a turn signal can confuse other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always activate the turn signal in good time when changing lanes and performing overtaking or turning manoeuvres.
- Always switch off the turn signal once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the main beam headlights can lead to accidents and serious injuries as the main beam headlights can distract and dazzle other road users.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

The turn signal will only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off → page 37.

The parking light only lights up when the ignition is switched off and if the turn signal and main beam lever was in the central position before being operated.

Go to a qualified workshop to have the vehicle checked if the acoustic signal does not sound when a turn signal is switched on. ◁

Headlight range control

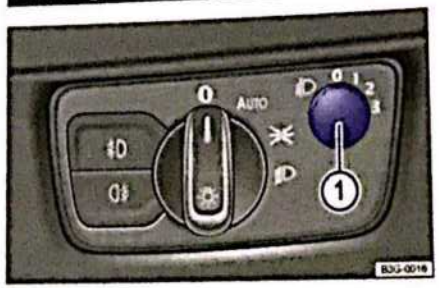


Fig. 119 Next to steering wheel: headlight range control ①.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 126.

Headlight range control can be used to adjust the light cone in the front headlights to the vehicle load level. This gives the driver the best visibility possible and means that oncoming traffic will not be dazzled → ▲.

The front headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam is switched on → page 128.

Turn control → Fig. 119 ① to adjust:	
Setting	**Example of vehicle load level[a]**
0	Front seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
1	All seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
2	All seats occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded. Towing a trailer with a low drawbar load.
3	Only the driver seat occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded. Towing a trailer with maximum drawbar load.

a) If you have different loads, you can select a position between the settings.

Fully-automatic self-levelling suspension

In vehicles with self-levelling suspension, set the control to 1 when the vehicle is carrying a full load.

Dynamic headlight range control

The control ① is not installed in vehicles with dynamic headlight range control. The headlight range automatically adapts to the vehicle load level as soon as the front headlights are switched on → ▲.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Adjust the light beam to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

⚠ WARNING

Failure or malfunction in the dynamic headlight range control can cause the headlights to dazzle or distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- The headlight range control should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. ◁

Interior and reading lights

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 126.

Button	Function
	Switches the front and rear interior lights on or off.
REAR	Switches the rear interior lights on and off.
	Switches the door contact switch on and off. The interior lights are switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or a door is opened.
/	Switches the reading lights on and off.
	Depends on the vehicle equipment level: switches between maximum display brightness and set display brightness of the ambient lighting in the roof console → page 135.

Lights in the stowage compartments and luggage compartment

A light will be switched on and off automatically when the stowage compartment on the front passenger side, or the boot lid, is opened or closed.

The lights switch off when the vehicle is locked or after a few minutes once the ignition has been switched off. This prevents the battery from discharging. ◁

Light functions

Light functions

Parking light

When the parking lights (left and right turn signals) are switched on, the headlight on the corresponding side of the vehicle lights up along with the tail light and parts of the tail light cluster.

Side lights

If the light switch is in position ≫ both headlights with side lights light up, along with parts of the rear light cluster, the number plate lighting and the buttons in the centre console and the dash panel. The daytime running lights also switch on when the ignition is switched on.

If the vehicle is **not** locked from outside, and the ignition is switched off, the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle switches on automatically after 10 minutes to reduce vehicle battery discharge → page 131.

Continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle

Both headlights with side lights and parts of the rear light cluster light up if a continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle is switched on.

Turning on continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle:

- Turn light switch to position ≫.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Locking the vehicle from outside.

Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

The side lights and parking lights drain the vehicle battery. The side lights and parking lights are switched off automatically to ensure that the engine can be restarted if the battery charge level is so low that a restart may be difficult. The side lights and parking lights are switched off after 2 hours at the earliest → ▲.

Depending on the equipment level, a new, fully charged vehicle battery contains enough power for the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle to be switched on for 5 to 20 hours, and the parking light on one side to be on for 10 to 40 hours. All vehicle batteries deteriorate with age, depending on how they are used and their service life, which results in a reduction of their capacity. This affects the activation duration of the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle and the parking light on one side.

The side lights and parking lights will not switch off automatically if there is insufficient battery capacity for them to remain switched on for 2 hours. In this case, the side lights and parking lights will remain switched on until the vehicle battery is fully discharged. It will no longer be possible to restart the engine → ▲. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Recommendations when parking the vehicle in darkness:

- If the vehicle lighting is required for several hours, switch on the right or left parking light if possible. The activation duration of the one-sided parking light is generally double that of the continuous parking light on both sides.
- Always park the vehicle securely and with sufficient lighting. Observe any applicable country-specific legal requirements → ⚠.

Lane change flash

To operate the lane change flash, push the lever up or down to the point where you incur resistance and then release the lever. The turn signal flashes 3 times.

To cancel the lane change flash, immediately move the lever in the opposite direction up to the pressure point and then release it.

The lane change flash can be activated and deactivated using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Light function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Daytime running lights

There are separate lights in the headlights or in the front bumper for the daytime running lights. The daytime running lights cannot be switched on or off manually → ⚠.

When the light switch is in position **0**, ≫ or **AUTO**, the daytime running lights are switched on every time the ignition is switched on.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the rain/light sensor will switch the dipped beam and the lighting in the instruments and switches on and off automatically to match the ambient light conditions.

Automatic headlight control AUTO

The automatic headlight control is merely an aid and will not always be able to detect all driving situations.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the vehicle lights and the lighting in instruments and switches will switch on and off automatically → ⚠:

Automatic switch-on: when the rain/light sensor detects rain or darkness, e.g. when driving through a tunnel or in twilight.

Automatic switch-off: when the rain/light sensor detects that there is enough light or the wipers have not been used for a few minutes.

If the front or rear fog lights are switched on while the automatic headlight control **AUTO** is running, the dipped beam headlights will also be switched on irrespective of the current light conditions outside.

Dynamic cornering light (AFS)

When driving round bends, the road is automatically better lit by the swivelling bulbs. The dynamic cornering light only works at speeds above approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) and when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the swivelling motion of the lights. For example, the dynamic cornering light is deactivated in the **Eco** driving profile → page 183.

The dynamic cornering light does not work when travel mode → page 135 is activated.

If fitted, dynamic cornering light can be activated and deactivated using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Light function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Static cornering light

When cornering slowly or travelling around very tight bends, a static cornering light is switched on automatically. The static cornering light is integrated into either the fog light or the front headlight, and only lights up at speeds below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

When reverse gear is engaged, the static cornering light on both sides of the vehicle may switch on to provide better illumination of the area when manoeuvring.

Signal tones if lights are not switched off

When the ignition has been switched off and the driver door is opened, acoustic warnings will sound under the following conditions:

- If the parking light is switched on → page 128, → page 131,
- If the light switch is in position ≫ or 0⇟.

When the Coming Home function is switched on, no signal tone will be given as a reminder that a light is still switched on when the driver door is opened.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with daytime running lights if the street is not sufficiently lit due to weather and lighting conditions.

- The daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.
- The rear lights will not be switched on with the daytime running lights. If the rear lights are not switched on, the vehicle may not be visible to other road users if it is dark, raining, or if visibility is poor.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic headlight control (**AUTO**) switches the dipped beam headlights on only when there is a change to the level of brightness.

- Switch the dipped beam on manually in certain weather conditions, e.g. fog.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if the vehicle is parked without sufficient illumination, as other road users might have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or may not see it at all.

- Always park the vehicle securely and with sufficient lighting. Observe any applicable, country-specific legal requirements.

The headlights on vehicles with dynamic cornering light swivel from side to side to illumuniate the road more effectively while driving, regardless of whether the vehicle is cornering or not.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 78. ◁

Main beam control

Main beam assist can help to prevent other road users from being dazzled.

The function is controlled by a camera located on the inside of the windscreen above the interior mirror.

Within the limits of the system, the main beam control automatically switches the main beam on at speeds of over approximately 60 km/h (37 mph), depending on environmental and traffic conditions, and switches it off again at speeds under approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) → ⚠

Main beam assist normally recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates the main beam while driving through them.

Switching on main beam control

- Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch to position **AUTO** as required.
- Push the turn signal and main beam lever forwards from its basic position → page 128.

When the main beam control or the dynamic main beam control is activated, the indicator lamp ≫D on the instrument cluster display lights up.

Switching off main beam control

- Switch off the ignition.
- **OR:** turn the light switch to a position other than **AUTO** → page 128.
- **OR:** with the main beam switched on, pull the turn signal and main beam lever backwards.
- **OR:** push the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to switch on the manual main beam. The main beam assist is then switched off.

Main beam assist (Light Assist)

Main beam control switches the main beam on and off automatically.

Dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)

The system detects other road users and their distance from your vehicle and covers part of the headlights appropriately. If dazzling other road users cannot be prevented, the light distribution is automatically set to dipped beam headlights.

The main beam is only switched on and off automatically in the following situations:

- When the dynamic cornering light is deactivated → page 132.
- **OR:** travel mode is activated → page 135.
- **OR:** when the **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicle with driving profile selection → page 183.

If fitted, dynamic main beam control can be activated and deactivated using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Light function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

System limits

The main beam must be switched off manually in the following situations because main beam control is unable to switch it off quickly enough or at all:

- In poorly lit streets where there are highly-reflective signs.
- When encountering other road users with insufficient lighting, such as pedestrians or cyclists.
- In tight bends, brows of hills or depressions in the land or half-hidden oncoming traffic.
- With oncoming traffic on streets with a central barrier where the driver can see clearly over the central barrier e.g. lorry drivers.
- If the camera is broken or the power supply is interrupted.
- In fog, snow or heavy rain.
- In dusty or sandy areas.
- Damage to the windscreen in the camera's vision field.
- If the viewing field of the camera is misted up, dirty, covered by a sticker, snow or ice.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the extra convenience afforded by main beam control tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Always check the lights yourself and adjust them to the prevailing conditions for lights, vision and road traffic.
- The main beam control may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly and may not work properly in certain situations.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the main beam assist may be impaired. This also applies if changes are made to the vehicle's lighting system, for example if additional headlights are fitted.

! NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Regularly check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.

Light-emitting objects in the camera's field of operation, e.g. mobile navigation devices, could impair the functions of the dynamic main beam control (Light Assist).

Coming Home and Leaving Home functions (orientation lighting)

The "Coming Home" and "Leaving Home" functions illuminate the area immediately around the vehicle when entering and exiting the vehicle in darkness.

The Coming Home function is switched on manually. However, the Leaving Home function is controlled automatically by a rain/light sensor.

Switching on the "Coming Home" function

- Switch off the ignition.
- Activate the headlight flasher for approximately one second → page 128.

The "Coming Home" lighting is switched on when the driver door is opened. The *switch-off delay* starts when the last vehicle door or the boot lid has been closed.

Switching off the "Coming Home" function

- Automatically after the set switch-off delay has elapsed.
- **OR:** automatically if a vehicle door or the boot lid is opened approximately 30 seconds after switch-on.
- **OR:** turn the light switch to position **0**.
- **OR:** switch on the ignition.

Switching on the "Leaving Home" function

- -Unlock the vehicle when the light sensor is in position **AUTO** and the rain/light sensor detects *darkness*.

Switching off the "Leaving Home" function

- Automatically after the switch-off delay.
- **OR:** lock the vehicle.
- **OR:** turn the light switch to position **0**.
- **OR:** switch on the ignition.

The length of the switch-off delay can be adjusted, or the function can be activated or deactivated, using the CAR button and the and Light function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Background lighting

In some models, the background lighting provides indirect light in the following areas of the vehicle interior:

- Interior lights with background light in the roof console
- Illuminated front and rear door lever
- Decorative trim at front and rear
- Illuminated front and rear door handles
- Front footwell lighting

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the brightness, and in some cases colour, of the background lighting can be adjusted via the CAR button and the and Background lighting function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, briefly press the button in the roof console to increase or decrease the brightness of the background lighting in the roof console. The brightness of the background lighting can be adjusted using the CAR button and the and Background lighting function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Headlights

Switching over headlights for driving abroad (travel mode)

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore the headlights need to be switched over when you travel to these countries.

The headlight alignment on vehicles with dynamic main beam control can be adjusted using the CAR button and the and Light function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78 (travel mode).

The function of the dynamic cornering light → page 132, *Dynamic cornering light (AFS)* and dynamic main beam control → page 133, *Dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)* is deactivated once the travel mode is activated. The main beam is then only switched on and off automatically.

Travel mode may only be used for a short period. Please contact a qualified workshop for a permanent alteration. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

LED lights on the vehicles

The following lights may use LEDs:

- Brake light, rear fog light and reversing light in the tail light clusters in the boot lid.
- Brake light, turn signal and reversing light in the tail lights in the rear bodywork.
- Dipped beam, main beam, daytime running lights, side lights and turn signal in vehicles with LED headlights.
- Number plate lights.

Owners cannot replace the LEDs themselves. If individual LEDs fail, this may be an indication that more elements are on the point of failure. If this happens, have the lights checked and replaced if necessary at a qualified workshop.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Visibility

Wipers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Indicator lamps 136
- Windscreen wiper lever 136
- Wiper function 137
- Rain/light sensor 138

WARNING

Without adequate anti-freeze, the washer fluid may freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view.

- In winter temperatures, the windscreen washer system should only be used when adequate frost protection has been added.
- Never use the window washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system or the windscreen heating. This could lead to the anti-freeze mixture freezing on the windscreen and restrict the driver's vision.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreens properly.

NOTICE

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers. When parking the vehicle in cold weather, it may be helpful to leave the front windscreen wipers in the service position → page 328.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 78.

Indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

Washer fluid level too low. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible → page 354.

Fault in the rain/light sensor. Switch the ignition on and off. Seek expert assistance if the indicator lamp lights up permanently after you switch on the ignition.

Fault in windscreen wipers. Switch the ignition on and off. Seek expert assistance if the indicator lamp lights up permanently after you switch on the ignition.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Windscreen wiper lever

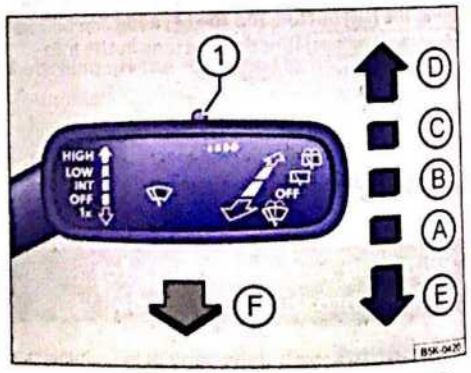


Fig. 120 On the steering column, right: operating the front windscreen wipers.



Fig. 121 On the steering column, right: operating the rear window wiper (Estate).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

Move the lever into the required position → ⓘ:

Ⓐ OFF Wipers switched off.

Ⓑ INT Interval wipe for the windscreen or rain/light sensor mode. The interval wipe for the windscreen depends on the speed of the vehicle. The wipers will wipe more frequently as the vehicle moves faster.

Ⓒ LOW Slow wipe.

Ⓓ HIGH Fast wipe.

Ⓔ 1x Flick wipe – wipes briefly. Push and hold the lever down for longer to wipe more quickly.

Ⓕ Pulling the lever activates the wash and wipe system for cleaning the windscreen. The Climatronic will switch to air recirculation mode for approximately 30 seconds to prevent the smell of the windscreen washer fluid from entering the vehicle interior.

① Use the switch to set the interval lengths (vehicles without a rain/light sensor) or adjust the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor.

Estate only: move the lever to the desired position → ⓘ:

Ⓖ Interval wipe for the rear window. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.

Ⓗ Push the lever to activate the wash and wipe system for cleaning the rear window.

The windscreen wipers will only function when the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot lid are closed.

Estate only: automatic activation upon engaging the reverse gear can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Mirrors and wipers function buttons → page 78.

NOTICE

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wiper is still switched on, the windscreen wiper will continue to wipe on the same setting when the ignition is switched on again. Frost, snow and other obstructions on the windscreen can cause damage to the wipers and wiper motor.

- Remove any snow and ice from the wipers before setting off.
- Carefully loosen wiper blades that have frozen onto the glass. Volkswagen recommends using a de-icer spray for this.

NOTICE

Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry. Using the wipers when the glass is dry can damage the glass.

Estate only: the rear window wiper is switched on automatically if the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

The wipers will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wipers will stop moving if the obstacle blocks their path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wipers back on again.

Wiper function

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

Windscreen wiper response when the vehicle is stationary

When switched on, the wipers will temporarily be switched to the next setting down.

Heated washer jets

The heating defrosts frozen washer fluid jets. The heating level is regulated automatically according to the ambient temperature when the engine is switched on. Only the jets are heated, not the hoses that the washer fluid flows through.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Headlight washer system

The headlight washer system cleans the headlight lenses and only works when the vehicle lighting is switched on.

Once the ignition has been switched on, the headlights will be washed the first time the windscreen wash and wipe system is used, and every tenth time thereafter. It is important to remove ingrained dirt, such as insect marks, from the headlight lenses at regular intervals.

In winter, we recommend you remove any snow from the headlight washer system covers in the bumpers to make sure it is in working order. Remove any ice with a de-icer spray.

Rain/light sensor

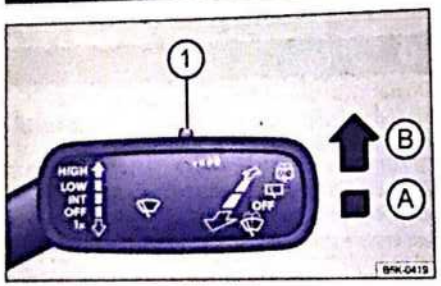


Fig. 122 On the windscreen wiper lever on the steering column, right: setting the rain/light sensor ①.

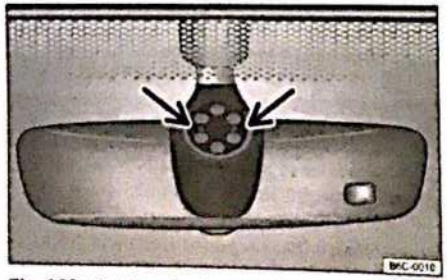


Fig. 123 On the windscreen above the interior mirror: sensitive surfaces of the rain/light sensor.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 136.

When the rain/light sensor is activated, it automatically controls the frequency of the wiper intervals, depending on the intensity of the rain.

If the rain/light sensor is deactivated, the intervals are set at fixed levels.

Activating and deactivating the rain/light sensor

Push the lever to the desired position → Fig. 122:

- Position Ⓐ - the rain/light sensor is deactivated.
- Position Ⓑ - the rain/light sensor is active; automatic wipe when necessary.

The rain/light sensor will remain active after the ignition is switched off and back on again and will function again if the windscreen wiper lever is in position Ⓑ and if the vehicle is travelling at speeds above 4 km/h (2 mph).

The automatic wipe function can be activated and deactivated using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Mirrors and wipers function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor

The sensitivity of the rain/light sensor can be adjusted manually using the switch in the wiper lever → Fig. 122 ① → ▲.

- Switch to the right – high sensitivity.
- Switch to the left – low sensitivity.

Changes in the activation of the rain/light sensor

Possible causes for faults and misinterpretations *relating to the sensitive surfaces* → Fig. 123 (arrows) of the rain/light sensor may include:

- **Damaged wiper blades:** a film of water or smears caused by damaged wiper blades can increase the time the wipers are switched on, shorten the length of the intervals between wipes, or cause the wipers to run quickly and continuously.
- **Insects:** insects hitting the windscreen surface can cause the wipers to be activated.
- **Salt deposits:** in winter, salt deposits can cause the wipers to continue to wipe the windscreen when it is almost dry.
- **Dirt:** dry dust, wax, windscreen coatings (lotus effect), or detergent deposits (from a car wash) can cause the rain/light sensor to become less sensitive and react too slowly, or prevent it from reacting at all.
- **Crack in the windscreen:** a wipe cycle will be triggered if the rain/light sensor is on when the windscreen is impacted by a stone. The rain/light sensor will then register the reduction in sensitivity of the surfaces and adjust accordingly. The size of the crack can affect the way in which the rain/light sensor activates the wipers.

Regularly clean the sensitive surfaces of the rain/light sensor → Fig. 123 (arrows) and inspect the wiper blades for damage.

⚠ WARNING

The rain/light sensor cannot always detect every rain shower and activate the windscreen wipers.

- If necessary, switch on the windscreen wiper manually if the water on the windscreen restricts the field of vision.

ⓘ We recommend that you use an alcohol-based glass cleaner to remove wax and polish.

Mirrors

🕮 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Interior mirror 140
- Exterior mirrors 141

You can use the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror to observe traffic behind you and adjust driving style accordingly.

For safety reasons it is important that the driver positions the exterior and interior mirrors correctly before starting a journey → ▲.

Looking in the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror does not allow the driver to see the entire side and rear area of the vehicle. The area that cannot be seen is known as the blind spot. There may be objects and other road users in the blind spot.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the exterior and interior mirrors while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Exterior and interior mirrors should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.
- When parking, changing lane, or performing an overtaking or turning manoeuvre, always pay careful attention to the area around the vehicle as objects and other road users may be located in the blind spot.
- Always ensure that the mirrors are positioned correctly and that the rear view is not restricted by ice, snow, condensation or any other objects.

⚠ WARNING

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the mirror is broken.

- The leaking electrolyte fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, especially in people who suffer from asthma or similar illnesses. Immediately ensure that there is a sufficient supply of fresh air and get out of the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all of the windows and doors.
- If the electrolyte fluid gets into the eyes or onto the skin, immediately wash the area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If the electrolyte fluid gets onto shoes or clothing, wash immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean shoes and clothes thoroughly before wearing them again.
- If the electrolyte fluid is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

NOTICE

If the glass of an automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken, electrolyte fluid can leak from the mirror. This fluid corrodes plastic surfaces. Remove the fluid as soon as possible, e.g. using a wet sponge.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 78.

Interior mirror

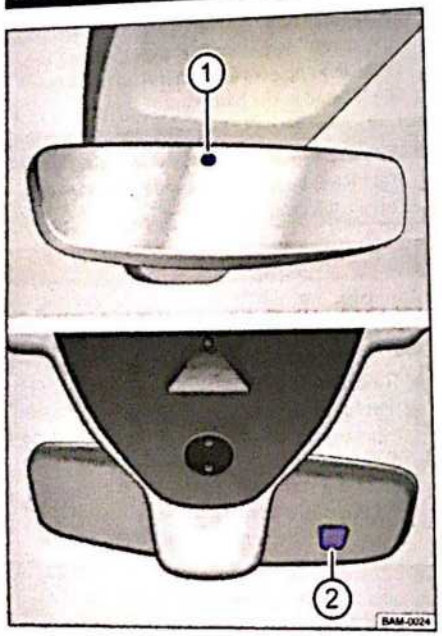


Fig. 124 On the windscreen: automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

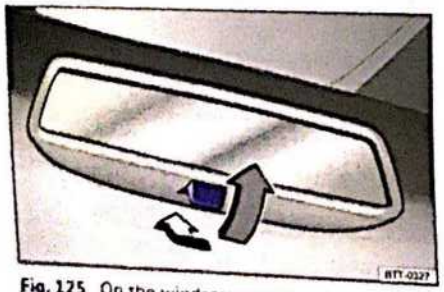


Fig. 125 On the windscreen: manual anti-dazzle interior mirror.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 139.

The driver must adjust the interior mirror so that they can see clearly through the rear window.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors measure the light from the rear → Fig. 124 ① and from the front ②.

The interior mirror darkens *automatically* according to the amount of light measured.

If the light on the sensors is hindered or interrupted, e.g. by a sunblind, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror will not function or will not function correctly. Mobile navigation systems fitted to the windscreen or near the interior automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror can also affect the sensors → ▲.

The automatic anti-dazzle function is deactivated when the reverse gear is selected.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

- Basic position: the lever on the lower part of the mirror is pointing towards the windscreen.
- Pull the lever backwards to select the anti-dazzle function → Fig. 125.

WARNING

The illuminated display from a mobile navigation system can cause the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror to malfunction, which can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- You may not be able to precisely determine the distance from vehicles travelling behind you or from other objects if the automatic anti-dazzle function is impaired.

Exterior mirrors

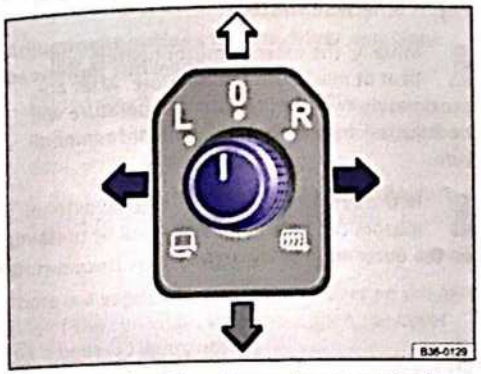


Fig. 126 In the driver door: rotary knob for the exterior mirrors.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 139.

The exterior mirrors can be adjusted using the rotary knob in the driver door → Fig. 126 when the ignition is switched on.

- Electrically fold in the exterior mirrors → ▲.
- Switch on the exterior mirror heating. Will only heat at ambient temperatures below +20°C (+68°F).
- **L** Tap and hold the rotary knob to set the left exterior mirror to the front, rear, right or left.
- **R** Tap and hold the rotary knob up or down or left or right to set the right exterior mirror.
- **0** Neutral position. Exterior mirrors are folded out, exterior window heating is switched off. It is not possible to adjust the exterior mirrors.

Synchronised mirror adjustment

- Select synchronised adjustment of the exterior mirrors using the CAR button and the ◉ and Mirrors and wipers function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.
- Turn the rotary knob to the L position.
- Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror. The right-hand exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).
- If necessary, correct the settings for the right-hand mirror by turning the rotary knob to the R position.

3G0012720AC

Automatic anti-dazzle exterior mirror on the driver side

The automatic anti-dazzle exterior mirror is controlled together with the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror → page 140.

Folding in the exterior mirrors while parking

The rotary knob for the electric exterior mirrors must be in ⊟, **L**, **R** or **0** position for automatic folding in and out of the mirrors.

- While parking select the option that the exterior mirror is folded in by selecting the CAR button and ◉ and Mirrors and wipers in the Infotainment system → page 78.
- The exterior mirrors fold in automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside.
- The exterior mirrors fold out automatically if the vehicle is unlocked from the outside.

The exterior mirrors will remain folded in if the rotary knob for the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors is in the fold-in position ⊟.

Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

In vehicles fitted with seats with memory function → page 123, the front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing can be saved as follows:

- Select a valid vehicle key to which the settings should be assigned.
- Unlock the vehicle using this key.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.
- To activate the reverse gear exterior mirror lowering function, press the CAR button and the ◉ and Mirrors and wipers function buttons in the Infotainment system → page 78.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area.
- The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle.

Scanned by CamScanner

Selecting the settings for the front passenger exterior mirror

- Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors to position R.
- With the ignition switched on, engage reverse gear and the right-hand exterior mirror will move to the stored position.
- The front passenger exterior mirror will move out of the position saved for reversing when the vehicle is driven forwards faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or when the rotary knob is moved out of position R into another position.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries can be sustained if you do not take care when folding the exterior mirrors in and out.

- Only fold the exterior mirrors in or out when there are no obstacles in the path of the mirror.
- Always ensure that no fingers are caught between the exterior mirror and the foot of the mirror when the exterior mirror is moved.

⚠ WARNING

If you estimate the distance from traffic behind you incorrectly, you can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Curved mirrors (convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and can make objects in the mirror seem smaller and further away than they actually are.
- Using curved mirrors to estimate the distance from other vehicles behind you when changing lanes can provide inaccurate results and can lead to accidents and severe injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the interior mirror to check the exact distance from vehicles behind you or from other objects.
- Ensure that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- Always fold in exterior mirrors before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not fold electrically folding exterior mirrors in or out manually as this can damage the electric motor.

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.

Initially, the exterior mirror heating will heat at maximum temperature. After approximately two minutes, the temperature will be adjusted according to the ambient temperature.

In the event of a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the outer edge of the mirror. ◁

Protection from the sun

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Sun visors 142
- Sun blind in glass roof (Estate) 143
- Sunblind for the rear side windows 144
- Sunblind for the rear window 144
- Windscreen made of heat-insulating glass 145

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the sun visors folded down and the sunblinds pulled out can reduce your view of the road.

- Sun visors and sunblinds should always be replaced in their holder if they are not being used. ◁

Sun visors

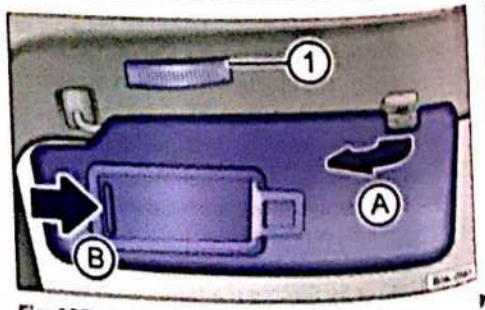


Fig. 127 In the front headliner: sun visor.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 142.

Adjustment options for the driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Folded down over the windscreen.
- Pull out of the bracket and swing towards the door → Fig. 127 Ⓐ.
- If the sun visor is positioned over the door, it can be pushed back towards the rear.

Illuminated vanity mirror

There is a vanity mirror behind a cover on the inside of the sun visor. When you open the cover Ⓑ, a light ① lights up.

The vanity mirror lighting goes out in the following situations:

- The cover is closed.
- The sun visor is swivelled upwards or all the way forward.
- The sun visor is moved longitudinally or is not inserted fully.

In certain circumstances, the lamp above the sun visor will go out automatically after a few minutes. This prevents the battery from discharging. ◁

Sun blind in glass roof (Estate)

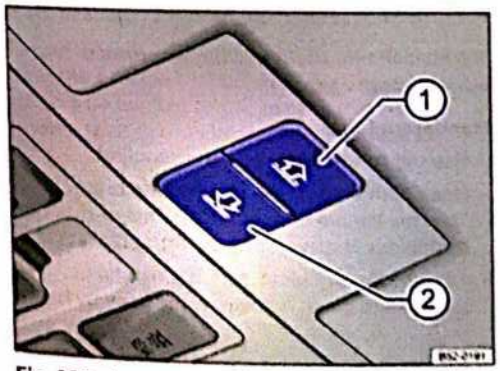


Fig. 128 In the headliner: button for controlling the sun blind.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 142.

The electric sun blind works when the ignition is switched on.

When the glass roof is fully tilted, the sun blind is automatically moved to a ventilation position. The sun blind remains in the ventilation position even when the glass roof is closed.

Opening and closing the sun blind

Buttons → Fig. 128 ① and ② have 2 positions. In the first position the sun blind can be completely or partially opened or closed.

In the second position, the sun blind automatically moves to the final position when the button is pressed briefly. Press the button again to stop the one-touch function.

- *Opening the sun blind:* Push button ① to position 1. One-touch function: Push the button ① briefly to position 2.
- *Closing the sun blind:* Push button ② to position 1. One-touch function: Push the button ② briefly to position 2.
- *Stopping one-stop function of the opening or closing procedure:* Push button ① or ② again.

The sun blind can be operated several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.

Sub blind roll-back function

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of crush injury when closing the sun blind → ⚠. The glass roof or the sun blind will open again immediately if the sun blind is unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed.

- Check to see why the sun blind has not closed.
- Try to close the sun blind again.
- If the sun blind is still stiff or obstructed when closing, it will open again immediately. After opening, the sun blind can be closed again within a short period of time without the roll-back function.
- If the sun blind still cannot be closed, close it without the roll-back function. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Closing the sunblind without the roll-back function

- Within approximately 5 seconds of the roll-back function being switched off, press and hold button ② until the sunblind has closed completely.
- **The sunblind will now close without the roll-back function.**
- Go to a qualified workshop if the sun blind still cannot be closed.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the sun blind without the roll-back function can cause serious injuries.

- Always close the sun blind carefully.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the sun blind, especially if the roll-back function is not active.
- The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the roof frame and sustaining injury.

When the glass roof is open, the electrical sun blind can be closed only up to the front edge of the glass roof. ◁

Sunblind for the rear side windows

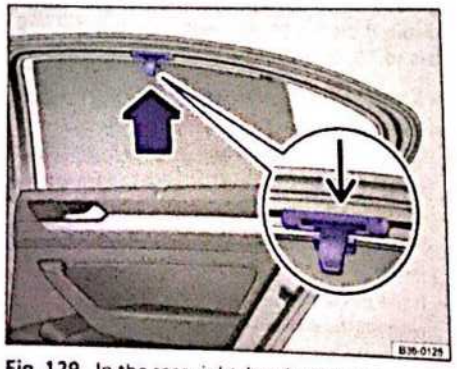


Fig. 129 In the rear right-hand window: sunblind.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 142.

The sunblinds for the rear side windows are fitted in the door trim at each window.

- Use the protruding handle → Fig. 129 (close-up) to fully pull up the sun blind in the direction of the arrow.
- Hook both rings on the bar into the bracket → Fig. 129 (small arrow). Ensure that the sunblind is secured firmly in the bracket.
- To close the sun blind, unhook it at the top and guide it down by hand → ⓘ.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the sunblind and interior trim, do not let the sunblind snap down quickly. ◁

Sunblind for the rear window

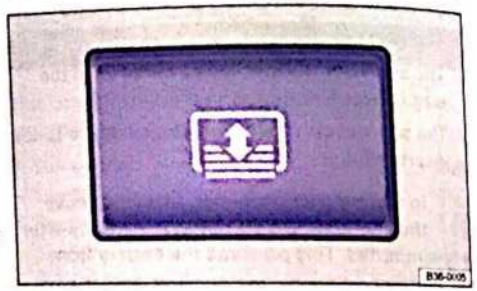


Fig. 130 In the centre console: button for the electric sunblind for the rear window.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 142.

The sunblind for the rear window protects against intense sunshine.

Manual sunblind

- Use the handle to pull up the sunblind.
- Hook both ends of the bar into the brackets. Turn the handle down slightly. Ensure that the sunblind is secured firmly in both brackets.
- To close the sun blind, turn the handle up slightly and guide it down to the base by hand → ⓘ.

Electric sunblind

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the button to open or close the sunblind. The sunblind will move to the corresponding end position.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the sunblind and interior trim, do not let a manual sunblind "snap" down. ◁

Windscreen made of heat-insulating glass

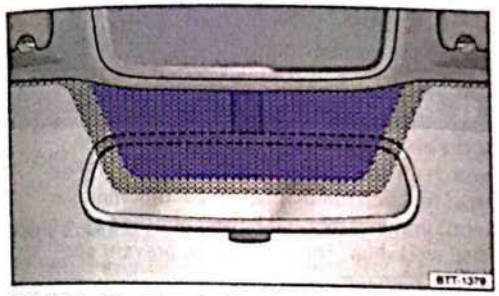


Fig. 131 Heat-insulating glass windscreen: communication window above the interior mirror.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 142.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, windscreens made of heat-insulating glass may have an infrared-reflecting coating and can be heated.

There is a non-coated area above the interior mirror (communication window) → Fig. 131 which ensures that electronic accessories can operate properly, for example remote controls.

The uncoated area should not be covered either from the outside or the inside, nor should any stickers be applied to this area as this could cause a fault in the electronic components. ◁

Heating and fresh air system and air conditioning system

Heating and fresh air system, ventilation, cooling system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Operation using the controls in the front 146
- Climatronic operation using the Infotainment system 148
- Setting the temperature for the rear seats 149
- Vents 149
- Air recirculation mode 150
- Seat heating and seat ventilation 151
- Windscreen heating 152
- Steering wheel heating 153
- Tips and general information 153

Your vehicle may be equipped with one of the following systems:

- Heating and fresh air system or
- Manual air conditioning system or
- Climatronic.

The heating and fresh air system warms up and supplies fresh air to the vehicle interior. The heating and fresh air system does not cool down the vehicle interior.

Both the **manual air conditioning system** and **Climatronic** cool and dehumidify the air. They work most effectively with the windows and the glass roof closed. Ventilating may accelerate the cooling process if heat has built up inside the vehicle.

Display of activated functions

Illuminated LEDs on the rotary controls and buttons indicate that a function is activated.

If the checkbox in a function button is ticked ☑ on the Infotainment system, the function is switched on. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

WARNING

Poor visibility through the door windows, rear window and windscreen increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can cause serious injuries.

- Keep all door windows, the rear window and the windscreen clear of ice, snow and mist so as to retain good visibility.
- Adjust the heating and fresh air system, air conditioning system, windscreen and rear window heating to prevent condensation on the door windows, windscreen and rear window.
- Only drive off once the door windows, rear window and windscreen are clear.
- Use the air recirculation mode only for a brief period of time. If the cooling system is switched off, the door windows, rear window and windscreen can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.
- Switch the air recirculation mode off when it is not required.

WARNING

Stale air can quickly make the driver tired and affect their concentration, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never switch off the blowers or switch on the air recirculation mode for an extended period as this prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle interior.

NOTICE

If the air conditioning system is not working, switch off the air conditioning system and defrost function (on manual air conditioning systems) immediately and have it checked by a qualified workshop. This can help to prevent secondary damage.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 54.

Operation using the controls in the front

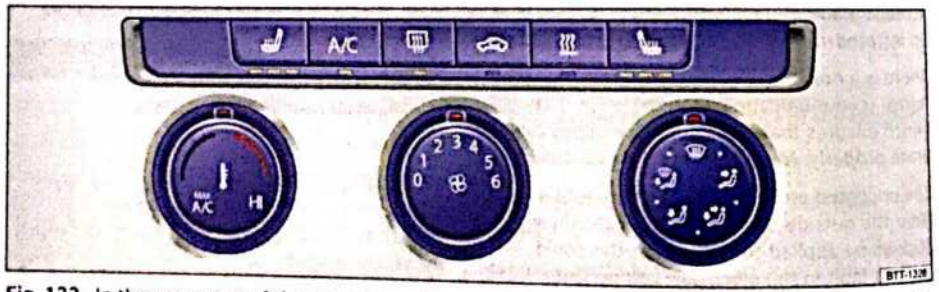


Fig. 132 In the upper part of the centre console: controls for the manual air conditioning system and/or heating and fresh air system.

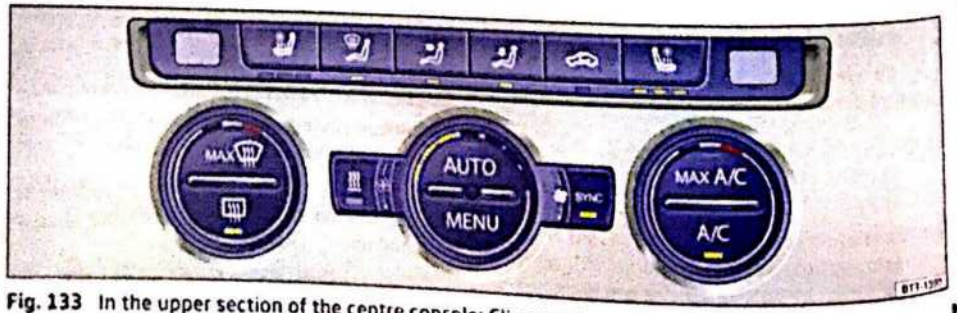


Fig. 133 In the upper section of the centre console: Climatronic controls.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

Some functions and buttons are available only with certain equipment levels and with certain types of installed systems.

Switching off

The systems are switched off as follows:

- With the OFF button (vehicles without auxiliary heater).
- **OR:** by turning the middle rotary control anticlockwise to position ▮ → Fig. 132 or as far as it will go → Fig. 133.
- **OR:** using the Infotainment system → page 148.

A/C – Cooling mode

Switch the cooling mode on and off for the manual air conditioning system or Climatronic using the A/C button.

AUTO – Automatic mode

Switch the automatic mode on and off for Climatronic using the AUTO button.

The automatic mode ensures that the vehicle interior is kept at a constant temperature. Air temperature, the volume of air and air distribution are controlled automatically. The automatic mode switches off as soon as you manually alter the ventilation.

MAX A/C – Maximum cooling output

Switch on the maximum cooling output by turning the left rotary control to position MAX A/C or by pressing the MAX A/C button. The air recirculation mode switches on automatically.

For Climatronic, the air distribution is set to position .

■/■ – Temperature

Heating and fresh air system or manual air conditioning system: adjust the temperature using the left rotary control → Fig. 132.

Climatronic: adjust the temperatures for the driver and front passenger side using the outer rotary controls → Fig. 133. The displays above the outer rotary controls show the temperatures set. Depending on the equipment level, you can also adjust the temperature for the rear seats → page 149.

❀ – Blowers

Adjust the blower speed using the centre rotary control.

Climatronic: the blower speed is not indicated on the rotary control when the system is being regulated automatically.

Air distribution

Adjust the air distribution using the , or buttons → Fig. 133, or using the right rotary control → Fig. 132.

: air distribution to the upper body via the vents in the dash panel.

: air distribution to footwell.

: air distribution to the upper body and the footwell.

: air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.

: air distribution to the windscreen.

– Defrosting the windscreen/the windows

Use the right rotary control → Fig. 132 or the button → Fig. 133 to defrost the windscreen as quickly as possible and clear condensation from the windows (defrost function):

Manual air conditioning system: in the defrost function, the air recirculation mode switches off and the air conditioning compressor of the cooling system switches on in order to dehumidify the air. Air recirculation mode cannot be switched on and the air conditioning compressor cannot be switched off while the defrost function is switched on[1].

Climatronic: dehumidifies the air at temperatures above +3°C (+38°F) and sets the blower to a high blower speed.

– Air recirculation mode

Press the button to switch air recirculation mode on and off → page 150.

MENU – Infotainment system

You can access the air conditioning settings for Climatronic in the Infotainment system using the MENU button → page 148.

3G0012720AC

[1] Depending on the country, the air conditioning compressor can be switched off.

Scanned by CamScanner

SYNC – Synchronising the temperature settings

Use the SYNC button to synchronise the temperature settings.

When the indicator lamp in the SYNC button lights up, the temperature settings for the driver's seat are applied for all seats.

REST – Residual heat

Use the REST button to switch the residual heat function of Climatronic on and off.

If the ignition is switched off and the engine is warm, the residual heat from the engine is used to continue to heat the vehicle interior. The function switches off after 30 minutes and in case of low battery.

– Seat heating and seat ventilation

Use the or buttons to switch the seat heating and seat ventilation on and off → page 151.

– Immediate heat button for the auxiliary heater

Press the button to switch the immediate heat function of the auxiliary heater on and off → page 154.

– Rear window heating

Use the button to switch the rear window heating on and off when the engine is running. The rear window heating switches off automatically after 10 minutes at the latest.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear window heating, do not put stickers on the inside of the vehicle over the heating elements. ◁

Climatronic operation using the Infotainment system

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

Opening the Air conditioning menu

Press the button on the control panel.

Display of air conditioning settings

The current air conditioning settings area shown in the top part of the screen.

Cooling system operating conditions are highlighted in colour:

- Blue: cooling.
- Red: heating.
- Grey: ventilation (without heating or cooling).

Operation using the Infotainment system

Adjusting settings

- **OFF** – Switch Climatronic on and off.
- **SYNC** – apply temperature settings of driver's seat to all seats.
- **REAR** – the temperature selectors at the rear are disabled → page 149.
- **Air Care** – switches on and off → page 150.
- – opens the auxiliary heater menu → page 154.
- – switches windscreen heating on and off → page 152.
- – switches steering wheel heating on and off → page 153.
- – adjusts seat heating and seat ventilation → page 151.
- – submenu for general settings:
  - Automatic auxiliary heater – allows or suppresses auxiliary heating functions → page 309.
  - Automatic air recirculation – switches automatic air recirculation mode on and off → page 150.
  - Automatic windscreen heating – switches automatic windscreen heating on and off.
  - – closes the submenu.
- – submenu for air conditioning settings:
  - – blower level.
  - **A/C** – switches cooling system on and off.
  - – air distribution.
  - – switch air recirculation mode on and off. ▶

- Presettings – submenu for presettings:
  - **AUTO** – switch on automatic mode.
  - **MAX A/C** – switch maximum cooling output on or off.
  - **MAX** – switch defrost function on or off.
  - **Manuell** – display for manual control of the cooling system.
- Air con. profile – blower level setting in **AUTO** mode. You can choose between **Low**, **Medium** and **High**. ◁

Setting the temperature for the rear seats

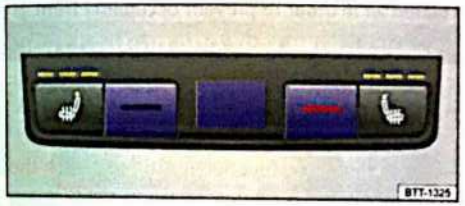


Fig. 134 In the rear centre console: controls for setting the temperature for the rear seats.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

Set the temperature for the rear seats using the or → Fig. 134 buttons or using the Infotainment system.

- Open the **Air conditioning** menu in the Infotainment system.
- Touch the function button for the temperature of the rear seat row.
- Adjust the temperature by means of the or function buttons.
- Touch the function button for the temperature of the rear seat row once more.

The display now shows the set temperature.

If the function button has been activated on the Infotainment system the rear controls are locked. It is no longer possible to adjust the temperature and increase the power of the seat heating. ◁

Vents

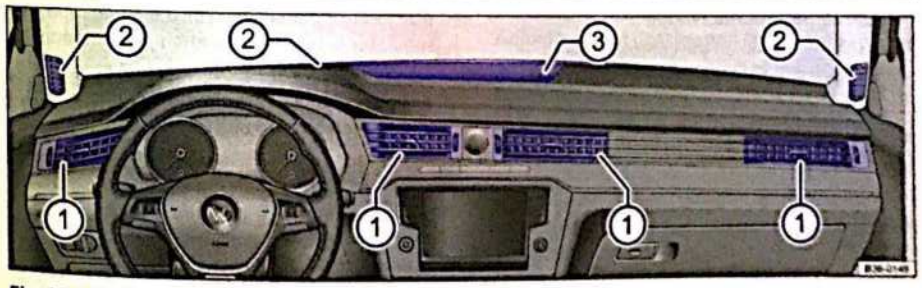


Fig. 135 In the dash panel: vents.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

The vents should be left open to ensure that the vehicle interior is sufficiently heated, ventilated and cooled. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Key to Fig. 135:

① Adjustable vents: turn the thumb wheel in the desired direction to open and close the vents. The vent is closed when at the ▶ position. Adjust the air flow direction using the grip on the air intake grille.

② Non-adjustable vents.

③ Vent for draught-free ventilation: the automatic mode of Climatronic regulates the draught-free ventilation mode.

Further vents can be found in the footwells and in the rear area of the vehicle interior.

NOTICE

Do not place any food, medicine or any other temperature-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless. ◁

Air recirculation mode

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

In air recirculation mode, no fresh air enters the vehicle interior.

Manual air recirculation mode

Press the button on the control panel to switch the manual air recirculation mode on or off.

Automatic air recirculation mode (Climatronic only)

In automatic air recirculation mode, fresh air will enter the vehicle interior. The air recirculation mode will switch on automatically if the system detects an increase in the concentration of noxious substances in the outside air. The air recirculation mode will switch off as soon as the level of noxious substances has returned to normal. The system cannot detect unpleasant odours.

– Press the MENU button on the control panel.
– Touch the function button on the Infotainment system.
– Switch the automatic recirculation mode on or off by touching the Automatic air recirculation function button.

Air recirculation mode with Air Care Climatronic

The vehicle is fitted with an allergen filter. The Climatronic Air Care function can further enhance the effect of the allergen filter. When activated, the air conditioning system's air circulation mode is maximised as far as permitted by the risk of condensation forming on the windows, depending on the interior moisture level and the outside temperature. The regulation of the proportion of recirculated air occurs automatically and involves continuous adjustment of the proportion of recirculated air in order to prevent occupants from becoming tired.

– Press the MENU button on the control panel.
– Press the Air Care function button in the Infotainment system.
– Touch the Active function button to switch the Air Care function on or off.

When does the air recirculation mode switch off?

The air recirculation mode switches off in the following situations → ▲:

– The button on the control panel is pressed (for Climatronic) or the air distribution regulator is turned to position (for manual air conditioning system).
– A sensor detects the risk of the windows or windscreen misting up.

WARNING

Stale air can quickly make the driver tired and affect their concentration, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never use the air recirculation mode for an extended period as no fresh air will enter the vehicle interior.
- If the cooling system is switched off, the door windows, rear window and windscreen can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.
- Switch the air recirculation mode off when it is not required.

NOTICE

In vehicles with an air conditioning system, do not smoke when the air recirculation mode is switched on. The smoke can leave a residue on the cooling system evaporator and the dust and pollen filter with pollution filter insert, producing a lasting unpleasant odour.

ⓘ When reversing the vehicle, or when the wash and wipe system is being used, the air recirculation mode will switch on temporarily to prevent odours from entering the vehicle interior.

ⓘ If the outside temperature is very high, the manual air recirculation mode should be activated for a short time in order to cool the vehicle interior more quickly. ◁

Seat heating and seat ventilation

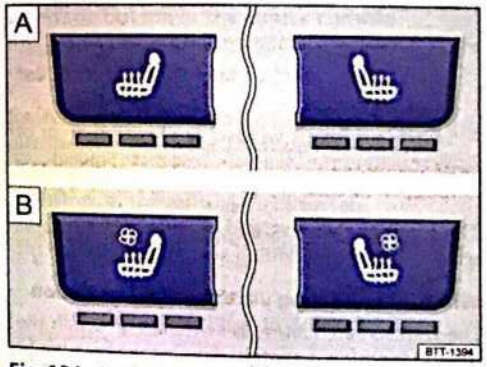


Fig. 136 In the centre console: buttons for seat heating and seat ventilation of the front seats.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

The front seats can be equipped either with seat heating or combined seat heating and seat ventilation.

The outer rear seats may also be heated. The heating of these seats is operated using buttons in the rear centre console.

3G0012720AC

Key for Fig. 136: explanation of buttons and meaning of colours in the indicator lamps below the buttons:

Ⓐ Vehicles with seat heating or :

All indicator lamps are lit *yellow*: seat heating is switched on with maximum heating output.

Ⓑ Vehicles with combined seat heating and seat ventilation or :

All indicator lamps are lit *red*: seat heating is switched on with maximum heating output.

All indicator lamps are lit *blue*: seat ventilation is switched on with maximum fan output.

One indicator lamp each is lit *red* and *blue*: seat heating and seat ventilation are switched on simultaneously.

Switching seat heating and seat ventilation on and off

Switch the seat heating and seat ventilation on and off with the → Fig. 136 buttons.

On vehicles with combined seat heating and seat ventilation, you can also switch the seat heating and seat ventilation off using the OFF button on the Infotainment system.

The seat heating will be switched off when the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is turned on again within roughly 10 minutes, the most recent driver seat temperature setting is automatically activated.

Adjusting seat heating and seat ventilation

Adjust the heating or ventilation fan output with the → Fig. 136 buttons.

On vehicles with combined seat heating and seat ventilation, the heating or ventilation fan output can also be adjusted by means of the Infotainment system. If the seat heating and seat ventilation are operated *simultaneously*, adjustment is possible only by means of the Infotainment system.

When should I not switch on the seat heating and seat ventilation?

Do not switch on the seat heating and seat ventilation if one of the following conditions applies:

– The seat is not occupied.
– The seat is fitted with a protective cover.
– A child seat is installed on the seat. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- The seat cushion is damp or wet.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the vehicle interior or outside temperature is warmer than 25 °C (77 °F).

⚠ WARNING

Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) could sustain burns on the back, buttocks and legs when using the seat heating. These burns may take a long time to heal or may never heal fully. Please consult a doctor if you have questions about your own state of health.

- Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature should never use the seat heating.

⚠ WARNING

Wet upholstery can cause a fault in the seat heating and increase the risk of burns.

- Ensure that the seat cushion is dry before the seat heating is used.
- Do not sit on the seat when wearing damp or wet clothing.
- Do not set any damp or wet objects or items of clothing on the seat.
- Do not spill any liquids on the seat.

NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.
- Liquids, sharp objects and insulating materials, such as a protective cover or child seat, could damage the seat heating.
- If the system starts to emit a smell, switch the seat heating off immediately and have it checked by a qualified workshop.

The seat heating and seat ventilation should only be switched on for as long as required. Fuel is otherwise wasted.

Adjust the settings in the Infotainment system within approximately four seconds. The system returns to the previous selection in the event of a prolonged period of inactivity.

Windscreen heating

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

The windscreen heating functions when the engine is running.

Manual windscreen heating

- *Manual air conditioning system:* press the CAR button on the Infotainment system.
- *Climatronic:* press the MENU button on the control panel.
- Touch the function button to switch the windscreen heating on or off.

The windscreen heating is switched off depending on the outside temperature or after 8 minutes at the latest.

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heating is switched on automatically if there is a risk of a window misting up.

- Press the MENU button on the control panel.
- Touch the function button on the Infotainment system.
- Switch automatic windscreen heating on or off by touching the Automatic windscreen heating function button.

The automatic windscreen heating is also active when the air conditioning system is switched off.

Windscreen heating via the defrost function

The windscreen heating is switched on when the defrost function is switched on by the button on the control panel and there is a risk of a window misting up.

Switch-off conditions

The windscreen heating will switch off automatically when **one** of the following conditions applies:

- If the current consumption is too high.
- Malfunctions in the air conditioning system.
- After the time specified has elapsed.

Steering wheel heating



Fig. 137 In lower part of centre console: button for steering wheel heating.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

The steering wheel heating functions when the engine is running.

Switching steering wheel heating on and off using the button in the centre console

Press the button → Fig. 137 to switch the steering wheel heating on or off.

Switching steering wheel heating on and off automatically via the infotainment system

- *Manual air conditioning system:* press the CAR button on the Infotainment system.
- *Climatronic:* press the MENU button on the control panel.
- Touch the function button to switch the steering wheel heating on or off.

Selecting a temperature setting (only in vehicles with Climatronic)

- Press the MENU button on the control panel.
- Touch the SETUP function button.
- Press the Setting function button to select a temperature level.

You can choose between 3 temperature settings. The selected setting will also remain stored after the ignition has been switched off. The temperature setting for the steering wheel heating is unrelated to the temperature setting for the seat heating.

Switch-off conditions

The steering wheel heating will switch off automatically when **one** of the following conditions applies:

- If the current consumption is too high.
- Malfunctions in the steering wheel heating system.

3G0012720AC

Tips and general information

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 146.

The following tips and general information will help you to operate the systems properly.

Why does the cooling system switch off automatically or why can I not switch it on?

- The engine is not running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The air conditioning system fuse has blown.
- The ambient temperature is lower than approximately +3 °C (+38 °F).
- The air conditioning compressor of the cooling system has been temporarily switched off because the coolant temperature is too high.
- There is a different fault in the vehicle. The air conditioning system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

Settings for optimal road visibility

- Keep the air intake grille in front of the windscreen free of ice, snow and leaves in order to improve the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows and windscreen from misting up.
- Keep the air vents at the rear of the luggage compartment free so that the air can flow through the vehicle from the front to the rear.
- Maximum heating output, which is needed to defrost the windows and windscreen as quickly as possible, is available when the coolant has reached its operating temperature.

Recommended setup for the heating and fresh air system and manual air conditioning system

- Switch off air recirculation mode.
- Set the blower to speed 1 or 2.
- Move the temperature selector to the middle position.
- Open all of the vents in the dash panel and adjust their direction.

Scanned by CamScanner

– Turn the air distribution regulator to the desired position.
– *Manual air conditioning system:* Press the A/C button on the controls to switch the cooling system on. The cooling mode dehumidifies the air.

Recommended settings for Climatronic

– Press the AUTO button on the control panel.
– Set the temperature to +22 °C (+72 °F).
– Open the vents in the dash panel and adjust their direction.

Filter systems

Different filter systems may be installed depending on the equipment level:

– *Dust and pollen filter:* vehicles with heating and fresh air system and manual air conditioning system.
– *Air Care Climatronic:* vehicles with Air Care Climatronic 3 zone automatic climate control with allergen filter.

The dust and pollen filter with activated charcoal reduces the level of impurities in the outside air entering the vehicle. The allergen filter in the Air Care Climatronic can reduce the amount of pollutants and allergens that enter the vehicle.

The filters´ must be changed regularly to avoid impairing the performance of the air conditioning system.

If the vehicle is frequently driven in areas with heavily polluted air, it may be necessary to replace the filter between services.

Water underneath the vehicle

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak. ◁

Auxiliary heater and ventilation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Switching auxiliary heater and ventilation on or off 155
– Remote control 155
– Programming the auxiliary heater and ventilation 157

The auxiliary heater is supplied with fuel from the vehicle fuel tank and can be operated when the vehicle is in motion or stationary.

The auxiliary heater ventilates the vehicle interior in the summer or clears the windscreen of ice, misting or a thin covering of snow in the winter.

Exhaust system of the auxiliary heater

The exhaust gases generated by the auxiliary heater are removed via an exhaust pipe fitted underneath the vehicle. The exhaust pipe must not be blocked by snow, mud or other objects.

⚠ WARNING

The fumes from the auxiliary heater contain carbon monoxide which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.

- Never start or run the auxiliary heater in unventilated or closed rooms.
- Never program the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and run in unventilated or enclosed spaces.

⚠ WARNING

Parts of the auxiliary heater exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass. ▷

NOTICE

Do not place any food, medicine or any other temperature-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless. ◁

Switching auxiliary heater and ventilation on or off

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 154.

Switching on the auxiliary heater

The auxiliary heater is switched on in the following ways:

– Manually with the immediate heat button on the control panel → page 145.
– Manually with the remote control → page 155.
– Automatically with a programmed and activated departure time → page 157.

The auxiliary heater cannot be switched on if the charge level of the vehicle battery is too low or if the fuel tank is empty.

Switching off the auxiliary heater

The auxiliary heater is switched off in the following ways:

– Manually with the immediate heat button on the control panel → page 145.
– Manually with the remote control → page 155.
– Manually by touching the function button on the Infotainment system → page 157.
– Automatically when the programmed departure time is reached, or after the programmed operating period has elapsed → page 157.
– Automatically if the indicator lamp or lights up (fuel gauge) → page 309.
– Automatically if the charge level of the vehicle battery is too low → page 363.

The auxiliary heater runs on for a short time after it is switched off so that the remaining fuel in the system can be burnt off. The exhaust gases in the system can also be emitted.

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the auxiliary heater can be activated up to three times in succession for the maximum operating duration. The vehicle needs to be moved before you can use the auxiliary heater again.

Operating noises can be heard if the auxiliary heater is switched on.

The vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater runs several times in an extended period. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the vehicle battery. As a rule of thumb, drive the vehicle for the length of time you ran the system.

The auxiliary heater functions may be restricted if you park the vehicle on an incline when the fuel tank level is low (just above reserve level).

The auxiliary heater may switch on automatically when the engine is started at temperatures below +5°C (+41°F). The auxiliary heater switches off again automatically after a short time.

At high levels of humidity in the outside air, but at low temperatures, condensation from the heating and fresh air system may evaporate through the active auxiliary heater. If this is the case, steam may appear underneath the vehicle. The vehicle is not damaged. ◁

Remote control

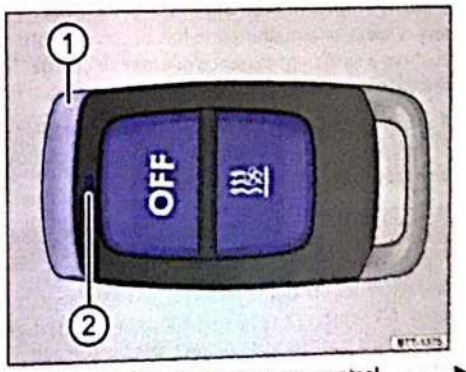


Fig. 138 Auxiliary heater: remote control. ▷

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

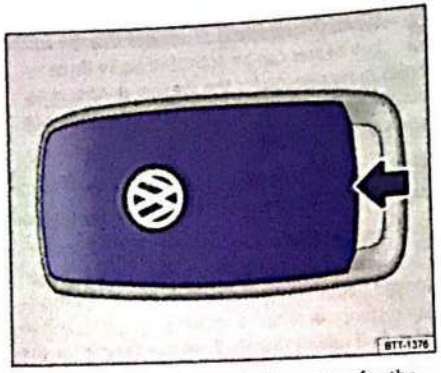


Fig. 139 Auxiliary heater: battery cover for the remote control.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 154.

Switching the auxiliary heater on and off

- *Switching on:* press the [⇅] button → Fig. 138. The auxiliary heater has been switched on if the indicator lamp lights up green for about two seconds.
- *Switching off:* press the [OFF] button. The auxiliary heater has been switched off if the indicator lamp lights up red for about two seconds.

Indicator lamp in the remote control

The indicator lamp ② will give you feedback on various situations after you press a button.

Operation of the auxiliary heater has been disabled if the indicator lamp flashes green *irregularly* for approximately 5 seconds. The fuel tank is nearly empty, the voltage of the vehicle battery is weak or a malfunction has occurred. Refuel, drive a sufficient distance in order to charge the battery or consult a qualified workshop.

If the indicator lamp flashes red or green *regularly* for approximately 4 seconds, the signal has not been received. Move closer to the vehicle.

If the button cell (battery) in the remote control is weak, the indicator lamp will light up orange for approximately 2 seconds and then light up (switch on or off signal received) or flash (switch on or off signal not received) and then turn red or green. It is important to replace the button cell as the range may be reduced.

Range

The remote control has a range of several hundred metres when the button cell is fully charged. The range of the remote control can be considerably reduced by obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions, and a weak button cell.

The distance between the remote control and the vehicle must be *at least* 2 metres.

An optimal range is achieved when you hold the remote control with the aerial ① vertically upwards. Do not cover the aerial.

Replacing the button cell in the remote control

If the indicator lamp in the remote control flashes orange quickly for approximately 6 seconds when the button is pressed, or does not light up, the button cell in the remote control has to be replaced.

Volkswagen recommends having the button cell changed at a Volkswagen dealership or by a qualified workshop. Where possible, use brand-name batteries to ensure optimum service life.

- Insert a suitable object, for example a screwdriver, into the recess on the side in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 139.
- Use the object to prise the battery compartment cover upwards to remove.
- Slide the battery cover gently in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the battery cover.
- Remove the button cell.
- Insert a new button cell of the same type. Make sure the polarity is correct when inserting the button cell.
- Insert the battery cover into the remote control housing.
- Slide the battery cover in the opposite direction to that shown by the arrow until it engages.

⚠ DANGER

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm, or other button cells, can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- Always keep the remote control, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, button cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of the reach of children.
- Call for medical help immediately you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.

! NOTICE

- The remote control contains electronic components. Protect the remote control from moisture, excessive vibration and direct sunlight.
- Unsuitable batteries can damage the remote control. Replace a discharged battery only with a new battery of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Make sure the polarity is correct when inserting the battery.

Dispose of discharged batteries in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.

The battery in the remote control may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal. ◁

Programming the auxiliary heater and ventilation

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 154.

Opening the Auxiliary heater menu

The auxiliary heater is programmed in the Infotainment system.

- *Manual air conditioning system:* press the [CAR] button on the Infotainment system.
- *Climatronic:* press the [MENU] button on the control panel.
- Touch the [⇅] function button.

Programming the auxiliary heater

Activation is for one heating period only. The departure time must be activated for every start.

Before programming, check that the date and time set in the vehicle are correct.

- [Off] – switch off auxiliary heater immediately.
- [Heating], [Ventilat.] – Using [▼], set whether the vehicle interior should be heated or ventilated when the auxiliary heater is switched on.
- [Adjust] – opens the **Set auxiliary heater** menu.
  - [Departure time] – up to 3 departure times (hh.mm) can be programmed. If you only want to switch the auxiliary heater on for a certain day of the week, you can select the day of the week in addition to the departure time.
  - [Running time] – set the running time when the auxiliary heater is switched on with the immediate heat button [⇅] or using the remote control. The running time is also used for determination of the departure time on vehicles with manual air conditioning system. The running time is 10 to 60 minutes.
- [⮌] – back to the main menu.

Manual air conditioning system: the programmed departure time determines the time at which the auxiliary heater should switch off. The point at which the auxiliary heater begins the heating process depends on the programmed operating period.

Climatronic: the programmed departure time determines the time at which the set temperature should be reached in the vehicle. The point at which the auxiliary heater begins the heating process is determined automatically in relation to the exterior temperature.

Programming check

If a departure time has been activated, the indicator lamp in the immediate heat button [⇅] on the Climatronic control panel will light up for approximately 10 seconds after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Never programme the auxiliary heating system so that is switched on and run in unventilated or enclosed spaces. The fumes from the auxiliary heater contain carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death. ◁

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Driving

Notes on driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Pedals 158
- Gear-change indicator 159
- Things to note with engaged reverse gear 159
- Driving economically 160
- Think Blue. Trainer. 161
- Information on the brakes 162
- Driving a loaded vehicle 164
- Driving with an open boot lid 164
- Driving through water on roads 165
- Running in a new engine 165
- Using the vehicle in other countries and continents 166

WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If the warning lamp lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately, have the brake pads checked and any worn brake pads replaced.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- The kick down function or fast acceleration should only be used if the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

Pedals

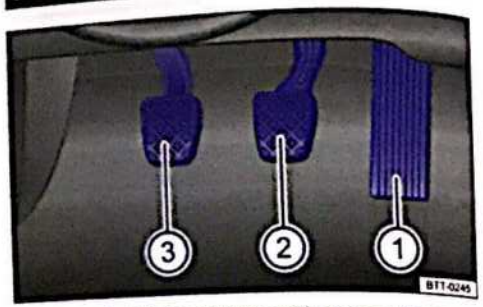


Fig. 140 Pedals in vehicles with a manual gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal, ③ clutch pedal.

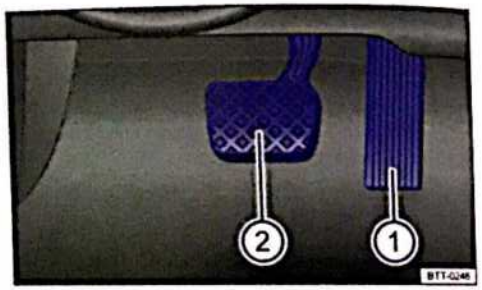


Fig. 141 Pedals in vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If a brake circuit fails, you will have to depress the brake pedal further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- The floor mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- Never place additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the fitted floor mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

The pedals must be freely operable at all times. For example, a larger brake pedal travel will be necessary in order to stop the vehicle if a brake circuit fails. The brake pedal will have to be depressed further and harder than normal.

Gear-change indicator

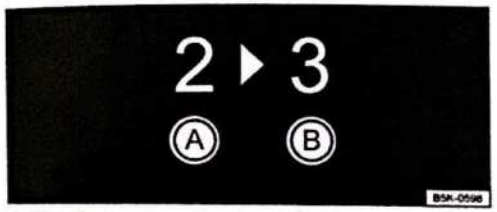


Fig. 142 On the instrument cluster display: gear-change indicator.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

In some models, the instrument cluster display may indicate which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption while the vehicle is in motion.

In vehicles with *DSG® dual clutch gearbox*, the selector lever must also be in the Tiptronic position → page 178.

Key to Fig. 142:

Ⓐ Currently selected gear.

Ⓑ Recommended gear.

No recommended gear is indicated if the most suitable gear is already selected. The currently selected gear is displayed.

Information on "cleaning" the diesel particulate filter

The exhaust management system detects when a diesel particulate filter is filling up and aids the filter's self-cleaning process by recommending the most suitable gear when driving. This may mean driving with increased engine speed in exceptional cases → page 317.

CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is only designed to assist the driver and cannot replace the driver's own judgement.

- The driver has full responsibility for selecting the correct gear in all situations (e.g. when overtaking, driving up and down hills → page 299and when towing a trailer).

Driving in the correct gear can help to reduce fuel consumption.

Gear-change indicator display goes out when the clutch is depressed in vehicles with a manual gearbox or when Tiptronic position is deselected in vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox.

Things to note with engaged reverse gear

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

The following will occur if the reverse gear is engaged and the ignition is switched on:

- The reversing light comes on.
- The Climatronic automatically switches to air recirculation mode when the vehicle is reversing.
- The ParkPilot, the ParkPilot display and the rear view camera system (Rear View) are switched on as required.
- The rear window wiper is switched on if the windscreen wipers are switched on.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Driving economically

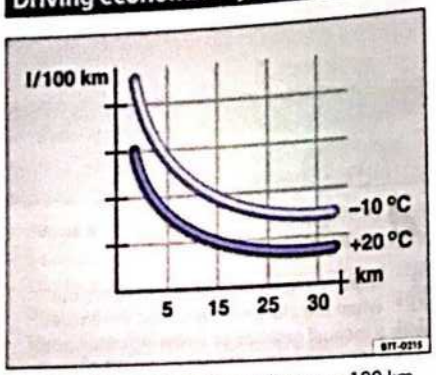


Fig. 143 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different outside temperatures.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Adopting the correct driving style helps to reduce fuel consumption, environmental pollution and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres. The following section contains a few tips to help minimise your impact on the environment and save money.

Think ahead when driving

An inconsistent driving style increases fuel consumption. It is possible to avoid frequent acceleration and braking by carefully monitoring the traffic. Maintaining a suitable distance from the vehicle in front helps you to think ahead when driving.

Use the cruise control system where possible → page 194.

Let the car roll along in gear to use the engine braking effect, for example when approaching traffic lights.

Save energy when changing gear

Changing up a gear early at an engine speed of 2,000 rpm saves energy. Do not allow the gear to reach its upper limit, and avoid high engine speeds.

Manual gearbox: change from 1st to 2nd gear as soon as you have pulled away. Quickly change to the higher gears.

Dual clutch gearbox DSG®: accelerate slowly and avoid kickdown.

Gear change indicator → page 158.

Eco driving profile → page 183.

Avoid driving at full throttle

Never drive the vehicle at its top speed. Driving at excessively high speeds increases the air resistance, which in turn increases the amount of power required to move the vehicle, for example over 130 km/h on motorway journeys.

Reduce idling

Pull off immediately and at a low engine speed. Switch the engine off rather than letting it idle when the vehicle is stationary for long periods, for example in a traffic jam or at a level crossing.

In vehicles with an activated start/stop system, the engine will switch off automatically when the vehicle is stationary → page 171.

Refuel in moderation

A fuel tank that is filled to the brim increases the weight of the vehicle. A fuel tank that is half to three-quarters full is sufficient for urban journeys.

Avoid short journeys

A cold engine consumes a lot of fuel. It takes a few kilometres for the engine to reach its optimum operating temperature. Fuel consumption is above average when the ambient temperature is very low, for example in winter → Fig. 143. Plan journeys economically and car share for short journeys.

Perform regular maintenance

Maintaining components such as the engine management system and the air filter at regular intervals is the key to economical driving, and helps to increase the service life of the vehicle.

Observe the correct tyre pressures

Driving with low tyre pressures causes wear and also increases the rolling resistance of the tyres, which in turn increases fuel consumption. Use tyres with optimum rolling resistance.

Adjust the tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load. Observe the information on the tyre pressure sticker → page 376.

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator or tyre monitoring system → page 369.

Using low viscosity engine oils

Fully synthetic engine oils with low viscosity decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts.

Remove unnecessary loads from the vehicle

You can reduce fuel consumption by clearing out the luggage compartment before setting off, for example by removing empty drink crates or unused child seats.

To keep the air resistance of your vehicle as low as possible, remove any add-on parts and equipment such as ski racks, bicycle racks and roof carriers once you have finished using them.

Save electrical energy

The alternator is driven by the engine and generates power for convenience consumers including the air conditioning system, windscreen heating and ventilation. Saving electrical energy is simple, for example:

- Ventilate the vehicle in advance of journeys in high ambient temperatures, and drive a short section of the journey with the windows open. Only then should you switch the air conditioning system on.
- Switch the convenience consumers off as soon as they have served their purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Find out about other ways to protect the environment. Think Blue. is the international Volkswagen brand for sustainabillity and environmental compatibility.

Your Volkswagen dealership can provide you with additional information about correct maintenance and replacement parts that are particularly efficient, for example new tyres.

In vehicles with Active Cylinder Management (ACT®), individual engine cylinders can be deactivated automatically in driving situations that require low power consumption. When a cylinder is deactivated, no fuel is injected into that cylinder, which leads to an overall reduction in fuel consumption. ◁

Think Blue. Trainer.

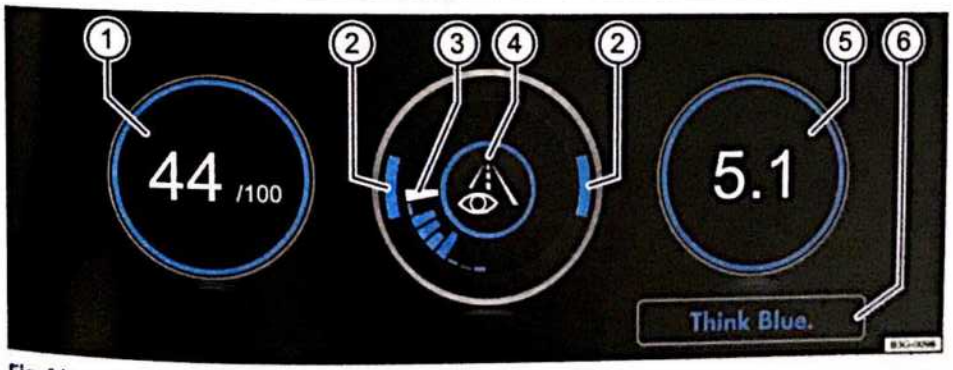


Fig. 144 In the Infotainment system: Think Blue. Trainer.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

The Think Blue. Trainer analyses and visualises your driving style and helps you to drive more economically.

Key to Fig. 144:

① "Blue Score":

The higher the value displayed on a scale from 0 to 100, the more efficient your driving style. A blue frame indicates a fuel-efficient and consistent driving style. A grey frame indicates an inefficient driving style.

Touch the display to access the statistics for the last 30 minutes of driving **Since start**.

② Accelerating and braking:

At a constant speed, the two arcs appear in the central area. The arcs move up or down during acceleration and braking.

③ Progress display:

The blue bars indicate the efficiency of the driving style. The white bar stores a blue bar approximately every 5 seconds.

The larger the bar, the more efficient the driving style was.

④ Driving tips:

Think ahead when driving.

3▸4 Gear-change indicator.

Adjust speed.

eco Economical driving style.

⑤ Consumption:

The display shows the average fuel consumption **Since start** in **l/100 km**. A blue frame indicates a fuel-efficient and consistent driving style. A grey frame indicates an inefficient driving style.

Touch the display to access the statistics for the last 30 minutes of driving **Since start**.

⑥ Energy saving tips:

Touch the Think Blue. function button to view additional tips.

Selecting Think Blue. Trainer.

– Press the CAR button in the Infotainment system repeatedly until the Think Blue. Trainer. is displayed.

– OR: press and hold the CAR button on the Infotainment system.

– Touch the ↩ function button.

– Press the Think Blue. Trainer. button.

WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

Information on the brakes

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Brake pads worn. Go to a qualified workshop immediately. **All** brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 200 to 300 km and must first be run in → ▲. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. **During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking** than with that have been fully run in. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations should be avoided that create a heavy load on the brakes e.g., when driving up close to the vehicle ahead.

The **rate of wear** of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is used for regular urban trips, short journeys, and is driven with a sporty driving style, the brake pads must be checked by a qualified workshop more regularly.

When driving with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly iced up (in winter). The brakes must be "dried" as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speed. Please ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → ▲.

Any **salt layer accumulating on the discs and pads** will delay the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the brakes on the vehicle have not been applied for a long time on roads that have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking → ▲.

Corrosion on the brake discs and **dirt** in the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. If the brake pads have been hardly used, or if they are at all corroded, Volkswagen recommends that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by braking strongly several times from high speed. Please ensure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → ▲.

Fault in the brake system

A brake circuit may have failed if you have to reduce speed and the vehicle does not brake as normal (sudden increase in braking distance). This will be indicated by the warning lamp and in some cases a text message. Go to the nearest qualified workshop immediately to have the fault corrected. Drive at low speed when doing this and anticipate much longer braking distances and an increase in the pressure required on the pedal.

Brake servo

The brake servo will only function when the engine is running and reinforces the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal.

If the brake servo is not functioning or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system → ▲.

WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the warning lamp lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the brake pads checked or any worn brake pads replaced.

WARNING

New brake pads will not have the optimal braking effect when first fitted.

- New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 300 km and must first be run in. A reduced braking effect can be increased by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.
- You must drive particularly carefully when driving with new brake pads in order to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries and loss of control of the vehicle.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles when running in new brake pads, and never create a driving situation that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

WARNING

Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance.

- When driving downhill the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear (with manual gearboxes or in Tiptronic mode with the automatic gearbox). This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react more slowly and require longer braking distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off any coating of ice and salt with a few cautious applications of the brake when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

WARNING

Driving without the brake servo can considerably increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not switch off the engine or the ignition while the vehicle is moving.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

- If the brake servo does not function or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system.

WARNING

Never "ride" the brake pedal. Do not overuse the brake pedal. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.

NOTICE

- Never let the brakes rub by applying light pressure to the brake when it is not necessary to brake. Continual pressure on the brake pedal will overheat the brakes. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear (with manual gearboxes or in Tiptronic mode with the automatic gearbox). This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brakes could otherwise overheat and possibly fail. The brakes should only be used to slow or stop the vehicle.

If the front brake pads are tested, the rear brake pads should be tested at the same time. Regularly check the thickness of the brake pads through the openings in the rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. ◁

Driving a loaded vehicle

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

- Stow all items of luggage securely → page 279.
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than you normally would.
- If applicable, observe the information about driving with a trailer → page 299.
- If applicable, observe the information about driving with a roof carrier → page 296.

WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Secure objects properly to prevent them from sliding.
- Use suitable straps when securing heavy objects.
- Securely engage rear backrest. ◁

Driving with an open boot lid

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Driving with an open boot lid is particularly dangerous. All objects and the open boot lid must be secured properly. Take the appropriate measures to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust fumes that could enter into the vehicle.

WARNING

Driving with an unlocked or open boot lid can cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the boot lid closed.
- Always stow all items in the luggage compartment securely. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure other road users.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this could cause the open boot lid to move unpredictably.
- Any objects protruding from the luggage compartment must be marked to ensure that they are visible to other road users. Comply with legal regulations.
- If items protrude out of the luggage compartment, never use the boot lid to wedge them into place or hold them in position.
- If you drive with the boot lid open, you must remove any racks and luggage from the boot lid.

WARNING

Poisonous exhaust fumes could enter the vehicle interior if the boot lid is open. This can result in loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, serious injury and accidents.

- You should always drive with the boot lid closed in order to prevent poisonous gases from entering the vehicle.
- If exceptional circumstances require you to drive with an open boot lid, you must do the following to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust fumes that could enter into the vehicle:
  - Close all windows and the glass roof.
  - Switch off the air recirculation mode of the heating and fresh air system or switch off the air conditioning system.
  - Open all vents in the dash panel.
  - Switch the blowers for the heating and fresh air system or of the air conditioning system to the highest setting.

NOTICE

The vehicle height is different when the boot lid is open and, for the Estate, the length also increases. ◁

Driving through water on roads

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Please observe these rules to help prevent damage to your vehicle when driving through water, for example if the road is flooded:

- Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water level must be **no higher** than the lower edge of the vehicle body → ⓘ.
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.
- Oncoming vehicles will create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.
- Always deactivate the start/stop system manually when driving through water → page 171.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush etc., the brakes may react slowly and the braking distance will be increased as the brake discs and pads will be wet, or possibly iced up in winter.

- You can "dry and de-ice" the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal requirements when doing so.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking manoeuvres directly after driving through water.

NOTICE

- If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, such as the engine, gearbox, running gear and vehicle electrics may sustain severe damage.
- Never drive through salt water as salt can cause corrosion. Rinse all components that have been exposed to salt water immediately with fresh water. ◁

Running in a new engine

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

Any new engine has to be run in during the first 1,500 kilometres. This enables all the moving parts to bed in together. The internal friction in the engine is greater during its first few hours of running than it is subsequently.

Up to 1,000 kilometres:

- Do not depress the accelerator fully.
- Do not drive the vehicle at more than 2/3 of the top engine speed.
- Do not tow a trailer → page 299.

Between 1,000 and 1,500 kilometres:

- Increase the speed and engine speed *gradually*. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

The style of driving during the first 1,500 kilometres will also affect the engine quality. Even after this time – and especially with a cold engine – drive the vehicle at moderate speeds in order to reduce engine wear and to increase the mileage that the engine can cover.

Do not drive at engine speeds that are too low. Always shift down gear if the engine is not running "smoothly".

New tyres → page 369 and brake pads → page 158 must be run in carefully.

If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced.

Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 158.

The vehicle has been manufactured specifically for a particular country and complies with the registration regulations that applied in that country at the time of vehicle production.

If you want to use the vehicle abroad for a short period, all relevant information and instructions should be followed → page 6.

If the vehicle is going to be sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The service scope and service types could also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climate region for a long period of time.

Because different frequency bands are used in different countries, the factory-fitted Infotainment system may not work in other countries.

NOTICE

- Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of Genuine Parts.
- Volkswagen cannot be held responsible if the vehicle does not comply with or only partly complies with the relevant legal requirements in other countries and continents.

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Indicator lamps 167
- Starter button 167
- Starting the engine 169
- Stopping the engine 170
- Electronic immobiliser 170

Immobiliser display

The instrument cluster display indicates if you use an invalid vehicle key or there is a system malfunction. The engine cannot be started.

Push-starting and tow-starting

For technical reasons, your vehicle **must not** be push-started or tow-started. Jump start the vehicle instead → page 342.

WARNING

Switching the engine off while the vehicle is moving makes it more difficult to stop the vehicle. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and to accidents and severe injuries.

- Braking and steering support systems, the airbag system, the belt tensioners and other items of safety equipment in the vehicle are only active when the engine is running.
- Do not switch off the engine or the ignition while the vehicle is moving.

WARNING

The risk of serious injury can be reduced with the engine running or when starting the engine.

- Do not start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless, toxic gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.
- Never start or run the engine if oil, fuel or any other highly flammable fluids are under or near the vehicle, or are leaking out of the vehicle, e.g. as the result of damage.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, particularly if a gear or driving mode has been selected. The vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected may happen that may cause damage, fire and serious injuries.
- Never use a start booster. Start boosters may explode and cause the engine to suddenly run at high revs.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.

Indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 166.

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	Diesel engine is preheating before starting.	→ page 169.
	Brake pedal not depressed.	Press the brake pedal to start the engine.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.
- If the vehicle breaks down or has to be parked for repairs, always park the vehicle at a safe distance from the road, switch on the hazard warning lights, switch off the engine and take other precautionary measures in order to warn traffic behind you.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Starter button

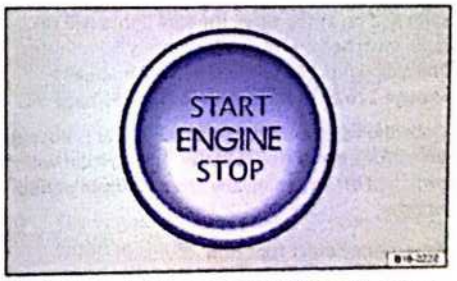


Fig. 145 In the lower section of the centre console: starter button for switching on the engine.

Scanned by CamScanner



Fig. 146 On the right-hand side of the steering column: emergency start function in vehicles with the keyless access locking and starting system.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 166.

The starter button is used to start the vehicle (Press & Drive).

The starter button can be operated only if there is a valid key in the vehicle.

When leaving the vehicle, the electronic steering column lock will be activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened → page 181.

Switching the ignition on and off

Press the starter button once briefly without depressing the brake or clutch pedals → ▲.

Automatic ignition switch-off

The ignition switches itself automatically after a short time if the driver moves away from the vehicle with the vehicle key when the ignition is switched on. If the dipped beam headlights were switched on at the time, the side lights will remain switched on for approximately 30 minutes. The side lights can be switched off manually → page 126 or by locking the vehicle → page 91.

Once the vehicle detects that the driver is absent when the engine stop is active, the ignition will switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

Emergency start function

Use the emergency start function if no valid vehicle key is detected in the vehicle interior. A corresponding display will appear in the instrument cluster. This could be the case, for example, if the button cell in the vehicle key is discharged or too weak:

- Hold the vehicle key to the right of the steering column trim directly after pressing the starter button → Fig. 146.
- The ignition is switched on automatically, and in some cases the engine is started.

Emergency switch-off function

If the engine cannot be switched off by pressing the starter button briefly, an emergency switch-off procedure is required:

- Press the starter button twice within a few seconds or briefly press and hold it once.
- The engine will switch off automatically → ▲.

Automatic ignition switch-off in vehicles with a start/stop system

When all the following conditions are fulfilled at the same time, the vehicle ignition will be switched off automatically when engine stop is active and when the vehicle is stationary:

- The driver seat belt is not fastened.
- No pedal is depressed.
- The driver door is opened.

If the ignition has been automatically deactivated when the dipped beam headlights are switched on ≡D, the side lights remain on and go out automatically after around 30 minutes.

The side lights will also go out when the vehicle is locked or the light is switched off manually.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- Do *not* depress the brake or clutch pedal when the ignition is switched on as the engine will start immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Improper or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Children or third parties could lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition or operate electrical equipment such as the electric windows.

NOTICE

If the dipped beam headlights were on when the ignition was switched off automatically, the side lights will be switched on either until the vehicle is locked or for a maximum period of around 30 minutes.

NOTICE

Leaving the vehicle stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can discharge the vehicle battery and prevent the engine from starting.

In vehicles with diesel engines and Keyless Access, the engine start may be delayed if the engine has to be preheated.

Before leaving the vehicle, always switch off the ignition manually and observe any information shown in the instrument cluster display.

Leaving the vehicle stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can discharge the vehicle battery and prevent the engine from starting. ◁

Starting the engine

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 166.

Step	Start the vehicle with the starter button → page 167 (keyless comfort start function).
1.	Depress the brake pedal and hold it until step 5 has been completed.
1 a.	**Applies to vehicles with a manual gearbox:** fully depress the clutch pedal and hold it until the engine has been started.
2.	Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to **P** or **N**.
3.	Press the starter button briefly → page 167 without depressing the accelerator. There must be a valid vehicle key in the vehicle before the engine can be started.
4.	If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter and try again after about a minute. If necessary, perform an emergency start → page 167.
5.	Switch off the electronic parking brake before driving off → page 232.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave the engine running if you leave the vehicle unattended, particularly not if a gear or driving mode has been selected. The vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected may happen that may cause damage, fire or serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Start boosters may explode or suddenly cause the engine to run at high revs.

- Never use a start booster.

NOTICE

- The starter and the engine can be damaged if you attempt to start the engine while the vehicle is in motion or if the engine is started again immediately after it has been switched off.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- Do not push-start or tow-start the vehicle. Unburnt fuel can damage the catalytic converter.

Do not warm up the engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary. Instead, pull off as soon as there is good visibility through the windows. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

Components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine is started.

The engine cannot, for example, be started with the starter button if the cell battery in the vehicle key is weak or flat. In this instance, perform an emergency start → page 168. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

At outside temperatures of less than +5°C (+41°F), fumes may be detected under a vehicle with a diesel engine if the fuel-powered supplementary heater is switched on.

A set operating temperature is required to start a MultiFuel engine with ethanol fuel E85. Preheat the engine if necessary. Refer to the information on ethanol fuel → page 309.

Stopping the engine

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 166.

Step	Switch off the vehicle with the starter button → page 167.
1.	The vehicle must be completely stationary → ▲.
2.	Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
3.	Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 232.
4.	Applies to vehicles with dual clutch gearbox DSG®: move the selector lever to P.
5.	Briefly press the starter button → Fig. 145. If the engine cannot be switched off, carry out the emergency switch-off procedure → page 232.
6.	Applies to vehicles with a manual gearbox: select first or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injuries.

- The airbags and belt tensioners will not work if the ignition is switched off.
- The brake servo will not work when the engine is switched off. More force is required on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering will not function if the engine is switched off, and more force will be required to steer the vehicle.
- When the ignition is switched off, the steering lock may activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine can overheat when it is switched off. In order to avoid damage to the engine, allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately two minutes before switching it off.

After the engine is switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may run on for some minutes, even if the ignition is switched off or the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically.

Electronic immobiliser

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 166.

The immobiliser helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

There is a chip in the key. It deactivates the immobiliser automatically when a valid vehicle is located inside the vehicle → page 91.

The electronic immobiliser is activated automatically once the valid vehicle key is no longer located inside the vehicle → page 91.

The engine can only be started using a genuine Volkswagen vehicle key with the correct code. Coded vehicle keys are available from a Volkswagen dealership → page 89.

If a non-authorised vehicle key has been used, this will be displayed in the instrument cluster. The vehicle cannot be used if this occurs.

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine Volkswagen key.

Start/stop system

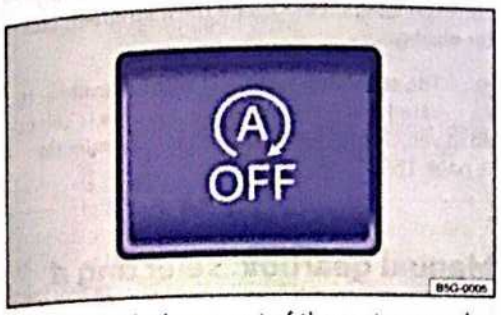


Fig. 147 In the lower part of the centre console: button for the start/stop system.

The start/stop system automatically switches the engine off when the vehicle is coming to a stop and when stationary. When required, the engine restarts automatically.

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on. The instrument cluster display will show information about the current status.

You can find additional information about the start/stop system by pressing the CAR button and the function button in the **Vehicle status** menu in the infotainment system.

Indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause/action
(A)	The start/stop system is available, automatic engine stop is active.
(A)	The start/stop system is not available. Check whether all technical requirements have been fulfilled. If not, remedy any missing technical requirements. OR: the start/stop system has switched on the engine automatically.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

- Disengage the gear and release the clutch pedal when the vehicle is coming to a stop, or when it is stationary. The engine is stopped.
- Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox

- To stop, press and hold the brake pedal. The engine switches off shortly before or when the vehicle slows to a complete standstill.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal, or depress the accelerator, to restart the engine.

Important preconditions for automatic engine switch-off

- The driver is wearing their seat belt.
- The driver door is closed.
- The bonnet is closed.
- A minimum engine temperature has been reached.
- *In vehicles with Climatronic:* the temperature in the vehicle interior is within the pre-set temperature range and humidity is not too high.
- The defrost function of the air conditioning system is not switched on.
- The charging state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The temperature of the vehicle battery is not too low or too high.
- The vehicle is not on a steep incline.
- *For vehicle with DSG® dual clutch gearbox:* the steering wheel is not angled too sharply.
- The windscreen heating is not switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Park Assist system is not active.
- The **Offroad** driving profile is not activated.

When the conditions for automatic engine switch-off are only fulfilled when the vehicle is stationary, the engine can also switch off subsequently, e.g. by switching off the defrost function:

Conditions for an automatic restart

The engine can start automatically under the following conditions:

- If the temperature inside the vehicle substantially increases or decreases.
- If the vehicle rolls on.
- If the voltage of the vehicle battery falls.
- If the steering wheel is moved.

Conditions that require a manual engine start

The engine must be started manually in the following conditions:

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

– If the driver door is opened.
– If the bonnet is opened.

Activating and deactivating the start/stop system manually

– Press the button in the lower part of the centre console → Fig. 147 to switch off the system. If the start/stop system has been deactivated, the indicator lamp in the button lights up.
– Press the button in the lower part of the centre console → Fig. 147 to switch the system on again.

The instrument cluster shows the status of the start/stop system every time the button is pressed.

If the start/stop system has switched the engine off, it will start again as soon as the system has been deactivated manually with the button.

Always deactivate the start/stop system manually when driving through water.

Start/stop mode in vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control

The engine will be switched off after the Adaptive Cruise Control has brought the vehicle to a standstill with an active braking intervention → page 202.

In the following instances, the engine will restart when the ACC is active:

– If the accelerator is depressed.
– When the Adaptive Cruise Control has resumed speed and distance control.
– If the vehicle ahead has moved on.

WARNING

The brake servo and the power steering will not function if the engine is switched off.

- Do not switch off the engine or the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- The start/stop system must be deactivated if work is to be carried out in the engine compartment.

NOTICE

If the start/stop system is used in very high outside temperatures over a long period, the vehicle battery can be damaged.

In some cases, it may be necessary to restart the engine manually. Observe any corresponding messages on the instrument cluster display.

The start/stop system is automatically activated when the **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicles featuring driving profile selection → page 183.

Manual gearbox: selecting a gear

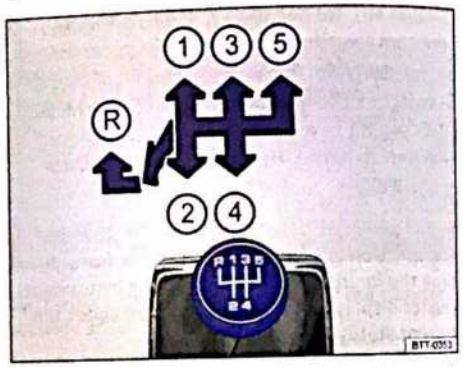


Fig. 148 Gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox.

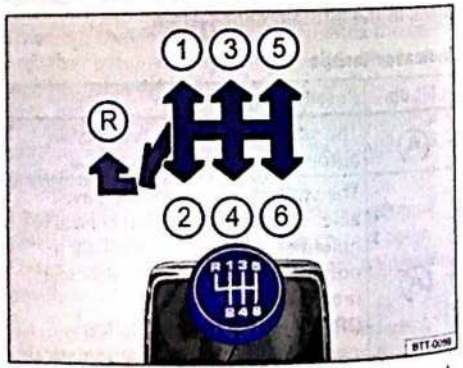


Fig. 149 Gear shift pattern of a 6-speed manual gearbox.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Clutch is not transmitting the full engine torque. If necessary, remove foot from the clutch pedal.
	High clutch temperature. You can continue to drive.
	Clutch defective. **Drive on carefully!** Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can cause considerable clutch damage.

The positions of the individual driving gears are shown on the gearshift lever → Fig. 148 or → Fig. 149.

– Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal.
– Move the gear lever to the required position → ▲.
– Release the clutch to engage.

In some countries, the clutch pedal will have to be depressed fully in order to start the engine.

Engaging reverse gear

– Reverse gear should only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.
– Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal → ▲.
– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and push down.
– Push the gear lever fully to the left and then to the front in the reverse gear position → Fig. 148 Ⓡ or → Fig. 149 Ⓡ.
– Release the clutch to engage.

Things to note with engaged reverse gear

The following will occur if the reverse gear is engaged and the ignition is switched on:

– The reversing light comes on.
– The Climatronic automatically switches to air recirculation mode when the vehicle is reversing.
– The ParkPilot, the ParkPilot display and the rear view camera system (Rear View) are switched on as required.
– In the Estate, the rear window wiper is switched on if the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Shifting down

You should always select the next immediate gear when shifting down a gear whilst the vehicle is in motion. The engine revs should not be too high when doing this → ▲. Damage to the clutch and the gearbox could occur if at high speeds or high engine revs one or more gears are skipped when shifting down gear, even if the clutch is not released when doing this → ⓘ.

Kick down

In vehicles with a speed limiter → page 198, the kickdown function allows the driver to intentionally exceed the stored regulated speed, e.g. when overtaking.

When the accelerator is fully depressed, the speed limiter regulator is temporarily switched off when the vehicle exceeds the stored speed.

Once the vehicle returns to a speed below the stored speed and the accelerator is no longer fully depressed, speed limiter regulation becomes active again.

When **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicles with driving profile selection → page 183 and the accelerator is depressed fully beyond the pressure point, the engine output is automatically regulated to ensure maximum vehicle acceleration.

Overheating clutch

The clutch can overheat when the vehicle pulls off regularly, travels at a "crawl" for long periods, or in stop and go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning lamp ⓘ and in some cases by additional warning lamps and a text message in the instrument cluster display. A signal tone may also be given → ⓘ.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.

WARNING

When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released. This also applies when the electronic park brake has been switched on.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

- Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting gears incorrectly to a lower gear can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, which can cause accidents and serious injuries.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

NOTICE

Serious damage to the clutch and gearbox can occur if the gear stick on the manual gearbox is shifted to too low a gear when travelling at high speeds or at high revs. This also applies if the clutch remains depressed and the gears do not engage.

NOTICE

Please observe the following to help avoid damage and premature wear:

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure from your hand is passed onto the selector forks in the gearbox.
- Ensure that the vehicle has come to a full stop before engaging reverse gear.
- Always fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
- Do not hold the vehicle by "riding" the clutch on a hill with the engine running.

Dual clutch gearbox DSG®

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Function of the dual clutch gearbox DSG® 174
- Warning and indicator lamps 175
- Dual clutch gearbox DSG®: Selecting a gear 176
- Changing gear using Tiptronic 178
- Driving with a dual clutch gearbox DSG® 179
- Malfunction in the automatic gearbox 180
- Unlocking the selector lever lock manually 180

Notes in this chapter apply to both the 6-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG® and the 7-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG®.

Function of the dual clutch gearbox DSG®

Description

The vehicle may be equipped with a dual clutch gearbox DSG®.

The DSG® dual clutch gearbox is a gearbox which **uses dual-clutch technology to change gear automatically**. It uses a dual clutch and two independent gearboxes to enable very fast gear changes with no loss of torque. The DSG dual clutch gearbox thus combines the performance and economy of a manual gearbox with the comfort and convenience of an automatic transmission.

How the system works

When driving, engine power is transferred to the drive axle via the gearbox. In order to change gears, the power transmission between the engine and the gearbox has to be interrupted. This is what the clutch is for.

With the DSG® dual clutch gearbox with its two gear train halves, the engine power is always connected to one gear train half when driving. Before you change gear, the next gear up or down is always preselected in the non-driven second gearbox. The clutch on the non-driven gear is engaged and the other clutch is disengaged at the same time. This is what makes very fast gear changes possible.

Thanks to its design, the DSG® dual clutch gearbox is more efficient than an automatic gearbox. Whereas in an automatic gearbox the torque converter is constantly in use, in the DSG® dual clutch gearbox the clutch can be opened at idling speed, thus saving fuel. With its efficiency, low weight and intelligent control system, the DSG® dual clutch gearbox usually enables fuel consumption equal to or lower than a manual gearbox.

However, just like the manual gearbox, the clutch in the DSG® dual clutch gearbox is subject to wear. Regular maintenance is necessary, varying according to what type of DSG dual clutch system is installed. For more information see the service schedule. In the event of a fault in one gear train half, the DSG® dual clutch gearbox also allows one gear train half to be deactivated and the journey to be continued using the other gear train half → page 180. If this happens, have the system checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop.

Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
	Gearbox fault.	**Do not drive on!** Allow the gearbox to cool down in selector lever position P. If the warning light does not go out, do not drive on. Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can cause considerable damage to the gearbox → page 180.
	Brake pedal not depressed.	Fully depress the brake pedal. Please also refer to ACC → page 202.
	Brake pedal not depressed, e.g. when trying to engage another selector lever position with the selector lever.	Press the brake pedal to engage a selector lever position. See also electronic parking brake → page 232.

Flashes	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
	The lock button in the selector lever is not engaged. The vehicle cannot drive off.	Engage the selector lever lock → page 177.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.
- If the vehicle breaks down or has to be parked for repairs, always park the vehicle at a safe distance from the road, switch on the hazard warning lights, switch off the engine and take other precautionary measures in order to warn traffic behind you.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

3C0012770AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Dual clutch gearbox DSG®: Selecting a gear

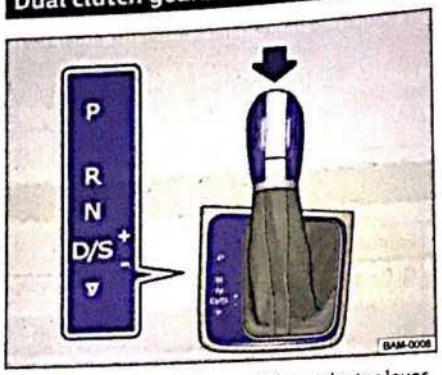


Fig. 150 Left-hand drive vehicles: selector lever for automatic gearbox with lock button (arrow).

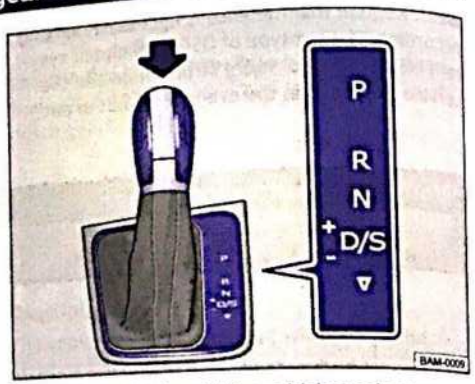


Fig. 151 Right-hand drive vehicles: selector lever for automatic gearbox with lock button (arrow).

The selector lever is equipped with a selector lever lock. When changing the selector lever position from **P** to a driving gear, switch on the ignition, depress the brake pedal and push the lock button in the selector lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 150 or → Fig. 151. To move the selector lever out of position **N** to position **D/S** or **R**, first depress and hold the brake pedal.

The current selector lever position or the selected gear will be shown in the instrument cluster display if the ignition is switched on.

Selector lever position	Function	Meaning → ▲
P	**Parking lock**	The drive wheels are locked mechanically. May only be selected when the vehicle is *stationary*. To disengage this selector lever position, depress the brake pedal and also switch on the ignition.
R	**Reverse gear**	Reverse gear is selected → page 177, *Things to note with engaged reverse gear*. May only be selected when the vehicle is *stationary*.
N	**Neutral** (idling)	The gearbox is in the neutral position. No force is transmitted to the wheels and the braking effect of the engine is not available.
D/S	**Standard forward driving position** **D** = normal programme **S** = sport programme	Normal programme **D**: All forward gears are shifted up and down automatically. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.
		Sport programme **S**: The forward gears are automatically changed up *later* and down *earlier* than in selector lever position **D**. This exploits the engine's full power. However, the system will not switch to the highest forwards gear. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.
▽	**Change between Normal programme D and Sport programme S.**	You change between the normal programme **D** and sport programme **S** by tapping back the selector lever *once* out of gear position **D/S** → Fig. 150 or → Fig. 151. The selector lever will always fall back into selector lever position **D/S**.
		Using this function, it is possible to access the Tiptronic gate from both the sport programme **S** and from the normal programme **D** → page 178.

Things to note with engaged reverse gear

The following will occur if the reverse gear is engaged and the ignition is switched on:

- The reversing light comes on.
- The Climatronic automatically switches to air recirculation mode when the vehicle is reversing.
- The ParkPilot, the ParkPilot display and the rear view camera system (Rear View) are switched on as required.
- In the Estate, the rear window wiper is switched on if the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock in position **P** or **N** prevents gears from being engaged unintentionally, which would cause the vehicle to move.

To release the selector lever lock with the ignition switched on, depress and hold the brake pedal. Press the lock button in the selector lever at the same time.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position **N**, e.g. when shifting from **R** to **D/S**. This makes it possible, for instance, to "rock" the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position **N** for more than approximately 1 second and the vehicle is travelling no faster than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

In rare cases, the selector lever lock may not engage in vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox DSG®. The drive is then deactivated to prevent the vehicle from accidentally pulling away. The green indicator lamp flashes and an information message is also displayed. Use the following procedure to engage the selector lever lock:

- 6-speed gearbox: depress the foot brake and then release it again.
- 7-speed gearbox: move the selector lever to position **P** or **N** and then select a driving gear.

⚠ WARNING

Engaging an incorrect selector lever position can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never depress the accelerator pedal when selecting a position.
- When the engine is running, the vehicle starts moving as soon as a gear is engaged and the brake pedal is released.
- Never select reverse gear or engage the parking lock while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- The driver must never leave the driver seat when the engine is running and a position has been selected. If you have to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, always switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position **P**.
- If the engine is running and the selector lever is in position **D/S** or **R**, the vehicle must be held with the foot brake. The vehicle will creep forward as the power transmission is not fully interrupted even when the engine is idling.
- Do not engage selector lever positions **R** or **P** when the vehicle is in motion.
- Never leave the vehicle in selector lever position **N**. The vehicle will roll downhill irrespective of whether or not the engine is running.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake is not switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is released when the selector lever is in position P, the vehicle may move a few centimetres forwards or backwards.

If you unintentionally engage selector lever position N when the vehicle is in motion, take your foot off the accelerator immediately. Wait in selector lever position N until the engine reaches idling speed and only then re-engage a gear.

If the selector lever is left in any position other than P for long periods when the engine is switched off, the vehicle battery discharges.

Changing gear using Tiptronic

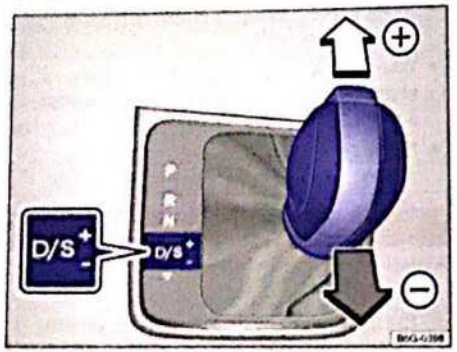


Fig. 152 Selector lever in Tiptronic position (left-hand drive). The controls are mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles.



Fig. 153 Steering wheel with paddles for Tiptronic.

Using Tiptronic, the gears can be shifted up and down manually in an automatic gearbox.

Operating Tiptronic with the selector lever

- Push the selector lever from position D/S to the right into the Tiptronic gate.
- Gently push the selector lever forwards ⊕ or back ⊖ to shift gear up or down → Fig. 152.

Operating Tiptronic with the paddles

- Pull the right paddle → Fig. 153 towards the steering wheel to change up a gear.
- Pull the left paddle towards the steering wheel to change down a gear.
- To leave Tiptronic mode, pull the right paddle towards the steering wheel for approximately one second.

Tiptronic is automatically deactivated if the selector paddles are not operated for some time and the selector lever is not in the Tiptronic gate.

NOTICE

- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.
- When shifting down a gear manually, the gearbox will not change gear until the engine can no longer be over-revved.

Driving with a dual clutch gearbox DSG®

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

Driving down hills

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never allow the vehicle to roll down mountains or hills in the neutral position N.

- Reduce your speed.
- Push the selector lever from position D/S to the right into the Tiptronic gate → page 178.
- Gently push the selector lever to the rear to change down gear.
- OR: shift down a gear using the paddles on the steering wheel → page 178.

Stopping and pulling away uphill

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear you will need.

If you wish to stop the vehicle or pull away when driving uphill you should use the Auto Hold function → page 232.

When you stop the vehicle on an incline and the vehicle remains in gear, the vehicle must always be prevented from rolling by depressing the brake pedal or by applying the electronic parking brake. The brake pedal or the electronic parking brake should not be released until you pull away →ⓘ.

Coasting with dual clutch gearbox DSG®

In coasting mode, the momentum of the vehicle can be used to save fuel in conjunction with a foresighted driving style. The engine is declutched and no longer brakes the vehicle – the vehicle can roll out over a longer distance. The function is only available at speeds of 20 – 130 km/h (12 mph – 80 mph).

Switch-on condition: the selector lever must be in position D/S.

Triggering coasting

- Select the Eco driving profile from the driving profile selection menu → page 183.
- Remove foot from accelerator pedal. The engine will be disengaged and run in freewheel mode. The vehicle rolls without the braking effect of the engine.

Cancelling coasting mode

- Press the brake pedal briefly or pull the left-hand paddle ⊖ towards the steering wheel.

Kick down

The kick down mechanism enables maximum acceleration in the selector lever position D/S or in the Tiptronic position.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, the gearbox will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed and engine revs. This will make use of the full vehicle acceleration →▲.

The gearbox does not shift up to the next gear until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear.

When Eco driving profile is selected in vehicles with driving profile selection → page 183 and the accelerator is depressed fully beyond the pressure point, the engine output is automatically regulated to ensure maximum vehicle acceleration.

Launch Control Programme

The Launch Control programme gives the vehicle maximum acceleration from a standing start in vehicles with a 6-speed dual clutch gearbox DSG®.

- Switch off TCS → page 260.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- Move the selector lever to position D/S or to gearbox programme S. Alternatively, select the Tiptronic position or in vehicles with driving profile selection select the Sport driving profile → page 183.
- With your right foot, depress the accelerator until the engines speed reaches approximately 3,200 rpm.
- Take your left foot off the brake →▲. The vehicle will start with maximum acceleration.
- Switch the TCS back on after acceleration.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

Scanned by CamScanner

- Always adjust your driving style in accordance with the flow of traffic.
- Only use kick down or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and other road users are not put at risk due to the acceleration and the driving style.
- Please note that the driven wheels could start to spin and the vehicle could skid if the TCS is switched off and especially if the road is slippery.
- Switch the TCS back on after acceleration.

NOTICE

- If you stop the vehicle on an incline, do not attempt to stop it from rolling back by depressing the accelerator while a position is still selected. The automatic gearbox could overheat and be damaged.
- Never allow the vehicle to roll in position **N**, particularly if the ignition is switched off. The automatic gearbox will not be lubricated and could be damaged.
- Accelerating with the Launch Control programme places heavy strain on all vehicle components. This can lead to higher rates of wear.

Malfunction in the automatic gearbox

Emergency programme

There is a fault in the system if all the displays on the instrument cluster for the selector lever positions have a light background. The automatic gearbox is running in an emergency programme. The vehicle can still be driven in the emergency programme, but only at reduced speed and not in all gears.

In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, you may **no longer be able to select reverse gear.**

In all cases the automatic gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop immediately.

Overheating dual clutch gearbox DSG®

The dual clutch gearbox can overheat when the vehicle pulls off regularly, travels at a crawl for long periods, or in stop and go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning lamp ⓘ and in some cases by a text message in the instrument cluster display. A signal tone may also be given. Stop the vehicle and allow the gearbox to cool down → ⓘ.

The vehicle does not move forwards or backwards even though a position has been selected

If the vehicle will not move in the required direction, the system may have selected the position incorrectly. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the position.

If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system fault. Seek expert assistance and have the system checked.

NOTICE

- If the display indicates that the gearbox is overheating for the first time, the vehicle will have to be parked safely or driven faster than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Safely park the vehicle immediately and switch the engine off if the text message and signal tone are repeated approximately every 10 seconds. Allow the gearbox to cool down.
- In order to prevent damage to the gearbox, you should not continue driving on until the acoustic warning stops. You should not pull away or drive the vehicle at very low speeds while the gearbox is overheated.

Unlocking the selector lever lock manually

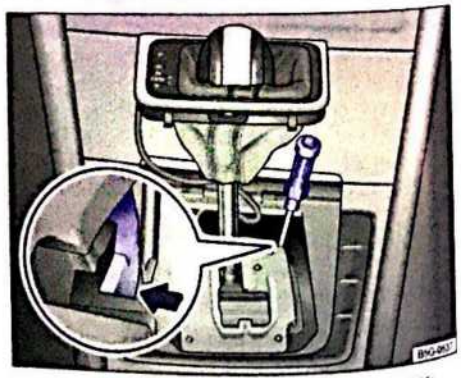


Fig. 154 Removing the cover of the gearshift gate.

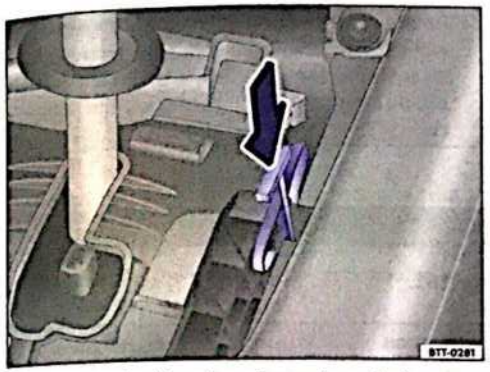


Fig. 155 Unlocking the selector lever lock manually.

If the power fails in the vehicle (for example if the battery is flat) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever lock must be released manually. Seek professional assistance.

The manual release mechanism is located under the cover of the gearshift gate.

Preparation

– Switch on the electronic parking brake. If the electronic parking brake cannot be applied firmly the vehicle will have to be prevented from rolling off using other means.
– Switch off the ignition.

Removing the cover of the gearshift gate

– Carefully pull the cover upwards in the area around the selector lever gaiter with connected electrical wiring → Fig. 154.
– Pull the cover up and over the selector lever → ▲.

Unlocking the selector lever lock manually

– Using the flat blade of the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, push the release lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.
– Press the lock button on the selector lever and put the selector lever into position **N**.
– After manual unlocking, carefully press the cover onto the centre console while ensuring that the electrical wires are positioned correctly.

WARNING

Never move the selector lever out of the position **P** if the electronic parking brake is not switched on. Otherwise the vehicle could move unexpectedly if it is stopped on an incline, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

NOTICE

The automatic gearbox will become damaged if the vehicle is allowed to roll for a long period of time or at a high speed (for example while being towed) with the selector lever in position **N** and the engine switched off.

Steering

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Warning and indicator lamps 182
– Information on steering 182

The power steering is not hydraulic. It is an electromechanical system. The advantage of this steering system is that no hydraulic hoses, hydraulic oil, pumps, filter or other parts are required. The electromechanical system reduces fuel consumption. A hydraulic system requires constant oil pressure in the system, whereas an electromechanical steering system only needs an energy supply while steering.

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running.

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the behaviour of the power steering → page 183.

WARNING

If the power steering is not working, the steering wheel is difficult to turn, which makes it difficult to steer the vehicle.

Scanned by CamScanner

- The power steering only functions when the engine is running.
- Do not switch off the engine or the ignition while the vehicle is moving. The electronic steering column lock may be activated and it will no longer be possible to steer the vehicle.

Warning and indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 181.

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	Electromechanical steering not functioning.	The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Electromechanical steering function reduced.	The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. If the yellow warning lamp remains off after the ignition has been restarted and you have driven a short distance, you **do not** need to consult a qualified workshop.
	The vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (9 – 12 mph).

Flashes	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	Fault in the steering column lock.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance.
	Steering column is wound-up.	Turn the steering wheel back and forth.
	Steering column is not unlocked/locked.	Switch the ignition off and then on again. Observe any messages that appear on the instrument cluster display. **Do not drive on** if the steering column remains locked when the ignition is switched on. Seek expert assistance.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Information on steering

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 181.

The steering should be locked every time you leave the vehicle to make it more difficult for the vehicle to be stolen.

Electronic steering column lock

The steering column will be locked if the driver door is opened and the ignition is switched off. For this, the vehicle should be stationary and, if necessary, the gear selector lever should be in position P.

If the ignition is not switched off until after the driver door is opened, the electronic steering column lock will only be activated when the vehicle is locked using the sensor in the door handle or the vehicle key.

Electromechanical steering

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running.

You will need considerably more strength than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

Counter steering assistance

Counter steering assistance provides the driver with power steering in critical driving situations. Additional steering power helps the driver when counter steering → ▲.

Progressive steering

In some models, progressive steering can adjust the force of the steering movement in a driving situation. Progressive steering only functions when the engine is running.

In *urban traffic*, less steering input is required when parking, manoeuvring, or turning sharply.

When driving on *country roads* or on the *motorway*, the progressive steering provides a more sporty, direct steering response, and a dynamic feel.

WARNING

In conjunction with the ESC, counter steering assistance provides the driver with assistance when steering in critical driving situations. The driver must steer the vehicle at all times. Counter steering assistance does not steer the vehicle.

Driving profile selection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Warning and indicator lamps 183
- Function and operation 184
- Adjusting the driving mode to suit your requirements 186

Driving profile selection enables you to choose between a variety of vehicle settings.

WARNING

Selecting a driving mode while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road and cause accidents.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Warning and indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 183.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC).[a] Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
	Offroad driving profile (Alltrack).

Scanned by CamScanner

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	When displayed in white: Offroad driving profile active (Alltrack).
	When displayed in grey: Offroad driving profile not active. System switched on, but not regulating (Alltrack).

a) Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Function and operation

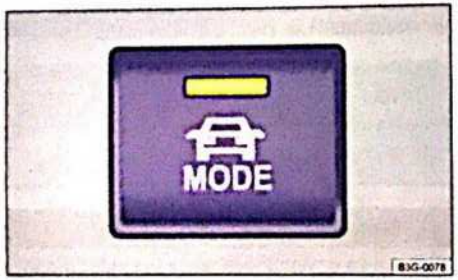


Fig. 156 In the lower section of the centre console: Driving Mode Selection button.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 183.

The driver can choose between up to 6 different driving profiles with a variety of characteristics, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Driving mode	Recommended driving situations
Eco	Switches the vehicle into economical mode and helps the driver to drive the vehicle in a fuel-efficient manner.
Comfort[a)]	Comfortable vehicle setting. For instance, suitable for bad road conditions or long motorway journeys.
Normal	Balanced setting, e.g. for everyday use.
Sport	Gives the vehicle a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.
Individual	Individual systems can be adjusted to suit your personal requirements → page 186.
Off-road	Off-road vehicle setup and summary of useful off-road functions in the Alltrack.

a) Available in models with adaptive chassis control (DCC).

The effect on the vehicle settings in the individual driving modes varies according to the model.

The driving mode can be changed while the vehicle is stationary or when in motion. The associated vehicle settings are adjusted as soon as a driving profile is selected, except for the powertrain.

When traffic conditions allow, briefly take your foot off the accelerator to activate the newly selected driving mode for the engine.

Adaptive chassis control (DCC)

While the vehicle is in motion, the DCC constantly adjusts the suspension characteristics to match the road surface and the current driving situation, in accordance with the preset vehicle settings.

If there is a fault in the DCC, the indicator lamp appears on the instrument cluster display along with the message **Fault: damper control**.

Steering

In **Sport** mode, power steering is reduced and the effort required to steer the vehicle increases. The vehicle's driving response becomes more agile.

Powertrain (engine and gearbox)

The engine and gearbox will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the movement of the accelerator, depending on the selected driving mode. In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, the gear shift points and the coasting mode will also change. An active cruise control system can affect the acceleration response.

ACC

When the ACC is active, acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle becomes more economical or sporty.

Dynamic cornering light and dynamic main beam control

The dynamic cornering light and the automatic main beam assist will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the current driving situation, depending on the selected driving mode.

Air conditioning system

In **Eco** mode, the air conditioning will be set to run even more economically.

Hill Descent Control (Alltrack)

The Hill Descent Control system is activated in the **off-road** driving mode → page 187.

Displaying the driving mode

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on.
- Press the Driving Mode Selection button → Fig. 156. The Driving Mode Selection menu appears in the infotainment system display. The active driving mode is selected.
- Touch the function button to display additional information about the current driving profile.
- Touch the function button to close the menu.

The indicator lamp in the driving profile selection button lights up when the **Normal** driving profile is not selected.

Selecting the driving mode

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on.
- Press the Driving Mode Selection button → Fig. 156. The Driving Mode Selection menu appears in the infotainment system display.
- Touch the function button for the desired driving mode in the infotainment system display.
- **OR:** press the Driving Mode Selection button → Fig. 156 again to automatically select the next non-active driving mode.

All driving profiles and individual settings except the **Off-road** driving profile are retained after the ignition is switched off.

The vehicle will launch the **Normal** driving profile when restarted if the **Off-road** driving profile was selected prior to switching off the ignition.

The **Sport** driving profile will remain set even after the ignition has been switched off. However, sport functions such as those relating to the engine and gearbox can be deactivated when the ignition is switched on again.

To reactivate the sport functions, select the driving profile again or tip the automatic gearbox selector lever backwards → page 174.

⚠ WARNING

Changing the driving mode can alter the vehicle handling. Never allow Driving Mode Selection to tempt you into taking any risks when driving.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

In trailer mode → page 299 the **Eco** driving profile is locked. If the vehicle is in **Eco** mode when a trailer is hitched and electrically connected to the towing vehicle, the system will switch to **Normal** mode.

In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, the system automatically switches to gear position **S** when the **Sport** driving profile is selected. The system automatically switches to position **D** when the **Eco** driving profile is selected.

The driver can adjust certain vehicle functions irrespective of the selected driving mode. For example, the driver can switch to gear position **S** when the **Eco** driving mode is selected.

All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres in order to ensure that the **Off-road** driving profile operates correctly in the Alltrack. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

Adjusting the driving mode to suit your requirements

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 183.

The systems that can be adjusted to your individual requirements vary according to the model.

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the infotainment system.
- Press the Driving Mode Selection button and touch the Individual function button in the infotainment system display.
- Touch the Adapt function button to open the **Individual** menu.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked ☑, the function is switched on.

Touching the ↩ function button always takes you back to the previously active menu.

Menu	Settings options
DCC:	Comfort Normal Sport
Steering:	Normal Sport
Drive:	Normal Sport Eco
ACC:	Normal Sport Eco
Dynamic cornering light:	Normal Sport Eco
Air conditioning:	Normal Eco
Reset mode:	All settings are reset to **Normal**.

Changes to settings menus are applied immediately, with the exception of powertrain settings.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

Downhill speed control (dual clutch gearbox DSG)

The Hill Descent Assist system in vehicles with an automatic gearbox helps when braking and travelling downhill → ⚠. The Hill Descent Assist system uses the braking power of the engine.

The automatic gearbox selects the best gear for the circumstances by taking the steepness of the hill and the current speed into consideration. The selector lever must be in position **D/S**. The downhill speed control is **not** active in Tiptronic mode.

As the downhill speed control can only shift down as far as the 3rd gear, it may be necessary to activate the Tiptronic mode when driving down particularly steep inclines. When in Tiptronic mode, select the 2nd or 1st gear manually in order to make use of the braking effect of the engine and to relieve the brakes.

Activating downhill speed control automatically:

- If the incline is greater than approximately 6%.
- **AND:** if the selector lever is in position **D/S**.
- **In addition, if the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control is switched off:** if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) **or** the brake pedal is depressed.
- **In addition if the CCS or ACC is active:** if the stored speed is exceeded.

Deactivating downhill speed control automatically:

- If the incline becomes less steep.
- **OR:** if the gearbox shifts up a gear because the engine speed is higher than approximately 4,500 rpm.
- **Or in addition if the CCS or ACC is active:** if the stored speed can be maintained.

⚠ WARNING

Always be prepared to brake the vehicle. Accidents and injuries could occur if this is not the case.

- The downhill speed control is only a support function and may not be able to brake the vehicle sufficiently in all situations when driving downhill.
- The vehicle may become faster despite the downhill speed control.

Hill Descent Control (Alltrack)

Function display in the instrument cluster display (indicator lamp):	Meaning
	*When displayed in white:* Hill Descent Control active.
	When displayed in grey: Hill Descent Control not active. System switched on, does not regulate.

Hill Descent Control initiates an automatic braking intervention on all 4 wheels to limit the speed when driving forwards and reversing on steep slopes. The wheels do not lock as the ABS remains active. In vehicles with a manual gearbox, Hill Descent Control adjusts the target speed so that the engine speed does not drop below the idling speed.

If you enter a downhill slope travelling at a speed under 30 km/h, the vehicle speed will be limited to a speed between min. 2 km/h and max. 30 km/h. The driver can use the accelerator pedal and the brakes to alter the speed in this range. The function is interrupted and restarted each time.

However, this can work only if the tyres have sufficient grip on the road. Hill Descent Control **cannot** work on an icy or slippery slope.

The function display in the instrument cluster shows that the Hill Descent Control system is ready to use → table on page 187.

Hill Descent Control is automatically activated if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running.
- The **Off-road** driving profile is selected → page 183.
- The speed is under 30 km/h (the function display is visible on the instrument cluster display).
- The incline is at least 10% when driving forwards or 9% when reversing.
- You do not brake or accelerate.

Hill Descent Control is deactivated if you brake or accelerate of if the gradient drops below 5%.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

⚠ WARNING

Always be prepared to brake the vehicle. Accidents and injuries could occur if this is not the case.

- Hill Descent Control is only a support function and may not be able to brake the vehicle sufficiently in all situations when driving downhill.
- The vehicle may accelerate despite Hill Descent Control.

Before driving off-road for the first time (Alltrack)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Safety notes for off-road driving 188
- Explanation of some technical terms 189
- Checklist "before driving off-road" 190
- General rules and driving tips 191
- Useful accessories for off-road driving 191
- Off-road display 192

Vehicles with all-wheel drive can also be driven off-road in addition to driving on normal roads. It is very important to read the contents of this section before driving off-road.

The vehicle is not built for "expeditions".

Checklist

You should carry out following steps before you drive off-road for the first time so that you can operate and drive the vehicle safely off-road:

- ✓ Observe the basic safety notes ⚠ → page 188.
- ✓ Familiarise yourself with the controls of the vehicle.
- ✓ Check the seat position and adjust if necessary → page 7 and fasten seat belts → page 9.
- ✓ Check the distance from the steering wheel and adjust if necessary → page 181.
- ✓ Always wear suitable and well-fitting shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.

Safety notes for off-road driving

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ on page 188.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent vehicle technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Despite ABS, adverse terrain can cause instability through locked wheels, e.g. if you brake hard when driving on a loose gravel road. The ESC system will have difficulty stabilising the vehicle in these circumstances.

⚠ WARNING

Driving off-road can be dangerous and may cause accidents, serious injury, damage to the vehicle and also a vehicle breakdown far from any assistance.

- Never select a dangerous route and never take risks that could endanger you and your passengers. If it is not possible to continue or if you are in any doubt about the safety of the route, turn round and choose another route.
- Even terrain that looks harmless can be difficult, dangerous and may endanger you and your passengers. We recommend inspecting the terrain on foot beforehand.
- Drive particularly carefully and think ahead when driving off-road. Driving too fast or an unsuccessful driving manoeuvre may result in severe injuries and vehicle damage.
- Never drive faster than the current terrain, road conditions, the traffic and the weather allow.
- Drive over embankments, ramps or slopes at moderate speed. This could cause the vehicle to lose contact with the ground. If this happens, you will be unable to steer and will lose control of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle does lose contact with the ground, always point the front wheels straight ahead. If the wheels are not pointing straight ahead when the vehicle lands, it could roll over.
- Terrain might look harmless, but there could be hidden dangers. Potholes, hollows, ditches, precipices, obstacles, shallows, soft and boggy surfaces are often not recognisable as such and can be covered either fully or partly by water or grass or branches lying on the ground. Inspect terrain on foot.

⚠ WARNING

Sporty SUVs are subject to a considerably higher risk of rolling over than normal road passenger vehicles → page 189.

- In the event of an accident, vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are subjected to a considerably higher risk of fatal injury than those wearing seat belts.
- The vehicle has a higher centre of gravity and is more prone to rolling over than a "normal" on-road vehicle which is unsuited for off-road driving.
- Never drive too fast, especially when driving through bends, or carry out any extreme driving manoeuvres.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the terrain you are driving on.
- Luggage and other items transported on the roof of the vehicle raise the centre of gravity and will make the vehicle more likely to roll over.

⚠ WARNING

The cruise control system was developed for use on normal roads. It is completely unsuitable for use in off-road situations and can even be very dangerous.

- Never use the cruise control system when driving off-road in order to reduce the risk of losing control over the vehicle and of serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

The area monitoring system (Front Assist) was developed for use on normal roads. It is completely unsuitable for use in off-road situations and can even be dangerous if used off-road.

- Never use the area monitoring system when driving off-road in order to reduce the risk of losing control over the vehicle and of serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the vehicle when the fuel level is too low could lead to your vehicle breaking down off-road, accidents and serious injuries.

- When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.
- The steering, all driver assist systems and brake support systems will not function if the engine "sputters" or stops completely due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.
- Always fill the fuel tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.

ⓘ NOTICE

During rain showers, water could enter the vehicle interior via the open windows and open glass roof and cause damage to the vehicle. The windows and glass roof should be kept closed when the vehicle is driven off-road.

Explanation of some technical terms

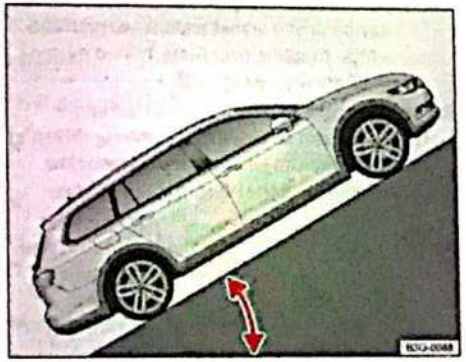


Fig. 157 Illustration: angle of gradient.

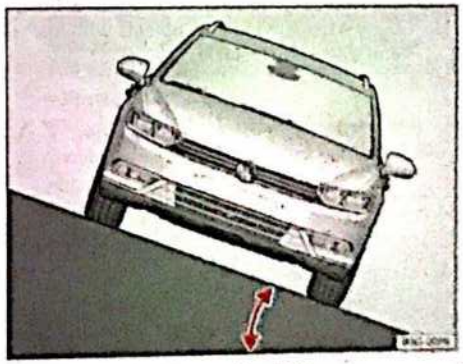


Fig. 158 Illustration: angle of tilt.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 188.

Centre of gravity The centre of gravity of a vehicle influences its propensity to roll over. The vehicle has greater ground clearance for off-road driving, and thus a higher centre of gravity than a "normal" on-road passenger vehicle. The higher centre of gravity means that there is a greater risk rolling over when driving. Always remember this fact when driving and follow the safety tips and warnings given in this owner's manual.

Ground clearance This is the vertical distance between the level ground and the lowest item on the vehicle.

Angle of rising gradient The number of metres in height gained over a distance of 100 m will be given as a percentage or degree → Fig. 157. Indication of gradient that the vehicle can drive up under its own power. Depends on elements including road surface and engine power.

Tilt angle Maximum angle at which the vehicle may be driven across a slope without the vehicle toppling over (determined by centre of gravity) → Fig. 158.

Breakover angle Maximum permitted angle specified in degrees that a vehicle driven at low speed can clear a ramp without the underbody of the vehicle scraping the ramp.

Ramp angle Crossover from the horizontal level surface to a gradient, or from a gradient back to the level surface. Angle up to which the vehicle bottoms with the underbody on the ramp edge.

Fall line This is the vertical drop route.

Torsional flexibility The vehicle's torsional flexibility when driving over objects with just one side of the vehicle.

Checklist "before driving off-road"

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 188.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points before driving off-road:

- ✓ Obtain sufficient information before driving into off-road terrain with the vehicle.
- ✓ Do not plan day tours that are too long. Take increased fuel requirements for off-road driving into account.
- ✓ Refill the fuel tank completely. Fuel consumption is considerably higher off-road.
- ✓ Check that your tyres are suitable for the off-road journey you have planned. Recommendation for difficult off-road terrain: always have off-road tyres fitted to your vehicle.
- ✓ Check the tyre pressure on all tyres and correct them if necessary. This includes the temporary spare wheel, if fitted.
- ✓ Check engine oil level and refill engine oil as necessary. The engine will be supplied with enough engine oil even when driving on slopes only if the engine oil level is sufficient.
- ✓ Completely refill washer fluid reservoir with water and washer fluid.
- ✓ Fit the towing eye at the front or rear. It is not always possible to fit a towing eye when the vehicle is stuck.
- ✓ Check the vehicle tool kit and add tools according to individual requirements → page 191.
- ✓ Pack luggage in the vehicle as evenly and as low as possible. Secure all loose items.

Volkswagen recommends completing an "off-road driver training course" before driving off-road. This is particularly important if you have no or only little experience in off-road driving. Even drivers with experience of off-road driving can benefit from "off-road driver training".

A good driving course will teach you how to handle the vehicle in a variety of off-road situations and how to drive safely in difficult terrain. Driving off-road demands different skills and responses in comparison to driving on roads. The safety of the driver and the vehicle passengers depends on the driver being well-informed, skilled and careful.

General rules and driving tips

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 188.

Code of conduct for off-road driving

A responsible driver should respect the environment when driving off-road. Remember that driving through undergrowth and on meadows can destroy animal and plant habitats.

- Always stay on designated routes and paths.
- Do not create any unnecessary noise or dust.
- Leave nature as you found it.
- Avoid sensitive natural habitats.
- Give way to drivers coming uphill or who are overtaking.

Driving tips

Special rules apply when driving off-road:

- Never drive off-road alone. You should only drive off-road with at least 2 off-road vehicles driving as a team. Unexpected situations can always occur. We recommend that you carry emergency equipment.
- Stop your vehicle when you reach difficult sections and walk along the path ahead to reconnoitre it.
- Drive slowly over the brows of hills so the vehicle does not lose contact with the ground as this could cause damage, leaving you unable to manoeuvre.
- Drive slowly when the route is difficult. Shift up a gear when on slippery ground and always keep the vehicle in motion.
- Always look for flat and firm surfaces. The ground is predominantly soft when driving off-road, meaning the tyres could sink into the ground. This will reduce ground clearance and the wading depth.
- Even when driving at low speeds, always keep your distance from other vehicles. If the first vehicle suddenly gets stuck, the following vehicle can stop without getting stuck.

NOTICE

- Always ensure that there is enough ground clearance underneath the vehicle. Serious damage to the underbody could occur if the vehicle bottoms. This damage could cause the vehicle to break down and thus make it impossible to drive on.
- Do not slip the clutch or rest your foot on the clutch when driving off-road. When travelling over uneven ground, you could press the clutch by mistake, and lose control of the vehicle. A slipped clutch also prevents power being transferred from the engine to the gearbox. Driving with the clutch partially engaged causes premature wear to the clutch lining.

3G0012720AC

Useful accessories for off-road driving

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 188.

The checklist contains just a few items of equipment that can be very useful for off-road driving. If you have an instruction manual or assembly instructions for these accessories you must always take them with you when driving off-road and consult them as necessary.

Checklist

Useful items when driving off-road:

- ✓ Water, compass, maps and torch with spare batteries.
- ✓ Winch, tow-bar or tow-rope with sufficient strength.
- ✓ Mobile telephone, shovel, blankets and rubber boots.
- ✓ Electrical air compressor for connection to the 12-volt plug in the vehicle to inflate the tyres.
- ✓ A plank of wood, approx. 4 cm thick and approx. 1 metre long or an aluminium frame of similar size: this will help to free a vehicle stuck in the mud and provide a platform for a vehicle jack.
- ✓ Snow chains, additional spare wheels and breakdown set as well as jack and box spanner.

Scanned by CamScanner

Off-road display



Fig. 159 In the Infotainment system: off-road display.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 188.

The off-road display contains digital instruments that show additional information about the vehicle and its surroundings. This makes it possible to assess the current driving situation more precisely.

Opening the off-road display

- Press the CAR button on the Infotainment system.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Offroad** function button.
- **OR:** press and hold the MENU button on the Infotainment system.
- Touch the **Vehicle** function button.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Offroad** function button.
- **OR:** press the CAR button on the Infotainment system repeatedly until the off-road display is displayed.

Selecting instruments and setting units

The display can show a maximum of three instruments at the same time. Each instrument can be selected for each display area → Fig. 159 ① (left, middle, right).

To change instruments, swipe vertically over the display. The currently selected instrument will then disappear and a new instrument will appear.

The units can be set for some instruments in the Infotainment system → page 78.

The following instruments can be displayed (depending on equipment level):

- **Altimeter:** the altimeter shows the current altitude above sea level (in the unit "m" or "ft").
- **Steering angle display:** the steering angle of the vehicle is display in the range between -49° and 49° corresponding to the amount by which the steering wheel is turned. The value is positive for a left steering angle and negative for a right steering angle. If the wheel on the display is aligned vertically, the vehicle wheels are practically straight.
- **Compass:** the compass shows the current driving direction.
- **Engine coolant temperature display:** the display corresponds to the temperature display on the instrument cluster → page 70. A yellow transition range is also marked. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is lit up or flashing.
- **Oil temperature display:** the needle is in the middle area under normal driving conditions. If the needle is in the bottom left area, this means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid excessively high speeds and acceleration when the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is lit up or flashing → page 354.

Adapting the display areas to the driving situation

Select the three possible instruments corresponding to the driving situation and the environmental or terrain conditions, e.g.:

- **Sandy terrain:** oil, steering angle and engine coolant temperature display
- **Inclines:** steering angle and engine coolant temperature display, altimeter
- **Alpine terrain:** steering angle display, altimeter, compass

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly. ◁

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Driver assist systems

Cruise control system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Display and indicator lamp 194
– Operating cruise control system (CCS) 195

The Cruise Control System (CCS) helps to maintain a speed set by the driver.

The cruise control system helps to maintain a speed set by the driver when the vehicle is travelling forwards at speeds of more than approximately 20 km/h (15 mph)[1].

The CCS only slows the vehicle by easing off the accelerator and not with a braking intervention →▲.

▲ WARNING

Use of the CCS can lead to accidents and serious injuries if traffic does not allow you to drive at a safe distance at a constant speed.

- Never use the CCS in heavy traffic, with insufficient distance from the vehicle ahead, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads, loose chippings or flooded roads.
- Never use the CCS when driving off-road or on unsurfaced roads.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Always switch cruise control off after use to avoid unintentional operation.
- It is dangerous to use a set speed that is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.
- The CCS cannot maintain a constant speed when travelling downhill. The vehicle speed can increase under its own weight. Shift down a gear or brake the vehicle using the foot brake.

Display and indicator lamp

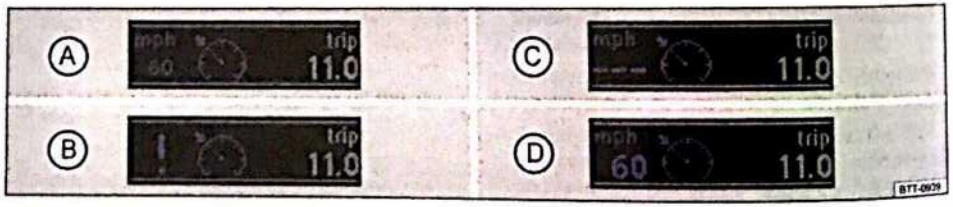


Fig. 160 Instrument cluster display: cruise control (CCS) status display.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 194.

Display

The stored speed is displayed on the instrument cluster. Depending on the equipment level, a notification may also appear on the Head-up Display →page 54.

Status Fig. 160:

Ⓐ CCS switched off temporarily. The stored speed is shown in small numbers or displayed in a darker shade.

Ⓑ System fault. Go to a qualified workshop.

Ⓒ CCS switched on. Speed memory is empty.

Ⓓ CCS is active. Stored speed in large figures.

[1] The mph figure in brackets relates solely to instrument clusters that display distances/speeds in miles.

Indicator lamp

Lit up	Possible cause →▲
	CCS or the speed limiter is controlling the speed.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

▲ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

! NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

If the cruise control system, Adaptive Cruise Control or speed limiter were switched on when the ignition was switched off, the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control will be switched on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on. However, no speed is stored. The speed limiter's last set speed remains stored.

Displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster are available. ◁

Operating cruise control system (CCS)

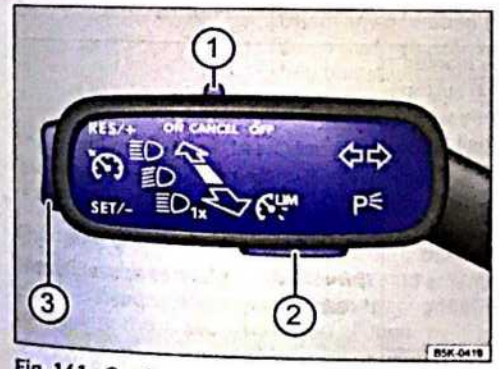


Fig. 161 On the steering column, left: switch and buttons for operating the CCS.

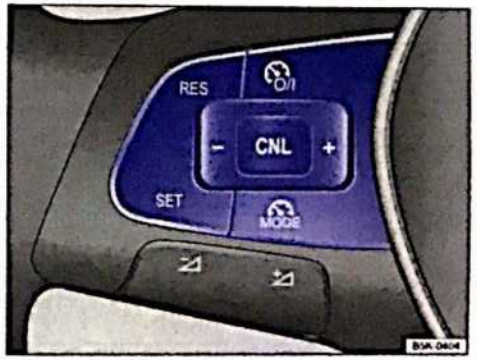


Fig. 162 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the CCS. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 194.

Function	Switch position, switch operation on the turn signal lever → Fig. 161 or button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 162	Action
Switching on the CCS.	Move switch ① on the turn signal lever to position **ON**, or press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The system is switched on. No speed has yet been stored and the speed is not yet being controlled.
Switching between the CCS and the speed limiter.	Press button ② on the turn signal lever, or press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.	This switches between the CCS and the speed limiter → page 198.
Activating the CCS.	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever at the area marked **SET/–**, or press the **SET** button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The current speed is stored and controlled.
Switching off the CCS control temporarily.	Move switch ① on the turn signal lever to position **CANCEL**, or press the **CNL** button on the multifunction steering wheel. **OR:** *briefly* press the button in the multifunction steering wheel. **OR:** depress the brake pedal.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.
Resuming CCS control.	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever at the area marked **RES/+**, or press the **RES** button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The stored speed is reactivated and controlled.
Increasing the set speed (during CCS control).	Press button ③ in the area marked **RES/+**, or *briefly* press the **RES** button on the multifunction steering wheel to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.	The vehicle accelerates actively until it reaches the new set speed.
	Press the + button on the multifunction steering wheel *briefly* to increase the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.	
	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever in the area marked **RES/+**, or press and *hold* the + button on the multifunction steering wheel to increase the speed continuously until the button is released and to store the speed.	
Decreasing the set speed (during CCS control).	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever in the area marked **SET/–**, or *briefly* press the **SET** button on the multifunction steering wheel to reduce the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.	The system will decrease the speed until the new set speed is reached by easing off the acceleration *without* a braking intervention.
	Press the – button on the multifunction steering wheel *briefly* to reduce the stored speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.	
	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever in the area marked **SET/–**, or press and *hold* the – button on the multifunction steering wheel to reduce the speed continuously until the button is released and to store the speed.	
Switching off the CCS.	Move switch ① to **OFF** position. **OR:** briefly press the button *twice* in the multifunction steering wheel with active regulation. **OR:** in any operating mode, hold down the button in the multifunction steering wheel *for an extended period*.	The system is switched off. The stored speed will be deleted.

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

Changing gear in CCS mode

The CCS reduces acceleration as soon as the clutch is depressed, and automatically continues to regulate the speed after a gear change.

Driving downhill with CCS

If the CCS cannot maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the foot brake and shift down gear if necessary.

Automatic switch-off

The CCS control will be switched off automatically or switched off temporarily:

- If the system detects a fault that could impair the function of the CCS.
- If the vehicle speed is higher than the stored speed for an extended period with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- If regulation related to the driving dynamics is taking place, e.g. by TCS and ESC.
- If the brake pedal is depressed.
- If the airbag is triggered.
- If the selector lever for automatic gearbox is moved out of position **D/S**.

3C0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Speed limiter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Display and warning and indicator lamp 198
– Operating the speed limiter 199

The speed limiter helps to maintain a speed limitation set by the driver.

The speed limiter helps to prevent the driver from exceeding an individual stored speed when driving forwards at speeds of approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) and above → ▲.

⚠ WARNING

Always switch off the speed limiter after use to avoid unintentional cruise control.

- The speed limiter does not relieve the driver of their responsibility for the speed of the vehicle. Do not drive at full throttle if it is not required.
- Use of the speed limiter in adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause serious injury, e.g. through aquaplaning, snow, ice, or leaves. Only use the speed limiter when the road and weather conditions allow it to be used safely.
- The speed limiter cannot limit the vehicle speed when travelling downhill. The vehicle speed can increase under its own weight. Shift down a gear or brake the vehicle using the foot brake.

Display and warning and indicator lamp

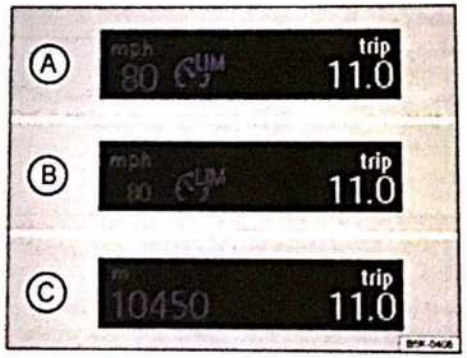


Fig. 163 On the instrument cluster display: speed limiter status displays.

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 198.

Speed limiter displays

Status → Fig. 163:

Ⓐ The speed limiter is active. The last stored speed is displayed in large digits.

Ⓑ The speed limiter is inactive. The last stored speed is shown in small digits or the display is darkened.

Ⓒ The speed limiter is switched off. The total mileage is displayed.

Warning and indicator lamp

Lights up or flashes	Possible cause → ▲
	Lit up: the speed limiter is switched on, active.
	Flashing: the set speed of the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

ⓘ Displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster are available.

ⓘ If the cruise control system, Adaptive Cruise Control or speed limiter were switched on when the ignition was switched off, the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control will be switched on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on. However, no speed is stored. The speed limiter's last set speed remains stored. ◁

Operating the speed limiter

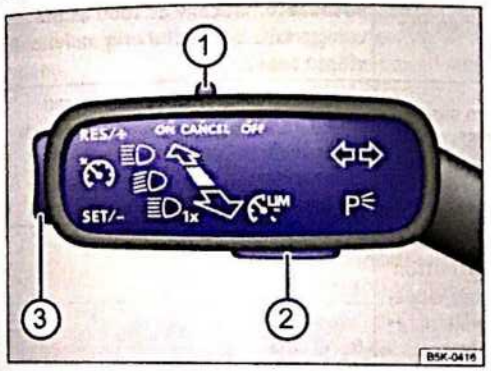


Fig. 164 On the steering column, left: switch and buttons for operating the speed limiter.

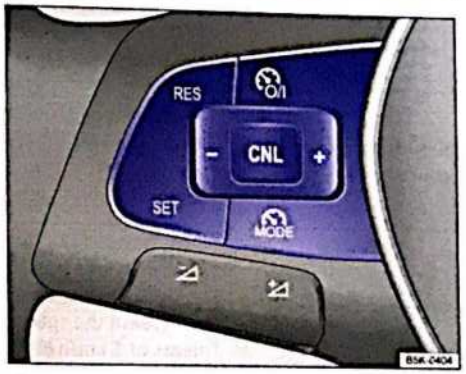


Fig. 165 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the speed limiter.

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 198.

Function	Switch position, switch operation on the turn signal lever → Fig. 164 or button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 165	Action
Switching on the speed limiter.	Move switch ① on the turn signal lever to position ON, or press the button on the multifunction steering wheel. Press button ② on the turn signal lever, or press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The system is switched on. The speed limiter's last set speed is stored. No control yet.
Switches between the speed limiter and cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (when the speed limiter is switched on).	Press button ② on the turn signal lever, or press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.	This switches between the speed limiter and CCS or ACC.
Activating the speed limiter.	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever at the area marked SET/–, or press the SET button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling is stored in the memory as the maximum speed and the speed limiter is activated.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Function	Switch position, switch operation on the turn signal lever → Fig. 164 or button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 165	Action
Switching off the speed limiter regulation temporarily.	Move switch ① on the turn signal lever to position **CANCEL**, or press the CNL or button on the multifunction steering wheel.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.
Switching off speed limiter regulation temporarily using the kick down function.	Fully depress the accelerator beyond the point of resistance, e.g. for overtaking. The speed limiter is switched off temporarily when the stored speed is exceeded.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory. Speed limiter regulation switches on again automatically as soon as the vehicle falls below the originally stored speed.
Resuming speed limiter control.	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever at the area marked **RES/+**, or press the RES button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The speed is limited to the stored speed as soon as the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling falls below the stored maximum speed.
Increasing the stored speed.	Press button ③ in the area marked **RES/+**, or *briefly* press the RES button on the multifunction steering wheel to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.	The speed is limited to the stored value.
	Press the + button on the multifunction steering wheel *briefly* to increase the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.	
	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever in this area **RES/+** or press and *hold* the + button on the multifunction steering wheel to increase speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the value.	
Reducing the stored speed.	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever in the area marked **SET/–**, or *briefly* press the SET button on the multifunction steering wheel to reduce the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.	The speed is limited to the stored value.
	Press the – button on the multifunction steering wheel *briefly* to reduce the stored speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.	
	Press button ③ on the turn signal lever in this area **SET/–** or press and *hold* the – button on the multifunction steering wheel to reduce the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the value.	
Switching off the speed limiter.	Move switch ① to **OFF** position. **OR:** briefly press the button *twice* in the multifunction steering wheel with active regulation. **OR:** in any operating mode, hold down the button in the multifunction steering wheel *for an extended period*.	The system is switched off. The stored speed remains stored in the memory.

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

Driving downhill with the speed limiter

When the speed limiter's stored set speed is exceeded when travelling downhill, the warning and indicator lamp → page 198 will begin to flash after a short time, and a signal tone may also be sounded. Apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down, and change down a gear as required.

Deactivating temporarily

If the speed limiter regulator is temporarily deactivated, e.g. when overtaking, move switch → Fig. 164 ① on the turn signal lever to position **CANCEL** or press button CNL or in the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 165.

After overtaking, the speed limiter can be activated with the previous set speed by pressing the button → Fig. 164 ③ on the turn signal lever in the **RES/+** area or by pressing the RES button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 165.

Temporary deactivation when the kick down function is activated

Speed limiter regulation is deactivated temporarily when the accelerator is fully depressed (kick down) and the stored speed is deliberately exceeded by the driver.

A one-off signal tone confirms the deactivation. The warning and indicator lamp flashes during deactivation.

Speed limiter regulation is reactivated when the accelerator is no longer fully depressed and the vehicle speed has fallen below the stored speed. The indicator lamp lights up continuously.

B5S0127204C

Scanned by CamScanner

Automatic switch-off

Speed limiter regulation is automatically switched off:

- If the system detects a fault that could impair the function of the speed limiter.
- If the airbag is triggered.

NOTICE

In the event of automatic switch-off due to a system fault, the speed limiter is only completely deactivated when the accelerator is released once or the driver deliberately deactivates the system. This is for safety reasons. ◁

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Displays, warning and indicator lamps 204
- Radar sensor 205
- Operating ACC 206
- Switch off the ACC temporarily in the following situations 209
- Special driving situations 210

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) combines cruise control and distance control.

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can help to maintain a speed set by the driver → ▲. The Adaptive Cruise Control can also maintain a set time interval to a vehicle travelling ahead. Two factory-fitted versions of the system are available:

- System version 1 functions at speeds of 30 - 160 km/h (20 mph - 100 mph).
- System version 2 functions at speeds of 30 - 210 km/h (20 mph - 130 mph).

In vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox DSG®, the Adaptive Cruise Control can brake the vehicle to a standstill behind a vehicle in front that is slowing to a stop.

The system tells the driver to take control

There are system-specific limits on the Adaptive Cruise Control when driving. This means that the driver may have to control the speed and distance between the vehicle and other vehicles in certain circumstances.

The *request for the driver to take control* is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster display with a request to brake and by a signal tone → page 204.

WARNING

The intelligent technology used in the ACC cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Careless or unintentional use of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can cause accidents and lead to serious injury. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use the ACC in poor visibility, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads, loose chippings or flooded roads.
- Never use the Adaptive Cruise Control off-road or on non-surfaced roads. The ACC is designed for use on surfaced roads only.
- The Adaptive Cruise Control does not react to stationary obstacles, e.g. the end of a traffic jam, a vehicle that has broken down, or vehicles waiting at traffic lights.
- The Adaptive Cruise Control does not react to persons, animals or vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.
- If the ACC speed reduction is insufficient, you should brake the vehicle by depressing the foot brake.
- Brake the vehicle by depressing the brake if the vehicle rolls inadvertently on after the driver has been prompted to take control of the vehicle.
- If the instrument cluster display indicates *that the driver should take control of the vehicle*, you have to regulate the distance yourself.
- The driver must be prepared to take control of the vehicle (by accelerating or braking) at all times. ▶

NOTICE

Switch off the ACC if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged. This can help to prevent further damage. Have the radar sensor realigned.

- Repair work on the radar sensor will require special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

If the Adaptive Cruise Control does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the system, and have it checked by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

The maximum vehicle speed when the Adaptive Cruise Control is active is limited to either 160 km/h (100 mph) or 210 km/h (130 mph), depending on the system version.

If the Adaptive Cruise Control is active, unfamiliar noises may be heard during the automatic braking procedure. These are caused by the braking system.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

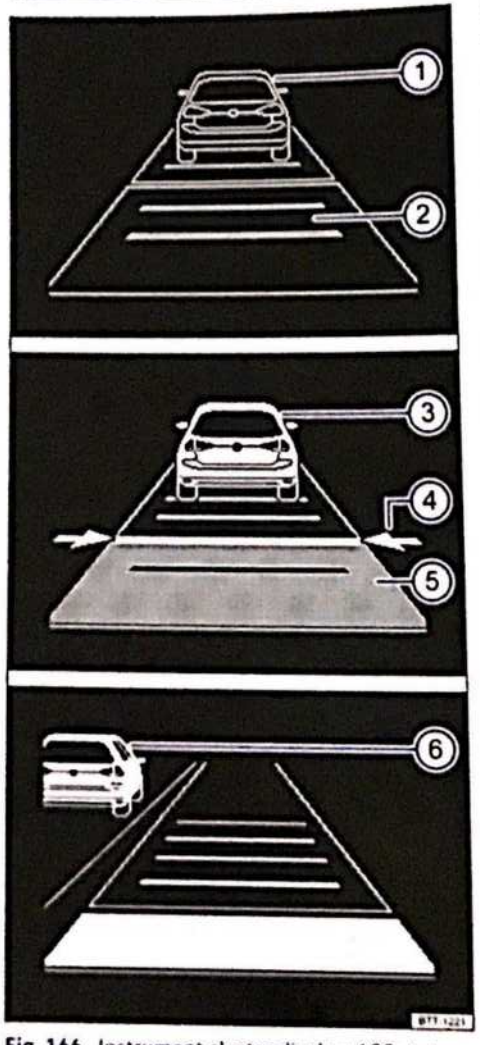


Fig. 166 Instrument cluster display: ACC status display.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 202.

Displays

Display fields → Fig. 166:

① Vehicle ahead when ACC is inactive.

② Selected distance range when ACC is inactive.

③ Vehicle detected ahead. ACC is active.

④ Setting the time interval to the vehicle in front while travelling at stored speed.

⑤ Time interval to the vehicle in front while travelling at stored speed has been set.

⑥ Identified vehicle ahead on the left-hand lane. ACC undertaking prevention active. ▶

Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	Adaptive Cruise Control speed reduction in relation to the vehicle ahead is insufficient.	**Brake!** Depress the brake pedal. The system tells the driver to take control.
	ACC currently not available.	Switch off the engine and restart it while stationary. Inspect the radar sensor (for dirt, ice etc.). Go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked if it is constantly unavailable.
	ACC is active. No vehicle has been detected ahead. The set speed is kept constant.	-
	When displayed in white: ACC active. Vehicle detected ahead. ACC regulates the speed and the distance from the vehicle ahead.	-
	When displayed in grey: ACC not active. System switched on, does not regulate.	
	ACC is active.	-

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

When the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on, some system-related displays in the instrument cluster can be overwritten by other functions, such as incoming telephone calls. ◁

3G0012720AC

Radar sensor

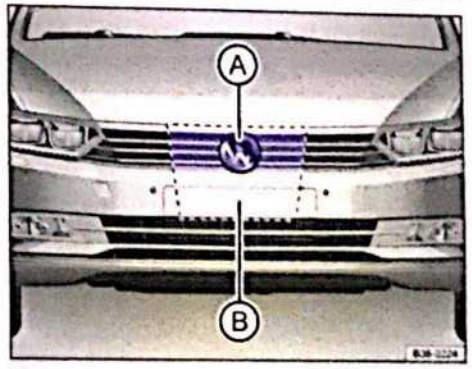


Fig. 167 In the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge: radar sensor Ⓐ and area around the radar sensor to be kept clear Ⓑ.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 202.

A radar sensor is fitted to the radiator grille to monitor the traffic situation → Fig. 167 Ⓐ. Vehicles travelling ahead can thus be detected up to a distance of approximately 120 m.

The efficacy of the radar sensor can be impaired by contamination such as slush or snow, or by environmental conditions such as heavy rain or ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

spray. In this case, the Adaptive Cruise Control will not work. The instrument cluster display shows the message **ACC: no sensor view!**. Clean the radar sensors as required → ⓘ.

The Adaptive Cruise Control is automatically available again as soon as the radar sensor is no longer impaired. The message on the instrument cluster display goes out, and the Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks, can impair the function of the ACC.

The area in front of and around the radar sensor → Fig. 167 Ⓑ must not be covered by objects such as stickers, auxiliary headlights, frames for number plates etc., as this can impair the function of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

Any structural modifications to the vehicle, e.g. "lowering" the vehicle or making alterations to the front end trim, can impair the function of the ACC. Structural modifications should therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Incorrectly performed repairs to the front end of the vehicle can alter the position of the radar sensor and therefore impair the function of the ACC. Repair work should therefore only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

NOTICE

Switch off the ACC if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged or its position has been altered. This can help to prevent further damage. Have the radar sensor realigned.

- The radar sensor could be moved if it is hit, for example in parking manoeuvres. Readjusting the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to be switched off.
- Repair work on the radar sensor will require special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Remove snow with a brush, and remove ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray. ◁

Operating ACC



Fig. 168 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the ACC.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 202.

If the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on, the green indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster and the speed memory and the status of the Adaptive Cruise Control are shown in the display → Fig. 166.

Requirements for activating the ACC

- The selector lever must be in position **D/S** or be in the Tiptronic gate. A forward gear, but not first gear, must be selected in the manual gearbox.
- In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the actual speed should be minimum 30 km/h (20 mph) if no speed is stored.
- In the **Offroad** (Alltrack) driving profile → page 183, the actual speed must be a minimum of 25 km/h (16 mph).

Controlling speed

When switched on, the speed can be stored and set. The stored speed can vary from the speed actually being driven if the distance is being actively controlled. ▶

Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 168	Action
Switching on the ACC.	Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The system is switched on. No speed has yet been stored and the speed is not yet being controlled.
Switching between the ACC and the speed limiter.	Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.	This switches between the ACC and the speed limiter → page 198.
Activating the ACC.	Press the SET button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The current speed is stored and controlled. **If ACC is already switched on:** *Press briefly:* reduces the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph) and stores it. *Press and hold:* As long as you keep pressing, the stored speed is reduced incrementally by 1 km/h (1 mph). A reduction in speed is achieved by accelerator release or automatic braking.
Switching off ACC temporarily.	*Briefly* press the button on the multifunction steering wheel. **OR:** depress the brake pedal. **OR:** depress the clutch for longer than 30 seconds.	Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.
Resuming ACC control.	Press the RES button on the multifunction steering wheel.	The stored speed is reactivated and controlled. If no speed has yet been stored, the Adaptive Cruise Control adopts and regulates the current speed at which the vehicle is being driven. **If ACC is already switched on:** *Press briefly:* increases the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph) and stores it. *Press and hold:* As long as you keep pressing, the stored speed is increased incrementally by 1 km/h (1 mph).
Accelerating (during ACC control).	Press the + button on the multifunction steering wheel.	*Press briefly:* increases the speed by 10 km/h (5 mph) and stores it. *Press and hold:* As long as you keep pressing, the stored speed is increased incrementally by 10 km/h (5 mph). ▶

3G0012770AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 168	Action
Decelerating (during ACC control).	Press the − button on the multifunction steering wheel.	*Press briefly:* reduces the speed by 10 km/h (5 mph) and stores it. *Press and hold:* As long as you keep pressing, the stored speed is reduced incrementally by 10 km/h (5 mph). A reduction in speed is achieved by accelerator release or automatic braking.
Switching off the ACC.	*Press and hold* the button on the multifunction steering wheel. *Brieflypress* the button on the multifunction steering wheel if the ACC is temporarily switched off.	The system is switched off. The stored speed will be deleted.

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

Stop-and-go traffic and the vehicle automatically pulling away

If the **ACC ready for start** driver message is displayed in the instrument cluster and the vehicle ahead starts to move, the vehicle will also pull away. **ACC ready for start** can be reactivated or extended by pressing the RES button → Fig. 168. It is displayed for approximately 3 seconds.

If **ACC ready for start** is no longer displayed, the vehicle will not start automatically, e.g. with active start/stop system. If the vehicle ahead has already moved on, you can pull off by pressing the RES button → Fig. 168 or by depressing the accelerator briefly. The Adaptive Cruise Control then continues regulating.

Automatic pulling away is not available for all vehicles and countries.

Setting the distance setting

The speed-dependent distance from the vehicle travelling ahead can be set to one of 5 levels.

In wet road conditions, you should always set a larger distance than when driving in dry road conditions.

The following distances can be pre-selected:

- Very small
- Small
- Medium
- Large
- Very large

The distance setting to the vehicle ahead is set using the button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 168. The ACC display appears when the button is pressed → page 204. To set the distance setting, press the button.

When the highest level is reached, the distance returns to the lowest level when the button is pressed again.

The distance setting can also be set using the or + buttons on the multifunction steering wheel immediately after the − button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 168 has been pressed.

The CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system can be used to set the distance setting that should be selected when the ACC is switched on → page 78.

Setting the acceleration response

The acceleration response can be influenced by the gearbox programme selected by touching the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

The following gearbox programmes can be selected:

- Normal
- Sport
- Eco

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the vehicle's acceleration response → page 183.

The following conditions could prevent the ACC from reacting:

- If the accelerator is depressed.
- If no gear or position has been engaged.
- If the ESC is taking corrective action.
- If the driver has not fastened their seat belt.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on the vehicle or on a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle → page 299.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- System version 1: if the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 160 km/h (100 mph).
- System version 2: if the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 210 km/h (130 mph).

WARNING

If you do not maintain the minimum distance to a vehicle in front and the difference in speed between the two vehicles is so great that the braking action of the ACC is insufficient, you are in danger of colliding with the vehicle in front. You should reduce the vehicle speed immediately with the foot brake.

- The Adaptive Cruise Control may not be able to detect all driving situations correctly.
- Resting your foot on the accelerator will mean that the Adaptive Cruise Control will not brake automatically. This is because manual acceleration overrides the system.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- Observe country-specific regulations regarding the minimum distance.

The set speed will be deleted if the ignition or the ACC is switched off.

The ACC is deactivated automatically when the traction control system (TCS) is deactivated.

In vehicles with a start/stop system, the engine is switched off automatically during the stationary phase of ACC and is then restarted for moving off.

Switch off the ACC temporarily in the following situations

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 202.

Switch off the ACC in the following situations → ▲:

- When turning off roads, driving around roundabouts, narrow curves, joining motorways, exiting from motorways or driving through road works, to prevent the vehicle from accelerating unintentionally to the set speed in these situations.
- When driving through a tunnel as this situation could impair the system function.
- On roads with more than one lane, if other vehicles are driving more slowly in the fast lane. The slower vehicles in the other lane would be overtaken from the right side in this case.
- In heavy rain, snow or spray as vehicles travelling ahead cannot be monitored sufficiently or maybe cannot be monitored at all.

WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if the ACC is not switched off in the situations listed above.

- Always switch off the ACC in critical driving situations.

If the ACC is not switched off in the certain situations, it can result in violation of legal regulations.

3C0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

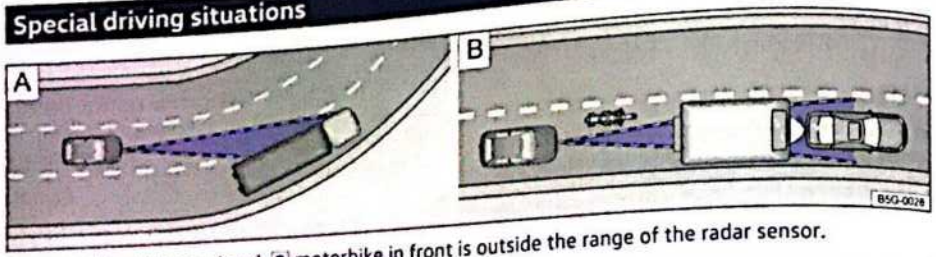


Fig. 169 A vehicle in a bend. B motorbike in front is outside the range of the radar sensor.

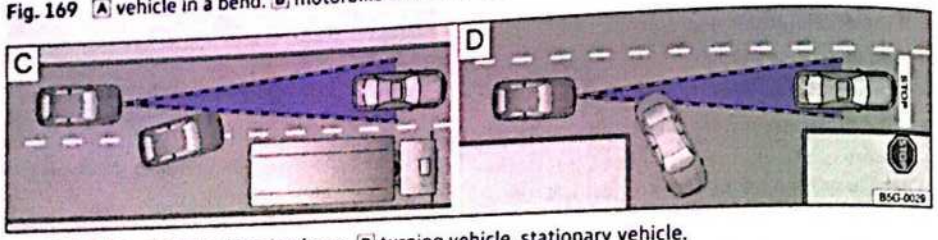


Fig. 170 C A vehicle is changing lanes. D turning vehicle, stationary vehicle.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 202.

The ACC has physical and system-related limitations. As such, certain ACC system reactions may occur, from the driver's perspective, unexpectedly or with some delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

The following traffic situations, for example, require particular vigilance:

Deceleration to standstill, only vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox

If a vehicle travelling ahead brakes to a standstill, the ACC will also brake your vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle is then held stationary by the brakes.

Stationary phase, only vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox

If the ACC has decelerated the vehicle to a standstill, the ACC will not be switched off by depressing the brake pedal.

The electronic parking brake will be switched on automatically and the ACC will switch off if one of the following situations occurs while the vehicle is stationary:

- The safety belt is unfastened.
- The driver door is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.
- The stationary phase lasts longer than approximately 3 minutes.

Driving off after a stationary phase (only vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox)

After a stationary phase, the ACC can start the vehicle moving automatically as soon as the vehicle in front begins to move again.

Overtaking

If the turn signal is used while overtaking, the ACC accelerates the vehicle automatically and thus reduces the distance from the vehicle travelling ahead.

If you move your vehicle into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle ahead of you, the ACC will automatically increase the speed to your set level and maintain it.

Acceleration can be stopped at any point by depressing the brake pedal or pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel → page 206.

Undertaking prevention

In countries with right-hand traffic: if the Adaptive Cruise Control identifies a slower vehicle in the left-hand lane → Fig. 166, the speed is reduced to prevent illegal undertaking in the right-hand lane. Depress the accelerator to override the undertaking prevention.

In countries where they drive on the left, the speed is reduced to prevent illegal undertaking in the left-hand lane.

When driving through bends

While driving through bends, the radar sensor may sometimes lose the vehicle travelling ahead or may react to a vehicle in the next lane → Fig. 169 A. In such situations, the vehicle might decelerate unnecessarily or not react to the vehicle in front. In this case the driver must override the ACC by depressing the accelerator, or interrupt the braking procedure by depressing the brake pedal or pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel → page 206.

Driving in tunnels

The radar sensor function may be restricted in tunnels. Switch off the ACC in tunnels.

Narrow vehicles and a zig-zag traffic situation

Narrow vehicles and vehicles travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle will only be recognised by the radar sensor once they have entered the radar range → Fig. 169 B. This applies in particular to narrow vehicles such as motorbikes. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Vehicles with special load or special equipment

Any load or accessories on other vehicles that protrude from the side, rear or over the roof of the vehicle may not be detected by the ACC.

Switch off the ACC when the vehicle ahead has a special load or special equipment or while overtaking such vehicles. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

When other vehicles change lanes

Vehicles that are very close when they move into your lane can only be detected by the radar sensors when they have moved into the sensor range. This will result in the ACC reacting late → Fig. 170 C. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects during a journey, such as stationary traffic or a vehicle that has broken down.

If a stationary vehicle is hidden behind a vehicle that has been detected by the Adaptive Cruise Control and this vehicle turns off the road or changes lane, the ACC will not be able to react to the stationary vehicle → Fig. 170 D. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

Oncoming vehicles and vehicles crossing your path

The ACC does not react to approaching vehicles or vehicles crossing your path.

Metal objects

Metal objects, such as tracks in the road or metal plates used in roadworks, can confuse the radar sensor and cause incorrect reactions from the ACC.

Possible radar sensor function impairments

The ACC will switch off temporarily if the function of the radar sensor is impaired due to, e.g. heavy rain, spray, snow, ice or mud. A corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster display. Clean the radar sensors as required.

The Adaptive Cruise Control is automatically available again as soon as the radar sensor is no longer impaired. The message on the instrument cluster display goes out, and the Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated.

Heavily reflected radar signals, e.g. in multi-storey car parks, can impair the function of the radar sensor.

Towing a trailer

The ACC operates with reduced dynamics when the vehicle is towing a trailer → page 299.

Overheated brakes

If the brakes overheat, e.g. following heavy braking or when driving for a longer time down steep slopes, the ACC may be deactivated temporarily. A corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster display. It is then not possible to activate the ACC.

As soon as the temperature of the brakes has decreased sufficiently, the ACC can be activated again. The message on the instrument cluster display goes out. If the message **ACC not available** does not go out for a long time, there is a fault. Go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Scanned by CamScanner

WARNING

If the message ACC ready for start appears on the instrument cluster display and the vehicle in front moves off, your vehicle will move off automatically. In some cases the radar sensor may be unable to detect obstacles that are located in the vehicle's path. This can result in serious injury and accidents.

- Always check the road ahead before the vehicle pulls away. If necessary, cancel the pulling away procedure by depressing the brake pedal.

Area monitoring system (Front Assist) including City Emergency Brake

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Displays 214
- Radar sensor 215
- Operating the area monitoring system 215
- Temporarily switch off the area monitoring system (Front Assist) in the following situations 216
- System limits 216

The area monitoring system (Front Assist) including City Emergency Brake can help to avoid rear-end collisions.

Within the limits of the system, Front Assist can warn the driver about imminent collisions, prepare the vehicle for emergency braking in case of danger, assist with braking, and initiate automatic braking.

The City Emergency Brake forms part of the area monitoring system (Front Assist).

Front Assist is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

Distance warning

If the system detects danger from driving too close to the vehicle in front, within the speed range of approx. 65 km/h (41 mph) up to 250 km/h (156 mph), the system warns the driver by showing a corresponding message on the instrument cluster display → Fig. 171.

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's response.

Advance warning

If the system detects a danger of collision with the vehicle ahead, within the speed range of approx. 30 km/h (18 mph) up to 250 km/h (156 mph), the system warns the driver by emitting a signal tone and showing a corresponding message on the instrument cluster display → Fig. 172.

The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's response. At the same time it prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking → ⚠.

Urgent warning

If the driver fails to respond to the advance warning, within a speed range of approx. 30 km/h (18 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph), the system can initiate a quick jolt of the brake by triggering a braking intervention in order to draw the driver's attention to the increasing danger of a collision. The warning period varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's response.

Automatic braking

If the driver still fails to react to the acute warning, the vehicle can brake automatically using brake pressure with gradually increasing intensity within a speed range of approx. 5 km/h (3 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph). By reducing speed during a possible collision the system can help to minimise the consequences of an accident.

Braking intervention

If the system detects that the driver is not braking sufficiently when there is a risk of collision, the system can increase the braking force and thereby help to prevent a collision from speeds of approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph). The braking intervention works only for as long as the brake pedal is pressed hard.

City Emergency Brake

If the driver fails to react to an imminent collision within a speed range of between approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and 45 km/h (28 mph), the system is also able to automatically brake the vehicle with an increasing brake pressure without previous warnings. By reducing speed during a possible collision the system can help to minimise the consequences of an accident.

WARNING

The intelligent technology used in Front Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. If Front Assist issues a warning, immediately apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle, depending on the traffic situation.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Front Assist cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- Front Assist can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions in certain complex driving situations, e.g. at traffic islands.
- Front Assist can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the position of the radar sensor has been soiled or changed.
- The Front Assist does not react to persons, animals or vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.
- The driver must be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

The brake pedal feels "harder" when Front Assist triggers the brakes.

Automatic braking interventions by Front Assist can be stopped by using the accelerator or through steering intervention.

The City Emergency Brake can brake the vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle will not be held for any extended period by the braking system. Depress the brake.

Deactivate Front Assist if it does not function as described in this chapter, e.g. if multiple unwanted interventions occur, deactivate Front Assist and have the system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Scanned by CamScanner

Displays

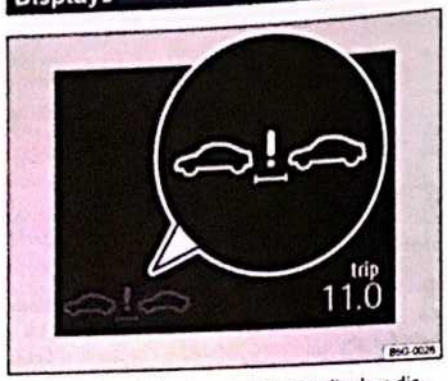


Fig. 171 On the instrument cluster display: distance warning display.

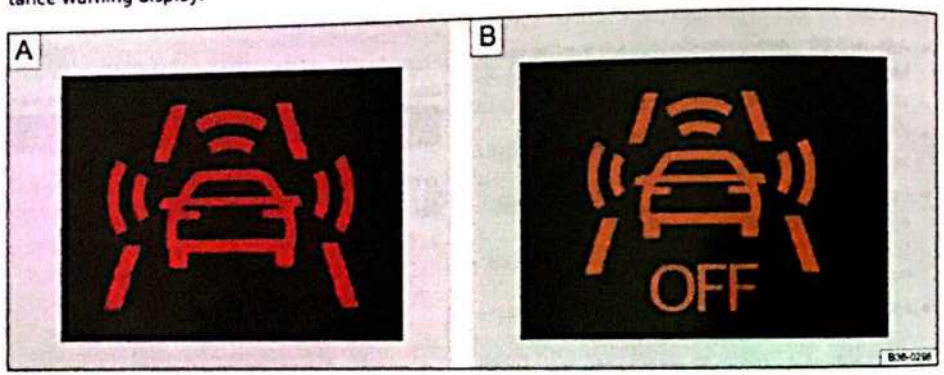


Fig. 172 The display in the instrument cluster: A advance warning display. B Front Assist deactivated.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

Distance warning

If the safe distance to the vehicle in front drops below the minimum level, a distance warning will appear on the instrument cluster display → Fig. 171 (close-up).

Increase the distance.

Advance warning

The system detects a potential collision with a vehicle in front → Fig. 172 A.

Brake or take avoiding action!

Front Assist deactivated

If the area monitoring system is deactivated, a corresponding symbol is shown in the instrument cluster display → Fig. 172 B.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and displays can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore illuminated warning lamps and displays.

When Front Assist is switched on, the display in the instrument cluster can be overwritten by displays related to other functions, e.g. an incoming telephone call.

Radar sensor

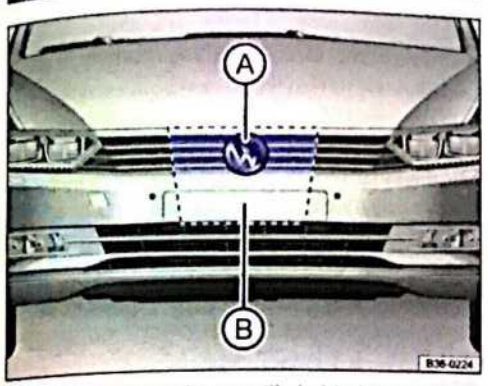


Fig. 173 In the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge: radar sensor Ⓐ and area around the radar sensor to be kept clear Ⓑ.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

A radar sensor is installed in the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge to monitor the traffic situation → Fig. 173 Ⓐ. Vehicles travelling ahead can thus be detected up to a distance of approximately 120 m.

The efficacy of the radar sensor can be impaired by contamination such as slush or snow, or by environmental conditions such as heavy rain or spray. In this case the area monitoring system (Front Assist) will not work. The instrument cluster display shows the message **Front Assist: no sensor view!**. Clean the radar sensors as required → ⓘ.

Front Assist will automatically be available again as soon as the radar sensor is no longer impaired.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks, can impair the function of Front Assist.

The area in front of and around the radar sensor Ⓑ must not be covered by objects such as stickers, auxiliary headlights, face plates for number plates or the like, as this can impair the function of the Front Assist.

Any structural modifications to the vehicle, e.g. lowering the vehicle or making alterations to the front end trim, can impair the function of Front Assist. Structural modifications should therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Incorrectly performed repairs to the front end of the vehicle can alter the position of the radar sensor and therefore impair the function of Front Assist. Repair work should therefore only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

NOTICE

Switch off Front Assist if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged or its position has been altered. This can help to prevent further damage. Have the radar sensor realigned.

- The radar sensor could be moved if it is hit, for example in parking manoeuvres. Readjusting the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to be switched off.
- Repair work on the radar sensor will require special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Remove snow with a brush, and remove ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray.

Operating the area monitoring system

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

The area monitoring system (Front Assist) and the prior warning are activated automatically once the ignition is switched on → page 166.

The prior warning and distance warning are also automatically deactivated when Front Assist is deactivated.

Volkswagen recommends that Front Assist is switched on at all times. Exceptions → page 216, *Temporarily switch off the area monitoring system (Front Assist) in the following situations.*

Activating and deactivating the area monitoring system

Front Assist can be activated or deactivated as follows when the ignition is switched on:

Scanned by CamScanner

Activate or deactivate the system using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

OR: activate or deactivate the system in the **Assistants** menu of the Volkswagen information system → page 54

A corresponding message appears on the instrument cluster display when Front Assist is deactivated → page 214.

Activating, deactivating and configuring the prior warning

The prior warning can be activated or deactivated using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

Volkswagen recommends that the advance warning system is switched on at all times.

Depending on the infotainment system installed in the vehicle, the warning time can be adjusted as follows:

- Early
- Medium
- Late

Activating or deactivating the distance warning

The distance warning display can be activated or deactivated using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

The system also retains the programmed setting when the ignition is next switched on.

Volkswagen recommends that the distance warning is switched on at all times. ◁

Temporarily switch off the area monitoring system (Front Assist) in the following situations

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

The area monitoring system (Front Assist) should be switched off in the following situations due to system limitations → ▲:

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a rolling road test bed.
- If the vehicle is utilised in a capacity beyond usage on public roads, e.g. off-road or racing.
- If the radar sensor is faulty.
- After external force on the radar sensor, e.g. after a rear-end collision.
- In the event of multiple unwanted interventions.
- If the radar sensor is covered temporarily by any auxiliary equipment, e.g. auxiliary headlights.
- If the vehicle is being loaded onto a truck, car ferry or motorail train.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to switch off Front Assist in the situations mentioned can cause accidents and serious injuries. ◁

System limits

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 213.

The area monitoring system (Front Assist) has physical and system-related limits. The driver may therefore feel that, in certain circumstances, some Front Assist reactions occur unexpectedly or with a delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

In certain cases, the following conditions may prevent Front Assist from reacting, cause a delay in its reaction, or make it react unexpectedly:

- In tight bends.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If Front Assist is switched off or there is a fault.
- If TCS or ESC is switched off manually.
- If the ESC is taking corrective action.
- If the Offroad driving profile is switched on (Alltrack).
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on the vehicle or on a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle → page 299.
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- Under hard acceleration.
- In snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, e.g. motorbikes.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- If there is oncoming traffic.
- In complex traffic situations, e.g. vehicles ahead are heavily braking or turning off.
- If there are metal objects, e.g. tracks in the road, metal plates used in roadworks or traffic signs above and next to the road.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles protrude to the side, rear or above the normal dimensions of the vehicle. ◁

Pedestrian monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Displays 218
- Radar sensor and camera 218
- Operating pedestrian monitoring 219
- Switch off pedestrian monitoring temporarily in the following situations 220
- System limits 220

The pedestrian monitoring system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians, or to mitigate the consequences of an accident.

Within the limits of the system, pedestrian monitoring can actively help the driver to prevent accidents involving pedestrians, or to mitigate the potential consequences of an accident. The system gives a warning when there is a risk of collision, prepares the vehicle for emergency braking, helps to brake the vehicle or performs an automatic brake intervention.

The pedestrian monitoring system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

Advance warning

If the system detects a danger of collision with a pedestrian, within the speed range of approx. 30 km/h (18 mph) up to 65 km/h (40 mph), the system warns the driver by emitting a signal tone and showing a corresponding message on the instrument cluster display → Fig. 174.

The warning period can vary according to the traffic situation and the driver's response. At the same time it prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking.

Automatic braking

If the driver does not react to the prior warning, the system can automatically apply the brakes fully at speeds of 4 km/h (2.5 mph) to 65 km/h (40 mph). The system can help to minimise the consequences of an accident by reducing the speed of a potential collision.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent pedestrian monitoring technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. Depending on the traffic situation, immediately apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the pedestrian if the Pedestrian Monitoring system warns you to do so.

- The pedestrian monitoring system cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- The pedestrian monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions in complex driving situations, e.g. on a twisting main road.
- The reaction of Pedestrian Monitoring may be restricted or delayed in complex situations.
- The pedestrian monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the radar sensor or the camera is covered or its position has been changed.
- The driver must be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.

The brake pedal feels "harder" when the pedestrian monitoring function system triggers the brakes. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Automatic braking interventions by the pedestrian monitoring system can be stopped by using the accelerator or through steering intervention.

Deactivate the pedestrian monitoring system if it does not function as described in this chapter, e.g. if multiple unwanted interventions occur, deactivate the pedestrian monitoring system and have the system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87.

Displays

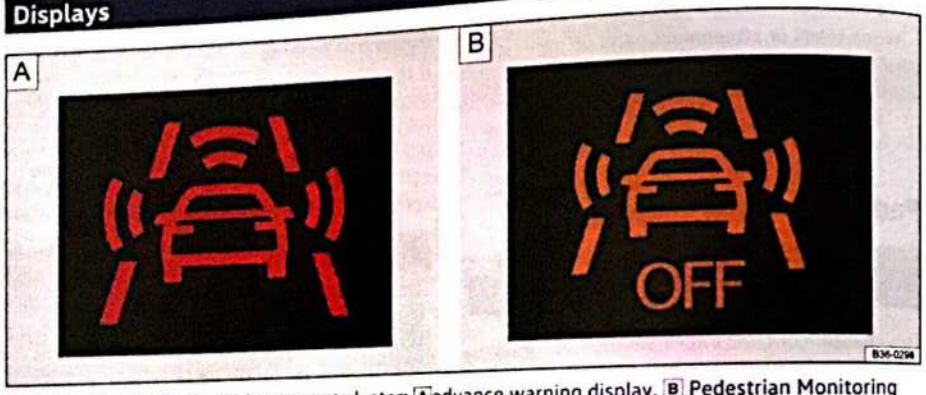


Fig. 174 The display in the instrument cluster: A advance warning display. B Pedestrian Monitoring deactivated.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 217.

Advance warning

The system detects a potential collision with a pedestrian → Fig. 174 A.

Brake or take avoiding action!

Pedestrian Monitoring deactivated.

If Pedestrian Monitoring is deactivated, a corresponding symbol is shown in the instrument cluster display → Fig. 174 B.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and displays can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore illuminated warning lamps and displays.

When the Pedestrian Monitoring function is switched on, the display in the instrument cluster can be superimposed by displays related to other functions, e.g. an incoming telephone call.

Radar sensor and camera

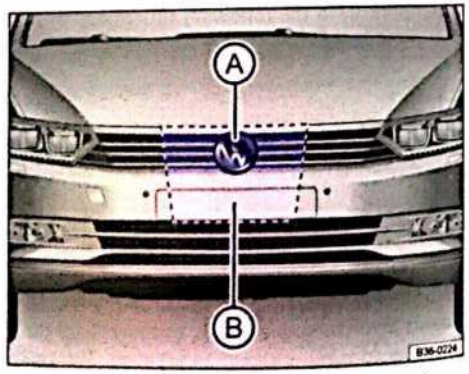


Fig. 175 In the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge: radar sensor Ⓐ and area around the radar sensor to be kept clear Ⓑ.



Fig. 176 On the windscreen: camera for pedestrian monitoring.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 217.

Any structural modifications to the vehicle, e.g. lowering the vehicle or making alterations to the front end trim, can impair the function of pedestrian monitoring. Structural modifications should therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Radar sensor

A radar sensor is installed in the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge to monitor the traffic situation → Fig. 175 Ⓐ.

The efficacy of the radar sensor can be impaired by contamination such as slush or snow, or by environmental conditions such as heavy rain or spray.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks, can impair the function of pedestrian monitoring.

The area in front of and around the radar sensor Ⓑ must not be covered by objects such as stickers, auxiliary headlights, frames for number plates etc., as this can impair the pedestrian monitoring function.

Incorrectly performed repairs to the front end of the vehicle can alter the position of the radar sensor and therefore impair the pedestrian monitoring function. Repair work should therefore only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Camera

A camera is installed in the upper area of the windscreen to monitor the area in front of the vehicle → Fig. 176. Clearly visible pedestrians can thus be detected up to a distance of approximately 50 m.

The camera view may be impaired by dirt and deposits in the upper area of the windscreen or by environmental conditions including heavy rain or ice. In this case, pedestrian monitoring will not work. The instrument cluster display shows the message **Pedestrian monitoring: no sensor view!**. In this case, clean the windscreen around the camera.

The pedestrian monitoring function is automatically available again as soon as the camera is no longer impaired.

Darkness or low sun in the camera's window can impair the Pedestrian Monitoring function. The area of the windscreen around the camera window must not be obscured by stickers or other obstructive items, as this will prevent the Pedestrian Monitoring function from working properly.

NOTICE

Switch off the pedestrian monitoring function if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged or its position has been altered. This can help to prevent further damage. Have the radar sensor realigned.

- The radar sensor could be moved if it is hit, for example in parking manoeuvres. Readjusting the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to be switched off.
- Repair work on the radar sensor will require special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Remove snow with a brush, and remove ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray.

Before starting a journey, check that the camera window is not covered → Fig. 176.

The camera window must be kept clean at all times.

Operating pedestrian monitoring

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 217.

The pedestrian monitoring function including advance warning is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on → page 166.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

The advance warning is also deactivated automatically when pedestrian monitoring is deactivated.

Volkswagen recommends that the Pedestrian Monitoring system is switched on at all times. Exceptions → page 220, *Switch off pedestrian monitoring temporarily in the following situations*

Activating and deactivating pedestrian monitoring

Pedestrian monitoring can be activated or deactivated as follows when the ignition is switched on:

Activate or deactivate the system using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

If Pedestrian Monitoring is deactivated, a corresponding symbol is shown in the instrument cluster display → page 218.

Activating, deactivating and configuring the prior warning

The prior warning can be activated or deactivated using the CAR button and the and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

Volkswagen recommends that the advance warning system is switched on at all times.

Depending on the infotainment system installed in the vehicle, the warning time can be adjusted as follows:

- Early
- Medium
- Late ◁

Switch off pedestrian monitoring temporarily in the following situations

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 217.

Switch off pedestrian monitoring in the following situations → ▲:

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a rolling road test bed.
- If the vehicle is utilised in a capacity beyond usage on public roads, e.g. off-road or racing.
- If the camera or the radar sensor is faulty.
- After external force on the radar sensor, e.g. after a rear-end collision.
- If there is a stone chip on the windscreen in the area of the camera window.
- In the event of multiple unwanted interventions.
- If the radar sensor is covered temporarily by any auxiliary equipment, e.g. auxiliary headlights.
- If the vehicle is being loaded onto a truck, car ferry or motorail train.

⚠ WARNING

If the pedestrian monitoring is not switched off in the above-mentioned situations, accidents and serious injuries could be caused as a result. ◁

System limits

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 217.

Pedestrian monitoring has physical and system-related limitations. As such, certain pedestrian monitoring system reactions may occur, from the driver's perspective, unexpectedly or with some delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

The following conditions can prevent pedestrian monitoring from reacting, or cause a delay in its reaction:

- In tight bends.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If pedestrian monitoring has been switched off or is damaged.
- If TCS or ESC is switched off manually.
- If the ESC is taking corrective action.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on the vehicle or on a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle → page 299.
- If the camera or the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- Under hard acceleration.
- In snow or heavy rain. ▶

- In very complex traffic and driving situations.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles protrude to the side, rear or above the normal dimensions of the vehicle.
- When pedestrians are standing on traffic islands or on a bend.
- When pedestrians are either fully or partially obscured by objects, e.g. a workman with a ladder.
- When pedestrians are wearing unusual or protruding clothing, e.g. carnival costumes.
- When there is low sun or it is dark. ◁

Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Display and indicator lamps 222
- Function 222
- Switch off the lane departure warning system in the following situations 224

The lane departure warning system helps the driver stay in lane.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology used in the lane departure warning system cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Always take care when using the lane departure warning system otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for staying in lane.
- The lane departure warning system cannot recognise all lane markings. Poor road surfaces, road structures or objects could be recognised incorrectly as lane markings by the lane departure warning system. The lane departure warning system should be switched off immediately in these situations.
- Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the lane departure warning system may be impaired.

NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.
- Do not attach any items to the steering wheel.

The lane departure warning system has been developed for use only when driving on motorways and good main roads.

If the lane departure warning system does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the lane departure warning system and go to a qualified workshop.

If there is a fault in the system, go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87. ◁

3G0012770AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Display and indicator lamps

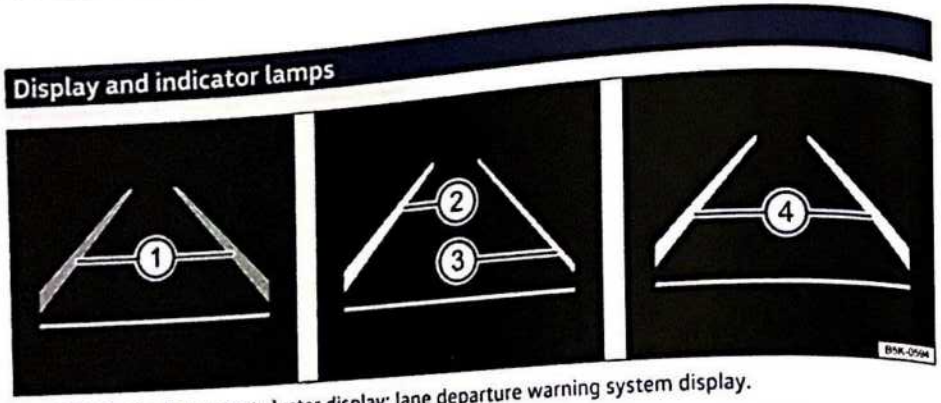


Fig. 177 On the instrument cluster display: lane departure warning system display.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 221.

Display

The lane departure warning system functions are displayed on the instrument cluster. Depending on the equipment level, a notification may also appear on the Head-up Display → page 54.

Display fields → Fig. 177:

① Lane markings detected. System not regulating.

② Lane markings detected. System is regulating.

③ No lane markings detected. System not regulating.

④ Lane markings detected. System is regulating. Adaptive lane guidance active.

Indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲
	Lane departure warning system switched on but not active. Refer to page 223, *Lane departure warning system is not active (the indicator lamp lights up yellow).*
	Lane departure warning system switched on and active.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Function

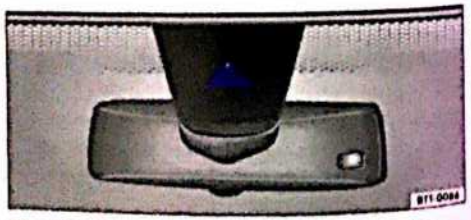


Fig. 178 Windscreen: lane departure warning system camera window.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 221.

Using a camera in the windscreen, the lane departure warning system detects lane markings on the road. If the vehicle gets too close to a detected lane marking, the system warns the driver by taking *corrective steering intervention* and helps to keep the vehicle in lane. The corrective steering intervention can be overridden by the driver at any time.

When adaptive lane guidance is active → page 223, the lane departure warning system does not just provide assistance when the vehicle is at risk of leaving the lane. If the system detects both lane markings to the left and right of the vehicle, the function provides permanent assistance while the vehicle is in motion.

The system adopts the preferred position within the lane in which the vehicle is travelling. For example, if the vehicle is being driven slightly off-centre in the lane, the system will learn to adopt the new position within a short period of time.

No steering intervention will occur if the turn signal is switched on as the lane departure warning system will assume that the lane change is deliberate.

Lane change assist system (Side Assist) PLUS

If the vehicle is equipped with a lane change assist system (Side Assist) → page 226 and the system is activated, the driver is warned by corrective steering intervention when changing lanes during a possible critical situation (information level, warning level). This also occurs when the turn signal is activated in the corresponding direction. If the steering intervention is overridden by the driver, the steering wheel vibrates to give an additional warning.

The system tells the driver to take control

In the absence of any steering input, the system prompts the driver with acoustic warnings and a text message on the instrument cluster display to take over active steering.

If the driver does not respond, the system will give another warning by initiating a quick jolt of the brake before switching to passive or activating Emergency Assist[1] → page 225.

Steering wheel vibration

The following (very rare) situations will cause the steering wheel to vibrate and demand active steering intervention by the driver:

- If the corrective steering intervention is not sufficient to keep the vehicle in its lane.
- If the system can no longer detect a lane during a significant steering intervention.

Switching the lane departure warning system on and off

- Using the button for driver assist systems, select the corresponding menu item → page 54.
- **OR:** activate or deactivate the lane departure warning system using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

Automatic switch-off: the lane departure warning system can switch itself off automatically if there is a system fault. The indicator lamp goes out.

Activating or deactivating adaptive lane guidance

Adaptive lane guidance can be activated or deactivated using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Driver assistance function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

Lane departure warning system is not active (the indicator lamp lights up yellow)

- If the lane departure warning system cannot detect the markings on the lane in which the vehicle is travelling. For example due to snow, dirt, wet weather or oncoming lights.
- If the radius of a bend is too small.
- If the distance to the nearest lane marking is too great.
- If the ESC is in Sport mode or is switched off.
- If the system does not detect any clear steering activity by the driver over an extended period.
- Temporarily if the driving style is very dynamic.
- If the turn signal is switched on.[2]

Before starting a journey, check that the camera window is not covered → Fig. 178.

1) Available in some models.

2) Does not apply to vehicles with Lane change assist system (Side Assist) PLUS → page 223, *Lane change assist system (Side Assist) PLUS*.

Scanned by CamScanner

The camera window must be kept clean at all times.

Switch off the lane departure warning system in the following situations

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 221.

The lane departure warning system should be switched off due to system limitations in the following situations:

- When a high level of concentration is required by the driver.
- Very sporty driving.
- In poor weather conditions, e.g. snow or heavy rain.
- Poor road conditions.
- Driving through road works.
- Before crests in the road.

Traffic Jam Assist

Traffic Jam Assist helps the driver to keep in lane, and also provides assistance when following other vehicles in congestion or slow-moving traffic.

Traffic Jam Assist is an extension of the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) → page 221, and combines this function with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) → page 202. Please therefore read both related chapters carefully and observe the information about the system limits and warnings.

Traffic Jam Assist function

At speeds under 60 km/h (40 mph) Traffic Jam Assist can maintain a time interval, set by the driver, to a vehicle in front, and help the vehicle to stay in lane → ▲.

The system automatically controls acceleration, braking, steering and, if required, will decelerate **to a stop** behind a vehicle that is stopping, and then drive away again automatically.

Traffic Jam Assist has been developed solely for use on motorways and good main roads. Never use Traffic Jam Assist in urban traffic.

Switching Traffic Jam Assist on and off

Traffic Jam Assist can be switched on or off together with adaptive lane guidance → page 221 by pressing the CAR button and the ⚙ and Driver assistance function buttons on the infotainment system → page 78.

Technical requirements for using Traffic Jam Assist

- Adaptive lane guidance must be active → page 221.
- The ACC must be switched on and active → page 202.
- The selector lever must be in position **D/S** or be in the Tiptronic gate.
- The system must have detected a lane marking on both the right and left sides of the vehicle → Fig. 177.
- The speed must be under 60 km/h (38 mph).

Traffic Jam Assist is not active (the indicator lamp for the lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) lights up yellow)

- As soon as one of the conditions indicated on page 224, *Technical requirements for using Traffic Jam Assist* is no longer fulfilled.
- If one of the conditions for the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) is no longer fulfilled → page 221.
- If one of the conditions for the ACC is no longer fulfilled → page 202.

Switch off Traffic Jam Assist in the following situations

Traffic Jam Assist should always be switched off in the following situations due to system limitations:

- When a high level of concentration is required by the driver.
- Very sporty driving.
- In poor weather conditions, e.g. snow or heavy rain.
- Poor road conditions.
- Driving through road works.
- In urban areas.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of Traffic Jam Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Always take care when using Traffic Jam Assist as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in urban traffic.
- Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in poor visibility, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads, loose chippings or flooded roads.
- Never use Traffic Jam Assist off-road or on unsurfaced roads. Traffic Jam Assist is designed solely for use on surfaced roads.
- Traffic Jam Assist does not react to persons, animals or vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.
- If the speed reduction achieved by Traffic Jam Assist is insufficient, brake the vehicle immediately by depressing the foot brake.
- If the vehicle starts to roll unintentionally after the driver has been prompted to take control of the vehicle, brake the vehicle immediately using the foot brake.
- If a prompt instructing the *driver to take control of the vehicle* appears on the instrument cluster display, take control of the vehicle immediately.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for staying in lane.
- The driver must be prepared to take control of the vehicle (by accelerating or braking) at all times.

If Traffic Jam Assist does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the system and go to a qualified workshop.

If there is a fault in the system, visit a qualified workshop and have the system checked.

B5D0127204C

Emergency Assist

Emergency Assist detects a lack of activity on the part of the driver and can keep the vehicle in lane automatically, or brake the vehicle to a standstill if required. The system can therefore actively help to prevent an accident.

Emergency Assist is an extension of the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) → page 221, and combines this function with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) → page 202. Please therefore read both related chapters carefully and observe the information about the system limits and warnings.

Emergency Assist function

Emergency Assist detects a lack of activity on the part of the driver and issues repeated visual and acoustic warnings, and initiates a quick jolt of the brake, to request the driver to take control of the vehicle again.

If the driver remains inactive, the system automatically controls acceleration, braking and steering to slow the vehicle down and keep it in lane → ▲. If there is sufficient stopping distance, the system decelerates the vehicle **to a complete stop** and switches on the electronic parking brake automatically → page 232.

When Emergency Assist is actively controlling the vehicle, the hazard warning lights → page 37 are switched on and the vehicle performs a slight snaking motion within its lane to warn other road users.

Switching Emergency Assist on and off

Emergency Assist is activated automatically when the lane departure warning (Lane Assist) → page 221 is switched on.

Technical requirements for using Emergency Assist

- The ACC must be switched on → page 202.
- The lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) must be switched on → page 221.
- The selector lever must be in position **D/S** or be in the Tiptronic gate.
- The system must have detected a lane marking on both the right and left sides of the vehicle → Fig. 177.

Scanned by CamScanner

The following conditions can prevent Emergency Assist from reacting, or can cause it to deactivate automatically:

- If the driver activates the accelerator, brake or steering.
- As soon as one of the conditions indicated on → page 225, *Technical requirements for using Emergency Assist* is no longer fulfilled.
- If one of the conditions for the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) is no longer fulfilled → page 221.
- If one of the conditions for the ACC is no longer fulfilled → page 202.

WARNING

The intelligent technology used in Emergency Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Emergency Assist cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- Emergency Assist can carry out unexpected braking or steering interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the radar sensor for the ACC or the camera for the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) has been covered or its position has changed.
- Emergency Assist does not react to persons, animals or vehicles crossing or approaching in the same lane.

WARNING

If Emergency Assist is triggered unexpectedly, it can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If there is a malfunction in the Emergency Assist system, switch off the lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) → page 221. This will also switch off Emergency Assist.
- Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Automatic braking interventions by Emergency Assist can be stopped by depressing the accelerator, the brake, or through steering intervention.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on automatically, they can be deactivated by depressing the accelerator, the brake, making a steering intervention, or by pressing the button for the hazard warning lights.

Emergency Assist can decelerate the vehicle to a complete stop if required.

When Emergency Assist has been triggered, the system is unavailable until after the ignition has been switched off and then on again. ◁

Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Function 227
- Driving situations 229
- Rear Traffic Alert 229

The lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert assists the driver when checking for traffic behind the vehicle.

The integrated Rear Traffic Alert provides assistance when reversing out of a parking space and manoeuvring.

The lane change assist system has been designed for use on surfaced roads only.

WARNING

The intelligent technology of the lane change assist system including Rear Traffic Alert cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the lane change assist system including Rear Traffic Alert tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Always take care when using the lane change assist system and the Rear Traffic Alert as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver. ▶

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Pay attention to the visual displays in the exterior mirror housing and in the instrument cluster display, and respond to the commands.
- The lane change assist system may react to special roadside structures, e.g. high or offset crash barriers. This can lead to error warnings.
- Never use the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert on unsurfaced roads. The lane change assist system including Rear Traffic Alert has been designed exclusively for use on surfaced roads.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.
- Never use the lane change assist system including Rear Traffic Alert if the radar sensors are dirty, covered or damaged. These circumstances can impair the proper functioning of the system.
- It may be hard to see the display in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight.

NOTICE

- The radar sensors in the rear bumper can be shifted or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking or leaving a parking space. As a result the system may switch itself off or at least be impaired.
- The radar sensors in the rear bumper must be kept free of ice and snow and not be covered up to ensure that the system functions correctly.

Only Volkswagen-approved vehicle paints may be used on the rear bumper. Other vehicle paints could limit or even distort the function of the lane change assist system.

If the lane change assist system including Rear Traffic Alert does not work as described in this chapter or the vehicle has been involved in a collision, do not use the system and go to a qualified workshop.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87. ◁

Function

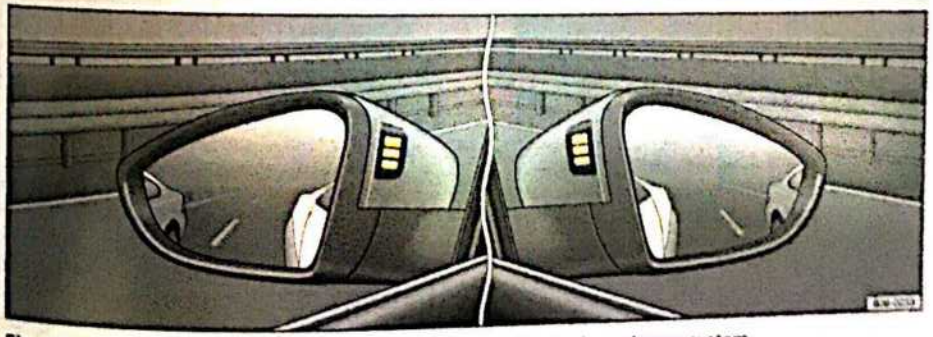


Fig. 179 In the exterior mirror housing: visual displays for the lane change system.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 226. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

The lane change assist system uses radar sensors to monitor the area behind the vehicle → page 40, *Exterior views*. The system then measures the distance and the difference in speed to other vehicles. The lane change system remains active only up to speeds of approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).

In very tight corners, the lane change assist system will automatically switch to passive mode without feedback as proper functioning cannot be guaranteed in this case. No warnings will be issued to the driver. The function will be automatically reactivated once you have driven through the corner.

Visual display in the exterior mirror housing

The visual displays → Fig. 179 in the exterior mirror housing notify the driver of following traffic on either side of the vehicle whenever a traffic situation is classified as critical when the driver intends to change lanes.

Tinted side windows or retrofitted tinting foils can negatively affect or distort the visual displays in the exterior mirror.

Visual display in the exterior mirror housing		Situation
	Lights up once briefly.	The lane change assist system is switched on and ready for use.
	Lit up (information level).	The lane change assist system has detected a potentially critical situation.
	Flashes several times (warning level).	The turn signal is active and the lane change assist system has detected a potentially critical situation on the corresponding side of the vehicle → ▲.

Lane change assist system "Side Assist Plus"

If the vehicle is equipped with a lane keeping system → page 221 and this system is activated, the driver is warned by corrective steering intervention when changing lanes during a potentially critical situation (information level, warning level). This also occurs when the turn signal is activated for the corresponding direction. If the steering intervention is overridden by the driver, the steering wheel vibrates to give an additional warning.

Radar sensors

The radar sensors are on the left and right behind the rear bumper and are not visible from outside. They monitor an area of approximately 70 metres behind the vehicle and the blind spots to the right and left of the vehicle. The monitored area to the side of the vehicle is approximately one lane wide.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Take any necessary action.

❗ NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged. ◁

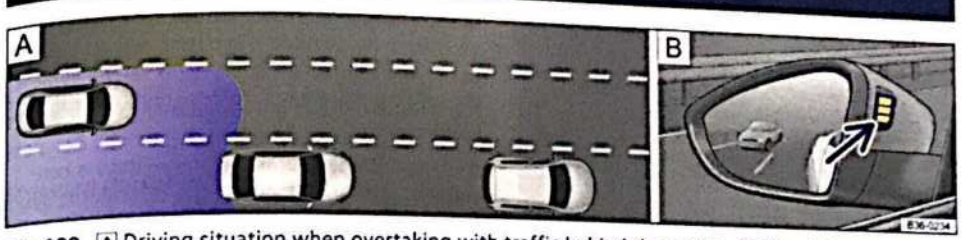


Fig. 180 [A] Driving situation when overtaking with traffic behind the vehicle. [B] Visual display in the left-hand exterior mirror.

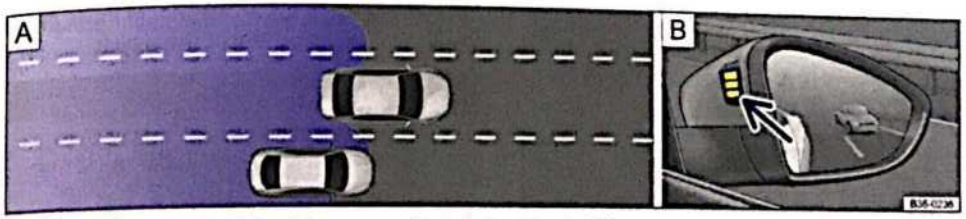


Fig. 181 [A] Driving situation when overtaking and pulling in. [B] Visual display in the right-hand exterior mirror.

🕮 Please refer to ▲ and ❗ at the start of the chapter on page 226.

The following driving situations trigger a display in the exterior mirror → Fig. 180 [B] (arrow) or → Fig. 181 [B] (arrow):

- When another vehicle is overtaking your vehicle → Fig. 180 [A].
- When overtaking another vehicle → Fig. 181 [A] with a speed difference of up to approximately 15 km/h (9 mph). No display will be shown if the takeover manoeuvre is much faster.

The display in the exterior mirror will be shown earlier the faster you are nearing another vehicle as the lane change assist system calculates the speed difference to other vehicles. For this reason, the display could be activated at different times despite your vehicle being at the same distance from other vehicles.

Physical and system-specific limits

The lane change assist system might, for example, interpret the traffic situation incorrectly in certain driving situations. In the following situations, for example:

- In tight bends.
- When road lanes are of varying width.
- At the brow of a hill.
- In poor weather conditions.
- Where there are special roadside structures, e.g. high or offset crash barriers. ◁

Rear Traffic Alert

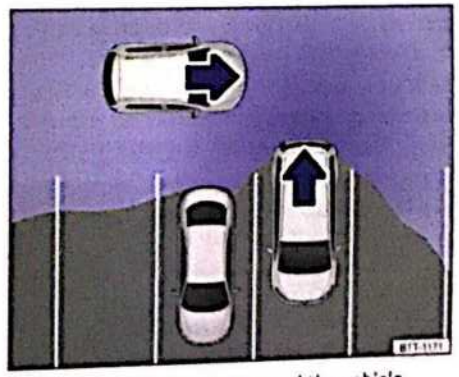


Fig. 182 Monitored area around the vehicle leaving the parking space. ▶

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

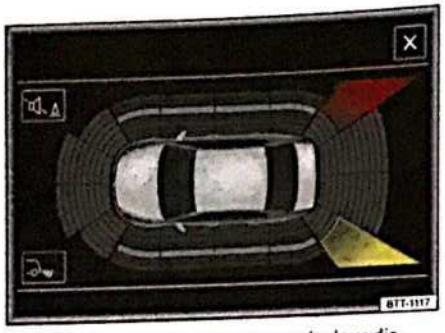


Fig. 183 Rear Traffic Alert screen (colour display).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 226.

Key for Fig. 183	Meaning
■	Red segment indicates a critical situation behind the vehicle.
■	Yellow segment indicates a potentially critical situation behind the vehicle.
!	System fault in the scanned area (no image).

The Rear Traffic Alert uses radar sensors in the rear bumper for monitoring purposes when reversing out of a parking space or negotiating the crossing traffic behind the vehicle, e.g. in traffic situations with poor visibility → Fig. 182.

An acoustic signal is given if the system detects a relevant approaching road user behind your vehicle → Fig. 183 (red area) while reversing.

- A warning signal will sound and a text notification will be displayed in the instrument cluster for vehicles without ParkPilot.
- A sustained warning signal will sound for vehicles with built-in ParkPilot. Deactivating the ParkPilot will provide no feedback to the driver and the Rear Traffic Alert will also be temporarily deactivated.

Automatic braking intervention to minimise damage

If the Rear Traffic Alert detects an approaching road user and the driver has not activated the brakes, the system can initiate an automatic braking intervention.

The Rear Traffic Alert helps the driver to prevent damage to the vehicle by initiating an automatic braking intervention. The automatic braking intervention is activated when reversing at speeds of between 1 – 12 km/h (1 – 7 mph). The vehicle is held stationary for up to 2 seconds after it stops.

After an automatic braking intervention is activated to prevent damage to the vehicle, the system requires approximately 10 seconds before it can activate automatic braking again.

The automatic braking intervention can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal sharply and taking control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology of the lane change assist system including Rear Traffic Alert cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the auxiliary function of the Rear Traffic Alert tempt you to take any risks while driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Never use the system with impaired vision or in unpredictable traffic situations, e.g. on extremely busy roads or across several lanes.
- Always pay attention to the area around the vehicle – cyclists and pedestrians are often not clearly detected.
- The Rear Traffic Alert will not always independently bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

Parking and manoeuvring

Parking

Please adhere to relevant legislation when stopping and parking your vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

The steps should **be carried out only in the specified order.**

- Stop the vehicle on a suitable surface → ▲.
- Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 233.
- With an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever to position P → ▲.
- Switch off the engine and take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Turn the steering wheel slightly if necessary to engage the steering column lock mechanism.
- With a manual gearbox, select first gear for flat ground and uphill inclines, or reverse gear for downhill inclines, and then release the clutch.
- Please ensure that all occupants, in particular children, leave the vehicle.
- Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

Additional points for ascending and descending inclines

Before switching off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels will roll against the kerb if the parked vehicle starts to move.

- When facing downhill, turn the wheels so that they face the kerb.
- When facing uphill, turn the wheels so that they face the centre of the road.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect parking can cause serious injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition using the starter button while the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise the electronic steering column lock could engage suddenly. You will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.
- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.
- Always switch on the electronic parking brake when the vehicle is parked.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could switch off the electronic parking brake, or move the selector lever or gearshift lever, and thus set the vehicle in motion. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated. This can cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.

⚠ WARNING

Failing to park the vehicle properly before leaving it may result in the vehicle rolling away. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always park the vehicle by following the steps in the order described here.
- Ensure that the electronic parking brake is switched on.

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel.

ⓘ NOTICE

- To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first switch on the electronic parking brake and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.

Scanned by CamScanner

- Always take care when driving into parking spaces with high kerbs or fixed boundaries. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle. In order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels can touch the boundaries or kerbs.
- Drive carefully through dips in the road and over drive entrances, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
(!)	Brake system fault.	**Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance immediately.
(!)	Together with ABS indicator lamp: ABS not functioning.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
(S)	Brake pedal not depressed.	To select a position, press the brake pedal.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake warning lamp (!) does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle immediately and seek expert assistance → page 362.

Electronic parking brake

Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
(P)	The electronic parking brake is switched on.	**Do not drive on!** Switch the electronic parking brake off → page 233.
(P)	Electronic parking brake fault.[a)]	Go to a qualified workshop.
(P)	The vehicle is being held by the Auto Hold function.	Switch off the Auto Hold function if necessary → page 234.
(S)	Brake pedal not depressed.	Depress the brake pedal to switch off the electronic parking brake.

a) Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Operating the electronic parking brake

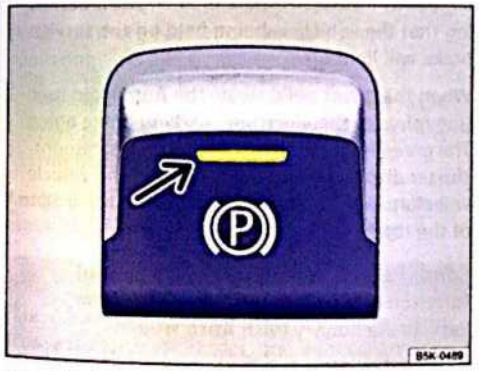


Fig. 184 In lower part of centre console: button for the electronic parking brake.

The electronic parking brake replaces the handbrake.

Switching on the electronic parking brake

Always park the vehicle properly → page 231.

- Pull and hold the (P) button → Fig. 184.
- The electronic parking brake is switched on when the indicator lamp in the button → Fig. 184 (arrow) and the *red* indicator lamp (P) on the instrument cluster display are lit up → page 232.
- Release the button.

Switching off the electronic parking brake

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the (P) button → Fig. 184. At the same time depress the brake pedal with some force or depress the accelerator pedal slightly when the engine is running.
- The indicator lamp in the button → Fig. 184 (arrow) and the *red* indicator lamp (P) in the instrument cluster display will go out.

Automatic switch-off for the electronic parking brake when driving off

The electronic parking brake switches off automatically if **one** of the following situations occurs when the driver door is closed:

- In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox: engage or change a gear.
- In vehicles with manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch before moving off.

You can prevent the electronic parking brake from switching off automatically by pulling and holding the (P) button → Fig. 184 while pulling away.

The electronic parking brake is only disengaged after you release the (P) button. This makes pulling away with a heavy trailer weight easier → page 299.

Automatic switch-on of the electronic parking brake if not activated properly when the driver leaves the vehicle

In vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox DSG®, the electronic parking brake switches itself on automatically when the vehicle is exited incorrectly in the following situations:

- When selector lever position **D/S** or **R** is engaged, or when the selector lever is in the Tiptronic gate.
- **AND:** when the vehicle is stationary.
- **AND:** if the driver door is open.

Scanned by CamScanner

Emergency braking function

The emergency braking function should only be used in those situations where the vehicle cannot be stopped using the foot brake → ▲!

- Pull and hold the (P) button → Fig. 184 to brake the vehicle **sharply**. A signal tone can be heard at the same time.
- To stop the braking procedure, release the (P) button or depress the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

The incorrect use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never use the electronic parking brake to brake the vehicle, except in emergencies. The braking distance can last considerably longer as only the rear wheels are braked in some circumstances. Always use the foot brake.
- Never activate the accelerator from the engine compartment if a position or gear has been selected and the engine is running. The vehicle could move, even if the electronic parking brake is applied.

❗ NOTICE

To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first switch on the electronic parking brake and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.

ⓘ In vehicles with a manual gearbox: when the clutch pedal is released and the accelerator pedal is depressed at the same time, the electronic parking brake will switch off automatically.

ⓘ If the vehicle battery is flat it will not be possible to release the electronic parking brake. Use jump leads → page 342.

ⓘ Some noises may be heard when the electronic parking brake is switched on or off.

ⓘ If the electronic parking brake has not been used for a long period, the system will carry out occasional automatic and acoustic checks when the vehicle is parked. ◁

Auto Hold function

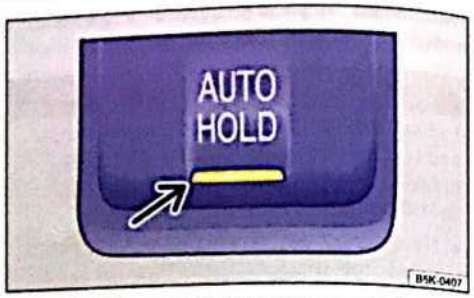


Fig. 185 In lower part of centre console: button for Auto Hold.

When switched on, the Auto Hold function automatically prevents the vehicle from rolling away without having to depress the foot brake.

The indicator lamp in the (AUTO HOLD) button → Fig. 185 (arrow) lights up when the function is switched on.

The Auto Hold function holds the vehicle as soon as it detects that the vehicle is not moving and the brake pedal is released. The *green* indicator lamp (P) on the instrument cluster display showing that the vehicle is being held on the service brake will light up.

When the driver pulls away, the Auto Hold function releases the electronic parking brake again. The *green* indicator lamp (P) on the instrument cluster display will go out again and the vehicle will start to move in accordance with the incline of the road.

Conditions for switching the Auto Hold function on and off and for keeping the vehicle stationary with Auto Hold:

- The driver door is closed.
- The engine is running.

If the selector lever is moved to position N in vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, the Auto Hold function will **not** switch on and will remain switched off. The vehicle will not be kept stationary safely as a result → ▲.

Switching on Auto Hold manually

Press the (AUTO HOLD) button → ▲.

If any of the conditions for the Auto Hold function change while the vehicle is stationary, the Auto Hold function will switch off automatically ▶

and the *green* indicator lamp (P) on the instrument cluster display will go out, along with the *yellow* indicator lamp in the (AUTO HOLD) button.

Manually switching off Auto Hold

Press the (AUTO HOLD) button → ▲.

The indicator lamp in the button → Fig. 185 (arrow) goes out when the Auto Hold function is switched off. The electronic parking brake switches on automatically to park the vehicle securely. However, if the brake pedal is depressed upon switching off the Auto Hold function, the electronic parking brake does **not** switch on → ▲.

Switching Auto Hold on and off automatically

If the Auto Hold function has been switched on using the (AUTO HOLD) button before switching the ignition off, the Auto Hold function switches on automatically when the ignition is switched on the next time. The same applies if the Auto Hold function is switched off – it will remain switched off when the ignition is switched on again.

Temporarily switching off the Auto Hold function with the (P) button

It can sometimes be necessary to turn the Auto Hold function off temporarily to enable the vehicle to roll more easily, for example when manoeuvring.

- Press the brake pedal when the engine is on.
- Press the (P) button → Fig. 184. Auto Hold is switched off.

Auto Hold is re-activated once you depress the brake pedal when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent Auto Hold function cannot overcome the laws of physics, and operates only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the Auto Hold function tempt you into taking risks when driving.

- Never leave the vehicle if the engine is running and the Auto Hold function is switched on.
- Auto Hold cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations (e.g. if the ground is slippery or icy).

❗ NOTICE

Volkswagen recommends always switching off the Auto Hold function before driving into a car wash, as damage can be caused by the electronic parking brake switching on automatically. ◁

ParkPilot

🕮 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Operating ParkPilot 237
- ParkPilot signal tones and displays 238
- Vehicle path display 240
- Towing a trailer 240
- ParkPilot menu 240

The ParkPilot assists the driver when parking and manoeuvring.

The ParkPilot uses ultrasound sensors to determine the distance from the front or rear bumpers to an obstacle → page 40, *Exterior views*.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent ParkPilot technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the ParkPilot system tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The ParkPilot is no substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Always check the area around the vehicle as the ultrasound sensors will not always detect infants, animals and objects. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Certain surfaces of objects and clothes cannot reflect the signals from the ultrasound sensors. The system is unable to detect these objects or people wearing this type of clothing, or they may be detected incorrectly.
- External sources of sound can affect the signals of the ultrasound sensors. This may prevent the system from recognising people or objects.

NOTICE

Various factors can negatively impact the ParkPilot functions or lead to damage to the vehicle and objects in the area surrounding the vehicle.

- The ultrasound sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening boot lids.
- When ParkPilot has detected and reported an obstacle, any obstacles that are particularly high or low will not be detected as the vehicle moves closer to them. These obstacles will not be reported.
- If the warning issued by the ParkPilot is ignored.
- Ultrasound sensors can be displaced or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking.
- In some cases dirt and ice on the ultrasound sensors can be registered as an obstruction. The ultrasound sensors must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects.
- Repainting the ultrasound sensors can impair the function of the ParkPilot.
- The ultrasound sensors should only be sprayed briefly when cleaning with a pressure cleaner or steam cleaners. Always keep the steam/hose nozzle more than 10 cm away from the ultrasound sensors.
- Sources of noise can lead to errors in the ParkPilot system, e.g. rough asphalt, cobblestones, induction loops, building equipment, or interference from other vehicles.
- Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle, e.g. bicycle carriers or number plate holders, can prevent the ParkPilot from functioning properly.

Volkswagen recommends that drivers practise using ParkPilot in a traffic-calmed area or car park to allow them to familiarise themselves with the system and its functions.

If an ultrasound sensor fails, the sensor area will be switched off and can no longer be reactivated. The failure will also be indicated by an altered screen display and signal tones. Go to a qualified workshop to have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Any malfunctions in ParkPilot will be indicated by a text notification and an acoustic warning when first switched on, and by the indicator lamps flashing in the [P] or [P] button. If the ultrasound sensors are dirty or covered, the affected ultrasound sensor cluster will be displayed on the screen of ParkPilot. A cleaning message also appears (depending on the vehicle equipment level).

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → page 87. ◁



Fig. 186 In the top section of the centre console: button for switching the ParkPilot on and off (depending on the vehicle equipment level).



Fig. 187 In the top section of the centre console: button for switching the ParkPilot on and off (depending on the vehicle equipment level).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 235.

Switching ParkPilot on and off

Function	What to do when the ignition is switched on
Switching ParkPilot on and off manually:	Press the [P] or [P] button. The indicator lamp in the [P] or [P] button lights up while the function is active.
Switching on the ParkPilot automatically:	Move the selector lever to position R. **OR:** when the vehicle rolls backwards. **OR:** driving slowly towards an obstacle located in the front area of the vehicle path display → Fig. 191 at a speed lower than 15 km/h (9 mph). The obstacle is detected at a distance of approximately 95 cm when automatic activation is switched on in the infotainment system. A miniature view will be displayed.
Switching off the ParkPilot automatically:	Move the selector lever to position P. **OR:** accelerate forwards at a speed faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).
Temporarily muting ParkPilot	Touch the [P] function button. **OR:** switch on the electronic parking brake.
Changing from the miniature view to full-screen (depending on equipment):	Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R. **OR:** touch the miniature view function button.
Switching to the rear view camera system picture[a]:	Touch the [P] function button.

[a] Available in some models.

Scanned by CamScanner

Special features of the ParkPilot

- In some cases, the ParkPilot registers water and ice on the ultrasound sensors as an obstacle.
- The acoustic warning will become quieter after a few seconds if the distance remains the same. The volume will remain constant if the continuous signal tone sounds.
- The intermittent signal tone switches off automatically as soon as the vehicle moves away from an obstacle again. If the vehicle approaches the obstacle again, the intermittent signal tone is switched on automatically.
- A Volkswagen dealership can adjust the volume of the acoustic signals.
- No acoustic signal is given in vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox if the selector lever is in position P or the electronic parking brake is switched on.
- The *rear* ParkPilot ultrasound sensors cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket → page 299 is *electrically* connected to the trailer.

Automatic activation (depending on equipment)

Automatic activation of the ParkPilot when driving slowly towards an obstacle located in front of the vehicle only works when the speed falls below approximately 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph) for the first time. If the ParkPilot was switched off using the [P] or [P] button, performing one of the following actions with the ignition switched on can automatically reactivate the ParkPilot:

- If the vehicle is accelerated to a speed greater than 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph) and then drops below that speed again.
- **OR:** if the ignition has been switched off and back on again.
- **OR:** if the selector lever is moved to position P and then out of that position again.
- **OR:** if automatic activation is deactivated and activated in the infotainment system menu.
- **OR:** if the electronic parking brake is switched on and then off again.

Automatic activation with the miniature view can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system menu → page 240.

⚠ WARNING

Automatic activation of the ParkPilot only occurs at very low speeds. An inappropriate driving style can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always bear in mind the time delay between the signals.

ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.

ParkPilot signal tones and displays

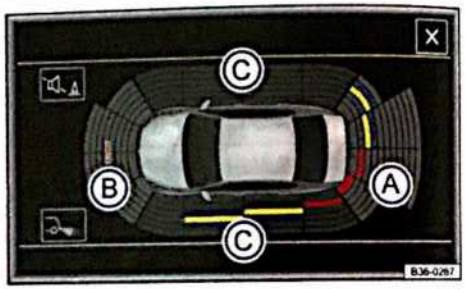


Fig. 188 ParkPilot full-screen mode.



Fig. 189 ParkPilot miniature view.

🕮 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 235.

Key to Fig. 188 and Fig. 189:	Meaning
Ⓐ	Scanned area behind the vehicle.
Ⓑ	Scanned area in front of the vehicle.
Ⓒ	Scanned area to the side of the vehicle (in some models).
■	The red segment depicts an obstacle located close to the vehicle.
■	The yellow segment represents an obstacle in the vehicle's path.
❑	The grey segment represents an obstacle outside of the vehicle's path.
!	System fault in the monitored area (depending on equipment level).
!	Temporary system fault in the scanned area (depending on the equipment level).

The graphic on the screen displays the scanned areas in several segments. The closer the vehicle drives towards an obstacle, the closer the segment will move to the vehicle in the display. The collision area has been reached when the penultimate segment is displayed, if not before. **Do not drive on!**

The yellow segments turn grey if an obstacle moves outside the vehicle's path due to a steering movement.

It can take a few seconds before the area scanned by the sensors is displayed on the screen of the factory-fitted infotainment system.

Signal tones

When the vehicle approaches an obstacle located in the range of the ultrasound sensors signal tones are given. An intermittent signal tone is given if a sufficiently short distance between the vehicle and an obstacle is detected. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals. A constant tone is output when the distance is less than 30 cm (12 inches). **Do not drive on!**

The intermittent signal tone will become quieter after a few seconds if the distance remains the same. The volume will remain constant if the continuous signal tone sounds. The intermittent signal tone switches off automatically as soon as the vehicle moves away from an obstacle again.

If the vehicle moves towards an obstruction again, the intermittent signal tones are given automatically.

If the side areas are not displayed in the infotainment system screen display, signal tones will not be given for these areas.

The intermittent signal tone is different for the front and rear areas.

The warning signals can be adjusted in the infotainment system menu → page 240.

Muting the ParkPilot signal tones

You can mute the signal tones from the ParkPilot by touching the [P] function button on the radio or navigation system screen. Touch the function button again to switch the signal tone back on.

If the ParkPilot display has been switched off manually and ParkPilot remains active, the mute setting is also cancelled.

Things to note in the area around the vehicle

The scanned area along the side of the vehicle is automatically hidden in the following situations:

- When a vehicle door is opened.
- When the TCS is switched off.
- When the TCS or ESC systems are taking corrective action.
- If the vehicle is stationary for longer than approximately 3 minutes.

The distance range for the constant tone to the rear of the vehicle is slightly larger for vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket → page 240.

The vehicle must be moved a few metres forwards or backwards in order to be able to show the entire area around the vehicle[1] → ⚠. The missing areas are then scanned and the area around the vehicle is calculated.

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.

ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.

[1] The area around the vehicle is not shown in vehicles with 4 ultrasound sensors in each bumper, front or rear.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Vehicle path display

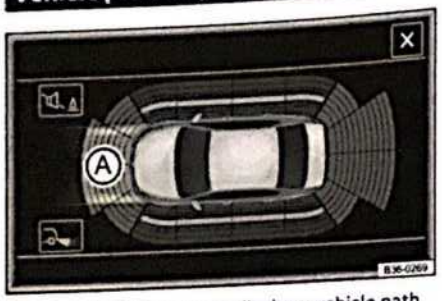


Fig. 190 ParkPilot screen displays: vehicle path displays without steering input.

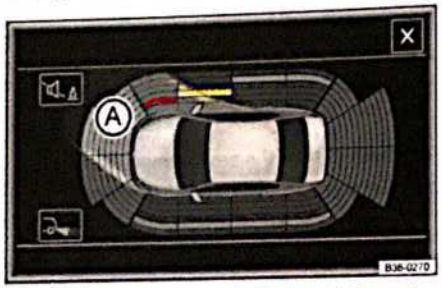


Fig. 191 ParkPilot screen displays: vehicle path displays with steering input.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 235.

Not all vehicles are fitted with a vehicle path display. This depends on the equipment level and the market.

Key for Fig. 190 and Fig. 191:

Ⓐ Vehicle path display.

When the system detects whether the vehicle has to be driven forwards or backwards, the vehicle's path is displayed in relation to the steering angle.

NOTICE

If an ultrasound sensor fails, the vehicle path display is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the fault has been rectified.

- The steering wheel angle will no longer determine the segments displayed and the signal tones given.

Towing a trailer

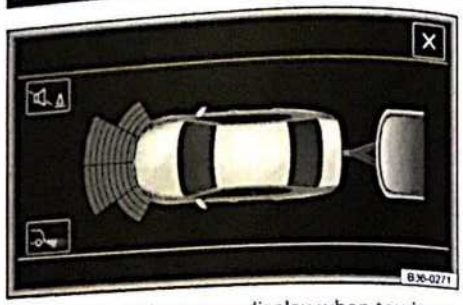


Fig. 192 ParkPilot screen display when towing a trailer.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 235.

Only the monitored area to the front of the vehicle is shown on the infotainment system screen in vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle → Fig. 192.

The vehicle path display cannot be shown when towing a trailer → Fig. 191.

ParkPilot menu

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 235.

ParkPilot settings in the infotainment system menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the infotainment system.
- Press the CAR button.
- Touch the function button.
- Touch the Parking and manoeuvring function button.
- Select the required settings in the **ParkPilot** menu.

Activate automatically: if the checkbox in the function button is ticked ☑, the ParkPilot optical display will be switched on automatically when the vehicle slowly approaches an obstacle located to the front. Touch Activate automatically again to switch off this function. After deactivation, the ParkPilot will not be activated automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle located to the front.

Various settings van be adjusted by touching the - or + function buttons, or by moving the slider: Front volume, Front tone setting, Rear volume, Rear tone setting and Reduced audio volume.

Rear view camera system (Rear View)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Operating information 242
- Operating the rear view camera system 243
- Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1) 244
- Parking parallel to the road (mode 2) 244
- Trailer support (mode 3) and crossing traffic (mode 4) 246
- Cleaning the camera lens 246

The rear view camera system in the rear of the vehicle makes it easier for the driver to see behind the vehicle when parking, manoeuvring or reversing.

The functions and displays of the rear view camera system vary according to whether or not the vehicle is fitted with ParkPilot.

- **Perpendicular parking (mode 1)**: reverse parking at a right angle to the road, e.g. in a car park.
- **Parallel parking (mode 2)**: reverse parking parallel to the road, e.g. at the side of the road.
- **Trailer support (mode 3)**: support when hitching a trailer to the vehicle.
- **Crossing traffic (mode 4)**: observing crossing traffic.

The available modes can be changed by pressing the function button on the Infotainment system screen.

WARNING

Using the reversing camera to estimate the distance from obstacles (people, vehicles etc.) is inaccurate and could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision and the objects on the screen will not be depicted as precisely and accurately as they are in reality.
- Certain objects, for example narrow posts or railings, may be difficult or impossible to see on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.
- The reversing camera has blind spots within which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.

WARNING

The intelligent reversing camera technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the rear view camera system tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Always take care when using the reversing camera; otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Keep looking in the direction in which you are parking and at the relevant area surrounding the vehicle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always monitor the area around the vehicle as small children, animals and objects will not always be detected by the reversing camera.
- The reversing camera may not be able to display all areas clearly.

3C0012721AC

Scanned by CamScanner

NOTICE

- The reversing camera shows only two-dimensional images on the screen. The lack of depth of field means that potholes and protruding objects on the ground may only be detected with difficulty, or may not be detected at all.
- The reversing camera may not always be able to detect objects such as thin rails, fences, posts, trees etc. This could result in damage to your vehicle.
- The system displays the auxiliary lines and boxes irrespective of the area surrounding the vehicle. There is no automatic obstacle detection. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

Operating information

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 241.

Requirements for parking and manoeuvring using the rear view camera system

- ✓ The boot lid must be closed.
- ✓ A clear and accurate image is required, e.g. a clean camera lens → Fig. 198.
- ✓ There must be a clear and unobstructed view of the area behind the vehicle.
- ✓ The area being used for manoeuvring or parking is on a flat, even surface.
- ✓ The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded.
- ✓ The driver must be familiar with the system.
- ✓ The vehicle must be undamaged. The rear view camera system must be checked by a qualified workshop if the position or angle of the camera has changed, e.g. following a rear impact.
- ✓ Do not exceed a speed of approximately **15 km/h (9 mph)** when driving out of a parking space.
- ✓ Width of the parking space: **vehicle width + 0.2 m**.
- ✓ Maintain a distance of approximately **one metre** from the parking space (mode 2 only).
- ✓ Length of the parking space: **approx. 8 m** (mode 2 only).

Setting the reversing camera display

Various settings, including *brightness, contrast and colour*, can be adjusted by touching the relevant function buttons [-] or [+], or by moving the corresponding slider.

– Switch on the ignition.
– Switch on the infotainment system.
– Engage reverse gear.
– Touch the [⚙] function button.
– Select the required settings in the menu.

Things to note

If the position or angle of the rear view camera system has changed, e.g. following a rear-end collision, the system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

The rear view camera system's orientation lines and guiding functions are not displayed when the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to the trailer → page 299.

Volkswagen recommends that you practise parking and manoeuvring with the reversing camera in a traffic-calmed area or car park with good vision and weather conditions, so you can familiarise yourself with the system and their functions in a safer environment.

Operating the rear view camera system

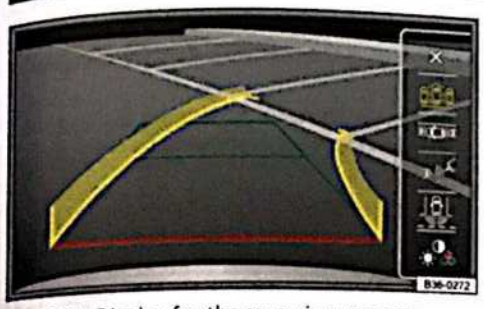


Fig. 193 Display for the reversing camera: mode 1 selected.

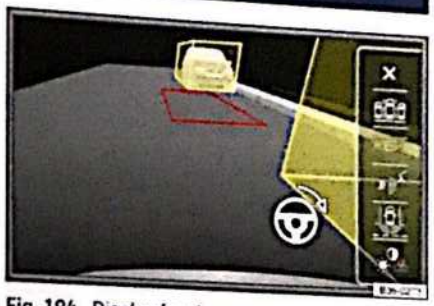


Fig. 194 Display for the reversing camera: mode 2 selected.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 241.

Key to Fig. 193 or Fig. 194

- With some equipment levels: switch the ParkPilot tone on and off.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level: switch on ParkPilot display.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level: switch off ParkPilot display.
- In some models: displays ParkPilot.
- X Close current display.
- Setting display: brightness, contrast, colour.
- Switch to perpendicular parking (mode 1).
- Switch to parallel parking (mode 2).
- Switch to offroad support (mode 3).
- Switch to rear crossing traffic view (mode 4).

Switching the rear view camera system on and off

Function	What to do when the ignition is switched on	
	Vehicles without ParkPilot	**Vehicles with ParkPilot**
Switching the display on and off manually:		Press the [P] button.
Switching on the display automatically.	Engage reverse gear. Reversing camera "Mode 1" is displayed on the infotainment system screen.	The ParkPilot miniature view is also displayed on the left-hand side of the infotainment system.
Switching the display off automatically.	Switch off the ignition.	
	OR: drive forwards faster than 15 km/h (9 mph).	
Hiding the image from the reversing camera:	Press the infotainment button, e.g. [RADIO], on the factory-fitted infotainment system.	
	OR: touch the [X] function button on the screen.	
		OR: touch the [▲▼] function button. ParkPilot full-screen mode is displayed.

Scanned by CamScanner

Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1)

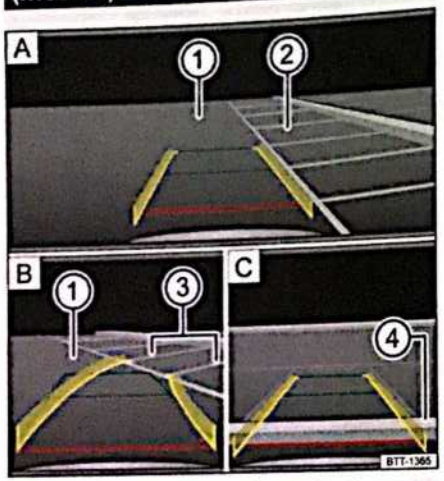


Fig. 195 Screen display: parking using the rear view camera system, mode 1.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 241.

Key to Fig. 195:

① Road.
② Selected parking space.
③ Lines showing the side limits of the selected parking space.
④ Rear limit of the parking space, e.g. kerb.

Key for Fig. 195

A Looking for a parking space.
B Driving into the selected parking space.
C Manoeuvring.

Red line Indicates the safety clearance. The red line marks a point approximately 0.4 metres behind the vehicle on the road. This orientation line does not change in accordance with the steering wheel angle.

Yellow lines Indicate the side limits, depending on the steering input. The displayed yellow area ends on the road surface approximately 2 metres behind the vehicle.

Green lines Show the rearward extension of the vehicle. The displayed green lines represent the area of road up to approximately 2 metres behind the vehicle. These orientation lines do not change in accordance with the steering wheel angle.

Parking using the rear view camera system (mode 1)

- The **requirements for parking while using the rear view camera system** must be met → page 242.
- Drive past the parking space slowly.
- Position the vehicle in front of the parking space ② → Fig. 195 A.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Reverse slowly and steer the vehicle to ensure that the yellow lines along the side limits ③ are aligned with the selected parking space B.
- Observe the following message: **Check roadway.** → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 241.
- Position the vehicle in the selected parking space so that the green and yellow lines are aligned with the side limits ③ of the selected parking space.
- At the very latest, stop the vehicle C when the red line reaches the rear limit, e.g. the kerb ④. ◁

Parking parallel to the road (mode 2)

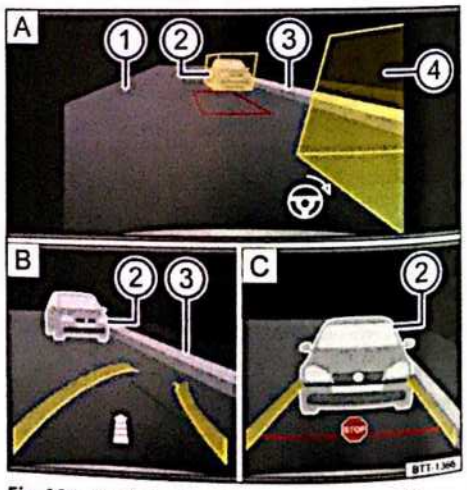


Fig. 196 Radio/navigation system screen display: rear view camera system, mode 2. ▶

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 241.

Key for Fig. 196

① Road.
② Selected parking space.
③ Lines showing the side limits of the selected parking space.

A Looking for a parking space.
B Driving into the selected parking space.
C Manoeuvring.

Horizontal red line Indicates the safety clearance. The horizontal, red line marks a point approximately 0.4 metres behind the vehicle on the road surface.

Lateral red line If a lateral yellow line is highlighted in red, the steering input must be adjusted until the yellow line matches the curved red line. A steering wheel symbol also appears at the bottom of the screen for orientation purposes.

Yellow lines Indicate the side limits of the vehicle, depending on the steering input. The displayed yellow area ends on the road surface approximately 2 metres behind the vehicle.

Yellow auxiliary boxes Denote the limits of the parking space in the parking row, e.g. stationary vehicles. The limits of the parking space must not protrude beyond the auxiliary boxes. The area between the yellow auxiliary boxes shows the required manoeuvring space and the selected parking space.

Lateral green line Indicates the turning point during parking. The turning point has been reached when the lateral green line touches the kerb or any other parking space demarcation.

Horizontal green lines Rearward extension of the vehicle. The displayed green lines represent the area of road up to approximately 2 metres behind the vehicle. These orientation lines gradually fade out as the vehicle approaches the rear limit of the parking space.

Parking using the rear view camera system (mode 2)

1. The **requirements for parking while using the rear view camera system** must be met.
2. Touch the function button for mode 2 on the infotainment system screen. When switching to mode 2, the auxiliary boxes are displayed for both sides parallel to the road.
3. Activate the turn signal for the side of the street on which you want to park. Once the turn signal is activated, the auxiliary boxes which are not required disappear from the display.
4. Drive past the parking space slowly.
5. Position the vehicle at a distance of approximately one metre parallel to the parking row, ensuring that the auxiliary boxes displayed on the screen completed cover any obstacles → Fig. 196 ② A. The area between the auxiliary boxes must be clear of any obstacles. Recommendation: if available, orient yourself by the front boundary/vehicle, i.e. the parking vehicle must be contained entirely by the yellow auxiliary box.
6. Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.
7. Engage reverse gear. Your vehicle is represented by a red trapezium. If obstacles protrude beyond the auxiliary boxes, the parking space may be too small, or your vehicle may not be positioned correctly. If required, look for a new parking space or reposition the vehicle.
8. Turn the steering wheel until the red trapezium is positioned between the auxiliary boxes and is highlighted in green. You can use the available parking zone marking to position the green trapezium. Keep the steering wheel fixed in this position. The steering wheel symbol on the lower right-hand edge of the screen → Fig. 196 A shows the driver the required steering throughout the parking procedure.
9. Keeping the steering wheel in the same position, reverse slowly until the stop sign appears. **OR:** until the curved green lateral line corresponds to the side limit of the parking space, e.g. the kerb ③. An arrow → Fig. 196 B indicates the remaining distance to be covered, based on the number of segments shown in the arrow.
10. Observe the following message: **Check roadway.** → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 241. ▶

JG0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Parking using the rear view camera system (mode 2) (Continued)

11. Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel as far as it will go in the opposite direction until the direction arrow is no longer shown above the steering wheel symbol.
12. Reverse slowly without changing the current steering input. The horizontal green lines will be displayed.
13. Continue to reverse slowly until the stop sign → Fig. 196 [C] appears. **OR:** at the very latest, stop the vehicle [C] when the red line reaches the rear limit, e.g. the stationary vehicle ②. If necessary, align the vehicle parallel to the roadway.

Trailer support (mode 3) and crossing traffic (mode 4)

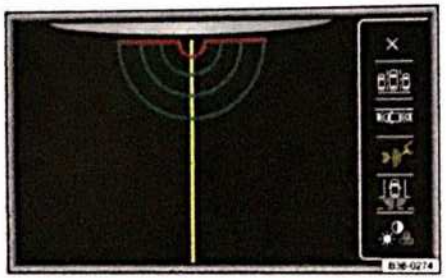


Fig. 197 Reversing camera display: trailer support.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 241.

Trailer support

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the trailer support function can be used when approaching a trailer drawbar. The powerful zoom level used in this mode means that obstacles behind the vehicle appear very late. This mode therefore requires the driver to pay very careful attention.

The horizontal red auxiliary line shown on the screen is level with the towing bracket. The semi-circular green and red auxiliary lines indicate the distance from the towing bracket. The distance between each green auxiliary line, and between these lines and the red auxiliary line, is approximately 0.1 m. The orange line indicates the predicted path of the towing bracket, depending on the steering angle.

Crossing traffic

The area in front of or behind the vehicle, and the side areas, are displayed as a fish-eye diagram. Mode 4 (crossing traffic) helps the driver to monitor traffic behind the vehicle and can be used in situations such as driving out of a garage or exiting from a narrow space.

Cleaning the camera lens

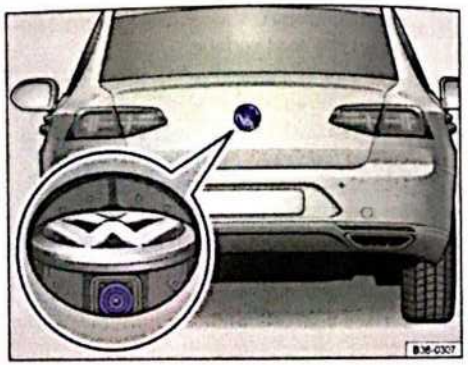


Fig. 198 At rear of vehicle: rear view camera system location.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 241.

Cleaning the camera lens

Keep the camera lens → Fig. 198 (close-up) clean and free of ice and snow:

- Switch on the ignition.
- Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.
- Moisten the lens with a commercially available alcohol-based glass cleaner and clean the lens with a dry cloth.
- Never use an abrasive cleaning product to clean the lens.
- Remove snow with a brush.
- Remove any ice with a de-icer spray.
- Deselect the reverse gear or selector lever position R.

It is not possible to open the boot lid if the Volkswagen badge is folded out.

Park Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Park Assist functions and things to note 248
- Selecting a parking mode 249
- Parking using Park Assist 250
- Driving out of a parking space using Park Assist 252

Park Assist provides active steering inputs when parking or driving out of a parking space.

Park Assist is an extension of ParkPilot →page 235 and assists the driver when:

- Selecting a suitable parking space,
- Selecting a parking mode
- Reverse parking in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking spaces
- Parking forwards in a suitable perpendicular parking space,
- Pulling out of a parallel parking space forwards.

In vehicles with ParkPilot optical display the scanned area to the front, rear and to the sides of the vehicle will be shown on the screen of the factory-fitted infotainment system. Within the scope permitted by the system, the position of obstacles will be shown in relation to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology used in Park Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by Park Assist tempt you into taking any risks when driving - this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Certain surfaces of objects and clothes cannot reflect the signals from the ultrasound sensors. The system is unable to detect these objects or people wearing this type of clothing, or they may be detected incorrectly.
- External sources of sound can affect the signals of the ultrasound sensors. In certain circumstances the system may not recognise people or objects.
- Ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Always check the area around the vehicle as the ultrasound sensors will not always detect infants, animals and objects.

⚠ WARNING

Making quick turning movements of the steering wheel when using Park Assist to park or drive out of a parking space can cause serious injuries.

- When parking or driving out of a parking space, do not reach for the steering wheel until prompted to do so by the system.

NOTICE

- The ultrasound sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening boot lids. This can result in damage to your vehicle.
- Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle, e.g. bicycle carriers, can prevent Park Assist from functioning properly and may cause damage.
- Park Assist uses parked vehicles, the kerb and other objects as guidance. Please ensure that the wheels and tyres are not damaged when parking the vehicle. If necessary, stop the parking procedure in good time to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- The ultrasound sensors in the bumper can be displaced or damaged by an impact which occurs for example when parking or driving out of a parking space.

Scanned by CamScanner

The ultrasound sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice and snow and not be covered up by stickers or other items, as these may prevent the system from working properly.

If an ultrasound sensor fails, Park Assist is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the fault has been rectified. Consult a qualified workshop in the event of a system fault. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Sources of sound can lead to errors in the Park Assist system or the ParkPilot, e.g. rough asphalt, cobblestones, and interference from other vehicles.

Volkswagen recommends that you practise using Park Assist on a quiet road or in a car park. In this way you can become familiar with the system and the functions in a safer environment. ◁

Park Assist functions and things to note

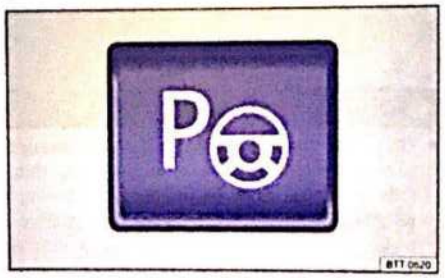


Fig. 199 In the upper section of the centre console: button for switching on Park Assist.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 247.

Park Assist has system-related limitations. For example, if you are on tight bends, Park Assist cannot help you to park the vehicle or drive out of parking spaces.

Park Assist consists of ultrasound sensors in the front and rear bumpers and the button which turns Park Assist and the display on the instrument cluster on and off.

Park Assist cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket → page 299 is electrically connected to the trailer. For vehicles with a trailer manoeuvring system, this system is switched on when the button is pressed.

Assistance with steering when stationary

If Park Assist attempts to turn the steering when the vehicle is stationary, the symbol appears on the instrument cluster display.

Depress the brake pedal.

Park Assist can now turn the steering.

Signal tones indicating a change in direction

When parking or driving out of a parking space, a signal tone sounds to prompt the driver to switch between driving forwards and reversing.

Recalibrating Park Assist after a wheel change

If you notice that the system's results for parking or leaving a parking space have worsened after a wheel has been changed, Park Assist may need to adopt the new wheel dimensions from the system. Park Assist adopts the values automatically while driving.

Park Assist can provide the following assistance:

- Driving around corners at speeds less than 20 km/h (12 mph).

Automatic cancellation of parking or leaving a parking space

Park Assist cancels parking or driving out of a parking space in the following situations:

- The button is pressed.
- Speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded.
- The driver intervenes using the steering wheel.
- The parking procedure was not completed within approximately 6 minutes of activating the automatic steering intervention.
- There is a system fault (system is temporarily unavailable).
- TCS is switched off.
- Traction control system and Electronic Stability Control start active intervention.
- The driver door is opened.

Park Assist cannot resume parking or driving out of a parking space automatically if the process was cancelled.

Press the button. ▶

Park Assist automatic braking intervention

Park Assist helps the driver by initiating an automatic braking intervention in certain situations.

The driver is always responsible for braking in time → ▲.

Automatic braking intervention to avoid speeding

An automatic braking intervention may occur to prevent the vehicle from exceeding a speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) when parking or driving out of a parking space. The parking or driving out of a parking space manoeuvre can be continued after the automatic braking intervention.

Automatic braking intervention occurs a maximum of once per parking manoeuvre. If a speed of 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded again the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.

Automatic braking intervention to minimise damage

Depending on certain circumstances, e.g. the weather or the condition, load or angle of the vehicle, Park Assist can bring the vehicle to a halt automatically before it reaches an obstacle by depressing and briefly holding the brake pedal → ▲! Following this intervention, the driver must depress the brake pedal.

Automatic braking intervention to minimise damage ends the parking manoeuvre.

▲ WARNING

Do not let the automatic braking intervention triggered by Park Assist tempt you to take any risks while driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Park Assist has system-related limitations. In some situations the automatic braking intervention can only work in a limited way or not at all.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- The automatic braking intervention is ended after approximately 1.5 seconds. Depress the brake pedal of the vehicle yourself following the automatic braking intervention. ◁

Selecting a parking mode

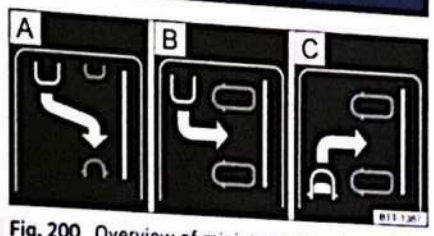


Fig. 200 Overview of miniature views for parking modes: A reverse parallel parking, B reverse perpendicular parking, C perpendicular forward parking.

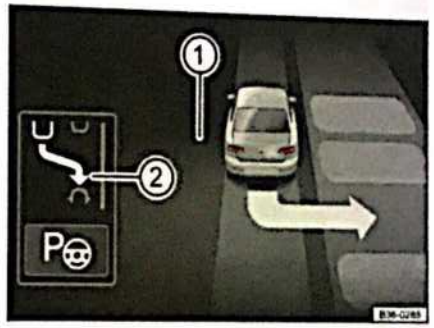


Fig. 201 On the instrument cluster display: Park Assist display with miniature view.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 247.

Selecting a parking mode

Park Assist selects the parking mode automatically. The selected parking mode is displayed on the instrument cluster → Fig. 201. Additional alternative parking modes are displayed as a miniature view → Fig. 200 and can be selected by pressing the button again.

	Action
1.	Requirements for parking while using Park Assist must be fulfilled → page 251.
2.	An indicator lamp lights up in the button when Park Assist is switched on.
	Press the button.
3.	Activate the turn signal for the side of the street on which you want to park. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

	Action
4.	Press the P button repeatedly until the required parking mode is selected.
5.	Follow the messages in the instrument cluster display while observing the traffic and drive the vehicle past the parking space.

Park Assist can be activated retrospectively. If the vehicle has previously driven past a suitable parking space, it will be displayed. ◁

Parking using Park Assist

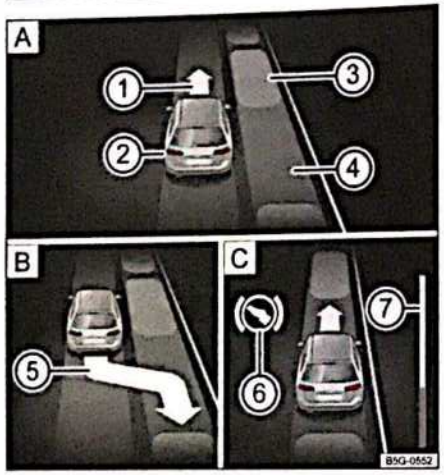


Fig. 202 On the instrument cluster display: parallel parking. A Looking for a parking space, B positioning the vehicle for parking and C manoeuvring.

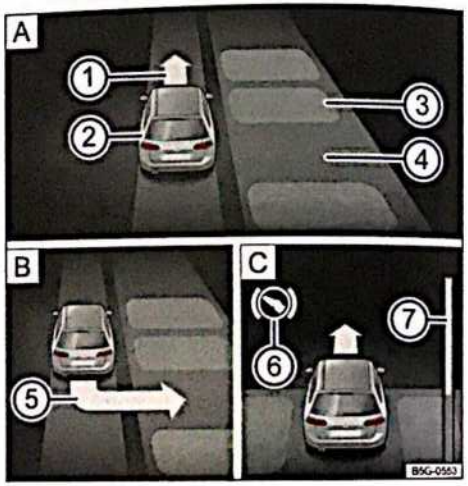


Fig. 203 On the instrument cluster display: parallel parking. A Looking for a parking space, B positioning the vehicle for parking and C manoeuvring.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 247.

Key for Fig. 202 or Fig. 203:
① Prompt to drive forward
② Your vehicle
③ Stationary vehicle.
④ Parking space detected
⑤ Parking prompt.
⑥ Prompt to press the brake pedal
⑦ Progress bar

Progress bar

The progress bar → Fig. 202 ⑦ or → Fig. 203 ⑦ in the instrument cluster display indicates the relative remaining distance using symbols. The higher the progress bar is, the longer the remaining distance is. When driving forwards the level of the progress moves up and when driving backwards it moves down. ▶

Requirements for parking with Park Assist

For parking spaces parallel to the side of the road	For parking spaces perpendicular to the side of the road
The traction control system (TCS) must be switched on → page 260.	
Do not exceed a speed of approximately **40 km/h (25 mph)** when driving past the parking space.	Do not exceed a speed of approximately **20 km/h (12 mph)** when driving past the parking space.
Maintain a distance of **0.5 – 2 metres** when driving past the parking space.	
Length of parking spaces: **vehicle length + 0.8 metres.**	Width of the parking space: **vehicle width + 0.8 metres.**
Do not exceed a speed of approximately **7 km/h (4 mph)** when parking.	

Parking

Complete the following steps:

The **Requirements for parking while using Park Assist** must be fulfilled → page 251, and the parking mode must be selected → page 249.

Observe the instrument cluster display to see whether the parking space has been determined as "suitable" and whether the correct position for manoeuvring into the parking space has been achieved → Fig. 202 B or → Fig. 203 B.

The parking space has been determined "suitable" only when the prompt to park ⑤ is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Stop the vehicle and engage reverse gear once the vehicle has been stationary for a short period.

Release the steering wheel → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 247.

Check the area around the vehicle and carefully depress the accelerator pedal – do not exceed 7 km/h (4 mph).

Park Assist will **only** operate the steering wheel during the parking procedure. **The driver controls the accelerator, the brake, and in a manual vehicle the clutch and the gear lever.**

Reverse the vehicle until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.

OR: reverse until the prompt to drive forward → Fig. 202 A ① / → Fig. 203 A ① appears on the instrument cluster display.

OR: reverse until the message **Park Assist finished!** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The progress bar ⑦ shows the remaining distance to be travelled → page 250.

Depress the brake pedal until Park Assist has finished steering.

OR: until the P symbol in the instrument cluster display disappears.

Select 1st gear.

Drive the vehicle forwards until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.

OR: drive forward until the prompt to drive backward appears in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist will steer the vehicle when driving forwards and reversing until the vehicle is parked straight in the parking space → Fig. 202 C or → Fig. 203 C.

Wait until Park Assist has completed the turning movements of the steering wheel at the end of each parking procedure in order to achieve an optimal parking result.

A message is displayed on the instrument cluster once the parking procedure is completed and a signal tone may be given.

Park Assist detects suitable parking spaces for the vehicle, even if Park Assist cannot be used for parking due to system limitations. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Driving out of a parking space using Park Assist

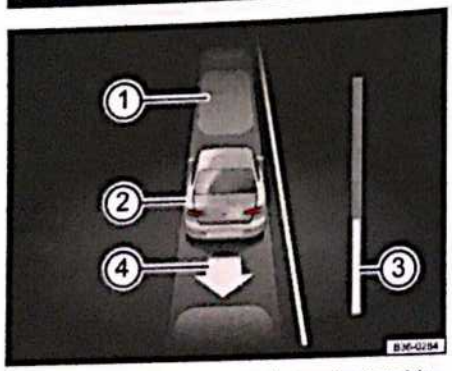


Fig. 204 On the instrument cluster display: driving out of a parallel parking space.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 247.

Key to Fig. 204:

① Stationary vehicle.

② Your vehicle with reverse gear engaged

③ Progress bar showing the remaining distance.

④ Arrow indicating the suggested procedure for driving out of a space

Requirements for driving out of a parking space using Park Assist

- Only for parallel parking spaces
- The traction control system (TCS) must be switched on → page 260.
- Length of the parking space: **vehicle length + 0.5 metres**
- Do not exceed a speed of approximately **7 km/h (4 mph)** when driving out of a parking space.

Driving out of a parking space

For parallel parking, complete the following steps:

- Requirements for driving out of a parking space using Park Assist must be fulfilled → page 252.
- Starting the engine → page 166.
- An indicator lamp lights up in the button when Park Assist is switched on.
- Press the → Fig. 199 button.
- Use the turn signal lever to select the direction in which you would like to drive out of the parking space.
- Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position R.
- Release the steering wheel → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 247.
- Check the area around the vehicle and carefully depress the accelerator pedal – do not exceed 7 km/h (4 mph).
- Park Assist will **only** operate the steering wheel while driving out of the parking space. **The driver controls the accelerator, the brake, and in a manual vehicle the clutch and the gear lever.**
- Reverse the vehicle until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.
- **OR:** reverse until the prompt to drive forward appears on the instrument cluster display.
- Depress the brake pedal until Park Assist has finished steering.
- **OR:** press the brake pedal until the symbol on the instrument cluster display disappears.
- Drive the vehicle forwards until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.
- **OR:** drive forward until the prompt to drive backward appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Park Assist steers the vehicle when driving forward or reversing until the vehicle can be driven out of the parking space.
- A message is displayed on the instrument cluster and the vehicle can be driven out of the parking space. A signal tone may be given.
- Take over steering with the steering angle turned by Park Assist.
- Paying attention to the traffic around you, drive the vehicle out of the parking space. ◁

Area View

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Things to note about Area View 253
- Using Area View 254 ▶

- Area View function buttons 255
- Area View displays 255

Area View assists the driver when parking, manoeuvring or driving off-road (Passat Alltrack).

The system uses multiple cameras to create an image which is displayed on the Infotainment system screen. The cameras are positioned in the radiator grille, the exterior mirrors and in the boot lid.

The functions and displays of Area View may differ between vehicles, depending on whether or not they are fitted with ParkPilot.

⚠ WARNING

Using cameras to estimate the distance from obstacles (people, vehicles etc.) is inaccurate and could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision and make objects appear different and inaccurate on the screen.
- Certain objects, for example narrow posts or railings, may be difficult or impossible to see on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.
- The cameras have blind spots within which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent Area View technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never allow the extra convenience afforded by the Area View system to tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. Always take care when using the Area View system as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always check the area around the vehicle as the cameras will not always detect infants, animals and objects.
- The system may not be able to display all areas clearly.

NOTICE

- The camera only shows two-dimensional images on the screen. The lack of depth of field means that potholes and protruding objects on the ground may only be detected with difficulty, or may not be detected at all.
- The camera may not always be able to detect objects such as thin bars, fences, posts, trees etc. This can result in damage to your vehicle.
- The system displays the auxiliary lines and boxes irrespective of the area surrounding the vehicle. There is no obstacle detection. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

NOTICE

The cameras must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.

- Never use an abrasive cleaning product to clean the lenses.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the camera lenses. This can damage the camera lenses.

It is not possible to open the boot lid if the Volkswagen badge is folded out. ◁

Things to note about Area View

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 253.

Requirements for using Area View

- ✓ The doors and boot lid must be closed.
- ✓ A clear and accurate image is required, e.g. a clean camera lens.
- ✓ The area around the vehicle must be detected clearly and in full.
- ✓ The area being used for manoeuvring or parking is on a flat, even surface. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Requirements for using Area View (Continued)

- ✓ The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded.
- ✓ The driver must be familiar with the system.
- ✓ The area of the vehicle around the camera must be undamaged. The system must be checked by a qualified workshop if the position or angle of the camera has changed, e.g. following a rear impact.

Things to note

Examples of optical deception by the camera:

The Area View system camera supplies two-dimensional images only. Due to the lack of depth of field on the screen, potholes and dips in the ground, protruding parts on another vehicle or protruding objects on the ground may be difficult or impossible to see on the image.

Objects or other vehicles may appear closer or further away on the screen than they actually are.

- If you drive from a level surface onto an upward or downward slope.
- If you drive from an upward or downward slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. These objects can disappear from the camera's field of view.
- Area View hides all of the auxiliary orientation lines in the area of the rear camera when the factory-fitted towing bracket → page 299 is electrically connected to a trailer. ◁

Using Area View

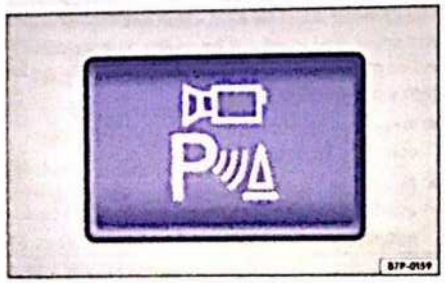


Fig. 205 In upper part of centre console: button for switching on the Area View.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 253.

Switching the Area View on and off	
Switching on the display manually:	Press the button → Fig. 205 *once*.
	Once activated, various displays appear on the Infotainment screen depending on the vehicle speed.
Switching on the display automatically.	Engage reverse gear.
	The camera view behind the vehicle is displayed in perpendicular parking mode with the miniature version of the bird's eye view.
Switching the display off manually.	Press the button → Fig. 205 *again*.
	OR: press the infotainment button, e.g. RADIO, on the factory-fitted infotainment system.
	OR: touch the function button.
Switching the display off automatically.	Drive forwards faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).
	OR: switch off the ignition. The Area View menu is hidden after a short delay. ▶

Volkswagen recommends that you practise using Area View in a traffic calmed area or in a car park. In this way you can become familiar with the system and the functions in a safer environment. ◁

Area View function buttons

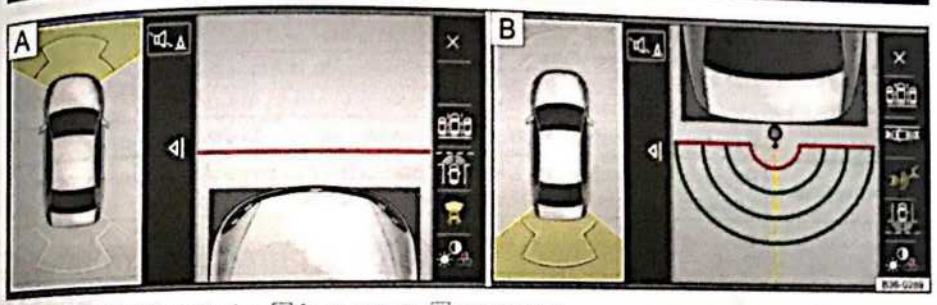


Fig. 206 Area View display: A front camera, B rear camera.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 253.

Key for Fig. 206

- With some equipment levels: switch the ParkPilot tone on and off.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level: switch on ParkPilot display.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level: switch off ParkPilot display.
- With some equipment levels: display ParkPilot.
- X Exit Area View display
- Setting display: brightness, contrast, colour.
- Switch to rear crossing traffic mode.
- Switch to mode 2. ◁

Area View displays

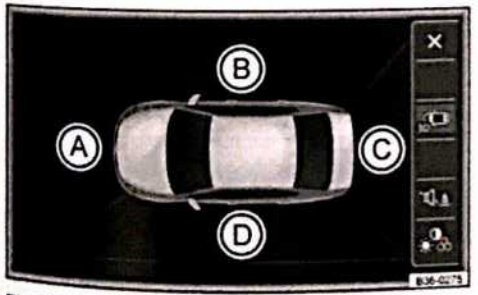


Fig. 207 Area View display: bird's eye view.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 253.

Key for Fig. 207

- Ⓐ Front camera area.
- Ⓑ Right camera area.
- Ⓒ Rear camera area.
- Ⓓ Left camera area.

- With some equipment levels: switch the ParkPilot tone on and off.
- X Close current display.
- 3D views
- Setting display: brightness, contrast, colour. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

A bird's eye view is created by combining all camera views → Fig. 207. The bird's eye view can be selected by touching the *vehicle* within the area on the screen.

Select the respective camera views by touching the individual areas in the bird's eye view → Fig. 207 Ⓐ to Ⓓ or the miniature version of the bird's eye view.

The selected individual camera view is displayed on the right-hand side of the screen. It is marked by a coloured frame in the miniature version of the bird's eye view shown on the left. In addition, the available menu options and possible camera views (modes) for the corresponding camera are shown on the right-hand side of the screen. The view (mode) that is currently active is highlighted.

The miniature version of the bird's eye view can be hidden by pressing the ◁| button and the selected single view can be displayed on the entire screen.

Bird's eye views

View	Screen display of all cameras	
Main mode	The vehicle and immediate area are shown in the bird's eye view. In some models, it may also be possible to show the ParkPilot vehicle path display.	
3D views		The vehicle and surrounding area are shown in the bird's eye view.
		The vehicle and surrounding area are shown at an angle from above.
		The vehicle and surrounding area are shown from the side.

The viewing angle in the 3D views can be switched to the vehicle and the surrounding area by swiping in the direction of the arrows on the infotainment system screen.

Front camera views (Front View)

View	Display of front camera
Crossing traffic at front	Area on left of screen: intersecting street on the left-hand side. Area in centre of screen: area immediately in front of vehicle. Area on right of screen: intersecting street on the right-hand side.
Perpendicular parking	The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. Orientation lines are displayed as a guide. See rear view camera system mode 1 → page 241.
Off-road	The area immediately in front of the vehicle is shown in a bird's eye view. This can be used, for example, when crossing a slope so that the area immediately in front of the vehicle can be seen. The displayed red line marks a point approximately 0.4 m from the vehicle.

Side camera views (side view)

View	Side camera screen display.
Off-road, left-hand and right-hand side	Areas immediately next to the vehicle are displayed in a bird's eye view so you can steer the vehicle accurately around obstacles. The red lines displayed are shown at a distance of around 40 cm from the vehicle.
Left side	Shows the driver or front passenger side immediately next to the vehicle separately as a bird's eye view. This allows you to see the blind spot along the side of the vehicle.
Right-hand side	

Rear camera views (rear view)

View	Rear camera display.
Perpendicular parking	The area behind the vehicle is displayed. Auxiliary lines are displayed to help. See rear view camera system mode 1 → page 241.
Parallel parking	The area immediately behind the vehicle is displayed. The coloured auxiliary boxes and lines are provided for orientation. See rear view camera system mode 2 → page 241.
Off-road	The rear of the vehicle is displayed, and the red auxiliary line indicates the safety clearance. The distance between the red auxiliary line and the vehicle is approximately 0.4 metres. No additional auxiliary lines are displayed.
Crossing traffic at rear	Area on left of screen: intersecting street on the left-hand side. Area in centre of screen: area immediately behind the vehicle. Area on right of screen: intersecting street on the right-hand side.

Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Operating the trailer manoeuvring system 258

Trailer Assist helps the driver when reversing or manoeuvring the vehicle when towing a trailer.

WARNING

The intelligent Trailer Assist technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by Trailer Assist tempt you into taking any risks when driving, as this can cause accidents. Trailer Assist cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Keep looking in the direction in which you are parking and at the relevant area surrounding the vehicle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the displayed images to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle and the trailer. The camera cannot monitor the areas behind and to the side of the trailer, or may not be able to monitor them in full. The camera will also not always detect small children, animals and other objects.
- The camera in the hinged Volkswagen badge may not be able to display all areas clearly.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.
- Trailer Assist should only be used when the boot lid is fully closed.

WARNING

Fast rotational steering wheel movements can cause serious injury.

- When manoeuvring, do not reach for the steering wheel until prompted to do so by the system.
- Exception: if a dangerous situation occurs, intervene and take over the steering.

Scanned by CamScanner

NOTICE

Trailer Assist does not use the area around the vehicle for orientation and does not detect any obstacles. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the trailer can be manoeuvred safely.

- Always pay close attention to the movements of the trailer and, if required, stop the manoeuvre to avoid causing any damage. On rare occasions the trailer may behave differently, even when Trailer Assist is operated correctly.
- Do not rely on the displays in the instrument cluster.

NOTICE

The camera must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly. The drawbar must not be covered.

- Never use an abrasive cleaning product to clean the lens.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the lens of the camera. This could damage the lens.

NOTICE

Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle or trailer can prevent Trailer Assist from working properly and can cause damage.

- Equipment that has been fitted to the vehicle can be detected as a trailer, e.g. bicycle carriers.
- Trailers which have unusual structures or additional add-on parts in the area of the drawbar cannot always be detected correctly.

Volkswagen recommends that you practise using trailer manoeuvring system in an area with less traffic or in a car park. This will allow you to familiarise yourself with the system and its functions in a safer environment.

Consult a qualified workshop in the event of a system fault. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

It is not possible to open the boot lid if the Volkswagen badge is folded out. ◁

Operating the trailer manoeuvring system

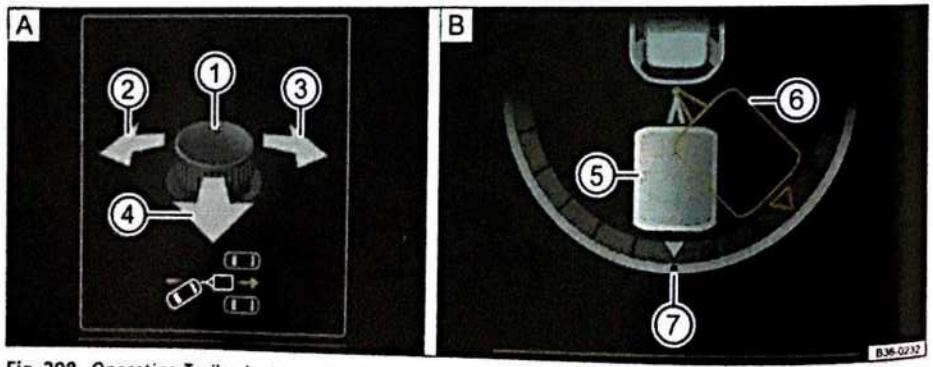


Fig. 208 Operating Trailer Assist on the instrument cluster display: A setting the angle; B reversing.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 257.

Key to Fig. 208:

① Rotary knob for adjusting the exterior mirror.
② Align the trailer to the left.
③ Align the trailer to the right.
④ Drive in the direction of the trailer.
⑤ Current trailer position.
⑥ Target trailer position.
⑦ Zero position on the angle display. ▶

The switch for the exterior mirrors can be used to set the direction in which you want to move the trailer.

Determining the drawbar length

Trailer Assist requires a few turning and cornering manoeuvres to enable it to determine the length of the drawbar. The more accurately it can determine the length of the drawbar, the bigger the angles available when manoeuvring. Trailer Assist divides the available maximum limit positions on the angle display into four levels: approx. 30°, 45°, 60° and 75°.

Requirements for activating the trailer manoeuvring system

✓ Engine running.
✓ ESC has not been switched off.
✓ Trailer attached and connected to vehicle electrics → page 299, *Towing a trailer*.
✓ Trailer is stationary.
✓ Driver door and boot lid are closed.
✓ Exterior mirrors are *not* folded in.
✓ Camera lens is clean.
✓ Do not exceed the maximum jackknifing angle.
✓ The area of the vehicle around the camera must be undamaged. The system must be checked by a qualified workshop if the position or angle of the camera has changed, e.g. following a rear impact.

Things to note

- The trailer manoeuvring system steers the trailer automatically in the set direction → Fig. 208. The driver operates the pedals.
- The system only supports single and biaxial trailers with no steered axles.
- For technical reasons, the trailer manoeuvring system cannot always detect trailers with LED rear lights correctly.
- The exterior mirrors cannot be adjusted while Trailer Assist is active. The stored front passenger mirror setting for reversing can be accessed while the trailer manoeuvring system is active → page 139, *Mirrors*.
- The trailer manoeuvring system function will be ended automatically around 10 minutes after activation.
- The function will also be ended if no driver interaction is detected within approximately 3 minutes of activation.

Operation

Manoeuvring the trailer using Trailer Assist:

- The checklist conditions must be fulfilled.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Release the steering wheel → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 257.
- Press the button to switch the trailer manoeuvring system on.
- An indicator lamp lights up in the button when Trailer Assist is switched on.
- Tilt the rotary knob in the required direction until that direction is reached → Fig. 208 A.
- A diagram showing the current position of the trailer appears on the instrument cluster display for orientation purposes B.
- Reverse slowly until the required position is reached → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 257. Check area around vehicle!
- While reversing, the set angle can be adjusted using the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors.
- Stop the trailer safely in the required position.
- At the end of the parking manoeuvre, wait until Trailer Assist has finished turning the steering wheel.
- The manoeuvre is complete when the message **Steering interv. finished. Take over steering!** appears in the instrument cluster. A signal tone may also be given.

Alignment in the direction of the trailer:

- Tilt the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors in direction ④ A.
- The target position of the trailer ⑥ swivels to the zero position on the angle display ⑦.
- Drive forwards and backwards until the required position is reached.

Automatic braking intervention

Trailer Assist helps the driver by initiating an automatic braking intervention in certain situations.

The driver is responsible for braking in time → ▲ ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

An automatic braking intervention may occur and the function may be cancelled in the following situations:

- When a certain speed is exceeded, depending on the length of the drawbar and the angle between the vehicle and the trailer.
- If the driver takes hold of the steering wheel. The vehicle is automatically braked to standstill.
- If the button is pressed during the manoeuvre.
- If the driver door is opened during the manoeuvre.

WARNING

Do not let the automatic braking intervention tempt you to take any risks while driving, as this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Trailer Assist has system-related limitations. In some situations the automatic braking intervention can only work in a limited way or not at all.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- The automatic braking intervention is ended after approximately 1.5 seconds at vehicle standstill. Depress the brake pedal of the vehicle yourself following the automatic braking intervention.

Brake support systems

Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	Together with ABS indicator lamp: ABS not functioning.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	ESC switched off by the system.	Switch the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive a short distance.
	ESC fault.	Go to a qualified workshop.
	In conjunction with ABS indicator lamp: ABS fault.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Vehicle battery has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 - 20 km/h (10 - 12 mph). If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop → page 363.
	TCS switched off manually. **OR:** ESC switched off manually. **OR:** ESC switched on manually.	Switch on TSC or ESC, or switch off ESC Sport → page 264. Switch on TCS/ESC automatically by switching the ignition off and on.
	In conjunction with ESC indicator lamp: ABS fault.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Together with warning lamp or : ABS not functioning.	

Flashes	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	ESC/TCS is taking corrective action.	Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Adapt driving style to suit road conditions.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle immediately and seek expert assistance → page 362, *Brake fluid*.
- If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp, the control function of the ABS may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. Locked rear wheels can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop in order to have the brake system tested. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres on the way.
- The ABS is not functioning correctly if the ABS indicator lamp does not go out or comes on while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only (without ABS). The protection provided by ABS is no longer available. Go to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If the warning lamp lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the brake pads checked or any worn brake pads replaced.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Brake support systems

The brake support systems ESC, ABS, BAS, TCS and XDL only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve driving stability by braking individual wheels in certain driving situations. The ESC detects critical driving situations such as oversteer, understeer and wheelspin. The system supports the stabilisation process for the vehicle with targeted braking interventions or by reducing engine torque.

ESC has its limitations. It is important to realise that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. ESC will not be able to assist in every situation faced by a driver. For example, ESC will not be able to assist every time that there is a sudden change in the road surface quality. If a section of dry road is suddenly covered with water, mud or snow, ESC will not be able to assist in the same manner as on a dry road. If the vehicle aquaplanes (drives on a layer of water rather than on the road surface), ESC will not be able to assist in steering the vehicle as the contact to the road surface has been interrupted and it is therefore no longer possible to steer or brake the vehicle. When driving at speed through bends, particularly on stretches of road with many bends, the ESC will not always be able to process complicated driving situations as effectively as at lower speeds.

Scanned by CamScanner

An automatic braking intervention may occur and the function may be cancelled in the following situations:

- When a certain speed is exceeded, depending on the length of the drawbar and the angle between the vehicle and the trailer.
- If the driver takes hold of the steering wheel. The vehicle is automatically braked to standstill.
- If the P button is pressed during the manoeuvre.
- If the driver door is opened during the manoeuvre.

WARNING

Do not let the automatic braking intervention tempt you to take any risks while driving, as this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for full concentration on the part of the driver.

- Trailer Assist has system-related limitations. In some situations the automatic braking intervention can only work in a limited way or not at all.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- The automatic braking intervention is ended after approximately 1.5 seconds at vehicle standstill. Depress the brake pedal of the vehicle yourself following the automatic braking intervention.

Brake support systems

Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
(!)	Together with ABS indicator lamp: ABS not functioning.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	ESC switched off by the system.	Switch the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive a short distance.
	ESC fault.	Go to a qualified workshop.
	In conjunction with ABS indicator lamp: ABS fault.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Vehicle battery has been reconnected.	Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 - 20 km/h (10 - 12 mph). If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop → page 363.
	TCS switched off manually. OR: ESC switched off manually. OR: ESC switched on manually.	Switch on TSC or ESC, or switch off ESC Sport → page 264. Switch on TCS/ESC automatically by switching the ignition off and on.
	In conjunction with ESC indicator lamp: ABS fault.	Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.
	Together with warning lamp or: ABS not functioning.	

Flashes	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
	ESC/TCS is taking corrective action.	Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Adapt driving style to suit road conditions.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle immediately and seek expert assistance → page 362, *Brake fluid*.
- If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp, the control function of the ABS may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. Locked rear wheels can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop in order to have the brake system tested. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres on the way.
- The ABS is not functioning correctly if the ABS indicator lamp does not go out or comes on while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only (without ABS). The protection provided by ABS is no longer available. Go to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If the warning lamp lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the brake pads checked or any worn brake pads replaced.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Brake support systems

The brake support systems ESC, ABS, BAS, TCS and XDL only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve driving stability by braking individual wheels in certain driving situations. The ESC detects critical driving situations such as oversteer, understeer and wheelspin. The system supports the stabilisation process for the vehicle with targeted braking interventions or by reducing engine torque.

ESC has its limitations. It is important to realise that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. ESC will not be able to assist in every situation faced by a driver. For example, ESC will not be able to assist every time that there is a sudden change in the road surface quality. If a section of dry road is suddenly covered with water, mud or snow, ESC will not be able to assist in the same manner as on a dry road. If the vehicle aquaplanes (drives on a layer of water rather than on the road surface), ESC will not be able to assist in steering the vehicle as the contact to the road surface has been interrupted and it is therefore no longer possible to steer or brake the vehicle. When driving at speed through bends, particularly on stretches of road with many bends, the ESC will not always be able to process complicated driving situations as effectively as at lower speeds.

Scanned by CamScanner

Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. ESC cannot defy the laws of motion, improve the available power output, or keep the vehicle on the road if insufficient care and attention on the part of the driver causes the vehicle to leave the road. Rather, ESC increases the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and, in extreme on-road driving situations, it assesses the driver's steering input and helps the vehicle to continue in the required direction. If the vehicle is driving at a speed that leads it to leave the road before the ESC can provide any kind of support, the ESC will be unable to provide any assistance.

The ABS, BAS, TCS and EDL systems are integrated into the ESC.

If, in certain driving situations, the level of traction achieved is no longer sufficient, the traction control system (TCS) can be deactivated in the infotainment system using the CAR button and the and ESC System function buttons → page 78.

In some models, settings can also be adjusted using the button in the lower section of the centre console → page 264.

In some models, the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) can also be switched off or a sport mode (ESC Sport) can be switched on.

Always ensure that the TCS and ESC are switched back on again once sufficient traction has been achieved.

Automatic Post-Collision Braking System

In the event of an accident, the Automatic Post-Collision Braking System can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding, and the danger of secondary collisions, through automatic braking.

The Automatic Post-Collision Braking System only functions in frontal, side and rear collisions if the airbag control unit registers the corresponding triggering threshold during the accident, and the accident occurs at a speed greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

The ESC brakes the vehicle automatically, provided that the hydraulic braking system, the ESC and the electrical system are undamaged in the accident and remain functional.

The following actions override automatic braking in the event of an accident:

- When the driver depresses the accelerator. No automatic braking occurs.
- When the brake pressure transmitted through the depressed brake pedal is greater than the brake pressure provided by the system. The vehicle is braked manually.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied up until the point where the vehicle is nearly stationary and assists the driver in steering the vehicle and keeping it under control. This means that the vehicle is less likely to spin, even when the brakes are depressed fully:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal with force. Do not take your foot off the brake pedal or reduce the force on the brake pedal.
- Do not "pump" the brake pedal or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal!
- Steer the vehicle while the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- The ABS will switch off when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

If the ABS is taking corrective action, there is a **pulsing movement in the brake pedal** and some noise. However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

In the **Alltrack** a special off-road ABS is automatically activated when driving forwards on loose ground. The front wheels could lock briefly. This shortens the braking distance in off-road situations as the wheels dig into loose surfaces. This is available only when driving straight ahead. When the front wheels are turned, the normal ABS is activated.

Brake Assist system (BAS)

The Brake Assist system can help to reduce the braking distance. The Brake Assist system reinforces brake pressure when the driver depresses the brake pedal quickly in an emergency situation. As a result, full braking power is made accessible very quickly, braking power is reinforced and the braking distance reduced. This means that the ABS is activated more quickly and more effectively. ▶

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The Brake Assist system will switch off the brake servo automatically when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

Traction control system (TCS)

The TCS reduces the engine output if wheelspin occurs and adapts the output to suit road surface conditions. TCS helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb gradients in unfavourable road conditions.

The TCS can be switched on and off manually → page 264.

Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDL)

The EDL is available for normal driving on straight roads. EDL brakes the wheel that has lost traction and distributes the driving force to the other drive wheels. To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

The XDL function is an extension of the electronic differential lock. The XDL does not respond to traction control, but rather to the reduction of load on the inside front wheel when driving through a bend at high speed. XDL will apply the brake on the inside front wheel to prevent it from losing traction. This will improve traction, helping the vehicle to remain in the required lane longer.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology used in brake assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and could cause serious injury to the driver and passengers.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the brake support systems tempt you into taking any risks when driving.
- The brake support systems cannot defy the laws of motion. Slippery and wet roads will remain dangerous, even when the ESC and other systems are active.
- Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road surface and aquaplane. The vehicle cannot be braked, steered or controlled once it has lost contact with the road surface.
- Brake support systems cannot prevent an accident if, for example, you are driving too close to the vehicle in front or are driving too fast for the individual situation.
- Although the brake support systems are very effective and can help to control the vehicle in difficult driving situations, please always remember that the driving stability of the vehicle depends on the tyre grip.
- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, depress the accelerator carefully. The wheels can spin even when brake support systems are active, and this can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of ESC can be reduced considerably if other components and systems which affect driving dynamics are not serviced properly or are not functioning properly. This also applies, but not exclusively, to the brakes, tyres and other systems named above.

- Please note that modifications and changes to the vehicle may affect the function of the brake support systems.
- Alterations to the suspension or the use of non-approved wheel and tyre combinations can affect the function of brake support systems and reduce their effectiveness.
- Suitable tyres are also crucial if ESC is to function optimally → page 369.

The ESC and TCS can only function properly if all 4 wheels are fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power unexpectedly.

If there is a fault in the ABS, the ESC, TCS and EDL will also stop working.

Control processes running in the systems described may cause operating noises. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Switching TCS, TCS with ESC or ESC Sport on and off



Fig. 209 In the lower part of the centre console: button for switching TCS, TCS with ESC or ESC Sport on and off manually.

The electronic stability control (ESC) only functions when the engine is running. It consists of ABS, EDL and TCS.

The TCS or ESC functions should only be switched off when the traction achieved is insufficient. For example:

- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When rocking the vehicle backwards and forwards to free it from mud.

The TCS or ESC functions must be reactivated afterwards.

Switching the TCS function on and off

- In some models, when the engine is running, the TCS function can be switched off by pressing the → Fig. 209 button.
- Switch the TCS back on by pressing the → Fig. 209 button.
- **OR:** activate or deactivate the TCS function in the infotainment system using the CAR button and the and ESC System function buttons → page 78.

Switching the TCS and ESC function on and off

In some models, the electronic stabilisation programme (ESC) sport mode (ESC Sport) can also be switched on in addition to switching off the traction control system (TCS). The electronic stabilisation programme's (ESC) brake intervention functions are limited when in Sport mode. These systems are switched on and off with the → Fig. 209 button.

Button	Effect
Press for around one second	TCS function switched off
Press for longer than around 3 seconds	TCS function switched off and ESC Sport switched on
Press again	TCS function with ESC switched on

In models without a button for switching the traction control system (TSC) on and off manually, the TCS function can be activated or deactivated in the infotainment system → page 78.

In addition, text notifications may be shown on the instrument cluster display to provide further information or to prompt you to carry out certain actions → page 54, *Instrument cluster.* ◁

Practical equipment

Stowage area

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Stowage compartment on the driver side 266
- Stowage compartment on the front passenger side 266
- Stowage compartment in the front centre console 267
- Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest 268
- Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment) 268
- Other stowage areas 268

Only use stowage compartments to stow light or smaller objects.

WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not place any animals or hard, heavy or sharp objects in the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the dash panel, on the surface behind the rear seats, in items of clothing and bags in the vehicle interior.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- The floor mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- Never place additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the fitted floor mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Cigarette lighters left in the vehicle can become damaged or may ignite unnoticed. This can cause serious burns and vehicle damage.

- Before moving seats forwards or backwards, always ensure that there are no cigarette lighters in the vicinity of moveable seat components.
- Before closing stowage areas or compartments, always ensure that there are no cigarette lighters in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas, compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle. Cigarette lighters may self-ignite as a result of high surface temperatures, particularly in summer.

NOTICE

- Hard objects could rub against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
- Do not store any heat-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Hot and cold temperatures could damage them or render them unusable.
- Objects stored in the vehicle that are made from transparent materials, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

Always ensure that the ventilation openings between the rear window and the area behind the rear seat backrest are uncovered to allow stale air to escape from the vehicle. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Stowage compartment on the driver side

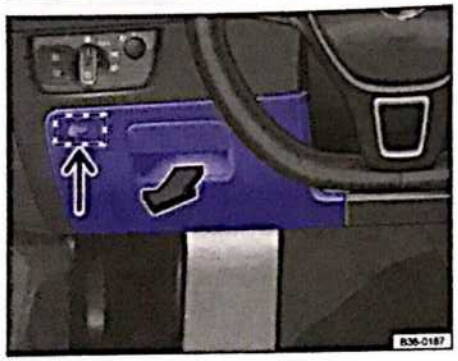


Fig. 210 On the driver side: stowage compartment with holder for memory cards.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 265.

To *open*, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 210.

To *close*, press the cover upwards until it engages.

There is a memory card holder on the inside of the cover → Fig. 210 (small arrow). ◁

Stowage compartment on the front passenger side



Fig. 211 Front passenger side: stowage compartment

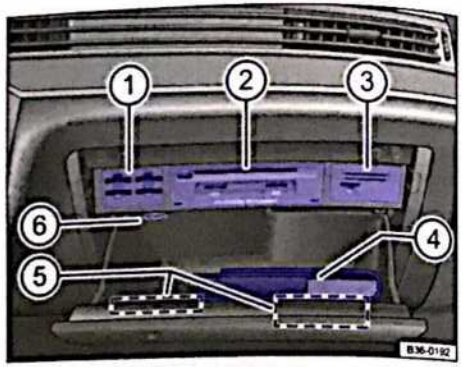


Fig. 212 Open stowage compartment on the front passenger side.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 265.

Key to Fig. 212:

① Holder for memory cards.
② Infotainment system devices, card readers.
③ Holder for plastic cards and coins.
④ Vehicle wallet.
⑤ Coin holder and plastic cards or mounting for glasses compartment.
⑥ Vent.

Opening and closing the stowage compartment

Unlock the vehicle using the spare key → page 89 if necessary. The stowage compartment is locked when the key slot is vertical.

To *open*, pull up the opening lever → Fig. 211.

To *close*, push the cover up.

Holder for memory cards, plastic cards, coins, mounting for glasses compartment

The upper part of the stowage compartment and its cover may contain holders for memory cards, plastic cards, coins etc., and a mounting for a glasses compartment → Fig. 212 ①, ③ and ⑤.

Infotainment system devices, card readers

The upper area of the stowage compartment may contain infotainment system devices ② and card readers → Booklet *Infotainment system*. ▶

Owner's manual

The stowage compartment on the front passenger side is intended for the vehicle wallet ④. The vehicle wallet should always be kept in this compartment.

In some models, you may find a separate vehicle wallet compartment in the upper area of the luggage compartment.

Cooling the stowage compartment

A vent in the upper area of the stowage compartment ⑥ can be used to feed cooled air into the stowage compartment when the air conditioning is switched on. Turn the vents to open and close them.

⚠ WARNING

If the stowage compartment on the front passenger side is left open, this can increase the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres.

- Always keep the stowage compartment closed while the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

In some vehicle models, the stowage compartment on the front passenger side contains apertures, for example behind the vehicle wallet compartment. Small items can fall through the apertures and become trapped behind the trim. This could cause unusual noises and damage to the vehicle. For this reason do not store small items in the stowage compartment. ◁

Stowage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 213 In the front centre console: stowage compartment.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 265.

To *open*, slide the cover all the way forward in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 213.

To *close*, briefly push the open cover forwards in the direction of the arrow. The cover will close automatically.

The stowage area may contain the following equipment:

- 12-volt socket → page 272
- Cigarette lighter → page 270
- USB socket → Booklet *Infotainment system*
- "Comfort" mobile phone interface → Booklet *Infotainment system* ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest

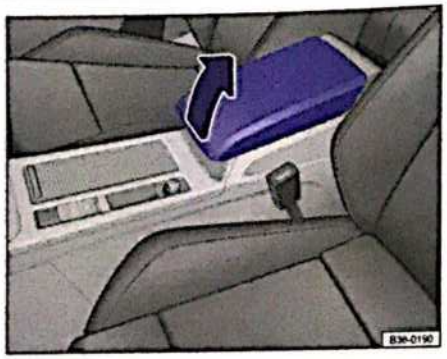


Fig. 214 In the front centre armrest: stowage compartment

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 265.

To *open*, pull the centre armrest fully up in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 214.

To *close*, guide the armrest down.

WARNING

The centre armrest can obstruct the driver's arm movements. This can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the stowage compartment in the centre armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest.

The stowage compartment may contain an AUX-IN socket and a USB socket → Booklet *Infotainment system*. ◁

Stowage area in the roof console (glasses compartment)

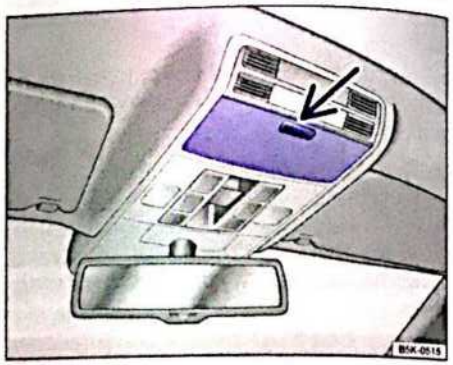


Fig. 215 In the roof console: stowage compartment.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 265.

The stowage compartment can be used for storing glasses or other objects.

To *open*, press and release the button → Fig. 215 (arrow).

To *close*, press the cover upwards until it engages. ◁

Other stowage areas

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 265.

Other stowage areas:

- In the centre console.
- In the door trims (front and rear).
- Under the luggage compartment floor.
- Saloon only: stowage areas for light items of clothing behind the rear seat backrests.
- coat hooks on the centre door pillar and on the rear roof grab handles.
- Bag hooks in the luggage compartment → page 288.

WARNING

Hanging up items of clothing can restrict the driver's field of vision and cause accidents and serious injuries. ▶

- Always hang items of clothing in such a way that they do not restrict the driver's field of vision.
- The clothes hook in the vehicle should only be used for transporting light items of clothing. Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets.

NOTICE

Each coat hook may be loaded with a maximum of 2.5 kg. ◁

Drink holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Drink holder in the lower part of the centre console 269
- Drink holder in the rear centre armrest 270

Bottle holder

There are bottle holders in the open-top stowage compartments of the driver and front passenger doors.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the drink holders can cause injury.

- Do not place any hot drinks in a drink holder. Hot drinks in a drink holder could be spilled and cause scalding in any sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.
- Ensure that drink bottles or any other objects do not enter the driver footwell and obstruct the pedals while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never place heavy cups, food or any other heavy items in the drink holders. These heavy objects could be flung through the vehicle interior during an accident and cause serious injuries.

WARNING

Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or crack in extremely cold temperatures.

- Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.

NOTICE

- Do not leave any open drinks in the drink holder while the vehicle is in motion. Drinks that are spilled, for example during braking, can damage the vehicle and the vehicle electric system.
- Objects stored in the vehicle that are made from transparent materials, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

The inserts for the drink holders can be removed for cleaning purposes. ◁

Drink holder in the lower part of the centre console

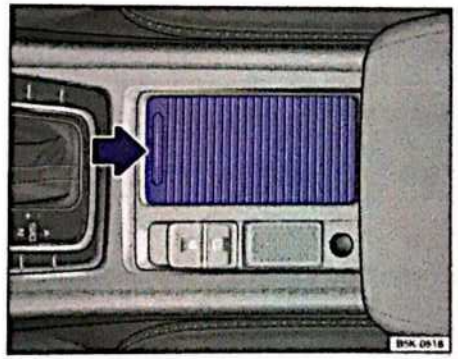


Fig. 216 In the lower part of the centre console: opening the drink holder. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

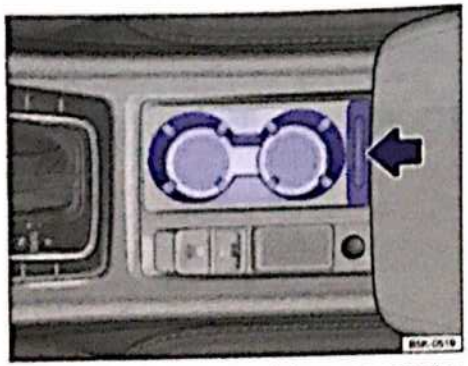


Fig. 217 In the lower part of the centre console: closing the front drink holder.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 269.

There are various types of drink holder in the lower part of the centre console. This cover is not available in all vehicle models.

Opening the drink holder

To *open*, pull the cover in the centre console cover to the rear in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 216.

Closing the drink holder

To *close*, push the cover in the centre console cover forwards in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 217. ◁

Drink holder in the rear centre armrest

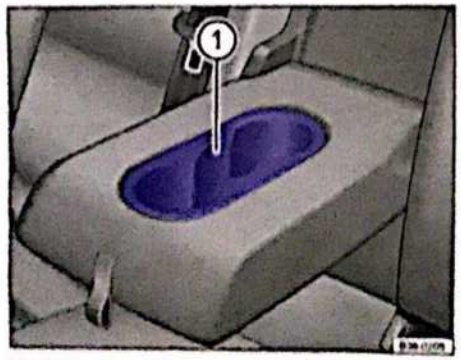


Fig. 218 In the rear centre armrest: drink holder.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 269.

– To *open*, fold the centre armrest down.
– To *close*, fold the centre armrest up. ◁

Ashtrays and cigarette lighter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Front ashtray 270
– Removable ashtray in the drink holder 271
– Cigarette lighter 271

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the ashtray and cigarette lighter could cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Never put paper or any other combustible materials in the ashtray. ◁

Front ashtray



Fig. 219 In the front centre console: opening the ashtray. ▶

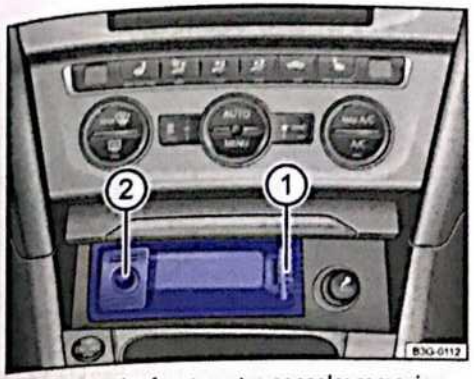


Fig. 220 In the front centre console: removing the ashtray ① and snuffer ②.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 270.

Opening and closing the ashtray

– To *open*, slide the cover of the ashtray all the way forward in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 219.
– To *close*, briefly press the open cover forwards in the direction of the arrow. The cover will close automatically.

Emptying the ashtray

– Take hold of the sides of the ashtray insert → Fig. 220 ① and pull it up and out.
– Place the insert back into the ashtray from above once it has been emptied. ◁

Removable ashtray in the drink holder



Fig. 221 Removable ashtray.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 270.

The removed ashtray can be used in the drink holders or outside of the vehicle.

To use the removable ashtray place it in one of the drink holders in the lower part of the centre console or in the rear centre armrest → page 269.

Opening and closing the ashtray

– To *open*, lift the ashtray cover in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 221.
– To *close*, push the lid down against the direction of the arrow.

Emptying the removable ashtray

– Lift the removable ashtray out of the drink holder.
– Open the removable ashtray and empty the cooled ashes into a suitable waste container.
– Once it has been emptied, place the removable ashtray back into the drink holder from above. ◁

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 222 In the front centre console: cigarette lighter in the ashtray (type 1). ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

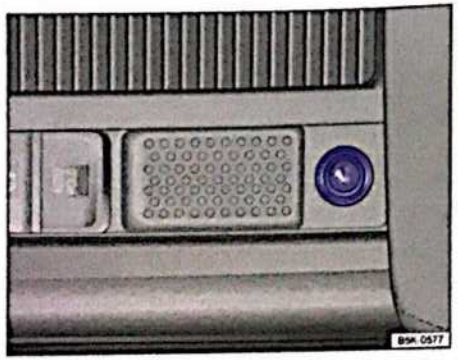


Fig. 223 In the lower part of the centre console: cigarette lighter (type 2).

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 270.

In some models, a cigarette lighter may be located in the front centre console or in the lower part of the centre console.

- With the ignition switched on, press in the knob on the cigarette lighter → Fig. 222 or → Fig. 223.
- Wait for the lighter to pop out.
- Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the tobacco product on the glowing spiral → ▲.
- Insert the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Always use the cigarette lighter properly, and only use it to light tobacco products.
- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. The cigarette lighter can be used when the ignition is switched on.

The cigarette lighter can also be used as a 12-volt socket → page 272. ◁

Sockets in the vehicle

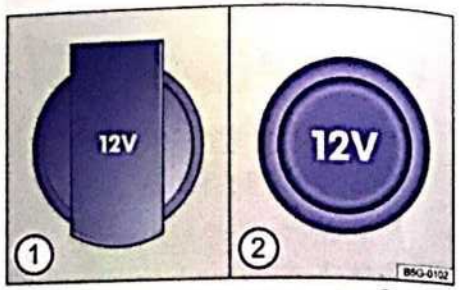


Fig. 224 12-volt socket with cover flap ①, 12-volt socket with pull-out cover ②.

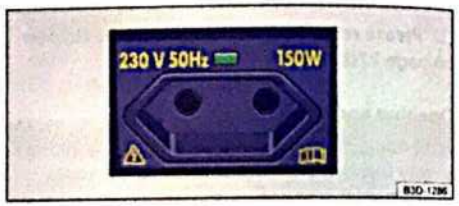


Fig. 225 230-volt Euro socket.

Electrical equipment can be connected to the sockets in the vehicle. The connected devices must be in good condition. Do not use faulty devices.

Maximum power rating

Electrical socket	Maximum power rating
12-volt	120 watts
230-volt	150 watts (300 watts peak power)

If two or more devices are connected at the same time, ensure that the overall power consumption of all connected electrical devices never exceeds 190 watts → ⓘ.

The maximum power rating of the individual sockets should never be exceeded. The power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

12-volt socket

The 12-volt socket will work only when the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Electrical consumers should therefore only be plugged into the sockets when the engine is running. ▶

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

12-volt sockets can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- In the front stowage area or in the front ashtray → Fig. 219.
- In the lower part of the centre console→ page 48.
- In the rear centre console → page 48.
- In the luggage compartment → Fig. 224.

230-volt Euro socket

The socket is activated automatically as soon as a plug is connected when the engine is running. If there is sufficient energy in the system, the socket can also be used when the engine is off → ⚠.

Connecting an electrical device: insert the plug all the way into the socket to unlock the integrated childproof lock. Electricity will not flow until the childproof lock has been unlocked.

LEDs on the socket → Fig. 225	
Constant green light	The child safety function is disengaged. The socket is ready for use.
Flashing green light:	The ignition is switched off but there is sufficient energy available to continue to supply the socket with power for up to 10 minutes. If the plug is removed during this time, the socket switches off and cannot be re-used until the ignition is switched on again.
Flashing red light	A fault has occurred, for example cut-off due to excess current or temperature.

230-volt Euro sockets can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- In the rear centre console → page 48.

Temperature switch-off

The inverter in the 230-volt Euro socket will switch off automatically if the temperature exceeds a specific value. The switch-off function prevents the connected device from overheating when the power consumption is too high or if the ambient temperature is too high. The 230-volt Euro socket cannot be used again until after the cool-down phase.

The plug on the connected device must first be removed and then reinserted before using the 230-volt Euro socket again after the cooling phase. This stops the connected electrical devices being switched on accidentally.

DANGER

High voltage in the electrical system!

- Never pour any liquid over the socket.
- Do not plug any adapters or extension cables into the 230-volt Euro socket. Otherwise the built-in child safety function will disengage and power will be supplied to the socket.
- Do not insert any items which will conduct electricity, such as knitting needles, into the contacts of the 230-volt Euro socket.

WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and electrical accessories can cause fires and severe injuries.

- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. Sockets and the devices connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the electrical device gets too hot, switch off the device immediately and disconnect it from the socket.

NOTICE

- In order to prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electricity, such as solar panels or battery chargers for charging the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt socket.
- Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
- In order to avoid damage due to voltage fluctuation, always switch any electrical consumers connected to the 12-volt sockets off before switching the ignition or the engine on and off. When the start/stop system automatically switches off and restarts the engine, it is not necessary to switch off any connected electrical consumers. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Never connect electrical devices requiring more electrical power to a 12-volt socket. The vehicle's electrical system can be damaged if the maximum power output is exceeded.

NOTICE

- Observe the operating instructions for any device that you plug into the socket.
- **12-volt socket:**
  - Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with valid guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
  - Never feed electricity into the socket.
- **230-volt Euro socket:**
  - Do not plug any heavy devices or connections, such as mains adapters, directly into the socket.
  - Do not connect any lights which use neon tubes.
  - Only connect devices to the socket with a voltage that matches the voltage of the socket.
  - With electrical devices that require a high level of current in the start phase, the built-in excess current switch will prevent the device from being switched on. If this happens, disconnect the device from the power supply and reconnect after waiting approximately 10 seconds.

Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary.

Unshielded devices can cause interference in the infotainment system and vehicle electronics.

Functional problems may occur with some devices when they are connected to the 230-volt Euro socket due to the lower power output (wattage).

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.

Unshielded devices can cause interference in the infotainment system and vehicle electronics.

Interference of AM radio reception may occur if electrical devices are used in the vicinity of the rear window or side window aerial. ◁

Multimedia

Subwoofer

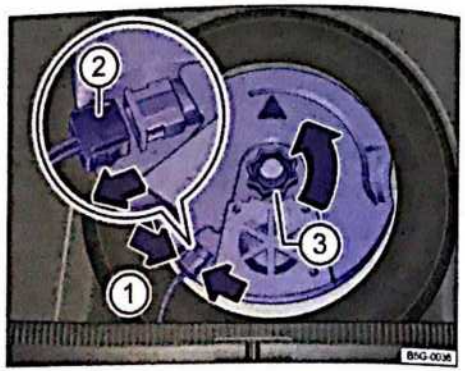


Fig. 226 In the luggage compartment: removing the subwoofer (type 1).

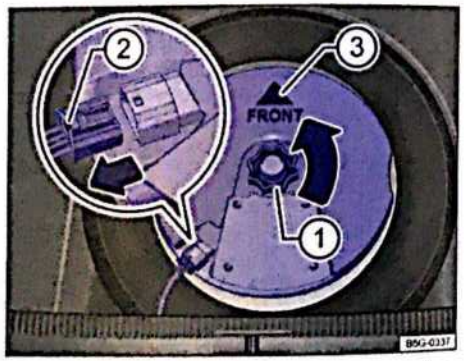


Fig. 227 In the luggage compartment: removing the subwoofer (type 2).

Before the spare wheel can be taken out, the subwoofer must be removed.

Removing the subwoofer Type 1 (Saloon)

- Open the boot lid and hook the floor covering on the top edge of the luggage compartment.
- To release the connector → Fig. 226 ②, press the lugs together → Fig. 226 (arrows ①).
- Pull out the connector → Fig. 226 ② and set the electric cable aside.
- Unscrew the handwheel → Fig. 226 ③ in an anticlockwise direction (arrow).
- Remove the subwoofer carefully. ▶

Removing the subwoofer Type 2 (Saloon)

- Open the boot lid and hook the floor covering on the top edge of the luggage compartment.
- Unscrew the handwheel → Fig. 227 ① in an anticlockwise direction (arrow).
- To unlock the connector, press the catch on the end of the plug ②.
- Pull out the connector as shown by the arrow, and put the electric cable aside.
- Remove the subwoofer carefully.

Removing the subwoofer Type 1 (Estate)

- Open the boot lid and raise the variable luggage compartment floor or fold it forwards.
- To release the connector → Fig. 226 ②, press the lugs together → Fig. 226 (arrow ①).
- Pull out the connector ② and put the electric cable aside.
- Unscrew the handwheel ③ in an anticlockwise direction (arrow).
- Remove the subwoofer carefully.

Removing the subwoofer Type 2 (Estate)

- Open the boot lid and raise the variable luggage compartment floor or fold it forwards.
- Unscrew the handwheel → Fig. 227 ① in an anticlockwise direction (arrow).
- To unlock the connector, press the catch on the end of the plug ②.
- Pull out the connector as shown by the arrow, and put the electric cable aside.
- Remove the subwoofer carefully.

Installing the subwoofer Type 1 (Saloon)

- Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim base. The tip of the arrow symbol "FRONT" on the subwoofer should face forwards.
- Insert connector → Fig. 226 ② until it audibly engages.
- Turn the handwheel ③ clockwise on the threaded pin until the subwoofer is secured.
- Unhook the floor covering and place it back on the luggage compartment floor.

Installing the subwoofer Type 2 (Saloon)

- Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim base. The tip of the arrow symbol "FRONT" → Fig. 227 ③ on the subwoofer should face forwards.
- Insert connector ② until the catch audibly engages.
- Turn the handwheel ① clockwise on the threaded pin until the subwoofer is secured.
- Unhook the floor covering and place it back on the luggage compartment floor.

Installing the subwoofer Type 1 (Estate)

- Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim base. The tip of the arrow symbol "FRONT" on the subwoofer should face forwards.
- Insert connector → Fig. 226 ② until it audibly engages.
- Turn the handwheel ③ clockwise on the threaded pin until the subwoofer is secured.
- Fold the variable luggage compartment floor back to its original position.

Installing the subwoofer Type 2 (Estate)

- Place the subwoofer carefully in the rim base. The tip of the arrow symbol "FRONT" → Fig. 227 ③ on the subwoofer should face forwards.
- Insert connector ② until the catch audibly engages.
- Turn the handwheel ① clockwise on the threaded pin until the subwoofer is secured.
- Fold the variable luggage compartment floor back to its original position. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Car-Net

Introduction

Information about the Volkswagen Car-Net services, applications, availability, compatible end devices and the service description are available on the Volkswagen website.

In order to be able to use Volkswagen Car-Net, the vehicle has to be ordered with Car-Net and factory-fitted with the system. Depending on the service, Volkswagen Car-Net can be operated via the factory-fitted infotainment system, a mobile device or via an online customer portal.

If a Volkswagen Car-Net service is activated for a vehicle, the person who has entered into the mobile telephone contract is obliged to provide information to each driver of the vehicle regarding the transmission and reception of data in the interest of data protection. Depending on which services are activated, any relevant information must also be given to the driver.

WARNING

Failure to observe the information in the service description can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Before using the Volkswagen Car-Net services, please read and observe the information in the service description. This will quickly help you to become familiar with the services and make you aware of potential risks to yourself and others, and how to avoid them.
- Always use the latest edition of the relevant service description.

WARNING

If mobile equipment is loose or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the vehicle interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident. This can cause injuries.

- While the vehicle is in motion, always secure mobile equipment properly outside the airbag deployment zone or stow them away safely.

WARNING

The display of information in the infotainment system, in the customer portal or on the mobile device may distract you from taking actions that are necessary to ensure safe driving. This can cause breakdowns in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.
- React to displayed information according to the case.
- Heed warning and indicator lamps that are lit up.

WARNING

Using computers and mobile devices in public or non-secured LAN and WLAN networks can lead to a loss of control over your Volkswagen Car-Net services.

- In addition to the usual precautionary measures to be taken when using the Internet, you should protect your computer and mobile device with suitable anti-virus software and regularly update its signatures.
- Please observe the generally recognised rules and information on the use of computers and mobile devices, and on the handling and creation of a secure password for accessing the customer portal.

WARNING

Applications and Volkswagen Car-Net services which are unsuitable or faulty or that are used incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, accidents or serious injury.

- Volkswagen recommends that you only use Volkswagen applications and Volkswagen Car-Net services for your vehicle.
- Protect the mobile terminal device and its applications from misuse.
- Never make changes to applications or Volkswagen Car-Net services.
- Observe the operating instructions for mobile equipment.

WARNING

Use of applications and Volkswagen Car-Net services while driving can distract you from the road. Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

NOTICE

Your mobile devices must always be switched off in areas where special regulations apply and when the use of mobile equipment is not permitted. The radiation emitted by these mobile devices when switched on could interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction of or damage to the equipment.

Volkswagen Car-Net services



Fig. 228 In the infotainment system: Car-Net function button.

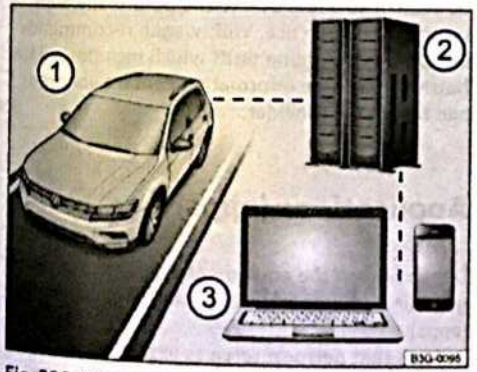


Fig. 229 Illustration: transfer of data and performance of functions.

Key to Fig. 229:

1. Car-Net-compatible vehicle with suitable infotainment system and connectivity.
2. Server that processes, prepares and forwards the data.
3. Performance of the services via computer or a mobile device.

Data transmission

Volkswagen Car-Net services can use a wireless connection to receive data online, forward vehicle data online and transmit additional information, new functions or extensions to existing vehicle functions. Volkswagen Car-Net offers the driver or user support functions based on vehicle data together with data obtained from the internet and IT systems.

The data for using the **Guide & Inform** services are transferred via your mobile device with data option or a SIM card[1)] with data option. For some services, your mobile device or your SIM card needs to support a specific data connection type, e.g. rSAP.

Data transmission for running **e-Remote** and **Security & Service** services relies on a factory-fitted control unit with an integrated SIM card with data option.

Availability

Volkswagen Car-Net services can be subject to a limited period or changed, set, deactivated, reactivated and expanded without prior notice.

Some Car-Net services include information from third parties, for example map displays. Volkswagen AG is not responsible for ensuring that external information is correct, up-to-date and complete, and that it does not violate the rights of third parties.

Volkswagen Car-Net services can be subject to region-specific limitations. Availability also depends on the mobile network coverage in each country.

Determining the current vehicle position

Some Volkswagen Car-Net services require the exact location of the vehicle in order to provide functions. In this case, the current vehicle position is transmitted either automatically or at the

1) Data transfer via the factory-fitted SIM card reader (if possible).

Scanned by CamScanner

driver's request. When automatic transmission is selected, the current location can also be transmitted at regular intervals.

Lending or selling the vehicle to others

When the vehicle is being sold or lent, the owner or rental/leasing firm must inform the purchasing or lending party about Volkswagen Car-Net services installed in the vehicle and their functions.

Interferences

The following points may cause the data transfer or a Volkswagen Car-Net service to be aborted or not to be performed:

- Areas with no or insufficient mobile and GPS reception,
- Maintenance, repairs, software updates and technical changes to your service provider's telecommunication networks and databases,
- Generation change of mobile phone systems by telecommunications providers, e.g. from 3G to 4G/LTE,
- Impairment or interruption to mobile and GPS reception, for example due to high speeds, weather, landscape, tunnels, garages, car parks, underpasses, interfering devices or intensive use of the mobile network in the relevant radio cells
- Information from third parties, for example map displays, are not available, are incomplete or incorrect
- In countries where Volkswagen Car-Net services are not available:
- A fault in the vehicle electrical system,
- Vehicle battery empty or voltage too low
- If the control unit or infotainment system performing the service is not working properly.

Exchanging your system

If the factory-fitted infotainment system or control unit is damaged or must be exchanged in a vehicle with Volkswagen Car-Net services installed, go to a qualified workshop. This may require registering or activating again.

User account on the customer portal

In order to use the e-Remote, Guide & Inform and Security & Service services in Car-Net-capable vehicles, you must create a user account at www.volkswagen.com/car-net and have an active Car-Net contract.

Service description

The functions of the e-Remote, Guide & Inform and Security & Service services are each explained in a separate service description. These service descriptions and additional information about all services and Car-Net-capable vehicles are available online at www.volkswagen.com/car-net and on the relevant customer portal once a user account has been set up.

All service descriptions are updated from time to time and made available on the customer portal. Always use the latest edition of the relevant service description.

Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits and uses personal data entered by the user within the framework of legal regulations for the purpose of smooth functioning of individual Volkswagen Car-Net services and their provision. Data is not forwarded to third parties. Current terms of use can be found at www.volkswagen.com/car-net.

Volkswagen Car-Net services is a system based on a mobile network. If a fault arises despite the fact that all requirements have been fulfilled, please try using the services again at a later stage.

The use of Volkswagen Car-Net and the necessary mobile network connection may be subject to a fee. Due to the potentially high volume of data in use, Volkswagen recommends using a mobile phone tariff which includes a data flatrate. For more information contact your mobile telephone provider. ◁

Applications (apps)

Depending on the equipment available, Volkswagen Car-Net supports two types of applications (apps):

- Apps that perform services in the vehicle and provide information, such as the Volkswagen Car-Net e-Remote app,
- Apps which are transmitted to the Infotainment system screen, for example using the Volkswagen Car-Net App-Connect function.

Applications, their use and the necessary mobile network connection may be subject to charges. ▶

A wide range of applications may be available and they can be vehicle-specific and country-specific → ⓘ. Content, range and provider of applications can vary. Some applications also depend on availability of services offered by third parties. A mobile network with sufficient signal strength for exchange of data must be available for the use of applications.

Due to the high number of mobile devices and the fast pace of software development, the applications on offer cannot be operated on all mobile devices and their operating systems. This can also apply to mobile devices of the same type, for example due to a new version of the operating system.

Applications can be changed, set, deactivated, reactivated and expanded without prior notice.

NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by poor quality or faulty applications, insufficient programming of applications, insufficient network strength or loss of data during transmission or by misuse of the mobile equipment. ◁

Transporting items

Stowing luggage

Heavy items must always be stowed securely in the luggage compartment and you must ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings to secure heavy items. Never exceed the vehicle's maximum payload. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance → ▲.

Always stow all items of luggage in the vehicle securely.

- Distribute loads in the vehicle, on the roof and on the trailer → page 299 as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible. Position the rear seat backrests securely.
- Secure luggage in the luggage compartment to the fastening rings with suitable straps → page 288.
- Adjust the headlight range → page 126.
- Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Adhere to the tyre pressure plate → page 369.
- In vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, set the new vehicle load level as necessary → page 369.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior. Please observe the following rules to reduce the risk of accidents:

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from entering the deployment zones of the side airbag or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Objects should be stowed in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- All objects must be removed from the seat cushion of the front passenger seat if the front passenger backrest is folded forward. Even small and light objects could be pressed into the weight detection mat underneath the seat cushion by the backrest when it is folded forwards and thus send incorrect information to the airbag control units.
- The front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp will light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- Stowed objects must never cause passengers to assume an incorrect sitting position.
- If an item is being stowed on a seat, this seat must not be used by any passengers.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the surface behind the rear seat backrest or on the dash panel.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely.

WARNING

The vehicle handling and braking effect may alter significantly if large or heavy objects are being transported.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than you normally would.

WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and increases the braking distance. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and can cause serious injury.

- Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and the centre of gravity.
- The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle.
- Always secure heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far in front of the rear axle as possible.

NOTICE

Hard objects could rub against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Observe any information concerning the loading of a trailer → page 299 and a roof carrier → page 296.

Always ensure that the ventilation openings between the rear window and the area behind the rear seat backrest are uncovered to allow stale air to escape from the vehicle.

Luggage compartment cover (Estate)

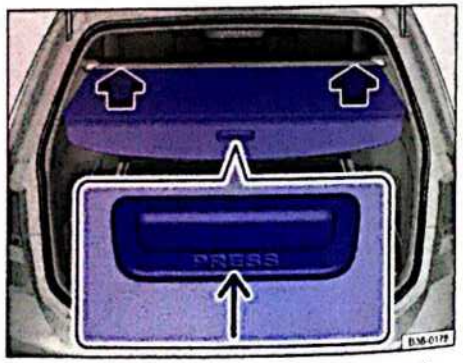


Fig. 230 In the luggage compartment: closed luggage compartment cover.

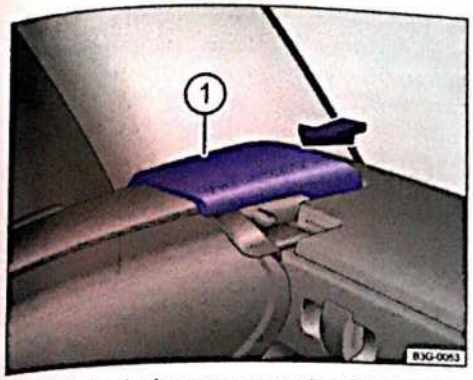


Fig. 231 In the luggage compartment: removing the luggage compartment cover.

Opening the luggage compartment cover

- Press the front part → Fig. 230 (small arrow) of the luggage compartment cover. The luggage compartment cover will then open automatically to the centre of the luggage compartment.
- Press the front part of the luggage compartment cover again to open it completely.

Opening the luggage compartment cover in vehicles with boot lid with electric opening and closing

- Open the boot lid → page 102 and the luggage compartment cover will then open automatically to the centre of the luggage compartment.
- Press the front part of the luggage compartment cover to open it completely.

Automatic luggage compartment opening can be deactivated by pressing the CAR button and the and Settings for opening/closing function buttons in the infotainment system → page 78.

Closing the luggage compartment cover

- Pull the rolled up luggage compartment cover evenly towards the rear.
- Hook the ends of the rod into the openings on the left and the right of the side trim → Fig. 230.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

- Open the luggage compartment.
- Press and hold the end cap of the luggage compartment cover → Fig. 231 ① in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the luggage compartment cover towards the top.
- Let go of the luggage compartment cover end cap → Fig. 231 ①.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, it may be possible to store the removed luggage compartment cover in a stowage area beneath the luggage compartment floor → page 285.

Installing the luggage compartment cover

- Position the luggage compartment cover in the left mounting in the side trim.
- Press and hold the end cap of the luggage compartment cover → Fig. 231 ① in the direction of the arrow.
- Position the luggage compartment cover into the right-hand mounting as shown → Fig. 231.
- Let go of the luggage compartment cover end cap → Fig. 231 ①.
- Check that the luggage compartment cover has engaged correctly.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured or secured incorrectly or animals on the luggage compartment cover may cause severe injuries in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres or accidents.

- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp items on the luggage compartment cover, neither loosely, nor in bags.
- Do not transport animals on the luggage compartment cover.

Scanned by CamScanner

Luggage compartment floor

Luggage compartment floor (Saloon)

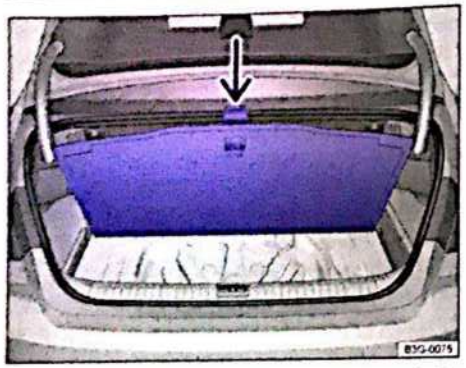


Fig. 232 In the luggage compartment: installed luggage compartment floor.

You can hook in the luggage compartment floor to the top edge of the luggage compartment to gain better access to the area below the luggage compartment floor:

- Fold the luggage compartment floor handle upwards.
- Hook in the luggage compartment cover into the seal at the upper edge of the luggage compartment using the handle integrated in the hook → Fig. 232 (arrow).

The following vehicle equipment may be stowed under the luggage compartment floor:

- Vehicle tool kit → page 327.
- Breakdown set → page 396.
- Spare wheel → page 369.
- Subwoofer → page 274.

Volkswagen recommends that you secure items to the fastening rings using securing straps.

Luggage compartment floor (Estate)

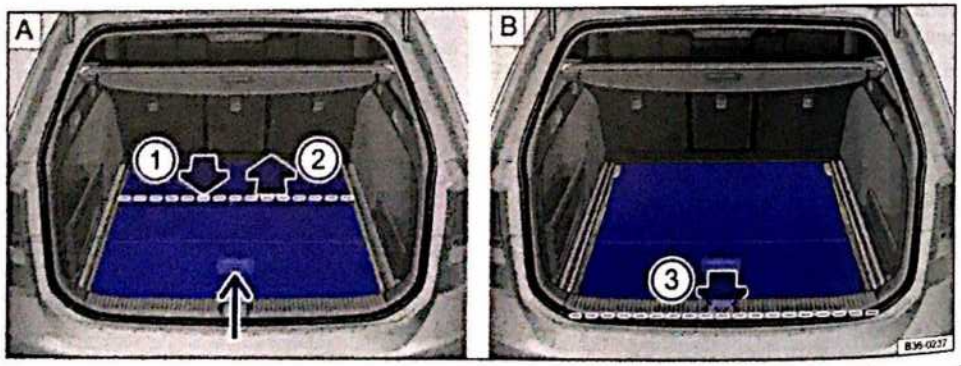


Fig. 233 In the luggage compartment: lowering the luggage compartment floor.

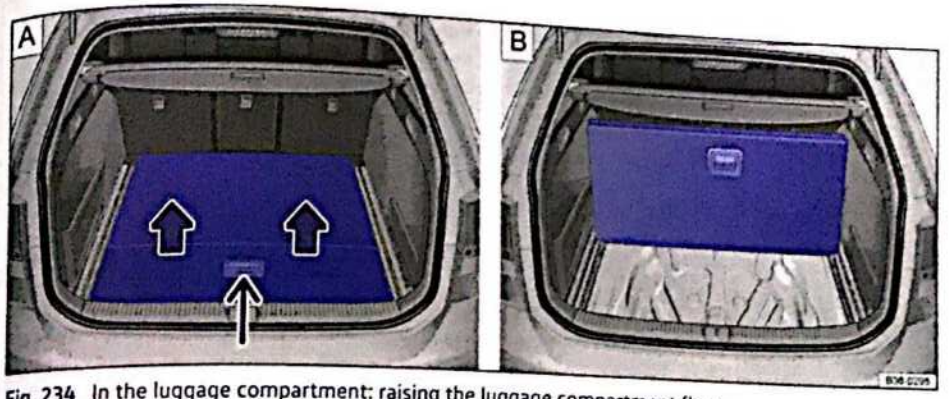


Fig. 234 In the luggage compartment: raising the luggage compartment floor.

The luggage compartment floor can be lowered, raised and folded.

The following vehicle equipment may be stowed under the luggage compartment floor:

- Vehicle tool kit → page 327.
- Breakdown set → page 396.
- Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel → page 369.
- Subwoofer → page 274.

Lowering the luggage compartment floor

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the luggage compartment floor can be lowered in order to store larger items in the luggage compartment.

- Open the boot lid.
- Lift and tilt the luggage compartment floor using the handle → Fig. 233 A (small arrow).
- Pull the luggage compartment floor in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 233 A 1 over the loading edge up to approximately the dotted line. In this process, the front part of the luggage compartment floor must fold down.
- Push the luggage compartment floor in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 233 A 2 as far as it will go. The luggage compartment floor is now in the lowered position.
- Pull the luggage compartment floor in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 233 B 3 up to the loading edge as far as it will go.

Raising or folding the luggage compartment floor

Items can be transported between the raised luggage compartment floor and the rear seat backrest.

- Open the boot lid.
- Lift the handle on the luggage compartment floor → Fig. 234 A (small arrow) and raise it as shown → Fig. 234 B.
- To fold the luggage compartment floor, press the raised floor forwards → Fig. 234 B until it remains in the folded position.

WARNING

In the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, objects may be thrown through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Objects must be secured even when the luggage compartment floor is correctly raised.
- Only store items between the rear bench seat and the luggage compartment floor up to a maximum of 2/3 of the raised luggage compartment floor height.
- Items stored between the rear bench seat and the raised luggage compartment floor must not exceed 7.5 kg.

Volkswagen recommends that you secure items to the fastening rings using securing straps.

Scanned by CamScanner

Dividable luggage compartment floor (Estate)

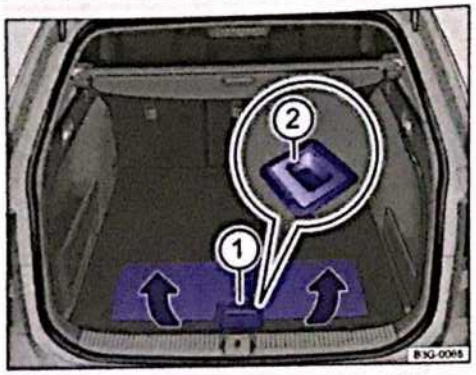


Fig. 235 In the luggage compartment: dividable luggage compartment floor.

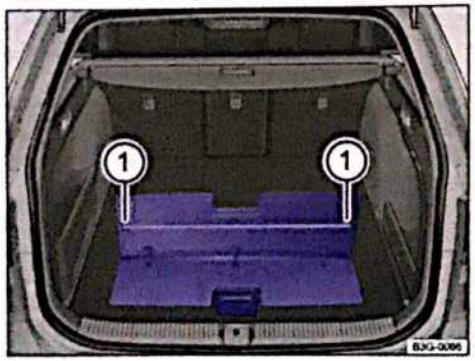


Fig. 236 In the luggage compartment: dividable luggage compartment floor.

The luggage compartment can be split into 2 parts using the dividable luggage compartment floor.

Raising the dividable luggage compartment floor

- Open the boot lid → page 102.
- Grab the handle recess → Fig. 235 ① of the dividable luggage compartment floor and lift it in the direction of the arrow until it is vertical.
- Ensure that the handle in the luggage compartment floor ② engages correctly.
- Close the boot lid if it is open.

Folding down the dividable luggage compartment floor

- Open the boot lid → page 102.
- Fold down the raised luggage compartment floor against the direction of the arrow → Fig. 235.
- Close the boot lid if it is open.

There is a retaining strap for securing small items on the side of the dividable luggage compartment floor facing the loading edge.

WARNING

In the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, objects may be thrown through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Objects must be secured even when the luggage compartment floor is correctly set up.

The handle on the dividable luggage compartment floor has a locking function. ◁

Sliding luggage compartment floor (Estate)

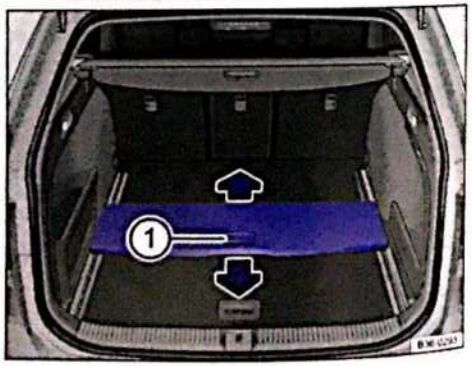


Fig. 237 In the luggage compartment: sliding luggage compartment floor. ▷

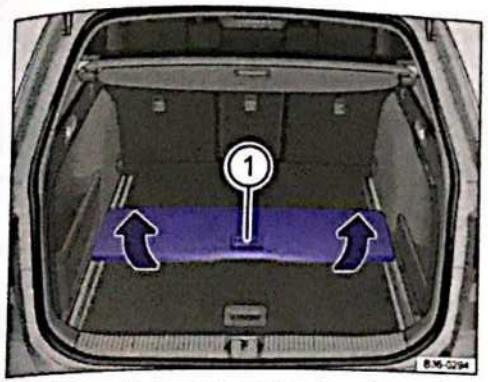


Fig. 238 In the luggage compartment: removing the sliding luggage compartment floor.

The sliding luggage compartment floor makes it easier to move heavy objects within the luggage compartment.

Sliding the luggage compartment floor

- Open the boot lid → page 102.
- Press and hold the button on the handle → Fig. 237 ① and push or pull the luggage compartment floor along the rails → Fig. 237.
- Close the boot lid if it is open.

Removing the sliding luggage compartment floor

- Open the boot lid → page 102.
- Press and hold the button on the handle → Fig. 238 ① and use the handle to lift the sliding luggage compartment floor upwards from the rails in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 238.
- Close the boot lid if it is open.

Installing the sliding luggage compartment floor

- Open the boot lid → page 102.
- With the handle facing the loading edge, place the sliding luggage compartment floor onto the rails and simultaneously press and hold the button on the handle → Fig. 238 ① until the sliding luggage compartment floor is positioned correctly on the rails.
- Check whether the sliding luggage compartment floor can be moved easily along the rails when the button on the handle is pressed.
- Close the boot lid if it is open.

WARNING

In the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, objects may be thrown through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Objects on the sliding luggage compartment floor must be secured.
- Do not transport any adults or children on the sliding luggage compartment floor. ◁

Stowing the luggage compartment cover and net partition (Estate)

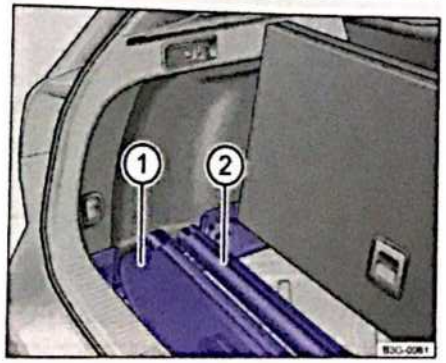


Fig. 239 Beneath the luggage compartment floor: stowing the luggage compartment cover and net partition.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the removed luggage compartment cover and the removed net partition can be stowed beneath the luggage compartment floor as follows:

- Remove the luggage net if necessary → page 289.
- Raise the luggage compartment floor or fold it forwards → page 282.
- If necessary, lift out the side walls of the side stowage compartments and store them securely.
- Position the removed luggage compartment cover → Fig. 239 ① on the rear recesses of the side supports as shown.
- Position the removed luggage compartment cover → Fig. 239 ②, on the front recesses of the side supports as shown.
- Close the luggage compartment floor → page 282. ▷

Scanned by CamScanner

In vehicles with spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, the removed net partition must be rotated horizontally by 180° before it can be stored.

Net partition

Using the net partition with the rear seat backrests folded forwards (Estate)

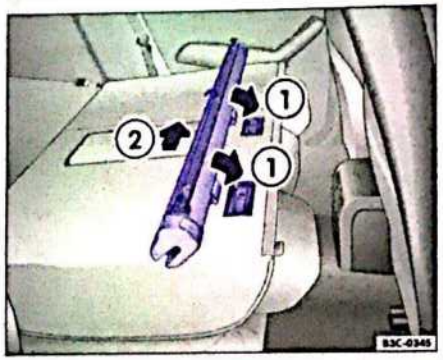


Fig. 240 Install the net partition to the rear seat backrests.

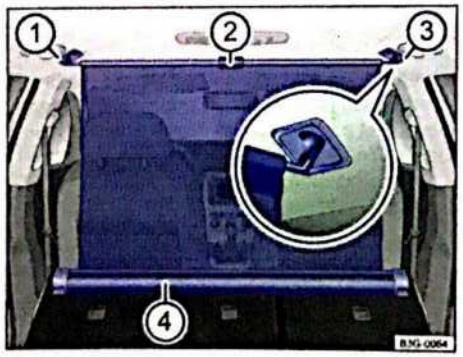


Fig. 241 In the luggage compartment: net partition installed when rear seat backrests are folded forwards.

Only fold the rear seat backrest back after the net partition has been removed.

Installing the net partition

- Open the rear right door.
- Fold the rear seat backrests forwards → page 123.
- Remove the net partition from the side holders → page 287.
- Install the net partition housing in the recesses of the retaining rails → Fig. 240 ①.
- Push the net partition housing towards the left side of the vehicle as far as it will go → Fig. 240 ②.
- Check that the net partition housing is properly secured.

Hooking in the net partition

- Pull out the net partition with the tab → Fig. 241 ② from the housing → Fig. 241 ④ towards the top.
- Hook in the net partition on the right-hand side → Fig. 241 ③ (close-up).
- Hook the left side of the net partition into the holder → Fig. 241 ① by pressing the rod together.

The net partition has been installed correctly when the T-shaped ends are engaged securely in the corresponding mountings → Fig. 241 ③ and ①.

Retracting the net partition

- Remove the transverse rod from the mounting frames in the roof side member trim.
- Guide the net partition fully down into the housing → Fig. 241 ④ by hand.

Removing the net partition

- Open the rear right door.
- Pull out the net partition housing by about 5 cm in the opposite direction of the arrow → Fig. 240 ②.
- Remove the net partition housing from of the retaining rails → Fig. 240 ①.
- Fold the rear seat backrests back again → page 123.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the removed net partition can be stowed beneath the variable luggage compartment floor → page 285.

WARNING

In the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, objects may be thrown through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Objects must be secured even when the net partition is correctly fitted.
- No passengers must travel behind the installed net partition while the vehicle is moving.

NOTICE

Improper operation may cause damage.

- If the net partition is allowed to "snap" down, the net partition and other vehicle parts may be damaged. Guide the net partition fully downwards by hand.

Using the net partition behind the rear bench seat (Estate)

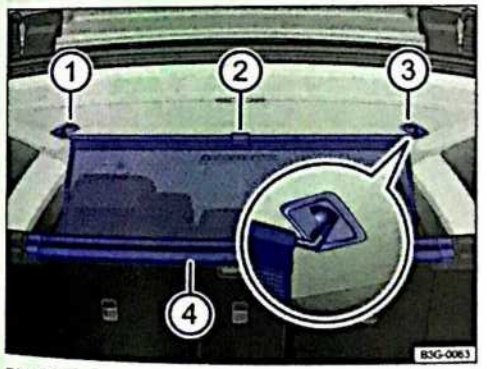


Fig. 242 In the luggage compartment: hooking in the net partition.

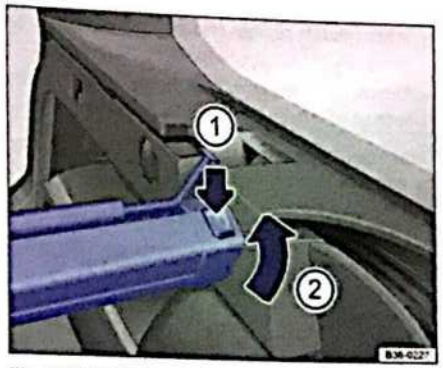


Fig. 243 In the luggage compartment: removing the net partition.

The net partition prevents loose objects from being propelled from the luggage compartment into the passenger compartment, e.g. during sudden braking manoeuvres.

Hooking in the net partition

- Pull the net partition upwards out of the housing → Fig. 242 ④ using the tab → Fig. 242 ②.
- Hook in the net partition on the right-hand side → Fig. 242 ③ (close-up).
- Hook the left side of the net partition into the holder → Fig. 242 ① by pressing the rod together.

The net partition has been installed correctly when the T-shaped ends are engaged securely in the corresponding mountings → Fig. 242 ③ and ①.

Retracting the net partition

- Unhook the rod from the holders → Fig. 242 ③ and ①.
- Guide the net partition fully down into the housing → Fig. 242 ④ by hand.

Removing the net partition

The net partition can be removed from the passenger compartment or from the luggage compartment.

- To remove the net partition from the passenger compartment, fold the rear seat backrests forwards → page 123.
- **OR:** to remove the net partition from the luggage compartment, remove the luggage compartment cover → page 280.

Scanned by CamScanner

– Press the left or right release button → Fig. 243 ① in the direction of the arrow.
– Remove the housing from the holder in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 243 ②.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, it may be possible to store the removed net partition in a stowage area beneath the luggage compartment floor → page 285.

Installing the net partition

The net partition can be installed from the passenger compartment or from the luggage compartment.

– To install the net partition from the passenger compartment, fold the rear seat backrests forwards → page 123.
– **OR:** to install the net partition from the luggage compartment, remove the luggage compartment cover → page 280.
– Position the housing in the holders on the left and right.
– Push the housing into the holders on the left and right in the opposite direction of the arrow → Fig. 243 ②. The housing will engage.

The red markings on the release buttons → Fig. 243 ① must no longer be visible.

WARNING

- Objects must be secured even when the net partition is correctly fitted.
- No passengers must travel behind the installed net partition while the vehicle is moving.

NOTICE

Improper operation may cause damage.

- If the net partition is allowed to "snap" down, the net partition and other vehicle parts may be damaged. Guide the net partition fully downwards by hand.

Luggage compartment equipment

Side stowage areas

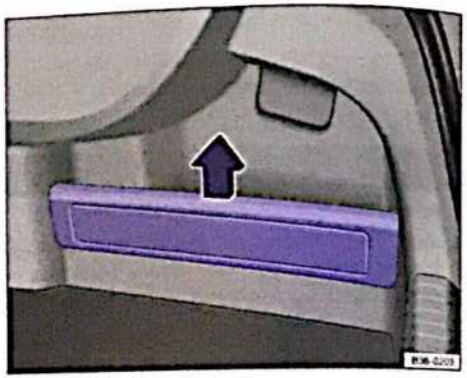


Fig. 244 In the luggage compartment: side stowage compartment (Saloon).

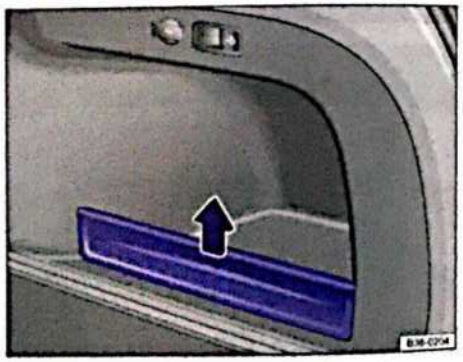


Fig. 245 In the luggage compartment: side stowage compartment (Estate).

Stowage compartments are located in the sides of the luggage compartment. The side walls can be removed by pulling them up and out in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 244 or → Fig. 245. This enables you to stow larger items in the luggage compartment.

Luggage net (Saloon)

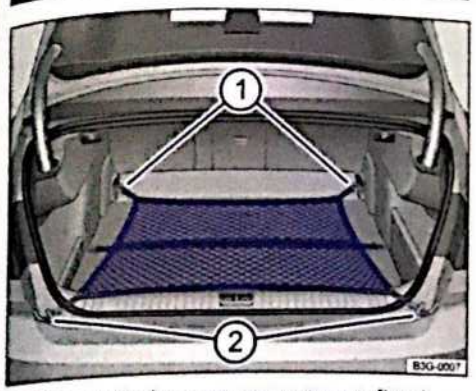


Fig. 246 In the luggage compartment: fitted luggage net.

The luggage net can help to prevent light items of luggage from sliding around in the luggage compartment. The luggage net also has a built-in pocket with a zip that can hold smaller items.

Hooking the luggage net flat on the luggage compartment floor

– Hook the luggage net hooks into the fastening rings on the rear seat backrest → Fig. 246 ①. The luggage net zip must face upwards → ▲.
– Attach the hooks on the other end of the luggage net to the fastening rings on the loading edge → Fig. 246 ②.

Removing the luggage net

The fitted luggage net is held under tension → ▲.

– Remove the hooks and loops of the luggage compartment net from the fastening rings.
– Store the luggage net in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

The elastic luggage net must be stretched when it is secured to the fastening rings in the luggage compartment. When fitted, the luggage net is under tension. The luggage net hooks can cause injuries if the luggage net is installed or removed incorrectly.

- Always hold the luggage net hooks tightly to prevent them from falling out of the ring during installation or removal.
- Protect your eyes and face to avoid injuries from any hooks that may spring out during installation or removal.
- Always attach the luggage net hooks in the order described. There is a risk of injury if one of the hooks on the luggage net snaps back.

Luggage net (Estate)

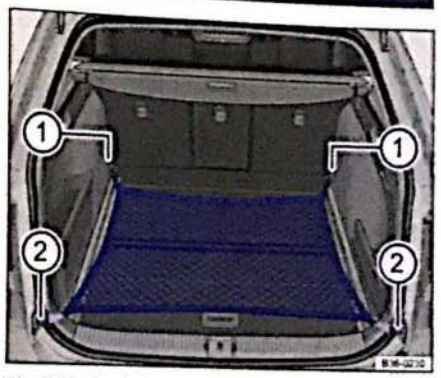


Fig. 247 In the luggage compartment: luggage net installed flat.

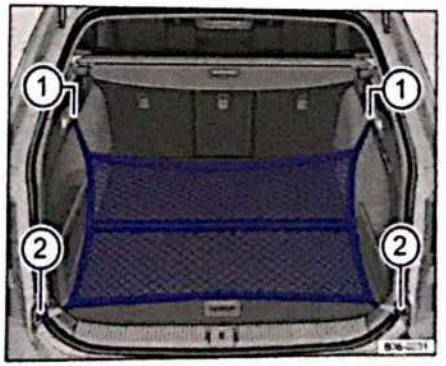


Fig. 248 In the luggage compartment: luggage net hooked onto the loading edge.

The luggage net can help to prevent light items of luggage from sliding around in the luggage compartment. The luggage net also has a built-in pocket with a zip that can hold smaller items.

There are different options to secure the luggage net in the luggage compartment.

Scanned by CamScanner

Hooking the luggage net flat on the luggage compartment floor

- Hook the luggage net onto the fastening rings → Fig. 247 ①. The luggage net zip must face upwards.
- Hook the luggage net onto the fastening rings → Fig. 247 ②.

Hooking in the luggage net on the loading edge

- Hook the rings on the centre luggage net straps onto the bag hooks → Fig. 248 ①. The luggage net zip must face upwards.
- Hook in the hooks on the fastening rings → Fig. 248 ②.

Removing the luggage net

When installed, the luggage net is subject to tension → ▲.

- Remove the hooks and loops of the luggage compartment net from the fastening rings or bag hooks.
- Store the luggage net in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

The elastic luggage net must be stretched when it is secured to the fastening rings in the luggage compartment. When fitted, the luggage net is under tension. The luggage net hooks can cause injuries if the luggage net is installed or removed incorrectly.

- Always hold the luggage net hooks tightly to prevent them from falling out of the ring during installation or removal.
- Protect your eyes and face to avoid injuries from any hooks that may spring out during installation or removal.
- Always attach the luggage net hooks in the order described. There is a risk of injury if one of the hooks on the luggage net snaps back.

◁

Fastening rings (Saloon)



Fig. 249 In the luggage compartment: fastening rings.

You will find fastening rings at the front and rear of the luggage compartment which can be used to secure loose items and luggage → Fig. 249 (arrow).

The front fastening rings must be folded out before they can be used.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tensioning cables or securing straps or may rip in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This may cause objects to be propelled through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged tensioning cables and securing straps.
- Securely attach tensioning cables and securing straps to the fastening rings.
- Loose objects in the luggage compartment may suddenly slide and change the way the vehicle handles.
- Also secure small and light objects.
- Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the fastening rings when securing objects.
- Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.

The maximum load rating of the fastening rings is approximately 3.5 kN.

Suitable tensioning straps and luggage stowage systems are available from a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. ◁

Fastening rings (Estate)

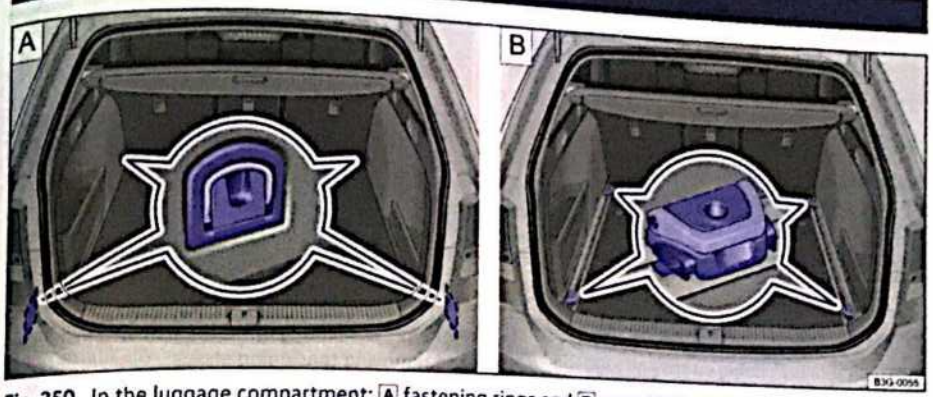


Fig. 250 In the luggage compartment: A fastening rings and B movable fastening rings

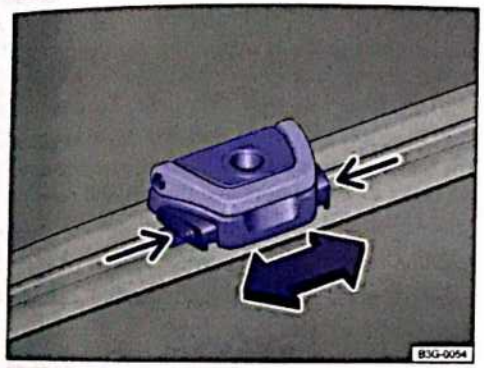


Fig. 251 In the luggage compartment: adjusting and removing the fastening rings.

You will find fastening rings at the front and rear of the luggage compartment which can be used to secure loose items and luggage → Fig. 250 A (close-up)/→ Fig. 250 B (close-up).

The fastening rings must be folded out before they can be used.

Movable fastening rings → Fig. 250 B can be moved to convenient positions for securing different pieces of luggage on guide rails.

Installing movable fastening rings

Also note the assembly instructions in the cover of the bag provided.

- If required, remove the fastening ring from the bag provided.
- Press and hold the buttons on the fastening ring → Fig. 251 (small arrows) simultaneously.
- Place the fastening ring in the desired position on the rail as shown → Fig. 251 and release the buttons.

Moving movable fastening rings

- Press and hold the buttons on the fastening ring → Fig. 251 (small arrows) simultaneously.
- Slide the fastening ring in the desired direction → Fig. 251 and then release the buttons in the required position.
- Ensure that the fastening ring engages securely in the guide rail system.

Removing the movable fastening rings

- Press and hold the buttons on the fastening ring → Fig. 251 (small arrows) simultaneously.
- Remove the fastening ring from the rail and stow it in the bag provided.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tensioning cables or securing straps or may rip in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This may cause objects to be propelled through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged tensioning cables and securing straps. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Securely attach tensioning cables and securing straps to the fastening rings.
- Loose objects in the luggage compartment may suddenly slide and change the way the vehicle handles.
- Also secure small and light objects.
- Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the fastening rings when securing objects.
- Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.

The maximum load rating of the fastening rings is approximately 3.5 kN.

Suitable tensioning straps and luggage stowage systems are available from a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. ◁

Tensioning strap (Estate)

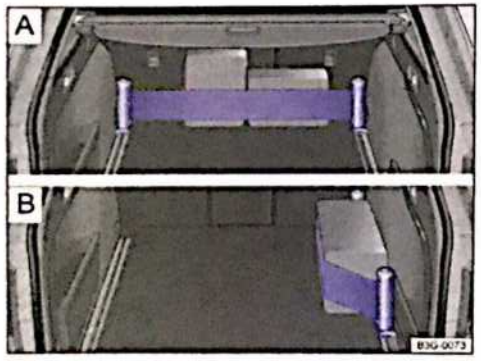


Fig. 252 In the luggage compartment: A tensioning strap attached to 2 rails. B Tensioning strap attached to one rail.

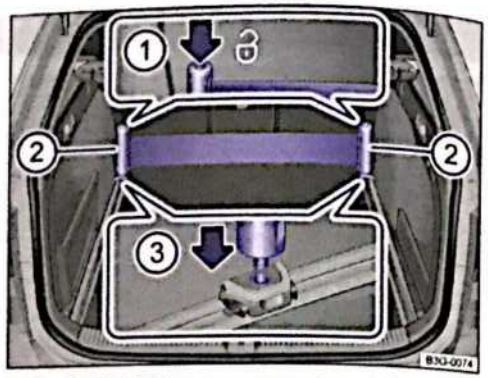


Fig. 253 In the luggage compartment: installing and removing tensioning straps.

The tensioning strap can be used to secure loose items along the guide rail system.

The tensioning strap is secured to the sliding fastening rings → page 291. The tensioning strap must be secured between two sliding fastening rings.

The tensioning strap can be attached on a single rail → Fig. 252 B or between the left and right sides of the guide rail system → Fig. 252 A.

Installing the tensioning strap

Also note the assembly instructions in the cover of the bag provided.

- Move the sliding fastening rings to the required position on the guide rail system.
- Remove the tensioning strap from the bag provided.
- Hold the tensioning strap holder → Fig. 253 ② with both hands and press and hold both buttons on the tensioning strap → Fig. 253 ①.
- Pull the tensioning strap to the required width.
- Insert the tensioning strap holder into the recess of the relevant sliding fastening ring → Fig. 253 ③ and engage.
- Release the tensioning strap buttons → Fig. 253 ①.
- If required, readjust the sliding fastening rings with the tensioning strap on the guide rail.
- Place the item you wish to restrain behind the tensioning strap.
- Press the buttons on the tensioning strap → Fig. 253 ① to tighten the strap. ▶

Removing the tensioning strap

Always remove both tensioning strap holders → Fig. 253 ② one after the other.

- Press and hold the relevant button on the tensioning strap → Fig. 253 ①.
- Pull the holder → Fig. 253 ② up and out of the sliding fastening ring.
- Repeat the procedure for the second holder.
- Hold the tensioning strap holder → Fig. 253 ② with both hands and press and hold both buttons on the tensioning strap → Fig. 253 ①.
- Slowly join both tensioning strap holders → Fig. 253 ②. The tensioning strap rolls up automatically.
- Release the tensioning strap buttons → Fig. 253 ①.
- Place the tensioning strap in the bag provided.

WARNING

In the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, objects may be thrown through the vehicle interior and cause severe or fatal injuries.

- The rear seat backrest must be securely engaged → page 123.
- The holders must be securely engaged. ◁

Bag hook (Saloon)



Fig. 254 In the luggage compartment: bag hook.

There may be a bag hook on the upper right-hand side of the luggage compartment for hanging up light shopping bags.

- Pull the bag hook down by the loop → Fig. 254.
- Hang up the bag.

WARNING

Never use the bag hooks as fastening rings for straps. The bag hook could break off during a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

NOTICE

Do not load the bag hook with more than 2.5 kg. ◁

Bag hook (Estate)



Fig. 255 In the luggage compartment: front bag hook.



Fig. 256 In the luggage compartment: rear bag hook.

Light shopping bags can be secured to the bag hooks in the luggage compartment. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Front bag hooks

Folding bag hooks are located on the left and right in the front area of the luggage compartment → Fig. 255.

To *fold down*, pull the bag hook in the direction of the arrow.

To *fold away*, press the bag hook against the direction of the arrow.

Rear bag hooks

Fixed bag hooks are located on the left and right in the rear area of the luggage compartment → Fig. 256.

WARNING

Do not use the bag hooks as fastening rings for straps. The bag hook could break off during a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

NOTICE

Do not load each bag hook with more than 2.5 kg.

Load-through hatch (Saloon)

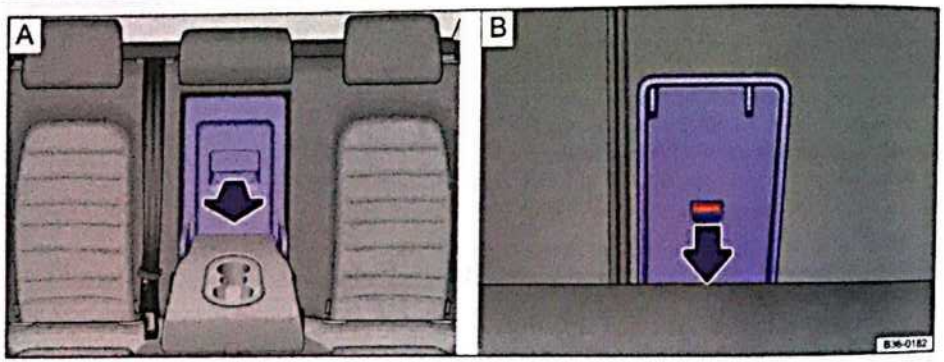


Fig. 257 In the rear seat backrest: A opening the load-through hatch from the interior. B opening the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment.

A load-through hatch is located in the centre of the rear seat backrest. It can be used to transport long objects in the vehicle interior, such as skis.

To prevent soiling the vehicle interior use an item such as a blanket to wrap any dirty objects before pushing them through the load-through hatch.

Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat to transport passengers when the centre armrest is folded down.

Opening the load-through hatch

- Fold the centre armrest forwards → page 7.
- Opening from inside the vehicle: pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 257 A and fold the cover of the load-through hatch all the way down.
- **OR:** opening the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment: push the release lever down in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 257 B and fold the cover of the load-through hatch down.
- Open the boot lid.
- Push the long objects through the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment.
- Secure the objects with the seat belt as required.
- Close the boot lid.

Closing the load-through hatch

- Fold back the cover to the load-through hatch until it clicks into place. The red marking on the luggage compartment side should no longer be visible.
- Close the boot lid.
- If necessary, fold back the centre armrest.

WARNING

Severe injuries may be caused if the load-through hatch is folded forwards or backwards carelessly.

- Never fold the load-through hatch forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the load-through hatch.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat area when folding the load-through hatch forwards and backwards.
- The load-through hatch has not been secured properly if the red marking can still be seen on the locking indicator → Fig. 257 B. Always ensure that the red marking is never visible when the load-through hatch is in the upright position.
- Passengers (children in particular) must not use this seat if the load-through hatch is folded forward or is not clicked securely into place.

The load-through hatch can be locked and unlocked using the spare key, if required.

Load-through hatch (Estate)

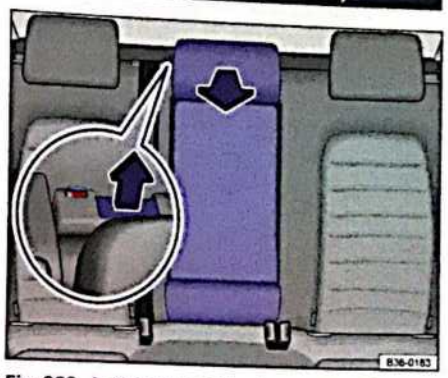


Fig. 258 In the rear seat backrest: open the load-through hatch.

A load-through hatch is located in the centre of the rear seat backrest. It can be used to transport long objects in the vehicle interior, such as skis.

To prevent soiling the vehicle interior use an item such as a blanket to wrap any dirty objects before pushing them through the load-through hatch.

Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat for passengers when the load-through hatch is folded down.

Opening the load-through hatch

- Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover of the load-through hatch → Fig. 258 all the way towards the front.
- Open the boot lid.
- Push the long objects through the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment.
- Secure the objects with the seat belt as required.
- Close the boot lid.

Closing the load-through hatch

- Fold back the load-through hatch and push it firmly into the catch until it securely engages →▲.
- The red marking on the locking indicator → Fig. 258 (close-up) must no longer be visible.

Scanned by CamScanner

WARNING

Severe injuries may be caused if the load-through hatch is folded forwards or backwards carelessly.

- Never fold the load-through hatch forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the load-through hatch.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat area when folding the load-through hatch forwards and backwards.
- The load-through hatch has not been secured properly if the red marking is still visible on the locking indicator → Fig. 258 (close-up). Always ensure that the red marking is never visible when the load-through hatch is in the upright position.
- Passengers (children in particular) must not use this seat if the load-through hatch is folded forward or is not clicked securely into place.

Roof carrier

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Attaching the mounts and load carrier system (Saloon) 297
- Attaching the roof bars and load carrier system (Estate) 297
- Loading the load carrier system 298

Roof carriers can be used to transport bulky items on the roof of the vehicle.

The roof of the vehicle has been designed for optimum aerodynamic effect. Conventional mounts/roof bars and load carrier systems can therefore no longer be attached to a rain channel.

As the rain channels have been integrated into the roof for better aerodynamics, exclusively mounts, roof bars and load carrier systems approved by Volkswagen can be used.

When must the mounts or roof bars and the load carrier system be removed?

- When they are no longer being used.
- When the vehicle is driving through a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the required clearance height, e.g. in a garage.

WARNING

When transporting heavy or bulky objects in the load carrier system, the way the vehicle handles will change due to a shift in the centre of gravity and increased susceptibility to cross-winds.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle aerodynamics, centre of gravity and overall handling.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

NOTICE

- Always remove the mounts or roof bars and load carrier system before driving through a car wash.
- The height of the vehicle changes as a result of installing mounts, roof bars, a load carrier system and the load secured to it. Check and compare the height of the vehicle with clearance heights, e.g. for underpasses and garage doors.
- Make sure that the mounts, roof bars and load carrier system as well as the attached load do not damage the roof aerial or obstruct operation of the glass roof and boot lid.
- When opening the boot lid, take care not to let it hit the roof load.

Driving with installed mounts, roof bars and load carrier systems will increase drag and thus also the fuel consumption.

Attaching the mounts and load carrier system (Saloon)



Fig. 259 Below the front and rear door seals: securing points for mounts.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 296.

In the *Saloon* the mounts serve as basis for special load carrier systems. Special load carriers must then be added to transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surfboards or boats safely. Suitable accessories are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

Attaching the mounts and load carrier system

Mounts and load carriers must always be attached correctly. Always observe the assembly instructions supplied with the load carrier system and mounts.

The attaching holes for the mounts are on the underside of the roof side members. They are visible only when the door is open → Fig. 259.

After fitting the mounts properly as per the instructions provided, the load carrier can be attached to the mount.

WARNING

Incorrectly attaching and using the mounts and load carrier could cause the whole system to fall off the roof. This could cause accidents and injuries.

- Always observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Use mounts and load carriers only when they are undamaged and fitted correctly.
- The mounts may only be attached at the markings shown in the illustration → Fig. 259.
- Always fit mounts and load carriers correctly.
- Check the bolts and anchorage points before starting your journey and adjust as necessary after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolted connections and anchorage points at each stop.
- Special load carriers for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. must always be installed correctly.
- Do not carry out any changes or repairs to the mounts or the load carrier system.

Read and observe the fitting instructions for the mounts and the load carrier system provided and always carry the instructions in the vehicle.

Attaching the roof bars and load carrier system (Estate)

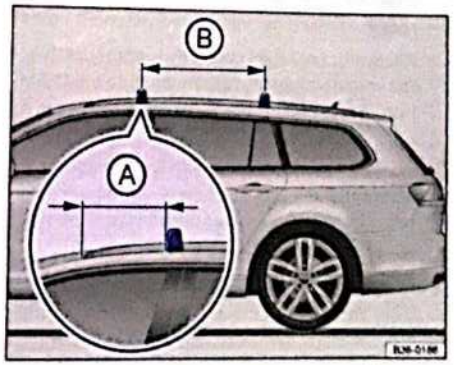


Fig. 260 Roof railing: attaching the roof bars.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 296.

In the *Estate* the roof bars serve as the basis for special load carrier systems. Special load carriers must then be added to transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surfboards or boats safely. Suitable accessories are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

Scanned by CamScanner

Attaching the roof bars and load carrier system

Roof bars and load carriers must always be attached correctly. You must observe the assembly instructions enclosed with the roof carrier system.

The roof bars are attached to the roof railing. In this process, the distance between the front roof bar and the front foot of the roof railing → Fig. 260 Ⓐ must be **39 cm**. The distance between the roof bars Ⓑ must be around **75.5 cm**.

After having installed the roof bars as per the assembly instructions provided, the corresponding carrier system can be attached to the mounts.

⚠ WARNING

If the roof bars and load carrier system are attached or used incorrectly, the entire system may detach from the roof, thus causing accidents and injuries.

- Always observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use roof bars and load carrier systems when they are undamaged and fitted correctly.
- Always fit roof bars correctly. Comply with the minimum distances shown in the illustration → Fig. 260.
- Check the bolts and anchorage points before starting your journey and adjust as necessary after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolted connections and anchorage points at each stop.
- Special load carriers for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. must always be installed correctly.
- Do not carry out any changes or repairs to the roof bars or the load carrier system.

Read and observe the assembly instructions for the roof bars and the load carrier system provided and always carry the instructions in the vehicle. ◁

Loading the load carrier system

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 296.

Loads can be attached securely only when the mounts, roof bars and load carrier system are fitted correctly → ⚠.

Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is **100 kg**. The roof load comprises of the combined weight of the load carrier system, the mounts/roof bars and the load carried on the roof → ⚠.

Always confirm the weight of the load carrier, mounts/roof bars and the items you would like to transport on the roof and weigh the components if necessary. Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.

However, if you are using mounts/roof bars and load carrier systems with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the load carrier system which is listed in the fitting instructions.

Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly → ⚠.

Checking the fittings

After the mounts/roof bars and load carrier system have been attached, it is necessary to check the bolted connections and anchor points once you have travelled a short distance and then at regular intervals.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and vehicle damage can occur if the maximum permitted roof load is exceeded.

- Never exceed the quoted roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads, and the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle.
- Do not exceed the maximum load of the mounts or roof bars and load carrier system, even if the maximum roof load is has not been reached.
- Secure heavy objects as far forwards as possible and distribute the load evenly. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Loose and incorrectly secured loads could fall off the load carrier and cause accidents and injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged tensioning cables and securing straps.
- Secure loads properly. ◁

Towing a trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Indicator lamp 300
- Technical requirements 301
- Electrically folding ball head 302
- Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball head 303
- Hitching and connecting the trailer 303
- Loading the trailer 305
- Towing a trailer 306
- Trailer stabilisation 306
- Retrofitting a towing bracket 307

Observe any country-specific regulations when towing a trailer and using a towing bracket.

Your car is intended mainly for transporting passengers and luggage. However, it can also be used to tow a trailer or caravan, provided that it is fitted with the necessary equipment. This additional load will affect the durability, fuel consumption and performance of the vehicle and, in certain circumstances, can shorten the service intervals.

Driving with a trailer not only places an extra load on the vehicle, but also requires increased concentration on the part of the driver.

In low temperatures, fit winter tyres to both the vehicle and the trailer.

Drawbar load

The *maximum* permitted drawbar load exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball head of the towing bracket must not exceed **90 kg**.

Vehicles with a start/stop system

The start/stop system functions as normal if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or a towing bracket retrofitted by Volkswagen. You do not have to take any extra precautions.

If the connected trailer is not recognised, or when using towing brackets that were not retrofitted by Volkswagen, the start/stop system must be deactivated manually using the button in the lower part of the centre console before starting to tow a trailer, and must remain switched off for as long as the trailer is being towed → ⚠.

Vehicles with driving profile selection

When using a factory-fitted towing bracket or a towing bracket retrofitted by Volkswagen, the **Eco** driving mode is blocked as soon as a trailer is attached.

If the vehicle is set to the **Eco** driving mode when the trailer is attached, the vehicle automatically switches to the **Normal** driving mode. If the connected trailer cannot be recognised, or when using a towing bracket that was not retrofitted by Volkswagen, **Normal** driving mode must be selected manually before towing a trailer → ⚠.

Once the trailer has been unhitched, the ignition must be switched off and on again once to reactivate the **Eco** driving profile.

⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous to transport people in a trailer and it may also be illegal.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the towing bracket if it is fitted properly and is not damaged.
- Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the towing bracket.
- To reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked, always swivel in or remove the ball head when a trailer is not being used.
- Never install a weight-distributing or load-balancing towing bracket to the vehicle. The vehicle is not constructed for these kinds of ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

towing brackets. The towing bracket can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.

WARNING

Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle's handling. This can lead to accidents.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity are more likely to tip over than trailers with a low centre of gravity.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer (100 km/h (60 mph) in exceptional cases). This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted. Keep to country-specific speed limits which may be lower for vehicles with trailers than for vehicles without trailers.
- Never try to stop a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.

WARNING

The start/stop system must always be switched off manually when towing a trailer using towing brackets that have not been retrofitted by Volkswagen. Otherwise faults can occur in the brake system, possibly resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Always switch off the start/stop system manually if a trailer is attached to a towing bracket that has not been retrofitted by Volkswagen.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched → page 91. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unintentionally.

In new vehicles, do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km → page 400.

Volkswagen recommends removing or swivelling the ball head into position before driving without a trailer if possible. In the event of a rear-end collision, the degree of vehicle damage sustained could be greater if the ball head is fitted.

Some retro-fitted towing brackets may cover the aperture for fitting the towing eye. If so, the towing eye cannot be used for towing or tow-starting other vehicles. For this reason, the retro-fitted towing bracket ball head should be stored in the vehicle at all times.

Indicator lamp

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

Lit up	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
	The ball head on the towing bracket is not locked.	Check the latch on the towing bracket → page 302.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Technical requirements

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

If the vehicle is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements for towing a trailer.

Only use a towing bracket which is approved for the gross weight of the trailer you want to tow as a **retrofit solution**. The towing bracket must be suitable for the vehicle and trailer and be securely bolted to the vehicle's chassis. Only use a towing bracket which has been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Always check and observe the data provided by the towing bracket manufacturer. Never install a weight-distributing or load-balancing towing bracket on the vehicle.

Towing brackets fitted to the rear bumper

Never fit a towing bracket to the rear bumper or to its fastenings. The towing bracket must not prevent the rear bumper from functioning correctly. Do not carry out any alterations to the exhaust or brake systems. Check regularly to see if the towing bracket is fitted securely.

Engine cooling system

There is an increased load on the engine and the cooling system when towing a trailer. The cooling system must contain sufficient coolant and be able to cope with the extra load added by the trailer.

Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, comply with the relevant regulations. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Emergency breakaway cable

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer → page 303.

Rear trailer lights

The rear lights on the trailer must meet legal requirements → page 303.

Never connect the trailer lights directly to the electrical system of your vehicle. If you are uncertain whether the trailer has been connected correctly, please contact a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Exterior mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind the trailer in the vehicle's standard exterior mirrors, additional exterior mirrors should be fitted in accordance with any country-specific regulations. Before setting off, adjust the mirrors so that you have a sufficient view of the rear.

Maximum power consumption of the trailer

Electrical consumers	Europe, Asia, Africa, South and Central America	Australia
All brake lights	84 watts	108 watts
Turn signal per side	42 watts	54 watts
All side lights	100 watts	100 watts
All tail lights	42 watts	54 watts
Rear fog light	42 watts	54 watts

Never exceed the specified values.

WARNING

If the towing bracket is unsuitable or is incorrectly fitted, the trailer can become detached from the vehicle and cause serious injury.

NOTICE

- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer lights are not connected properly.
- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer uses too much electricity.

Scanned by CamScanner

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other sources of electricity. Only use suitable connectors to provide power to the trailer.

Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.

In certain countries, an additional fire extinguisher must be carried if the gross weight of the trailer exceeds 2,500 kg.

Electrically folding ball head

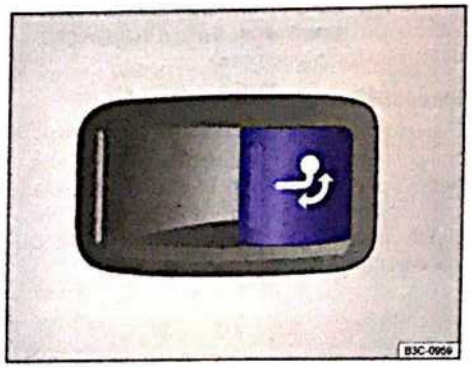


Fig. 261 On the right of the luggage compartment: button for folding ball head.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

The towing bracket ball head is located in the bumper. The ball head with electric release cannot be removed.

There may be no other people, objects or pets in the path of the ball head → ▲.

Releasing and swivelling out ball head

- Bring the vehicle to a standstill and apply the electronic parking brake → page 232.
- Switch off the engine.
- Open the boot lid.
- Pull on the button → Fig. 261 briefly. The ball head is released electrically and folds out automatically. The indicator lamp in the button → Fig. 261 flashes.
- Continue rotating the ball head with your hand until you hear and feel it click into place and the indicator lamp in the button lights up steadily.
- Close the boot lid.
- If a dust cap has been fitted to the ball head, remove it and stow it in a safe place before attaching a trailer.

Swivelling in the ball head

- Bring the vehicle to a standstill and apply the electronic parking brake.
- Switch off the engine.
- Uncouple the trailer and disconnect the electrical connection between the vehicle and the trailer. If fitted, remove the adapter from the trailer socket.
- Put the dust cap (if there is one) on the ball head.
- Open the boot lid.
- Pull on the button → Fig. 261 briefly. The ball head is electrically unlocked.
- Rotate the ball head under the bumper with your hand until you hear and feel it click into place and the indicator lamp in the button → Fig. 261 lights up steadily.
- Close the boot lid.

Meaning of indicator lamps

- If the indicator lamp in the button → Fig. 261 *flashes*, the ball head has either not clicked into place properly, or it is damaged → ▲.
- If the indicator lamp is *lit steadily* when the boot lid is open, the ball head is correctly engaged in the extended or retracted position.
- The indicator lamp in the button goes out approximately one minute after the luggage compartment is closed.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the ball head if it has clicked into place properly.
- Ensure that no people, animals or items are in the path of the ball head.
- Never interrupt the ball head, for example with tools, when it is swivelling.

- Never press the button → Fig. 261 if a trailer is attached or if a luggage rack or other accessories are fitted to the ball head.
- If the ball head will not engage properly, do not use the towing bracket. Have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- If there are faults in the electrical system or in the towing bracket itself, have the towing bracket checked by a qualified workshop.
- If the smallest diameter on the ball head is smaller than 49 mm, do not use the towing bracket.

NOTICE

Do not aim a high-pressure hose or steam cleaner directly at the mechanically positioned ball head or the fitted trailer socket. Seals could be damaged or the grease required for lubrication could be washed off.

At extremely low outside temperatures, the electric ball head might not rotate. If this happens, it is sufficient to place the vehicle in a warmer room, e.g. a garage.

Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball head

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

The gross vehicle weight rating (carrier system including load) is **75 kg**. The maximum permitted overhang of the carrier system on the ball head may not exceed 700 mm. Exclusively carrier systems with a maximum capacity of 3 bicycles are permitted. Mount heavier bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle (ball head).

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the towing bracket with a bicycle carrier fitted to the ball head could cause injuries and accidents.

- Never exceed the specified load and overhang.
- Do not attach a bicycle carrier underneath the ball head on the neck of the ball head. The shape of the ball head neck and the design of the bicycle carrier could result in the bicycle carrier becoming misaligned with the vehicle.
- Read and observe the assembly instructions provided by the bicycle carrier manufacturer.

NOTICE

Considerable vehicle damage could occur if the maximum permitted payload or overhang is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified values.

Volkswagen recommends that you remove all added-on parts from the bicycles before setting off. This includes bicycle bags and baskets, child seats or batteries. This helps improve the carrier system's wind load and centre of gravity.

Hitching and connecting the trailer

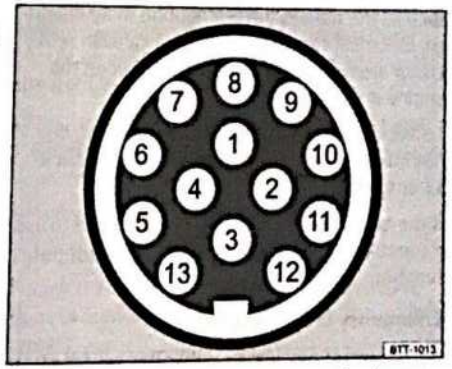


Fig. 262 Illustration: pin assignment for the trailer socket.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

Key to Fig. 262:

Pin	Meaning
1	Left turn signal
2	Rear fog light
3	Earth for pins 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8
4	Right turn signal
5	Right tail light
6	Brake light
7	Rear light, left

Scanned by CamScanner

Key to Fig. 262:	
Pin	Meaning
8	Reversing light
9	Permanent positive
10	Positive charging wire
11	Earth for pin 10
12	Not assigned
13	Earth for pin 9

Trailer socket

A 13-pin trailer socket makes the electrical connection between the towing vehicle and the trailer. When the engine is running, electrical consumers in the trailer are supplied with voltage via the electrical connection (pin 9 and pin 10 of the trailer socket).

When the vehicle detects a trailer through the electrics, the consumers in the trailer are supplied with electrical current via the electrical connection (pins 9 and 10). Pin 9 has a permanent positive connection, which allows systems such as the trailer's interior lighting to be operated. Electrical consumers such as a caravan refrigerator are supplied with power **only** when the engine is running (pin 10).

To avoid overloading the electrical system, do not inter-connect the three earth wires (pins 3, 11 and 13).

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use a suitable adapter cable. Pin 10 is then without function.

Emergency breakaway cable

Always fasten the trailer's emergency breakaway cable properly to the towing vehicle. Leave enough slack in the emergency breakaway cable so that the vehicle can still drive around corners. However the emergency breakaway cable should not drag along the ground while you are driving.

Rear trailer lights

Ensure that the trailer lights work properly and meet legal requirements. Do not exceed the maximum power consumption for the trailer → page 301.

Connection to the anti-theft warning system

The trailer will be connected to the anti-theft warning system under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a factory-fitted towing bracket.
- When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are functional, fault-free and undamaged.
- When the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unintentionally.

Trailer with LED rear light cluster

For technical reasons, trailers with LED tail lights cannot be integrated into the anti-theft alarm system.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the LED tail light cluster is interrupted.

The driving profile automatically changes to **Normal** driving profile if the **Eco** driving profile was selected when the trailer was hitched. If the connected trailer cannot be identified or when using a towing bracket that was not retrofitted by Volkswagen, **Normal** driving profile must be selected manually before towing a trailer. Once the trailer has been unhitched, the ignition must be switched off and on again once to reactivate the **Eco** driving mode.

⚠ WARNING

Any electrical accessories which are not connected properly could cause a power surge to the trailer. This could lead to faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and could also cause accidents and serious injuries.

- All work on the electrical system should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other sources of electricity.

⚠ WARNING

Contact between the pins in the trailer socket can lead to short circuits, overloading of the electrical system and failure of the lighting system, thereby causing accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the pins in the trailer socket to one another.
- Have bent pins repaired by a qualified workshop.

NOTICE

If you park the trailer using the support wheel or other trailer supports, disconnect the trailer from the vehicle. The vehicle could rock up and down if the load changes or if there is damage to the tyres. If this happens, a great deal of force will be exerted on the towing bracket and trailer, which could lead to damage to the vehicle and trailer.

If there is a fault in the vehicle or trailer electrical systems or in the anti-theft alarm, have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

If the engine is not running and electrical equipment is switched on in the trailer via the trailer socket, the vehicle battery will discharge.

If the vehicle battery charge level is low, the electrical connection to the trailer will be interrupted automatically.

Loading the trailer

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

Trailer weight and drawbar load

The trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can pull → ⚠. The drawbar load is the weight that the towing bracket exerts on the ball head vertically from above → page 408.

The figures for trailer weights and draw bar weights that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct values for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures, are given in the vehicle registration documents. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data.

In the interest of road safety, Volkswagen recommends that you always transport the maximum **drawbar load** → page 299. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

The drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the maximum load level as a result.

Gross combination weight

The combination weight is made up of the actual weight of the loaded vehicle and of the loaded trailer.

In some countries, trailers are divided into different classes. Volkswagen recommends that you contact a qualified workshop to find out about suitable trailers.

Loading the trailer

The weight of the load should be distributed evenly. The maximum permitted drawbar load should be utilised. Do not place the load only at the front or the rear of the trailer:

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that heavy objects are either over or as near to the axle as possible.
- Secure all loads on the trailer properly.

Tyre pressure

Follow the trailer manufacturer's recommendations concerning the tyre pressure for the trailer tyres.

When towing a trailer, inflate the wheels on the towing vehicle with the maximum permitted tyre pressure → page 369.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if you exceed the vehicle's maximum permitted gross axle weight rating, drawbar load, gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating.

- Never exceed the specified values.
- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the gross axle weight ratings. Never exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle with weight at the front and rear of the vehicle.

Scanned by CamScanner

⚠ WARNING

Loads that may slide can severely impair stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load trailers correctly.
- Always secure loads using suitable and undamaged securing straps.

Towing a trailer

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

Headlight adjustment

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the dipped beam to blind other road users. Use the headlight range control to lower the light cone as required. If you do not have headlight range control, the headlights should be adjusted by a qualified workshop.

Things to note when driving with a trailer

- If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.
- The combination weight causes the braking distance to increase.
- Engage a lower gear prior to inclines (manual gearbox or Tiptronic mode of the automatic gearbox) to additionally make use of engine braking. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail.
- The vehicle's centre of gravity and, in turn, the vehicle's handling, will change because of the trailer load and the increased combined towing weight of the vehicle and trailer.
- The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen towing vehicle is very unfavourable. When driving in this situation, drive particularly carefully and slowly.

Pulling off on slopes when towing a trailer

A vehicle towing a trailer is liable to roll back a short distance when moving off on a slope, depending on the angle of the slope and the total weight of the trailer and vehicle.

When towing a trailer, pull off on slopes as follows:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press button (P) once to switch off the electronic parking brake → page 232.
- Manual gearbox: depress the clutch fully.
- Select first gear → page 172 or selector lever position D/S → page 174.
- Pull on the (P) button and hold it in this position to hold the vehicle and trailer with the electronic parking brake.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Pull away slowly. To do this, slowly release the clutch pedal for a manual gearbox.
- Only let go of the (P) button when the engine has sufficient power to move off.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle handles and increase the braking distance.
- Always drive carefully and think ahead. Brake earlier than you normally would.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Reduce your speed, particularly when going downhill.
- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking. Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never try to stop a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- Keep to speed limits which may be lower for vehicles with trailers than for vehicles without trailers.

Trailer stabilisation

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

The trailer stabilisation function can detect if an attached trailer is starting to lurch from side to side and can provide countersteer.

Trailer stabilisation is a subsidiary function of the electronic stabilisation programme (ESC).

If a lurching motion is detected, the trailer stabilisation function automatically helps to reduce the trailer's rocking motion using counter steering assistance.

Requirements for trailer stabilisation

- The vehicle is a factory-fitted towing bracket or a compatible towing bracket is fitted.
- ESC and TCS are active. The indicator lamp or in the instrument cluster is not lit up.
- The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- The vehicle speed is higher than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The maximum drawbar load is being carried.
- The trailer must have a rigid drawbar.
- Trailers with brakes must have a mechanical overrun system.

⚠ WARNING

Do not let the extra safety afforded by the trailer stabilisation function tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully on slippery surfaces.
- Take your foot off the accelerator if one of the systems is active.

⚠ WARNING

The trailer stabilisation function may not be able to detect all driving situations correctly.

- Trailer stabilisation is switched off when ESC is deactivated.
- Light trailers that are snaking will not be recognised by the trailer stabilisation function and stabilised accordingly in all cases.
- A trailer can still *jack-knife* on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity might tip over before snaking starts.

- Sudden braking procedures could occur automatically in extreme driving situations if the trailer socket is being used without a trailer (e.g. for a bicycle carrier with lighting).

Retrofitting a towing bracket

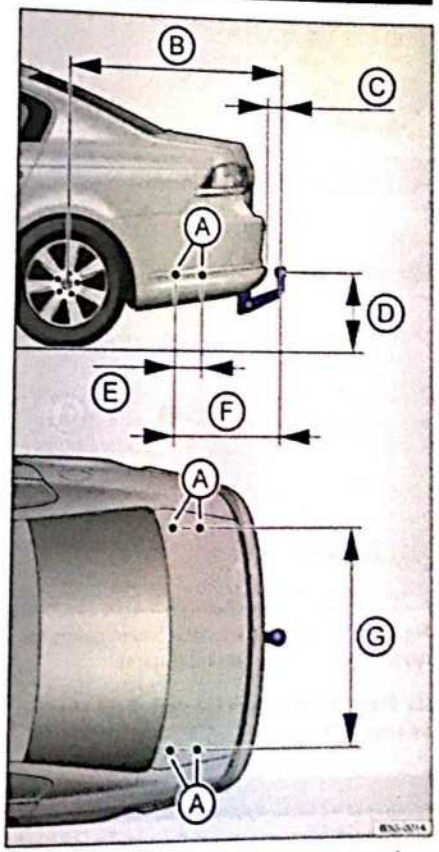


Fig. 263 Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a towing bracket (Saloon).

Scanned by CamScanner

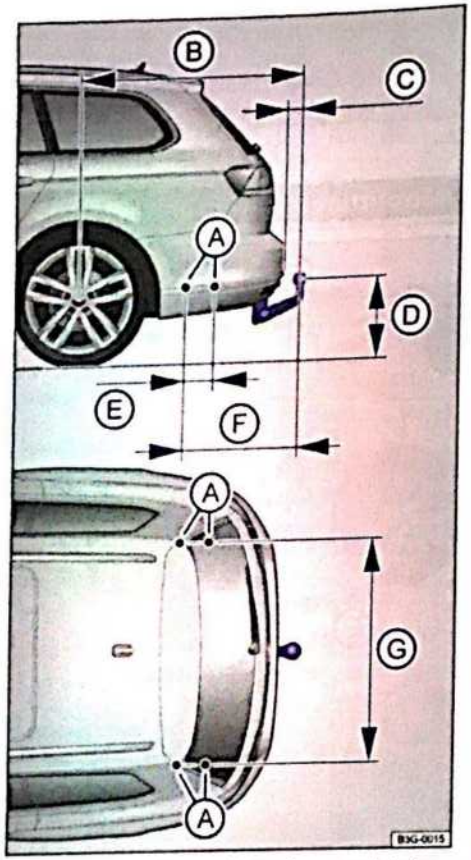


Fig. 264 Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a towing bracket (Estate).

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 299.

Volkswagen recommends having the towing bracket retrofitted by a qualified workshop. The cooling system may need to be modified or heat shields may need to be fitted. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

The dimensions must be adhered to for the retro-fitting of a towing bracket. Always observe the minimum distance given from the middle of the ball head → Fig. 263 Ⓓ to the surface of the road. This also applies when the vehicle is fully laden, including maximum drawbar load.

Distance dimensions → Fig. 263 or → Fig. 264:

Ⓐ Attachment points
Ⓑ 1,196 mm
Ⓒ at least 65 mm
Ⓓ 350 – 420 mm
Ⓔ 220 mm
Ⓕ 550 mm
Ⓖ 1,043 mm

⚠ WARNING

Electrical accessories that are not connected properly can cause faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and also cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other unsuitable sources of electricity. Only a suitable connector may be used to connect the trailer.
- A towing bracket should be retrofitted to the vehicle by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The trailer can become detached from the towing vehicle if the towing bracket is unsuitable or incorrectly fitted. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

Only use towing brackets which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. ◁

Fuel

Safety notes for handling fuel

⚠ WARNING

Filling the tank incorrectly and incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- The auxiliary heater → page 154, engine and ignition must be switched off during refuelling in order to prevent fire, explosions, serious burns and other injuries.
- When filling the tank, always switch off your mobile telephone and two-way radio or any other radio equipment. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks which can in turn start a fire.
- Never get back into the vehicle while filling the tank. If in exceptional cases you have to enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal object before touching the filler nozzle again. This will remove any electrostatic charge from you. Failure to do so could generate a spark. Sparks can cause a fire when filling the tank.
- Always ensure that the tank cap is properly closed, to prevent the evaporation and spillage of fuel.
- Comply with any relevant safety information and legislation concerning the handling of fuels.

⚠ WARNING

For safety reasons, Volkswagen does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could spill out of the canister and set alight. This is especially relevant in the event of an accident. This could cause explosions, fire and injuries.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to transport a spare fuel canister, please note the following:
  - When refilling do not place the canister in or on top of the vehicle, for example in the luggage compartment. There may be an electrostatic charge during refilling causing the fuel fumes to ignite.
  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground.
  - When filling a spare fuel canister, place the filler nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening.
  - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must have constant contact with the canister in order to avoid static charging.
  - Please follow all legislation concerning the use, stowage and transport of a spare fuel canister.
  - Ensure that the spare fuel canister complies with the industry standard, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

NOTICE

Fill the tank only with the fuels listed on the sticker inside the tank flap.

- Do not start the engine under any circumstances if you have refilled using the incorrect fuel. Seek expert assistance. Non-approved fuels can cause serious damage to the engine and fuel system.
- Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Fuels can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

The tank flap cannot be released manually. Seek expert assistance if necessary. ◁

Filling the tank

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Refuelling 310
- Misfuelling prevention device on diesel vehicles 310

The tank flap is located at the rear right-hand side of the vehicle → page 40.

Different engines require different fuels. The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the required fuel type for your vehicle. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Refuelling

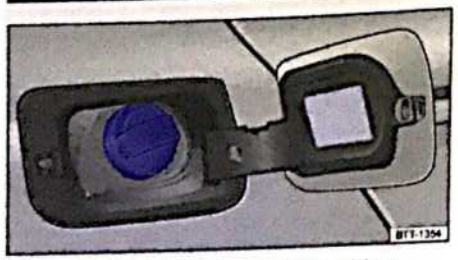


Fig. 265 Illustration: open tank flap with attached tank cap.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 309.

Always switch off the auxiliary heater → page 154, the engine, the ignition and your mobile telephone **before** refuelling, and leave them switched off while filling up.

Information on fuel capacities can be found in chapter → page 408, *Technical data*.

Opening the tank cap

The tank flap is on the right rear of the vehicle → page 40.

- Unlock the tank flap using the vehicle key or the central locking button in the driver door → page 91.
- Press the rear of the tank flap to open it.
- Turn the tank cap anticlockwise to remove it and place it in the holder in the tank flap.

Filling the tank

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is shown on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap → Fig. 265.

- The fuel tank is full when the properly operated automatic filler nozzle clicks off for the first time → ▲.
- Do not continue filling the tank after it switches off. The expansion space in the fuel tank will otherwise fill up and the fuel could spill out → ⓘ.

Closing the tank cap

- Turn the tank cap clockwise into the filler neck until it clicks into place.
- Close the tank flap. It must be flush with the vehicle body.

After refuelling ethanol-fuel-powered vehicles

MultiFuel engines can be run either with petrol (RON 95) or with ethanol fuel E85, and with all mixtures of these two fuels → page 309. The procedure for refilling the vehicle is the same as for refilling with petrol.

After refuelling with a mixture of E85 and petrol, drive for at least 5 minutes so the engine can adapt optimally to the current mixture. During this period the idling engine speed can vary. During this period, do not drive at top speed, use high engine revs or depress the accelerator fully.

⚠ WARNING

Do not continue filling the tank once the filler nozzle stops automatically. The fuel tank could be overfilled. This can cause fuel to splash out and overflow. This can cause fires, explosions and serious injuries.

ⓘ NOTICE

Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the vehicle. ◁

Misfuelling prevention device on diesel vehicles



Fig. 266 Illustration: misfuelling prevention device in the tank filler neck. ▶

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 309.

The tank filler neck in diesel vehicles can be fitted with a misfuelling prevention device → Fig. 266. The misfuelling prevention device ensures that the vehicle can **only** be fuelled using suitable diesel pump nozzles.

A fuel nozzle that is worn, damaged or not of the correct specification will not open the misfuelling prevention device.

If the diesel pump nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck, turn the nozzle back and forth while applying light pressure. This can open the misfuelling prevention device and make it possible to refuel the vehicle. If the misfuelling prevention device remains closed, proceed to a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

If it is necessary to refuel the vehicle using a spare fuel canister in the event of an emergency, the misfuelling prevention device will not open. In order to fill the tank with fuel, pour the diesel into the tank extremely slowly in very small quantities. ◁

Fuel types

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Petrol fuel 311
- Diesel 312
- Ethanol fuel E85 313

Different engines require different fuels. The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the required fuel type for your vehicle.

Volkswagen recommends using low-sulphur or sulphur-free fuels to help reduce fuel consumption and avoid damaging the engine.

If the engine is not running smoothly while the vehicle is in motion, or if it begins to judder or a warning lamp lights up, this can indicate poor or inadequate fuel quality, for example water in the fuel.

If these symptoms appear, reduce the vehicle speed immediately and drive to the nearest qualified workshop at medium engine speeds, avoiding high engine loading. If these symptoms occur immediately after the vehicle has been refuelled, switch the engine off as soon as it is safe to do so and seek expert assistance. This can help to prevent secondary damage. ◁

Petrol fuel

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 309.

Petrol types

Vehicles with a petrol engine must run on unleaded petrol in compliance with the European standard EN 228 → ⓘ. Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10% (E10) can be used for refuelling.

Where petrol complying with the specified standard is not available, Volkswagen dealerships will have information on what fuels are suitable for the vehicle.

The types of petrol differ by octane number. The vehicle may be filled with petrol that has a higher octane number than the engine requires. However, this does not provide any advantage in terms of fuel consumption or engine output.

Petrol additives

The petrol quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. This is why the vehicle should be refuelled with good quality fuel that has already been mixed with the proper additives by the manufacturer. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If faults potentially related to fuel characteristics arise while the is vehicle in motion, we recommend that you go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Special cleaning service additives are available from Volkswagen dealerships. These can help remedy malfunctions caused by deposits in the engine and fuel system. Only use Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity.

The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Metallic additives should be avoided at ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

all times. Petrol additives that are intended to improve knock resistance or increase the octane number can also contain metallic additives. Therefore fuel additives sold separately should generally not be used → ⓘ.

NOTICE

- Before filling up with petrol, check whether the fuel corresponds to the vehicle's requirements according to the fuel standard information at the pump.
- Only use fuel that complies with the specified standard and has the correct octane number. Otherwise, the engine and the fuel system can suffer considerable damage. The engine can also lose power or fail.
- If, in an emergency, you have to use petrol with an octane number lower than the recommended number, drive at medium engine speeds and avoid high engine loading. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads. Failure to do so can result in engine damage. Fill the tank with petrol with the correct octane number as soon as possible.
- The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter.
- Fuels that are identified at the fuel pump as containing metallic additives may not be used. LRP fuel also contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Risk of engine damage!
- Just one tankful of leaded fuel, or fuel containing other metallic additives, can seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter and can also cause considerable damage to the catalytic converter and engine. ◁

Diesel

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ on page 309.

Diesel

Diesel must comply with European standard EN 590. Where diesel complying with the specified standard is not available, Volkswagen dealerships will have information on what kind of diesel is suitable for the vehicle.

The fuel quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. This is why the vehicle should be refuelled with good quality diesel that has already been mixed with quality-enhancing additives by the manufacturer.

If you use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content, the service intervals are shorter → Booklet *Service schedule*. Volkswagen dealerships will be able to tell you which countries have diesel with a high sulphur content.

Fuel additives, thinners or similar agents that are available separately may not be mixed with the diesel. If faults potentially related to fuel characteristics arise while the is vehicle in motion, we recommend that you go to a qualified workshop to have the fault analysed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Special cleaning service additives are available from Volkswagen dealerships. These can help remedy malfunctions caused by deposits in the engine and fuel system. Only use Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity.

Winter diesel

When using summer-grade diesel, difficulties may be experienced at temperatures below 0°C (+32°F) because the fuel thickens due to paraffin separation. For this reason winter-grade diesel which can be used at temperatures below -20°C (-4°F) is available in countries such as Germany during the cold months → ⓘ.

In countries with different climatic conditions the diesel sold generally has different temperature characteristics. Check with a Volkswagen dealer or filling stations in the country concerned regarding the type of diesel fuels available.

It is not unusual for a cold diesel engine to be louder in cold temperatures that in warm weather. In addition, exhaust emissions may be tinged with blue while the engine starts and reaches operating temperature.

Filter preheater

Diesel vehicles are equipped with a filter preheater system. This ensures that the fuel system remains operational even down to approximately -24°C (-11°F) provided that winter-grade diesel which is safe down to -20°C (-4°F) is used.

However, if the fuel has waxed to such an extent that the engine will not start at temperatures below -24°C (-11°F), simply place the vehicle in a warm garage or workshop for a while. ▶

WARNING

Never use a start booster. Start boosters may explode or cause the engine to suddenly run at high revs, which can cause serious injuries and engine damage.

NOTICE

- Before filling up with diesel, check whether the fuel corresponds to the vehicle's requirements according to the fuel standard information at the pump.
- Only use fuel that complies with the specified standard and has the correct cetane number. Significant malfunctions could otherwise result.
- The vehicle is not suitable for use with biodiesel and must not be filled up or driven with biodiesel. Failure to observe this point can result in damage to the fuel system and engine.
- Immediately and thoroughly remove any emerging fuel from the vehicle with soap and warm water, to prevent any damage to the vehicle.
- The diesel engine has been developed for use with diesel only. For this reason, petrol, fuel oil or other unsuitable fuels may not be used. These fuels can cause serious damage to the fuel system and engine.
- The service life of the diesel particulate filter could be reduced considerably if diesel fuels with a high sulphur content are used.

NOTICE

In cold weather do not mix petrol into the diesel, as this could cause massive damage to the engine's injection system. ◁

Ethanol fuel E85

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ on page 309.

Ethanol fuel E85 is a mixture of bioethanol and petrol and consists of at least 15% petrol (RON 95) and 85% bioethanol (ethyl alcohol). Ethanol fuel E85 normally contains a red dye for identification.

Ethanol-fuel-powered vehicles can be powered with petrol or ethanol fuel E85, but also with all mixing ratios of both of these fuels. The proportion of bioethanol contained in the fuel must not exceed 85%. The procedure for refilling the vehicle is the same as for refilling with fuel → page 309.

When using the MultiFuel engine with ethanol fuel, the fuel consumption may rise by approximately one third in comparison to petrol, but the CO_2 emissions remain below those measured when petrol is used exclusively.

Starting the engine in cold weather

Ethanol fuel has poor cold-starting properties and it is not easy to start the engine at low temperatures. At outside temperatures of below -10°C (+14°F), the engine should be preheated (→ page 166) or the quantity of petrol (RON 95) in the mix should be increased.

Outside temperature	Minimum engine preheating time
Above -10°C (+14°F)	Engine preheating is not necessary.
Below -10°C (+14°F)	Preheat the engine for up to one hour.
Below -15°C (+5°F)	Preheat the engine for at least one hour.
Below -25°C (-13°F)	Preheat engine for at least two hours.

NOTICE

- Before parking the vehicle for an extended period, fill the tank with fuel with a high percentage of petrol. Ethanol fuel E85 can contain a small amount of contaminants that may cause corrosion.
- Volkswagen recommends that you fill the tank with petrol (RON 95) every 15,000 km to reduce the contaminants in the engine deposited by ethanol fuel E85. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Warning and indicator lamps 314
- Information about AdBlue® 315
- Refilling AdBlue® 315

SCR catalytic converters can be used to reduce emissions in diesel engines. The SCR catalyst uses AdBlue® urea solution to convert nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water.

The vehicle is fitted with a separate tank for AdBlue® → page 315. The remaining range can be checked regularly on the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

If the AdBlue® level is too low, the vehicle cannot be restarted after the ignition has been switched off. Starting with jump leads is also not possible.

- Refill AdBlue® at the latest when the remaining distance reaches approximately 1,000 km.
- Never allow the AdBlue® tank to run empty.

CAUTION

AdBlue® is an irritant and corrosive fluid that can damage the skin, eyes and breathing passages upon contact.

- Always observe the instructions when using AdBlue® container. Compliance with the instructions usually prevents users from coming into contact with AdBlue®.
- If AdBlue® gets into the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If AdBlue® gets onto the skin, immediately wash the area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor if the skin becomes irritated.
- If AdBlue® is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth out with lots of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

NOTICE

AdBlue® can corrode surfaces such as painted vehicle parts, plastics, clothing and carpets. Remove any spilt AdBlue® as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.

- If the AdBlue® has already formed crystals, use warm water and a sponge to remove.

Warning and indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲, ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 314.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	The engine cannot be restarted! AdBlue® level is too low. Park the vehicle in a suitable, flat location and refill the minimum amount of AdBlue® → page 315.
	The engine cannot be restarted! Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system. Go to a qualified workshop immediately, without switching off the engine. Have the system checked.
	AdBlue® level is low. Refill AdBlue® before the kilometres displayed drop to zero → page 315. Volkswagen recommends that this be carried out by a qualified workshop.
	Selective catalytic reduction system faulty or not refilled using norm-standard AdBlue®. Go to a qualified workshop immediately. Have the system checked.
	AdBlue® level is low. Refill within the remaining AdBlue® range shown → page 315.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Information about AdBlue®

Please refer to ▲, ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 314.

The AdBlue® consumption figures depend on the individual driving style, the system's operating temperature and the ambient temperature that the vehicle is operated in.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11°C (+13°F). Refilling may be restricted if AdBlue® has frozen. The system is equipped with heating elements to ensure it can also function at low temperatures.

The AdBlue® tank holds approximately 16 litres.

The **minimum and maximum** refill quantity of AdBlue® is shown on the instrument cluster display → ⓘ.

The AdBlue® tank must never run empty. As of a remaining range of approximately 2,400 km, the instrument cluster display will indicate that the AdBlue® must be refilled → page 315. If the refill request is ignored, it will not be possible to start the engine again later → ▲ in *Introduction* on page 314. Do not refill unless prompted to do so.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the German Association of the Automobile Industry (VDA) and is also known as AUS32 or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

NOTICE

Overfilling AdBlue® may damage the tank system.

- Volkswagen recommends visiting a qualified workshop to fill up with AdBlue®.
- Do not fill with more than the maximum refill quantity indicated on the instrument cluster display.

Refilling AdBlue®

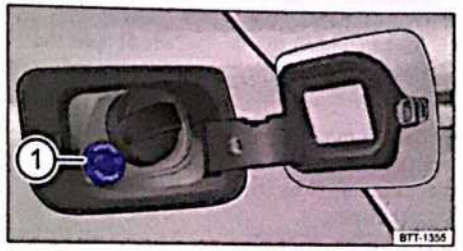


Fig. 267 AdBlue tank cap.

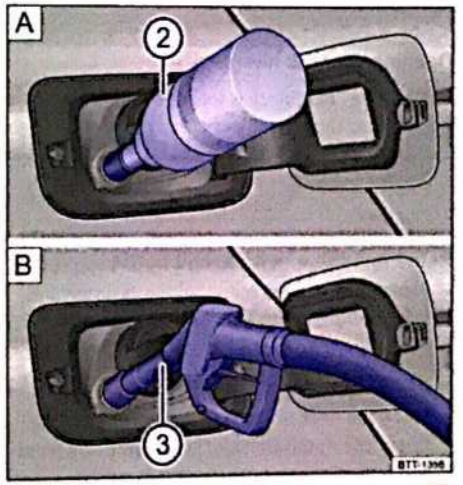


Fig. 268 Refilling AdBlue: A with refill bottle. B with filler nozzle.

Please refer to ▲, ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 314.

Key for Fig. 267 and Fig. 268:

① Tank filler neck cap.
② Refill bottle.
③ Filler nozzle.

Scanned by CamScanner

Preparing to refill

Park the vehicle on an even surface. The tank level gauge may not detect the refill quantity correctly if the vehicle is not parked on a level surface, e.g. on the kerb with one side of the vehicle or on an incline.

Open the message on the instrument cluster display to show the **minimum and maximum** refill quantity.

If a message about the AdBlue® level appears on the instrument cluster display, **add at least the minimum refill quantity**. A smaller refill amount is insufficient.

Switch off the ignition. If the ignition is not switched off during refuelling, the notification may continue to be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not fill fuel and AdBlue® at the same time.

Only use AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1. Use original packages only.

Opening the tank filler neck

The AdBlue® filler neck is located behind the tank flap next to the tank filler neck.

- Opening the tank flap.
- Unscrew the cap of the tank filler neck anticlockwise.

Refilling AdBlue® with a refill bottle

- Please observe the manufacturer's notes and information on the refill bottle.
- Observe the expiry date.
- Remove the screw top of the refill bottle.
- Place the neck of the refill bottle on the tank filler neck and turn it clockwise until it is hand-tight.
- Push the refill bottle towards the tank filler neck, press and hold down.
- Wait until the contents of the refill bottle have entered the AdBlue® tank. Do not crumple up or damage the refill bottle!
- Unscrew the refill bottle anticlockwise and lift it carefully up and out → ⓘ.
- When the AdBlue® tank is full, AdBlue® will no longer flow out of the bottle and into the tank.

Refilling AdBlue® with a filler nozzle

The AdBlue® tank can be refilled at all conventional AdBlue® pumps.

- The procedure for refilling with an AdBlue® nozzle is the same as for refilling the fuel tank with fuel.
- The AdBlue® tank is full as soon as the correctly operated filler nozzle clicks off for the first time. Do not continue refilling, the AdBlue® tank may be damaged by overfilling it and AdBlue® may escape.

Closing the tank filler neck

- Screw the cap onto the tank filler neck clockwise until it engages.
- Close the tank flap.

Preparing to drive on

- After refilling, switch on the ignition **only**.
- Leave the ignition switched on for at least 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refill procedure.
- Do not start the engine until the 30 seconds have elapsed!

⚠ WARNING

AdBlue® should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.

- Never store AdBlue® in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain AdBlue®.
- AdBlue® must be stored out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

- Only use AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1. Use original packages only.
- Do not mix water, fuel or additives with AdBlue®. Any damage caused by mixing in water or additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.
- Never fill AdBlue® in the diesel tank! Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- Do not transport the refill bottle in the vehicle habitually. The bottle may develop a leak following changes in temperature and damage and the AdBlue® may damage the vehicle interior.

The refill bottle must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. ▶

Suitable AdBlue® refill bottles are available from a Volkswagen dealership. ◁

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. ◁

Engine management system and exhaust purification system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Indicator lamps 317
- Catalytic converter 318
- Diesel particulate filter 318

Indicator lamps

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 317.

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
EPC	Engine management system fault (Electronic Power Control).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Engine speed limited.	The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed shown on the instrument cluster display. This prevents the engine from overheating. Once the engine is no longer at a critical temperature and you have briefly taken your foot off the accelerator, the engine speed limit will be increased. If the engine speed limit is activated due to a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp will also light up EPC. The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Ensure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed, e.g. when changing down a gear.
	Diesel engine is preheating before starting.	→ page 166. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Lit up	Possible cause	Solution
	A fault that affects the exhaust gas has occurred.	Have the engine checked by a qualified workshop.
	Diesel particulate filter has become saturated with soot.	Drive in 4th gear (manual gearbox) or in selector lever position D/S (DSG® dual clutch gearbox) at a speed of at least 70 km/h (43 mph) for approximately 15 minutes. Observe the valid speed limits → ▲. Go to the nearest qualified workshop if the indicator lamp still does not go out.

Flashes	Possible cause	Solution
	Fault in engine management system (diesel engine).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Misfiring, which damages the catalytic converter.	Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Drive carefully to the next qualified workshop. The engine should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Please observe legal requirements if cleaning the diesel particulate filter when in traffic.

- Follow driving recommendation only if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions are suitable.
- Do not endanger other vehicles on the road.

! NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.

While the indicator lamps , or EPC are lit up, or indicator lamp is flashing, engine performance may be impaired and fuel consumption may be higher. ◁

Catalytic converter

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 317.

The catalytic converter is used for exhaust gas post-treatment and helps to reduce exhaust emissions. To help ensure long-term functionality in the exhaust system and the catalytic converter:

- Use unleaded petrol only.
- Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry.
- Do not overfill engine oil → page 354.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle. Use jump leads → page 342.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately. The vehicle should be inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel. ◁

Diesel particulate filter

📖 Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 317.

The diesel particulate filter filters out soot particles in the exhaust gas. The soot particles gather in the filter and are burnt under high temperatures periodically (**regeneration**). Heat produced can warm the engine. ▶

Regeneration can cause noises, light smells and delay in radiator fan irrespective of the outside temperature, even after the engine is switched off.

To assist the regeneration of diesel particle filter, Volkswagen recommends that you avoid making only short journeys. In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox the engine speed can increase while the vehicle is being driven. However, the indicator lamp will not light up.

Observe the following points to ensure that the exhaust system and the diesel particulate filter will work properly for a long time:

- Only use diesel with low sulphur levels → page 309.
- Never use biodiesel, petrol or heating oil.
- Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry.
- Do not overfill engine oil → page 354.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle. Use jump leads → page 342.

Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel. ◁

Vehicle care

Notes on vehicle care

Regular, expert care helps to keep the vehicle in good condition. This may also be one of the requirements for acknowledging warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects on the body.

Leaving stains, dirt and other deposits on the surface of vehicle components and cloth seat covers for a long time can make it difficult to clean and treat them. Stains, dirt and deposits may become impossible to remove, particularly if left for a long time.

Suitable care products are available from your local qualified workshop. Follow the instructions for use on the packaging. Consult a qualified workshop if you have specific questions or if the components in question are not listed.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and cause serious injury.

- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Always use approved or recommended cleaning products.
- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products. Solvents can cause irreparable damage to the airbag modules.
- Protect hands and arms against sharp-edged parts, e.g. when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.

⚠ WARNING

Dirty, misted or iced up windows and windscreens reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries. This could impair the safety equipment of the vehicle.

- Only drive when you have a clear view through all windows.
- Do not treat the windscreen with water-repellent window coating agents. In unfavourable conditions, they can cause increased dazzle. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

WARNING

Care products may be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect application of care products can cause accidents, severe injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Care products must be kept in the original, sealed container only.
- Read the manufacturer's instructions.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other containers for storing care products.
- Keep children away from all care products.
- Hazardous vapours may develop during application. Care products must therefore be used outdoors or in well-ventilated facilities only.
- Do not use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. These substances are toxic and highly flammable.

NOTICE

Stains, dirt and other deposits containing aggressive and solvent-based ingredients attack the material and may cause irreparable damage, even if only left for a short time.

- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits should always be removed as quickly as possible and not allowed to dry in.
- Have stubborn stains removed by a qualified workshop. ◁

Vehicle washing

Also wash the underside of the vehicle thoroughly on a regular basis to remove road salt or sea water residue.

Automatic car washes

Please always observe all instructions of the car wash operator, particularly if your vehicle is equipped with add-on parts → ⓘ.

- Car washes without brushes are to be preferred.
- Observe the clearance height and width of the car wash.
- Spray the vehicle with water before washing.
- Always switch off the Auto Hold function → page 232, the wipers → page 136 and the rain/light sensor before entering the car wash.
- Lock the boot lid.
- Folding in the exterior mirrors.
- Close all windows and the glass roof.
- Do not select a washing programme with hot wax for vehicles with decorative and protective films.

When leaving the vehicle in a car wash, always switch the ignition off once and then back on again. Always leave a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle so that the electronic steering column lock does not engage.

High-pressure cleaner

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the high-pressure cleaner. Never use concentrated jet nozzles or dirt blasters → ⓘ.

- Use water only up to a maximum temperature of +60°C (+140°F).
- Do not clean windows that are iced over or covered in snow with a high-pressure cleaner.
- Move the water jet uniformly over the vehicle with the spray nozzle at a distance of at least 40 cm from the vehicle.
- Do not aim the water jet at the same place for too long. Instead, allow stubborn dirt to soak.
- Where possible, avoid aiming the jet at seals, tyres, rubber tubes, insulating material and other sensitive components (e.g. door locks).
- Directly spray sensors and camera lenses only briefly and from a distance of at least 10 cm.
- Directly spray decorative and protective films only briefly and with a maximum water pressure of 100 bar.

Washing by hand

Washing by hand is a gentle way to clean your vehicle. However, a number of things must also be observed here → ⓘ.

- Before washing the vehicle, first soften the dirt with plenty of water and then rinse off well.
- Then clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, a wash mitt or a brush applying only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom. ▶
- Thoroughly rinse out the sponge, wash mitt or brush regularly at short intervals.
- Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last. Use a second sponge for this.

Use a shampoo for very stubborn dirt only.

Waxing

Waxing protects the paintwork. At the latest when water no longer clearly forms small drops and runs off the paintwork when the vehicle is *clean*, re-wax the vehicle with a good protective wax.

Even if a protective wax is used regularly in the car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The car must be waxed after polishing with hard wax if the polish used does not contain any preservatives.

WARNING

After the car has been washed, braking efficiency could be reduced thus extending the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up (if winter).

- You can "dry and de-ice" the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal requirements when doing so.

NOTICE

Serious vehicle damage can be caused if the vehicle is not washed correctly!

- Always heed the instructions precisely.
- Never wash the vehicle in direct sunshine.
- Never aim a water jet directly at locks, doors or the boot lid in cold weather. The locks and seals may freeze up.

NOTICE

In order to avoid damage, do not apply polish or hard wax to painted parts with a matt finish, unpainted plastic parts, headlight lenses or the tail light clusters.

Wash the vehicle only in specially designated washing bays. This prevents waste water that is possibly contaminated with oil from entering the sewerage system. ◁

Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior

Please refer to the following table for information on caring for and cleaning specific parts of the car. These are simply recommendations.

Cleaning and care instructions

Component	Situation	Procedure → ⓘ
Door windows, rear window and windscreen Glass surfaces	Wax residue from car washes or care products.	Remove wax residue on all glass surfaces with the glass cleaning cloth G 052 522 A2 or a suitable glass cleaner.
	Snow.	Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and exterior mirrors.
	Ice.	Use de-icing spray. If a plastic scraper is used, always push the scraper only in one direction. Do not move the scraper to and fro. Do not use warm or hot water.
Wiper blades	→ page 328	

Scanned by CamScanner

Component	Situation	Procedure → ⓘ
Paintwork	Minor paint damage.	Repair with a touch-up stick. Refer to the vehicle data sticker for the paint number → page 408. Contact a qualified workshop in the case of painted surfaces with a matt finish.
	Spilt fuel.	Rinse immediately with water.
	Flash rust deposits.	Remove deposits with a flash rust remover. Do not polish off deposits! Then wax the paintwork with hard wax. Contact a qualified workshop with any questions.
	Corrosion.	Have this removed at a qualified workshop.
	Water drops no longer run off clean paintwork.	Preserve paintwork with hard wax at least twice a year.
	No gloss in spite of waxing/ paintwork has lost its shine.	Treat the vehicle with a suitable polish after removing dirt and dust. Then wax the paintwork with hard wax if the polish used does not contain any preservative agents.
	Deposits, e.g. insect residue, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt.	Immediately soften with water and remove with a microfibre cloth.
	Grease stains, e.g. cosmetic products or sun cream.	Remove immediately with mild soap solution[a] and a soft cloth.
	Colour differences after removing decorative and protective films.	Treat with a suitable polish. Then preserve the paintwork with hard wax if the polish used does not contain any preserving agents.
Decorative films Protective films	Soiling.	Clean in the same way as paint. Matt decorative films: use plastic cleaner.
	Stubborn dirt.	Remove carefully using white spirits and then rinse using warm water. Matt decorative films: use plastic cleaner.
	Deposits, e.g. insect residue, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt.	Immediately soften with water or mild soap solution[a] and remove with a microfibre cloth.
	Care.	Treat the vehicle with liquid hard wax every three months after first cleaning to remove dirt and dust. Only use soft microfibre clothes to apply it. **Do not use hot wax**, also not in car washes!
Trim parts Trim strips	Soiling.	Clean only with a soft cloth and mild soap solution[a] in a dust-free environment. Use a suitable, solvent-free cleaner if necessary to clean heavily soiled stainless steel. Anodised surfaces: do not use chrome care products.
Headlights Tail light cluster	Soiling.	Clean with a soft sponge that is soaked through with mild soap solution[a]. Do not use any cleaning agents containing alcohol.
Wheels	Soiling and road salt.	Clean with plenty of water. Do not use paint polish or other abrasive materials. Alloy wheels: wash off every 2 weeks and then treat with an acid-free cleaner. Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels every 3 months.
	Damaged protective paint coating.	Repair immediately with a touch-up stick.
	Brake dust.	Use a special cleaner.
Sensors Camera lenses	Soiling.	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaner. Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaner.
	Snow.	Remove with hand brush. Do not use warm or hot water.
	Ice.	Remove with a solvent-free de-icer spray. Do not use warm or hot water.
Door lock cylinders	Ice.	Volkswagen recommends the use of genuine Volkswagen spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to de-ice the lock cylinders. Do not use door lock de-icers containing grease solvents.
Exhaust pipes	Road salt deposits.	Remove with water and using a cleaner that is suitable for stainless steel where necessary. Do not use solvent-based cleaning products!
Underseal	Maintenance.	Check the underseal regularly and have it repaired if necessary. Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, heat shields or other vehicle components that become hot.
Engine compartment Plenum chamber (area between engine compartment and windscreen)	Leaves and other loose objects.	Remove with a vacuum cleaner or by hand → ⓘ.
	Soiling.	Cleaning should always be carried out by a qualified workshop → ▲. Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process (e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner) can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

[a] Mild soap solution: no more than 2 tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in 1 litre of water.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of the vehicle is a hazardous area. All work in the engine compartment carries the risk of injury, scalding, accidents and fire.

- Before carrying out any work, ensure that you are familiar with the requisite procedures and general safety regulations → page 350.
- Volkswagen recommends having the work carried out by a qualified workshop.

! NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care can damage the vehicle.

- Always heed the instructions precisely.
- Do not use any excessively harsh, abrasive cleaning products.

Scanned by CamScanner

NOTICE

The plenum chamber outflows may be blocked by leaves and dirt. Water that does not drain off can enter the vehicle interior.

- Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned by a specialist.

Environmental conditions such as sunlight, moisture, pollution, stone impact, etc. affect the durability and colour of the decorative and protective films. Signs of wear and age are normal and do not indicate a defect in quality. Decorative films can show signs of use and ageing after around 1 to 3 years and protective films after around 2 to 3 years. Decorative films can fade within one year in very hot climate zones. Protective films are more resistant and can fade slightly in the second year. ◁

Vehicle interior care and cleaning

Please refer to the following table for information on caring for and cleaning specific parts of the car. These are simply recommendations.

Modern fabrics, such as dark denim, are often not colourfast. Light-coloured upholstery (soft materials or leather) is particularly sensitive to staining caused by these fabrics, even if you are careful. This is not caused by a fault in the upholstery, but by the non-colourfast nature of the garments.

Cleaning and care instructions

Component	Situation	Procedure → ⓘ
Door windows, rear window and windscreen	Soiling.	Clean with a glass cleaner, and then wipe dry with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth.
Textiles Microfibre fabric Leatherette	Dirt particles adhering to the surface.	Regularly remove with a vacuum cleaner so that the material is not permanently damaged by abrasion.
	Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea etc.	Remove with an absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a].
	Grease stains, e.g. oil, make-up.	Apply a mild soap solution[a], dab off the dissolved grease and dye with an absorbent cloth, treat with water afterwards if necessary.
	Difficult dirt, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish, blood.	Use a special stain remover and treat afterwards with mild soap solution[a] if necessary.
	Care.	Do not use leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, stain removers or similar products on fabrics, microfibre fabrics or artificial leather.
Natural leather	Fresh soiling.	Remove with a cotton cloth and mild soap solution[a]. Clean natural leather immediately.
	Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea etc.	Fresh stains: remove with an absorbent cloth. Dried-in stains: treat with a stain remover that is suitable for leather.
	Grease stains, e.g. oil, make-up.	Fresh stains: treat with a stain remover that is suitable for leather and an absorbent cloth. Dried-in stains: grease solvent spray.
	Difficult dirt, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish, blood.	Treat with a stain remover that is suitable for leather.
	Care.	Apply a leather care cream with sunlight protection and impregnation properties regularly and always after cleaning. Use a special coloured leather cream where appropriate. If the vehicle is parked outdoors for long periods, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight. Never treat leather with solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar substances.
Plastic parts	Soiling.	Remove with a soft, damp cloth.
	Stubborn dirt.	Remove with a soft cloth and some mild soap solution[a]. Use a solvent-free plastic cleaner if necessary.
Trim parts Trim strips	Soiling.	Clean only with a soft cloth and mild soap solution[a] in a dust-free environment. Use a suitable, solvent-free cleaner if necessary to clean heavily soiled stainless steel. Anodised surfaces: do not use chrome care products.
Controls	Soiling.	Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush. Then clean the controls with a soft cloth and some mild soap solution[a]. Make sure that no fluids enter the controls.
Displays	Soiling.	Use a soft cloth with some water, standard commercially available glass cleaner or LCD cleaner. Do not clean displays when dry.
Rubber seals	Soiling.	Clean with a soft, lint-free cloth and plenty of water.
	Care.	Treat regularly with a suitable rubber care product. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Component	Situation	Procedure → ⓘ
Seat belts	Soiling.	Carefully pull the seat belt right out and leave it out → ▲. Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush. Clean the seat belt with a *mild* soap solution. Allow the belt fabric to dry completely, then roll up.
Wooden trims	Soiling.	Remove with a soft cloth and some mild soap solution[a].

[a] Mild soap solution: no more than 2 tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in 1 litre of water.

Cleaning upholstery on seat cushions with seat heating and on electrically adjustable seats or with airbag components

Airbag system components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, front passenger seat and possibly also in the rear outer seats. Seat cushions or backrests that are damaged, incorrectly cleaned or treated, or that become wet, may cause damage to the electrical system of the vehicle or trigger a fault in the airbag system → ▲ in *Notes on vehicle care* on page 319.

Electrical components and connectors are installed in electrically adjustable seats and seat cushions with seat heating. These can be damaged if cleaned or treated incorrectly → ⓘ. This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrics.

To avoid this please observe these cleaning guidelines:

- Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
- Do not switch on the seat heating to dry the seats.
- Do not use washing paste or fine detergent solutions.
- Avoid getting the seat wet.
- Only use detergents that have been approved by Volkswagen.
- If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to clean the parts properly can cause damage to the seat belts, the fastenings and the belt retractor.

- Never use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts or their components. Furthermore the seat belts may not come into contact with corrosive fluids, solvents or sharp objects.
- Dry the cleaned seat belt fully before allowing it to retract.
- Avoid allowing foreign bodies or liquids to enter the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself.

❗ NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care can damage the vehicle.

- Always heed the instructions precisely.
- Sharp-edged objects such as zips, rivets on clothing or belts can damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners can also cause damage.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, brushes or hard sponges etc. for cleaning under any circumstances.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company. ◁

If and when

Vehicle tool kit

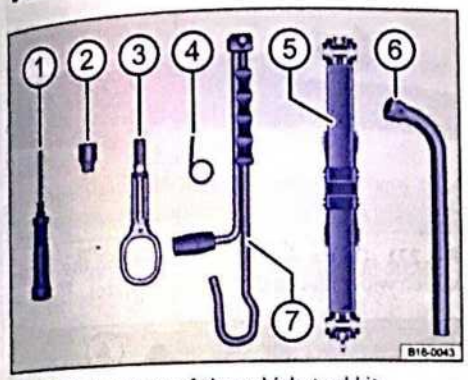


Fig. 269 Contents of the vehicle tool kit.

Vehicle tool kit contents

The content of the vehicle tool kit is determined by the model. The following section describes the maximum scope:

Key for Fig. 269:

① Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle for slackened wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible. The screwdriver may be stowed under the box spanner.

② Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts. Volkswagen recommends that you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle tool kit at all times. The **code number** of the anti-theft wheel bolt is engraved on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if lost. Make a note of the code number for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – but not inside the vehicle.

③ Removable towing eye.

④ Wire hook for pulling off the centre cover, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps.

⑤ Vehicle jack. Before you return the jack to the foam rubber holder, you must wind the claw in fully.

⑥ Box spanner for wheel bolts.

⑦ Crank.

Storage of the vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit may be located in various positions in the luggage compartment:

- In a bag on the left or right in the stowage areas of the luggage compartment → page 288.
- In a foam rubber holder under the luggage compartment floor → page 282.

Vehicle jack: maintenance

There are no maintenance cycles for the vehicle jack. Grease it with universal lubricant when necessary.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving/braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose vehicle tool kit may be thrown through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always be sure that vehicle tools are stored safely in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tools in the vehicle tool kit can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle tool kit.

After using the vehicle jack, crank it back to its original position so that it can be stored safely. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Wiper blades

Service position

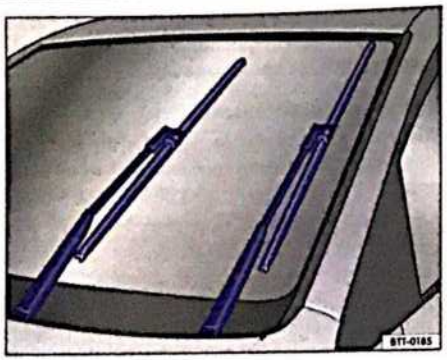


Fig. 270 Wiper blades in service position.

The windscreen wiper arms can be lifted off the windscreen when in the service position.

Proceed as follows to move the wipers to the service position → Fig. 270:

- The vehicle must be parked and the bonnet must be closed → page 350.
- Switch the ignition on and then off again.
- Briefly press down the wiper lever → Fig. 120 Ⓔ.

Lifting the windscreen wiper blades

- Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting → ⓘ.
- When lifting the wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.

Place the wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away → ⓘ. With the ignition switched on, briefly press the windscreen wiper lever down to bring the windscreen wiper arms back to the original position.

NOTICE

- In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms, the windscreen wiper arms should only be lifted when in the service position.
- Always return the windscreen wiper arms to the windscreen before starting your journey. ◁

Cleaning and replacing the wiper blades

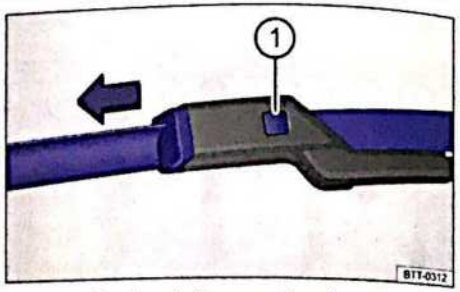


Fig. 271 On the windscreen: changing the windscreen wiper blades (Saloon and Estate).

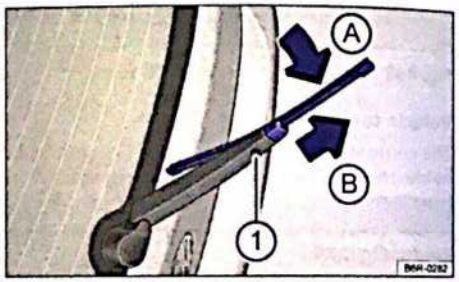


Fig. 272 The rear of the vehicle: changing the rear window wiper blade (Estate).

The factory-fitted windscreen wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating ensures that the windscreen wiper blade moves quietly over the windscreen. If the graphite coating is damaged, the windscreen wiper will become louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades on a regular basis. **Rubbing wiper blades** should be changed if damaged or cleaned if dirty → ⓘ.

Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. Windscreen wiper blades can be bought from a qualified workshop.

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Note for the front wipers: move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting them → page 136. ▶

- When lifting the wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.
- Clean the windscreen wiper blade carefully using a damp cloth → ⓘ.
- Place the wiper arms carefully back onto the windscreen.

Replacing the wiper blades on the windscreen (Saloon and Estate)

- Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting → page 136.
- When lifting the wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.
- Press and hold the release button → Fig. 271 ① and simultaneously pull off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert a new wiper blade with the **same length and design** onto the wiper arm. Push it on until it engages.
- Place the wiper arms carefully back onto the windscreen.

Changing the wiper blade for the rear window (Estate)

- When lifting the wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.
- Lift and fold back the wiper arm.
- Press and hold the release button → Fig. 272 ①.
- Tilt the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm → Fig. 272 (arrow Ⓐ) and pull it off in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ at the same time. You may need to use some force to do this.
- Insert a new wiper blade with the **same length and design** onto the wiper arm against the direction of the arrow. Push it on until it engages Ⓑ. The wiper blade must be in the tilted position (arrow Ⓐ).
- Carefully place the wiper arm back onto the rear window.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreens properly.

NOTICE

Damaged or dirty wipers can scratch the windscreen.

- Do not use any detergents containing solvents, hard sponges and other sharp objects, as they can damage the graphite coating of the wiper blades during cleaning.
- Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. ◁

Changing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Indicator lamp 330
- "Information on changing bulbs" checklist 331
- Changing bulbs in the front headlights (halogen) 332
- Changing bulbs in the front bumper 334
- Changing bulbs in the front bumper (Alltrack) 335
- LED lights on the vehicles 335

Changing the vehicle bulbs requires considerable technical skill. If you do not feel confident with the procedure, Volkswagen recommends that you have the bulbs changed by a Volkswagen dealership, or that you seek other expert assistance. Contact a qualified workshop if other vehicle parts around the affected bulbs need to be removed.

You should keep a box with spare light bulbs for the lights that ensure the vehicle is roadworthy in the vehicle at all times. Spare bulbs are available from Volkswagen dealerships. In some countries it is a legal requirement to have these spare bulbs in the vehicle.

It may be illegal to drive with a defective bulb in the exterior lighting. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Additional bulb specifications

Some bulbs in headlights or in tail light clusters might have factory specifications that are different to standard bulbs. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.

⚠ WARNING

Changing the bulb incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- When working in the engine compartment, always read and observe the safety warnings → page 350. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.
- H7 bulbs are pressurised and could explode when they are being changed.
- Only change the defective bulb once it has had time to cool down completely.
- Never change a bulb unless you are familiar with the procedure. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. When the light is switched on, heat will cause fingerprints to evaporate on the bulb, which in turn will cause the reflector to dim.
- There are sharp-edged parts in the headlight housing in the engine compartment and on the tail light cluster housing. Protect your hands when changing bulbs.

! NOTICE

Damage to the electrical system can be caused by water entering the system if the rubber covers or plastic caps on the headlight housing are not properly mounted after a bulb has been changed. ◁

Indicator lamp

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 330.

Lit up	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
ⓘ	There is a defective bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting (excluding dynamic cornering light[a]).	Change the defective bulb.

[a] A separate display appears in the instrument cluster if there is a dynamic cornering light fault.

Goes out	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
⇦⇨	Trailer light bulb not working.	Change defective bulb and check trailer lighting.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

Monitoring the lights on a connected trailer

The failure of one or more lights on the trailer is monitored in vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer that is properly connected to the trailer socket. A failure is indicated by the ⇦⇨ indicator lamp in the instrument cluster switching off → page 126. The following situations are monitored:

- Failure of all turn signals on one side.
- Failure of the tail light (in some models, failure of the number plate light).
- Failure of both brake lights.
- Short circuit in one or more bulbs.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

! NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

If an individual light emitting diode (LED) in the tail light cluster fails, a warning is not given. If all LEDs fail, this is indicated by the indicator lamp ☼. ◁

"Information on changing bulbs" checklist

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 330.

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions for changing a bulb in the given order → ⚠:

1. Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
2. Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 232.
3. Turn the light switch to position 0 → page 126.
4. Shift the turn signal lever to neutral → page 126.
5. With a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, move the selector lever to position P → page 174.
6. Switch off the engine → page 166.
7. Manual gearbox: select a gear → page 172.
8. Switch off the orientation lighting → page 126.
9. Leave the defective bulbs to cool down.
10. Check to see if a fuse has blown → page 336.
11. Follow the instructions to change the affected bulb → ⓘ. Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
12. Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. The heat of the bulb would cause the fingerprint to evaporate and condense on the reflector. This will impair the brightness of the headlight.
13. After changing the bulb, check to ensure that the bulb is working properly. If the bulb is not working properly, the bulb may not have been inserted properly or may have failed again, or the connector may have been inserted incorrectly.
14. Any time you change a bulb in the front of the vehicle, the headlight settings should be checked by a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

! NOTICE

Always take care when removing or fitting lights to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Changing bulbs in the front headlights (halogen)

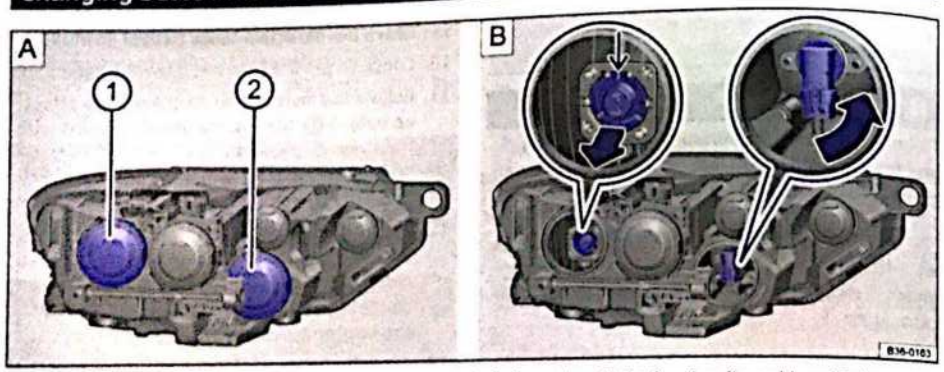


Fig. 273 In the engine compartment: covers on the left front headlight for the dipped headlight and main beam.

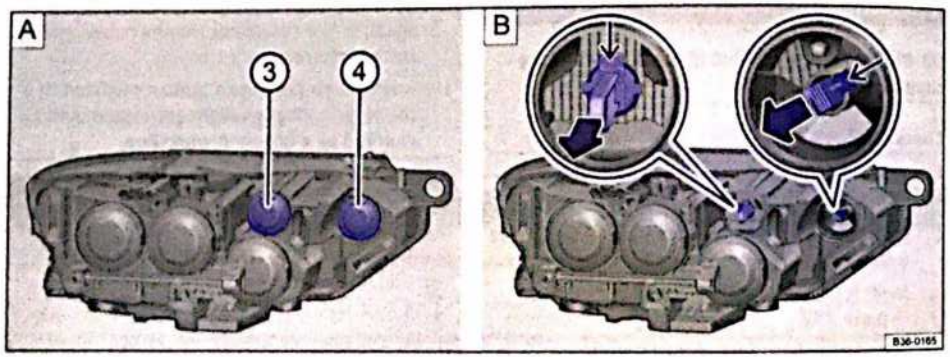


Fig. 274 In the engine compartment: covers on the left front headlight for the turn signal and side light.

Please refer to ⚠ and ① at the start of the chapter on page 330.

The headlight does not have to be removed in order to change a bulb.

Changing the bulb in the dipped headlight and the main beam

→ Fig. 273	The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:	
	Dipped beam headlights ①	Main beam headlights ②
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 331.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 331.
2.	To change the bulb in the left-hand dipped beam headlight, turn the steering wheel all the way to the right. Before changing the bulb in the right-hand headlight, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left.	Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.
3.	Carefully prise off cover in the wheel housing liner using the flat blade of the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit.	Remove the rubber cover → Fig. 273 A ② from the back of the headlight.
4.	Remove the rubber cover → Fig. 273 A ① from the back of the headlight.	Turn the bulb holder → Fig. 273 B (right-hand close-up) until it unlocks, and then pull it out to the rear.
5.	Press the bulb → Fig. 273 B (left-hand close-up) upwards until it unclips, and then pull it out to the rear in the direction of the arrow.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
6.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.	Insert the bulb holder into the headlight and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow → Fig. 273 B (right-hand close-up).
8.	Insert the bulb into the opening in the headlight with the connector at the top and push down. The lug of the bulb must be located in the recess of the bulb holder → Fig. 273 (small arrow, left-hand close-up).	Replace the rubber cover → Fig. 273 A ② on the back of the headlight.
9.	Replace the rubber cover → Fig. 273 A ① on the back of the headlight.	Close the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.
10.	Fit the cover back on the wheel housing liner.	-

Changing bulbs for dipped beam headlights and side lights

→ Fig. 274	The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:	
	Turn signal ③	Side lights ④
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 331.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 331.
2.	Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.	Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.
3.	Remove the rubber cover → Fig. 274 A ③ from the back of the headlight.	Remove the rubber cover → Fig. 274 A ④ from the back of the headlight.
4.	Pull the bulb holder and bulb to the rear in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 274 B (left-hand close-up).	Pull the bulb holder and bulb to the rear in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 274 B (right-hand close-up).
5.	Loosen the bulb lock and pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.	Pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.
6.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
7.	Insert the bulb and bulb holder straight into the headlight as far as it will go. The wide retaining lugs → Fig. 274 B (left-hand close-up, small arrow) must be facing upwards or downwards.	Insert the bulb and bulb holder straight into the headlight as far as it will go. The retaining lug → Fig. 274 B (right-hand close-up, small arrow) must be pointing to the right.
8.	Replace the rubber cover → Fig. 274 A ③ on the back of the headlight.	Replace the rubber cover → Fig. 274 A ④ on the back of the headlight.
9.	Close the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.	Close the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.

Scanned by CamScanner

The illustrations show the left-hand headlight from the rear. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.

Changing bulbs in the front bumper

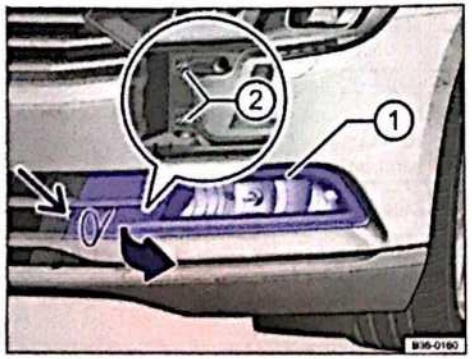


Fig. 275 Front bumper, left-hand side: fog lights, daytime running lights.

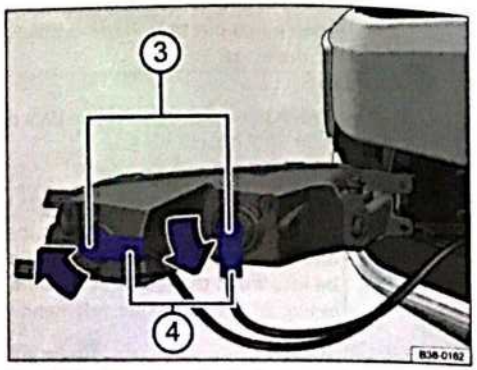


Fig. 276 Changing the bulbs in the headlights.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 330.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:	
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 331.
2.	Use the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit → page 327to unscrew the securing bolt from the cover → Fig. 275 (small arrow).
3.	Insert the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit → page 327 into the recess as shown, and use the hook to pull the cover forwards → Fig. 275 ② in the direction of the arrow.
4.	Remove the headlight securing screw ② with the screwdriver.
5.	Pull the headlight forwards out of the bumper → Fig. 276.
6.	Release the connector ④ from the defective bulb and remove it.
7.	Turn the bulb ③ in the direction of the arrow to unlock it and remove it from the headlight.
8.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
9.	Insert the bulb ③ in the headlight and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow → Fig. 276 until it reaches its original position.
10.	Check whether the bulb is fitted securely.
11.	Push the corresponding connector ④ onto the bulb until it audibly engages.
12.	Fit the headlight into the bumper.
13.	Screw in the headlight securing bolts → Fig. 275 ②.
14.	Replace the cover ① on the bumper and ensure that it clicks into place.
15.	Screw the securing bolt into the cover → Fig. 275 (small arrow).

The illustrations show the left-hand headlight. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.

Changing bulbs in the front bumper (Alltrack)

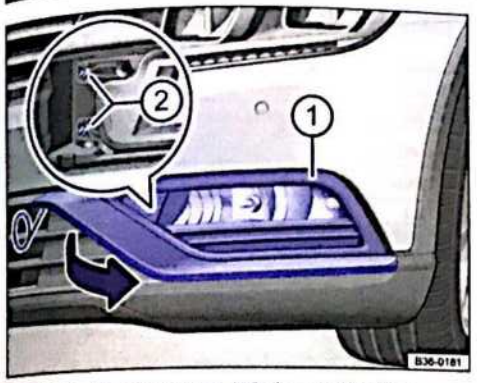


Fig. 277 Front bumper, left-hand side: fog lights, daytime running lights.

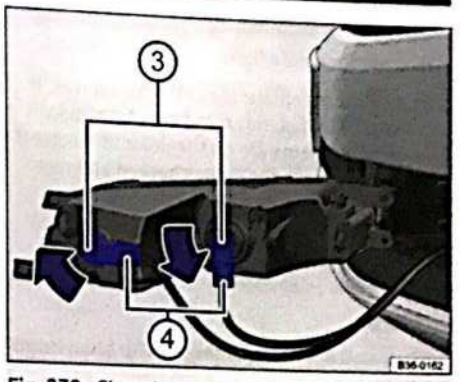


Fig. 278 Changing the bulbs in the headlights.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 330.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:	
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist → page 331.
2.	Insert the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit → page 327 into the recess as shown, and use the hook to pull the cover forwards → Fig. 277 ① in the direction of the arrow.
3.	Remove the headlight securing screws → Fig. 277 ② with a screwdriver.
4.	Pull the headlight forwards out of the bumper → Fig. 278.
5.	Release the connector → Fig. 278 ④ from the defective bulb and remove it.
6.	Turn the bulb → Fig. 278 ③ in the direction of the arrow to unlock it and remove it from the headlight.
7.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
8.	Insert the bulb → Fig. 278 ③ in the headlight and turn it as far as it will go against the direction of the arrow → Fig. 278 until it reaches its original position.
9.	Check whether the bulb is fitted securely.
10.	Push the corresponding connector → Fig. 278 ④ onto the bulb until it audibly engages.
11.	Fit the headlight into the bumper.
12.	Screw in the headlight securing screws → Fig. 277 ②.
13.	Replace the cover → Fig. 277 ① on the bumper and ensure it clicks into place.

The illustrations show the left-hand headlight. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.

LED lights on the vehicles

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 330.

The following lights may use LEDs:

- Brake light, rear fog light and reversing light in the tail light clusters in the boot lid.
- Brake light, turn signal and reversing light in the tail lights in the rear bodywork.

Scanned by CamScanner

– Dipped beam, main beam, daytime running lights, side lights and turn signal in vehicles with LED headlights.
– The number plate light

Owners cannot replace the LEDs themselves. If individual LEDs fail, this may be an indication that more elements are on the point of failure. If this happens, have the lights checked and replaced if necessary at a qualified workshop. ◁

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Fuses in the dash panel 337
– Fuses in the engine compartment 338
– Fuse table 339
– Fuse tables for fuses in the engine compartment 340
– Changing a blown fuse 341

At the time of print we are unable to provide an complete overview of the locations of the fuses for the electrical consumers. This is because the vehicle is under constant development, because fuses are assigned differently in some models, and because several consumers may use a single fuse. You can get more information about the fuse layout from a Volkswagen dealership.

Several electrical consumers could share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore fuses should only be replaced when the cause of the fault has been rectified. If a new fuse blows shortly after insertion, have the electrical system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.

Fuse designs

– Standard flat blade fuse (ATO®).
– Small flat blade fuse (MINI®).
– JCASE® fuse.

Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Amp rating in ampere (ATO® / MINI®)	Amp rating in ampere (JCASE®)
Black	1	-
Light brown	5	-
Brown	7.5	-
Red	10	50
Blue	15	20
Yellow	20	60
White or clear	25	-
Green	30	40
Orange	40	-
pink	30	30

⚠ WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
- Avoid causing short circuits in the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable or repaired fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injuries.

- Never fit fuses that have a higher fuse protection limit. Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.
- Never repair a fuse.
- Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar objects to replace a fuse.

NOTICE

- To avoid damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, switch the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers off before changing a fuse.
- You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating. ▶
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

This chapter does not refer to all the fuses in the vehicle. These should be changed only by a qualified workshop. ◁

Fuses in the dash panel

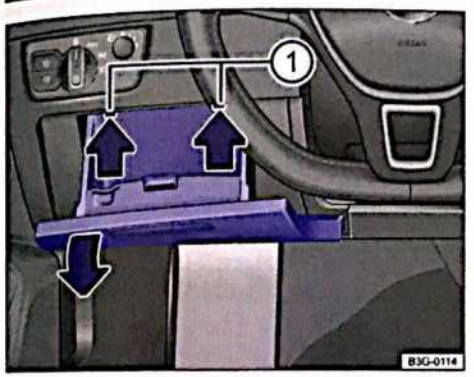


Fig. 279 Fuse box cover in the dash panel: left-hand drive vehicle, to the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

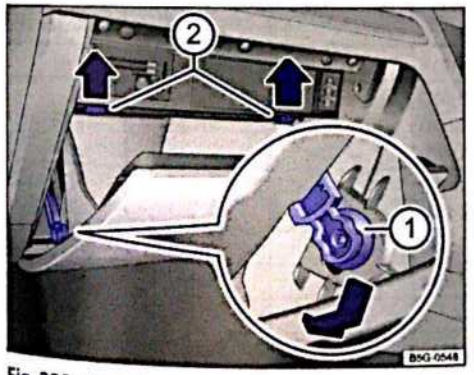


Fig. 280 Fuse box cover in the dash panel: right-hand drive vehicle, on the passenger side.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

Left-hand drive: opening the fuse box in the dash panel

– Open the stowage compartment on the driver side → Fig. 279 A.
– Empty stowage compartment if necessary.
– Push the retaining lugs → Fig. 279 A 1 upwards in the direction of the arrow whilst opening the stowage compartment until the fuse holder can be accessed.
– To *install*, press the stowage compartment into the mounts on the dash panel until it audibly clicks into place on both sides and then close the compartment.

Right-hand drive: opening the fuse box in the dash panel

– Open the stowage compartment on the front passenger side and remove the contents if necessary → Fig. 280.
– Slide the braking element → Fig. 280 1 downwards into the opening in the holder and pull it out sideways.
– Press the catches → Fig. 280 2 upwards in the direction of the arrow.
– To install: move the stowage compartment into position. Insert the braking element into the opening in the holder and slide upwards until it engages. Carefully push the stowage compartment forwards beyond the resistance of the catches → Fig. 280 2.

NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Fuses in the engine compartment

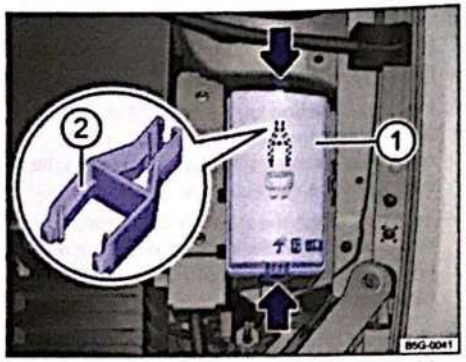


Fig. 281 In the engine compartment: cover ① of fuse box with plastic pliers ②.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

– Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.

– Press the release buttons in the direction of the arrow to release the fuse box cover → Fig. 281 ①.

– Lift off the cover.

– To *install*, position the cover on the fuse box and press it downwards until the cover audibly clicks into place on both sides.

In some vehicles,a pair of plastic pliers → Fig. 281 ② for removing fuses is located on the inside cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

Fuse table

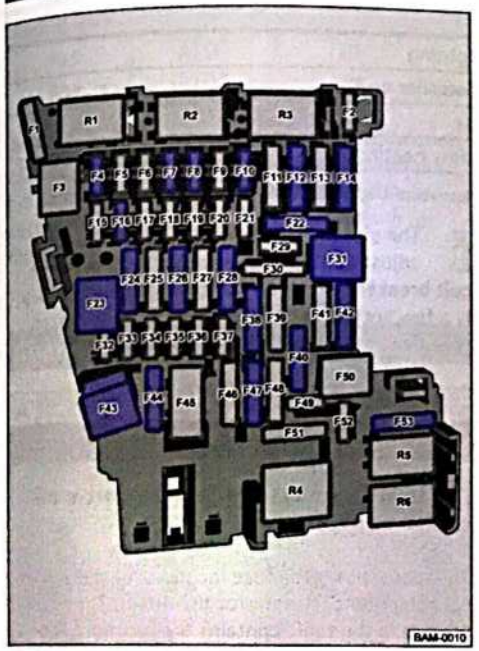


Fig. 282 In the dash panel: fuse layout.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

The table shows the fuse locations of the electrical equipment relevant for the driver. The first column in the table contains the location. The other columns contain the fuse designs, the amp rating and the consumer protected by the fuse.

Fuse location → Fig. 282	Fuse design	Amp rating	Electrical consumers
F4	MINI*	10	Anti-theft alarm.
F7	MINI*	10	Operating unit for air conditioning system or heating and fresh air system, relay rear window heating, selector mechanism for the DSG* dual clutch gearbox
F8	MINI*	10	Light switch (dipped headlights), rain/light sensor, electronic parking brake
F10	MINI*	10	Display, infotainment controls
F12	ATO*	20	Infotainment services
F14	ATO*	30	Blower control
F16	MINI*	7.5	Telephone
F22	ATO*	15	Charging cable for trailer
F23	JCASE*	40	Exterior lights, right
F24	ATO*	30	Glass roof
F26	ATO*	30	Seat heating
F28	ATO*	25	Left trailer controller unit
F31	JCASE*	40	Exterior lights, left
F38	ATO*	25	Right trailer controller unit
F40[a)]	ATO*	20	Cigarette lighter, electrical socket
F42	ATO*	40	Central locking system

Scanned by CamScanner

Fuse location → Fig. 282	Fuse design	Amp rating	Electrical consumers
F43	JCASE®	30	Interior lighting
F44	ATO®	15	Trailer controller unit
F47	ATO®	15	Rear wiper
F53	ATO®	30	Rear window heating

a) Note installation position. Factory-fitted fuse location as shown in illustration → Fig. 282.

Depending on the version and specification of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the table. If necessary ask your Volkswagen dealership for the exact fuse layout.

The electric windows and the electrically adjustable seats may be secured with **circuit breakers** which switch on again automatically a few seconds after the overload, e.g. frozen windows, has been rectified.

Fuse tables for fuses in the engine compartment

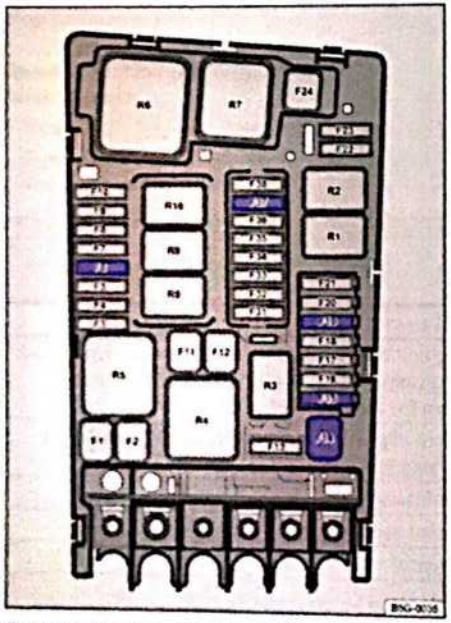


Fig. 283 Engine compartment: fuse layout.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

The table shows the fuse locations of the electrical equipment relevant for the driver. The first column in the table contains the location. The other columns contain the fuse designs, the amp rating and the consumer protected by the fuse.

Fuse location → Fig. 283	Fuse design	Amp rating	Electrical consumers
F6	ATO®	5	Brake light sensor
F14	JCASE®	40	Windscreen heating
F15	ATO®	15	Horn
F19	ATO®	30	Windscreen wipers
F37	ATO®	20	Auxiliary heater

Depending on the version and specification of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the table. If necessary ask your Volkswagen dealership for the exact fuse layout.

Changing a blown fuse

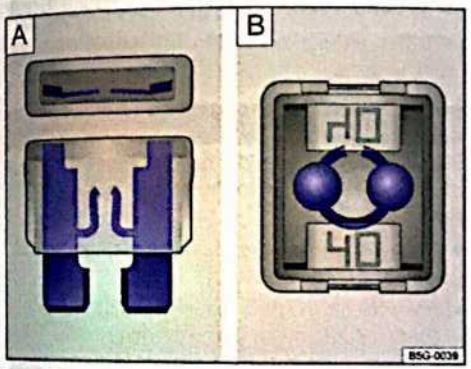


Fig. 284 Blown fuse: A flat blade fuse, B JCASE® fuse.

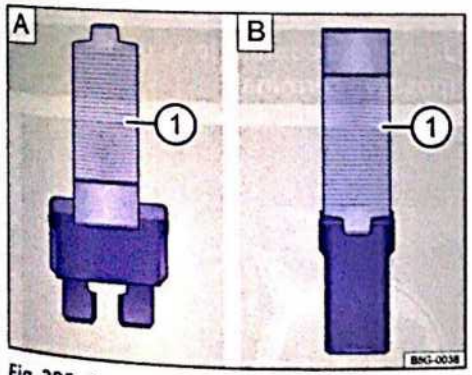


Fig. 285 Remove or insert fuse with plastic pliers: A flat blade fuse, B JCASE® fuse.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

Preparation

- Switch off the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers.
- Open the appropriate fuse box → page 338.

Detecting a blown fuse

- Shine a torch onto the fuse. This will help you to spot the blown fuse more easily.
- If a *flat blade fuse (ATO®, MINI®)* is blown, this can be recognised from the top and side through the transparent housing surrounding the melted metal strips → Fig. 284 A.
- If a *JCASE® fuse* is blown, this can be recognised from the top through the transparent housing → Fig. 284 B.

Changing a fuse

In some vehicles there is a pair of plastic pliers for removing fuses on the inside of the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment.

- Open the fuse box cover in the engine compartment → page 338 and remove the plastic pliers.
- Push the plastic pliers suitable to the fuse design → Fig. 285 A ① or → Fig. 285 B ① onto the fuse from the side.
- Lift the fuse up and out.
- If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse of the *same* amp rating (same colour and same markings) and *same* size → ①.
- Once the new fuse is inserted, clip the plastic pliers into the holder on the inside of the fuse box cover.
- Fit the fuse box cover → page 338.

NOTICE

You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.

Scanned by CamScanner

Jump starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Jump lead connection point (positive terminal) 342
- Jump lead connection point (earth connection) 343
- How to start the engine using jump leads 343

If the engine cannot be started because the vehicle battery is discharged, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jump leads must comply with DIN 72553 (see manufacturer's documentation). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm^2 for petrol engines and at least 35 mm^2 for diesel engines.

In vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, the jump leads must be connected only to the designated connection points in the engine compartment.

WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries. Please observe the following in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always observe the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery → page 363, *Vehicle battery*.
- The vehicle battery providing assistance must have approximately the same voltage as the flat vehicle battery (12-volts) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery).
- Never charge a vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.
- Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.
- Position the jump leads so that they never come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.
- Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

NOTICE

Please observe the following in order to avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system:

- A short circuit can be caused if the jump leads are wrongly connected.
- The vehicles must not touch each other, as any contact could mean that electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. ◁

Jump lead connection point (positive terminal)

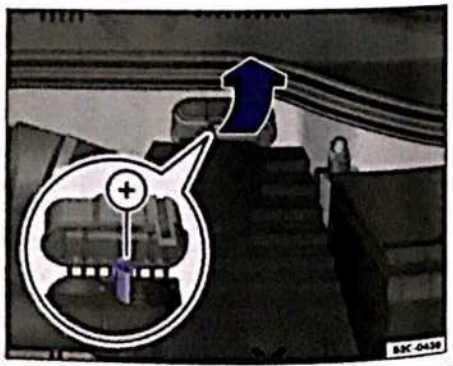


Fig. 286 In the engine compartment underneath a cover: jump lead connection point (positive terminal). ▶

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 342.

In vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, there is a jump lead connection point (positive terminal) → Fig. 286 ⊕ under a cover in the engine compartment for connecting the *red* jump lead.

The vehicle can be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle only via this jump lead connection point. ◁

Jump lead connection point (earth connection)

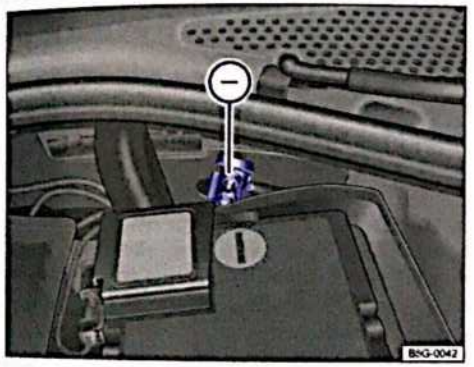


Fig. 287 In the engine compartment: jump lead connection point (earth connection).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 342.

There is a jump lead connection point (earth connection) in the engine compartment to connect the *black* jump lead → Fig. 287 ⊖.

The vehicle can be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle only via this jump lead connection point. ◁

How to start the engine using jump leads

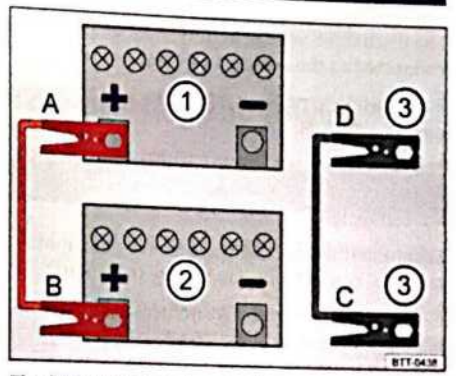


Fig. 288 Diagram showing how to connect jump leads on the vehicle providing the jump start (battery in engine compartment).

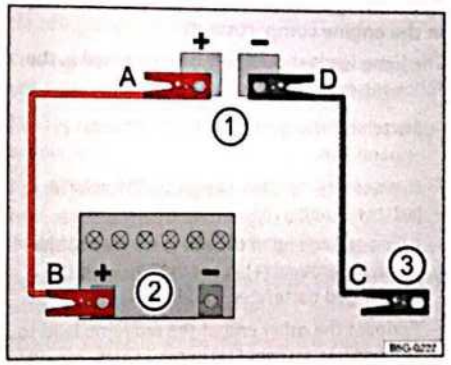


Fig. 289 Diagram showing how to connect jump leads to the vehicle providing the jump start (battery in luggage compartment).

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 342.

Key for Fig. 288 and Fig. 289:

① Vehicle with discharged battery that is being jump-started.

② Vehicle with vehicle battery that is supplying power and jump-starting the other vehicle.

③ Suitable earth connection: preferred jump start connection point (earth connection) → page 343. If this is not available, attach to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

solid metal part which is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Before using jump leads, check the battery window → page 363.

The vehicles must not touch. Otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Ensure that the battery clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about a minute.

If the engine still does not start, seek expert assistance.

Connecting jump leads (vehicles with battery in the engine compartment)

The jump leads should only be connected in the following order **A – B – C – D** → Fig. 288.

- Switch off the ignition in both vehicles → page 166.
- If necessary, open the cover on the vehicle battery → page 363.
- Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle with the discharged battery → Fig. 288 ① → ▲.
- Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing the jump start → Fig. 288 ②.
- Preferably connect one end of the *black* jump lead → Fig. 288 ③ to a suitable jump lead connection point (earth connection) or if this is not available to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself.
- Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead → Fig. 288 ③ to a jump lead connection point (earth connection) → page 343 on the vehicle with the discharged battery, or if this is not available, to the screwed-in towing eye at the front → page 345, or to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself → ▲.
- Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Connecting jump leads (vehicles with battery in the luggage compartment)

The jump leads should only be connected in the following order **A – B – C – D** → Fig. 289.

- Switch off the ignition in both vehicles → page 166.
- Fold open the cover of the jump lead connection point in the engine compartment → page 342.
- Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the jump lead connection point (positive terminal, +) of the vehicle with the discharged battery → Fig. 289 ① → ▲.
- Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing the jump start → Fig. 289 ②.
- Preferably connect one end of the *black* jump lead → Fig. 289 ③ to a suitable jump lead connection point (earth connection) or if this is not available to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself.
- Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead → Fig. 289 ③ to a jump lead connection point (earth connection) on the vehicle with the discharged battery → page 343, or if this is not available, to the screwed-in towing eye at the front → page 345, or to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself → ▲.
- Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead to the jump lead connection point (earth connection) on the vehicle with the discharged battery → page 343 → Fig. 289 ① → ▲.
- Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing assistance and let it run at idle.
- Start the engine of the car with the discharged vehicle battery and wait two or three minutes until the engine is running "smoothly". ▶

Removing the jump leads

- Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
- Turn on the air conditioning system or heating and fresh air system blowers and the rear window heater in the vehicle with the discharged battery. This helps to minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
- When the engine is running, the jump leads should only be removed in the order **D – C – B – A** → Fig. 288 or → Fig. 289.
- Close the battery cover or fold back the cover of the jump lead connection point → page 342.
- If required, unscrew the front towing eye → page 345.

⚠ WARNING

Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to serious injuries. Please observe the following in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always observe the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the vehicle battery → page 363, *Vehicle battery*.
- Always wear suitable eye protection and protective gloves; never lean over the battery.
- Attach the connector cables in the correct order – the positive cable first, followed by the negative.
- Never connect the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or to the brake lines.
- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive vehicle battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle.
- Check the window on the vehicle battery using a torch if necessary. If the display is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks.
- Do not use jump leads to start the engine if the vehicle battery is damaged or if it is or has ever been frozen. <

Tow-starting and towing

🕮 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Notes on tow-starting 346
- Notes on towing 346
- Fitting the rear towing eye 347
- Fitting the front towing eye 348
- Driving notes on towing 349

Tow-starts are vehicle starts by towing the vehicle using another vehicle.

Towing denotes the pulling of a vehicle that is not suitable for driving using another vehicle.

Always observe legal requirements when towing or tow-starting.

For technical reasons, the vehicle must not be tow-started with a discharged battery. Use jump leads to start the engine instead → page 342.

Vehicles with Keyless Access must only be towed with the ignition switched on.

Towing a vehicle when the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on discharges the vehicle battery. Depending on the vehicle battery charge level, the drop in voltage can be large enough after just a few minutes that electrical consumers in the vehicle will no longer function, e.g. the hazard warning lights. In vehicle with Keyless Access, the steering wheel can lock → ▲.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle that has no power supply.

- Never switch off the ignition using the starter button when the vehicle is being towed. Otherwise the electronic steering column lock could engage suddenly. You will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. This can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- If the power supply to the towed vehicle is disconnected, stop towing immediately and seek expert assistance.

⚠ WARNING

If a vehicle is being towed, the vehicle handling and braking effect will change significantly. Please observe the following in order to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injuries:

- Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:
  - You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Always be careful not to drive into the vehicle that is pulling your vehicle.
  - You will need to turn the steering wheel more vigorously as the power-assisted steering function is not working.
- Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle
  - Accelerate carefully and gently.
  - Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
  - Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.

NOTICE

- Remove and install the cover and the towing eye carefully so as to avoid damage to the vehicle, e.g. the paintwork.
- Unburnt fuel can enter the catalytic converter and damage it while the vehicle is being towed. ◁

Notes on tow-starting

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 345.

Vehicles should not be tow-started wherever possible. Use jump leads to start the engine instead → page 342.

For technical reasons, the following vehicles **cannot** be tow-started:

- Vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox.
- Vehicles with the Keyless Access locking and starting system: if the vehicle battery is flat, as the steering then remains locked and the electronic parking brake and electronic steering column lock cannot be disengaged.
- If the vehicle battery has discharged, the engine control units will not function properly.

However, if the vehicle still has to be tow-started (manual gearbox only):

- Engage second or third gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Once both vehicles are in motion, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and put the gear into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

NOTICE

When tow-starting, unburnt fuel can enter the catalytic converter and damage it.

ⓘ The vehicle can only be tow-started when the electronic parking brake is switched off and, if applicable, when the electronic steering column lock is released. If the power supply fails or if there are faults in the electrical system, you may need to use jump leads to start the engine to release the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock. ◁

Notes on towing

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 345.

Tow rope or tow bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow bar. Only use a tow rope if you do not have a tow bar.

The tow rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the strain on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope or tow bar to the specially provided towing eyes or to the towing bracket. ▶

Vehicles with a **factory-fitted towing bracket must only** use tow bars that are specially designed to fit a ball head → page 302.

If your own vehicle has to be towed:

Check whether the vehicle can be towed → page 347, *When should your vehicle not be towed?*

- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the neutral position → page 172 or move the selector lever to **N** → page 174.
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed at speeds faster than 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed further than 50 km.
- Vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox may only be towed by the breakdown truck with the front wheels raised.

Towing vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION) may be towed with a tow bar or tow rope. If the vehicle is towed with the rear or front axle raised, the engine must be switched off otherwise the drive train could be damaged.

When should your vehicle not be towed?

- If, due to damage, the vehicle gearbox no longer contains any lubricant.
- If the battery is flat, this means that the steering system remains locked and the electronic parking brake and electronic steering column lock, if applied, cannot be released.
- If the distance to be towed is further than 50 km.
- If the steering function or the operating clearance of the wheels cannot be ensured, e.g. after an accident.

Please observe the following when towing another vehicle:

- Comply with legal regulations.
- Observe the information on towing contained in the owner's manual for the other vehicle.

ⓘ The vehicle can only be towed when the electronic parking brake is switched off and the electronic steering column lock is released. If the power supply fails or if there are faults in the electrical system, it may be necessary to use jump leads → page 342 to start the engine in order to switch off the electronic parking brake and release the electronic steering column lock. ◁

Fitting the rear towing eye

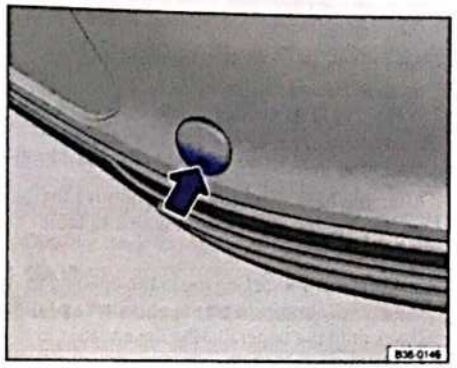


Fig. 290 On the right-hand side of the rear bumper: removing the cover.

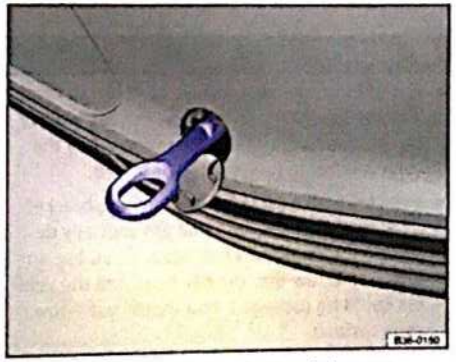


Fig. 291 On the right-hand side of the rear bumper: screwed-in towing eye.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 345.

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right of the rear bumper → Fig. 290. In *vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket* there is no mounting for the removable towing eye behind the cover. To tow, swivel or fit and use the ball head → page 299, → ⓘ.

Observe the notes on towing → page 346. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Fitting the towing eye at the rear (vehicles without factory-fitted towing bracket)

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment → page 327.
- Push the lower area of the cover → Fig. 290 in the direction of the arrow to release the cover.
- Remove the cover and leave it hanging from the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye **anticlockwise** into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible → Fig. 291 → ⓘ. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it with a suitable object **clockwise**.
- Insert the lower locking lug in the opening in the bumper and push on the upper area of the cover until the upper locking lug engages in the bumper.
- If necessary clean the towing eye and place them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

NOTICE

- The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is being tow-started or towed.
- Vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket must use **only** tow bars that are specially designed for fitting to a ball head. If you use an unsuitable tow bar, the ball head and the vehicle could be damaged. You should use a tow rope instead. ◁

Fitting the front towing eye

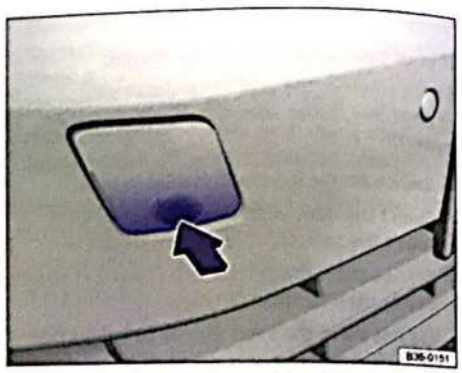


Fig. 292 On the right-hand side of the front bumper: removing the cover.

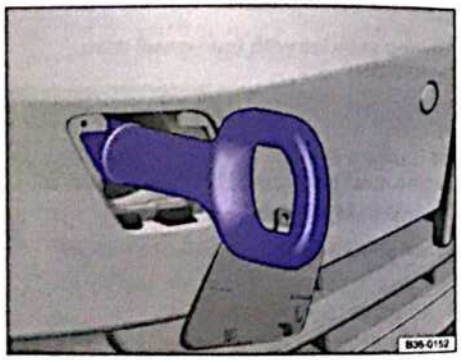


Fig. 293 On the right-hand side of the front bumper: screwed-in towing eye.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 345.

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right of the front bumper → Fig. 292.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Observe the notes on towing → page 346.

Fitting the towing eye at front

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment → page 327.
- Press at the bottom of the cover → Fig. 292 (arrow) to release the cover.
- Remove the cover and leave it hanging from the vehicle. ▶
- Turn the towing eye **anticlockwise** into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible → ⓘ. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it with a suitable object **clockwise**.
- Insert the lower locking lug in the opening in the bumper and push on the upper area of the cover until the upper locking lug engages in the bumper.
- If necessary clean the towing eye and place them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

NOTICE

The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is being tow-started or towed. ◁

Driving notes on towing

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 345.

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

When driving, ensure that you do not pull too hard on the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking movements. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

It is still possible to activate the turn signals in a vehicle that is being towed, even if the hazard warning lights are switched on. To do so, operate the turn signal lever in the required direction while the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights will not flash while the turn signal is being used. The hazard warning lights will start flashing automatically as soon as the turn signal lever is moved back to the neutral position.

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:

- Leave the ignition of the vehicle being towed switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking, to enable the electronic parking brake to be switched off, and to ensure that the turn signals, windscreen wipers and washer system can be used.
- As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.
- You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Do not drive too close to the towing vehicle.
- Observe the information and notes in the owner's manual of the towing vehicle.

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid any sudden driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.
- Observe any information and notes in the owner's manual of the towed vehicle. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Checking and refilling

In the engine compartment

Safety notes on working in the engine compartment

Always park the vehicle on a level and stable surface before carrying out any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a motor vehicle is a hazardous area. Do not work on the engine and in the engine compartment unless you are familiar with the task, aware of the general safety procedures and have the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Serious injuries can be caused by carrying out work incorrectly → ▲. The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements during service work can cause serious injury.

- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not secured against rolling away. If you are working underneath the vehicle while the wheels are on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level surface, the wheels must be blocked and the ignition switched off.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this task and can fail, which can lead to serious injuries.
- The start/stop system must have been deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.

- The utmost care and attention must be paid when carrying out any work and you must follow the general safety rules. Never take any risks.
- Never carry out any work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop. Serious injuries can result from work that has not been carried out properly.
- Never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the engine compartment.
- Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the bonnet.
- Hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can burn the skin.
- Note the following before opening the bonnet once the engine has cooled down:
  - Switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.
  - Switch off the ignition.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the cap on the coolant expansion tank slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting gentle downward pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids can start a fire.

⚠ WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, burns, serious injuries and death!

- Never short circuit the electric system. The vehicle battery could explode.
- To reduce the risk of an electric shock and serious injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch the electrical cables in the ignition system.

⚠ WARNING

There are rotating components in the engine compartment that can cause serious injury.

- Never place your hand near these components or in the radiator fan. Touching the rotary blades can result in serious injuries. The fan is temperature-controlled and could start automatically - even when the engine has been switched off and the key removed from the ignition!
- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always be particularly careful.
  - Always ensure that no body parts, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can be caught up in rotating engine components. Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull clothes in tightly to avoid them getting caught in the engine compartment.
  - Always depress the accelerator very carefully and never without due consideration. The vehicle could move, even if the electronic parking brake is applied.
- Always ensure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment. Any forgotten items can cause malfunctions, engine damage and fires.

⚠ WARNING

Additional insulating materials such as covers in the engine compartment could disrupt the operation of the engine, start fires and lead to severe injuries.

- Never cover the motor with any insulating materials.

⚠ WARNING

Operating fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are highly flammable and can cause fires and serious injuries!

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the engine compartment.
- Never work near naked flames or sparks.
- Never spill fluids onto the engine. They could ignite on hot engine components and hence cause injuries.
- Please note the following when carrying out any work on the fuel system or the electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the vehicle batteries. Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked when the vehicle battery is disconnected as otherwise the anti-theft alarm will be activated.
  - Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other open flames.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.

NOTICE

When topping up or changing service fluids, please ensure that the correct fluids are filled into the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. So you should regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If there are spots of oil or other fluids on the ground, the vehicle should be inspected by a qualified workshop. Any spilt service fluids must be disposed of properly.

Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment

Checklist

The following steps should always be carried out in the specified order before working in the engine compartment → ▲:

- ✓ Park the vehicle on a level and stable surface.
- ✓ Depress and hold the brake pedal until you have switched off the ignition.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 232.
- ✓ Move the gear lever to the neutral position → page 171 or move the selector lever to P → page 174.
- ✓ Switch off the ignition → page 166.
- ✓ Allow the engine to cool sufficiently.

Scanned by CamScanner

Checklist (Continued)

✓ Children and other people should be kept well away from the engine compartment.

✓ Ensure that the vehicle cannot roll away unexpectedly.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

Opening and closing the bonnet

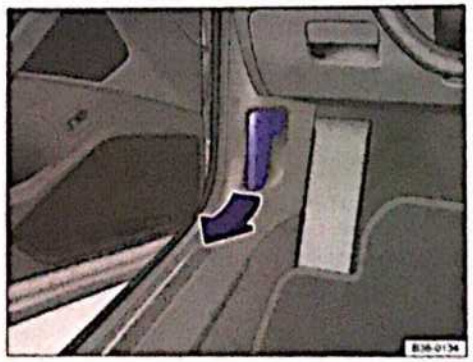


Fig. 294 The bonnet release lever is located in the driver side footwell.



Fig. 295 The bonnet control lever is located above the radiator grille.

Opening the bonnet

– Ensure that the wiper arms are positioned on the windscreen before opening the bonnet →ⓘ.

– Open the driver door and pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 294. The bonnet is released from its lock by a spring mechanism →⚠.

– Lift the bonnet at the control lever → Fig. 295 (arrow) and open fully. The bonnet is held in the open position by the gas-filled strut.

Closing the bonnet

– To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the gas strut pressure →⚠.

– Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier from a height of approximately 30 cm – *do not* press it down!

If the bonnet has not closed properly, open it again and close it correctly.

The bonnet sits flush with the body parts around it when it is closed properly. The bonnet is no longer highlighted in the instrument cluster display or the display disappears → page 353.

⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- If you notice that the bonnet is not closed properly while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and close the bonnet.
- Therefore the bonnet should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its path.

NOTICE

- The bonnet should only be opened when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen and when they are switched off in order to avoid damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms.
- Always return the windscreen wiper arms to the windscreen before starting your journey.

Display



Fig. 296 Schematic view in the instrument cluster display: the bonnet is open or not closed properly.

A symbol in the instrument cluster display → Fig. 296 indicates if the bonnet is open or not closed properly.

Do not drive on! If needed, lift the bonnet again, and close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe the visual warnings can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore visual warnings.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

The symbol can differ depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

Service fluids and consumables

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. tyres, coolant and vehicle batteries, are being constantly developed. The same applies to camshaft drive belts, engine oils and spark plugs for combustion engines. For this reason, service fluids and consumables should be replaced at a qualified workshop. A Volkswagen dealership is always kept up to date on innovations.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable service fluids and consumables, and the incorrect use of these fluids and consumables, can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Service fluids must be kept in their original sealed container.
- Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.
- Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.
- Always observe and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are toxic and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions.

NOTICE

- Only use suitable service fluids for refilling. Never use the wrong service fluid. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.
- Optional equipment and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. The engine may overheat at high ambient temperatures and high engine loads.

Leaking service fluids can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected in suitable containers and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

Scanned by CamScanner

Washer fluid

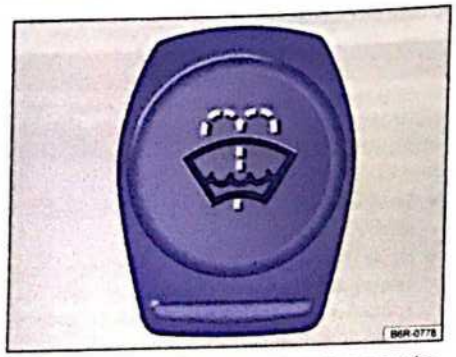


Fig. 297 In the engine compartment: cap on the washer fluid reservoir.

The windscreen washer fluid level should be checked regularly and topped up as necessary.

A filter can be found in the feed throat of the washer fluid reservoir. The filter keeps large dirt particles away from the windscreen washer jets when refilling. The filter should only be removed for cleaning. If the filter is damaged or cannot be found when refilling, these dirt particles can reach the system and block the washer jets.

- Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.
- The washer fluid reservoir is identified by the symbol on the cap → Fig. 297.
- Check whether there is enough windscreen washer fluid in the reservoir.
- To fill it up, mix clean water (not distilled water) with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen → ⓘ. Observe the dilution instructions on the packaging.
- At low outside temperature, add a special anti-freeze agent so that the liquid cannot freeze → ▲.

Capacities

The capacity of the washer fluid reservoir is approximately 3 litres or approximately 4.7 litres in vehicles with a headlight washer system.

The washer fluid reservoir has a capacity of approx. 4.4 litres, depending on the vehicle equipment level.

⚠ WARNING

Never mix coolant additive or other unsuitable additives into the windscreen washer fluid. These may leave an oily film on the screen, restricting the field of vision.

- Use clean, clear water (not distilled water) with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen. Volkswagen dealerships stock washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen.
- A suitable anti-freeze agent should be added to the windscreen washer fluid if necessary.

ⓘ NOTICE

- Never mix other cleaning agents with the cleaning agents recommended by Volkswagen. This can cause the ingredients to separate and block the windscreen washer jets.
- When filling up service fluids, please make sure that the correct service fluids are filled through the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage. ◁

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Warning and indicator lamps 355
- Engine oil specifications 356
- Changing engine oil 357
- Engine oil consumption 357
- Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil 358

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of engine oil can cause serious burns and other injuries.

- Always wear eye protection when handling engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Engine oil must be kept in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of. ▶
- Never use empty food containers, bottles or other containers to store engine oil as other people may then drink the engine oil.
- Regular contact with engine oil can damage the skin. Skin that has been in contact with engine oil should be washed thoroughly with water and soap.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can scald skin severely. Always allow the engine to cool down.

Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment. ◁

Warning and indicator lamps

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 354.

Warning lamps and text messages may be shown in the instrument cluster display. Acoustic warnings may also occur.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Engine oil level is too low. Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level → page 358.

Flashes	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Engine oil pressure too low.
	Do not drive on!
	Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level.
	- Do *not* drive on or remain at idling speed if the warning lamp is flashing even if the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.

Flashes	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Fault in the engine oil system.
	Go to a qualified workshop. The engine oil sensor should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly in the instrument cluster as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Engine oil specifications

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 354.

The engine oil used must correspond exactly to specifications → Booklet *Service schedule*.

The correct engine oil is important for the function and service life of the engine. A special high quality multigrade oil has been filled at the factory and this can normally be used as an all-season oil.

If possible, use only Volkswagen-approved engine oil → ⓘ. To comply with flexible oil change service requirements, only refill with approved flexible service engine oil that meets with the corresponding VW standard → table on page 356. The engine oils listed are **multigrade high-lubricity oils**.

Engine oils are constantly being developed and improved. A Volkswagen dealership is always kept up to date on innovations. Volkswagen therefore recommends having engine oil changes done by a Volkswagen dealership.

The quality of the engine oil is not only tailored to the requirements of engines and exhaust gas treatment systems, but also to fuel quality. Due to the way in which a combustion engine works, engine oil always comes into contact with combustion residues and fuel, which has a knock-on effect on the ageing process of the oil.

The quality of fuels can vary greatly between individual markets and this must be taken into account when selecting the correct engine oil.

The use of engine oils compliant with the VW 504 00 and VW 507 00 specifications requires a fuel quality compliant with EN 228 (petrol) and EN 590 (diesel), or fuel of an equivalent quality. **Engine oils compliant with VW 504 00 and VW 507 00 are therefore unsuitable for use in a large number of markets.**

	Permitted engine oil specifications → ⓘ		*Alternative engine oil specifications → ⓘ*
Engine type	**Flexible service QI6 (LongLife)**	**Fixed service QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4, QI7 (based on time/distance travelled)**	***Only in the EU, Switzerland, Norway, Japan and Australia*[a]**
Petrol engines	VW 504 00	VW 502 00	VW 504 00
Diesel engines **with** diesel particulate filter[b]	VW 507 00	VW 507 00	–
Diesel engines **without** diesel particulate filter[b]	VW 507 00	VW 505 01	VW 507 00
Diesel engines **with** particle reduction system[b]	VW 507 00	VW 505 01	VW 507 00
E85 MultiFuel engines	–	VW 502 00	–

a) Alternative engine oil specifications may only be used in fixed services QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4 and QI7, and only when fuel of a quality compliant with EN 228 (petrol) and EN 590 (diesel), or fuel of an equivalent quality, is available in the particular country.

b) You can also check with a qualified workshop if you are unsure whether your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particulate filter or a particle reduction system. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

NOTICE

- Do not add any additional lubricants to the engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives is not covered by the warranty.
- Only those engine oil specifications that have been approved for use with the engine should be used. Using other engine oils can cause engine damage.
- Another engine oil can be used in the event of an emergency if the listed engine oils (→ table on page 356) are not available. To avoid damaging the engine, a maximum quantity of 0.5 litres of the following engine oil may be used only once until the next oil change:
  - Petrol engines: standards ACEAA3/B4 or API SN (API SM).
  - Diesel engines: standards ACEA C3 or API CJ-4. ◁

Changing engine oil

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 354.

The engine oil must be changed regularly in accordance with the specifications in the service schedule → Booklet *Service schedule*.

The engine oil and filter change should be carried out by a qualified workshop due to the special tools and knowledge required, this also applies to the disposal of used oil. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

More details on the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Additives in the engine oil can cause new engine oil to discolour quickly. This is normal and does not mean that the engine oil should be changed more frequently.

▲ WARNING

If, in exceptional cases, you have to carry out an oil change yourself, please observe the following:

- Always wear eye protection.
- Always allow the engine to cool down completely to avoid burns.
- Avoid raising your arms when removing the oil drain plug with your fingers to help prevent oil from running down your arm.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be at least large enough to hold the entire quantity of engine oil required for refilling.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.

Before changing the engine oil, first find out where old oil can be disposed of properly near you.

Used oil must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. Never dispose of old oil in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways. ◁

Engine oil consumption

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 354.

Engine oil consumption can vary from engine to engine and can change during the working life of an engine.

The vehicle may consume up to 1.0 litre of engine oil per 2,000 km, depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used. In new vehicles, consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must therefore be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before long journeys.

When the engine is subject to particularly high loads, the oil level must be kept within the upper permissible area → Fig. 298 Ⓒ, for instance during extended motorway driving in summer, when towing a trailer → page 299 or when climbing mountain passes. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil

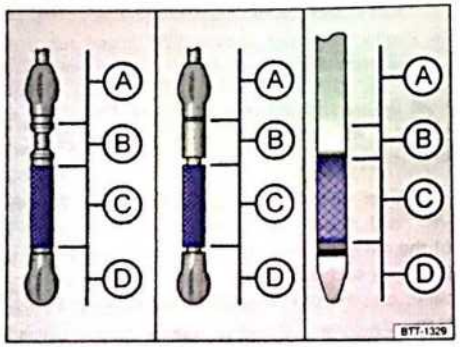


Fig. 298 Oil dipsticks with engine oil marks (different types).

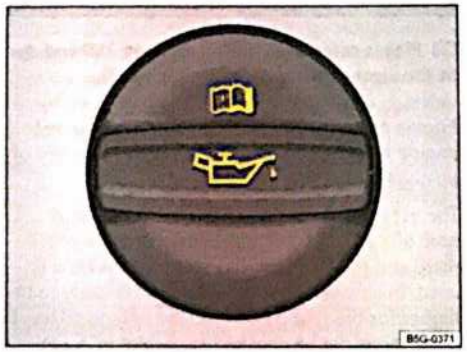


Fig. 299 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap.

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ on page 350 and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 354.

Key to Fig. 298:

Ⓐ Engine oil level too high – visit qualified workshop.

Ⓑ Engine oil must not be refilled.

Ⓒ Engine oil level OK.

Ⓓ Engine oil level is too low – refill engine oil.

Checklist

Carry out the steps in the specified order → ⚠:

1. With the engine at **operating temperature**, park the vehicle on a level surface to ensure that the engine oil reading is correct.
2. Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
3. Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.
4. Identify the engine oil filler cap and oil dipstick. The engine oil filler opening bears the symbol on the cap → Fig. 299 and the oil dipstick has a coloured handle. If you cannot find the cap and dipstick please contact a qualified workshop.
5. Pull the dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe it off with a clean cloth.
6. Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube again as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the upper end of the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.
7. Pull the dipstick out again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick → Fig. 298 as follows:

   Ⓐ Engine oil level too high. Observe any messages that are on the instrument cluster display and **visit qualified workshop** → ⓘ.

   Ⓑ **Do not refill engine oil** → ⓘ. Continue with step 16.

   Ⓒ Engine oil level OK. Engine oil can be refilled, e.g. if the engine is subjected to high loads → page 357, up to the **upper limit of this area**. Continue with step 8 or 16.

   Ⓒ Engine oil level is too low. **Engine oil must be refilled.** Continue with step 8.
8. After reading off the engine oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go.
9. Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap → Fig. 299.
10. Only the engine oil expressly approved by Volkswagen for this engine should be gradually refilled in small quantities (no more than 0.5 l).
11. In order to avoid overfilling, wait for approximately one minute after each refill step to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil sump up to the marking on the engine oil dipstick.

Checklist (Continued)

12. Read the engine oil level from the dipstick again before refilling with a further small quantity of engine oil. Never overfill engine oil → ⓘ.
13. After refilling, the engine oil level should be in the middle of area → Fig. 298 Ⓒ. It should not be above Ⓒ, in area Ⓑ, and must not be in area Ⓐ → ⓘ.
14. If too much engine oil has been added inadvertently and the engine oil level is in area → Fig. 298 Ⓐ, **do not start the engine.** Inform a qualified workshop and seek expert assistance if necessary.
15. After refilling, close the engine oil filler opening with the cap.
16. Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the upper end of the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.
17. Close the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine components. It can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- If engine oil is spilt on cold engine parts it can heat up and ignite when the engine is running.
- Always ensure that the engine oil filler cap is securely tightened after refilling, and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube. This will prevent the engine oil from draining out on to hot engine components when the engine is running.

NOTICE

- If too much engine oil has been added inadvertently and the engine oil level is in area → Fig. 298 Ⓐ, do not start the engine. Inform a qualified workshop and seek expert assistance if necessary. The catalytic converter and the engine could otherwise be damaged.
- When filling up service fluids, please make sure that the correct service fluids are filled through the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

The engine oil level must not be in area → Fig. 298 Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Coolant specification 360
– Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant 360

Do not work on the cooling system unless you are familiar with the task, aware of the general safety procedures and have the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Serious injuries can be caused by carrying out work incorrectly → ⚠. The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic.

- Engine coolant should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.
- Never store engine coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine coolant.
- The engine coolant must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.
- Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will also no longer function.

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected then disposed of properly and in an environmentally responsible way.

Scanned by CamScanner

Coolant specification

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 359.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive **G 13** (TL-VW 774 J). The coolant additive is dyed purple. This mixture of water and coolant additive gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. The mixture also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

In order to protect the coolant system, the proportion of coolant additive must *always* be at least 40%, even if anti-freeze is not required in warm weather and warm climates.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of anti-freeze additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection and the cooling effect.

When refilling the coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% coolant additive G 13 or G 12 plus-plus (TL-VW 774 G) (both of which are dyed purple) must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection → ⓘ. Mixing G 13 with the coolant additives G 12 plus (TL-VW 774 F), G 12 (dyed red) or G 11 (dyed blue-green) will significantly decrease the level of corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided → ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

Insufficient anti-freeze in the coolant system can cause the engine to break down and cause serious injuries.

- **Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.**
- **Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will also no longer function.**

❗ NOTICE

Never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolants that have not been approved by Volkswagen. Mixing other coolants could cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

- If the liquid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink (colouring results from mixing the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but for example, brown instead of purple, G 13 has been mixed with an unsuitable coolant additive. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case. Failure to observe this point can result in serious faults or engine damage.

Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt operating fluids must be collected and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment. ◁

Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant

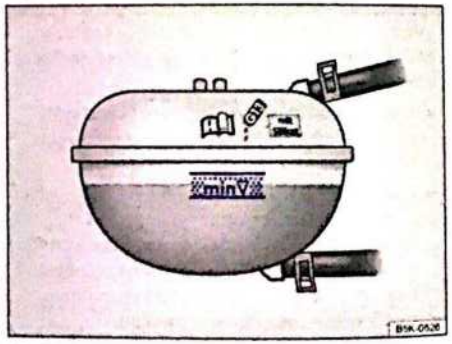


Fig. 300 In the engine compartment: markings on the coolant expansion tank. ▶

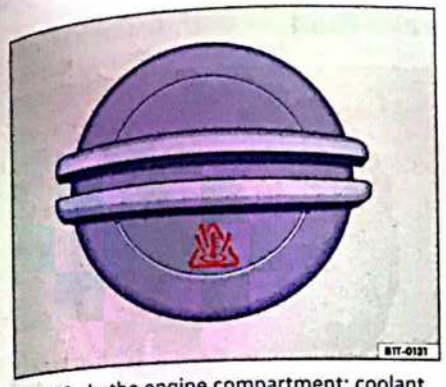


Fig. 301 In the engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 359.

The warning lamp for the engine coolant will light up if the engine coolant level is too low.

Preparation

- Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface.
- Allow the engine to cool down → ▲.
- Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350.
- The coolant expansion tank is identified by the symbol on the cap → Fig. 301.

Checking the coolant level

- When the engine is cold, check the coolant level on the side markings of the engine coolant expansion tank → Fig. 300. The coolant level must be between the marks.
- Refill the coolant if the liquid level in the coolant expansion tank is below the minimum marking ("min"). When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the top line of the marked area.

Refilling coolant

- Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth on the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
- Unscrew the cap carefully → ▲.
- Refill only **new** coolant according to the Volkswagen specification → page 360 → ⓘ.
- Only top up coolant if there is coolant residue in the expansion tank. If this is not observed, the engine could be damaged. If you cannot see any coolant in the expansion tank **do not drive on**. Seek professional assistance.
- If you can see coolant residue in the coolant expansion tank, refill coolant until the level remains stable.
- The coolant level must be between the marks on the coolant expansion tank → Fig. 300. **Do not fill up beyond the top edge of the marked area** → ⓘ.
- Close the cap tightly.
- If in an emergency you do not have access to the required specification → page 360, do not use any other coolant additive! Instead, initially refill with **distilled water** → ⓘ only. Then add the correct proportion of coolant additive as soon as possible → page 360.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns.

- **Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or engine coolant coming out of the engine compartment. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.**
- **Always allow the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the bonnet. Hot components can burn the skin.**
- **The following points should be noted before opening the bonnet once it has cooled down:**
  - **Switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or move the manual gear lever to the neutral position.**
  - **Switch off the ignition.**
  - **Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.**
- **The engine cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and other injuries.**
  - **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while exerting some downward pressure on the cap.**
  - **Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.** ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids can start a fire. In certain circumstances, the ethylene glycol in the engine can catch fire.

NOTICE

- Refill only with distilled water. All other types of water can cause corrosion in the engine due to the chemical components contained therein. This can also lead to engine failure. If any other type of water is refilled, the fluid in the engine cooling system should be completely replaced immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Do not fill coolant above the top of the marked area → Fig. 300. Otherwise the excess coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot and could cause damage.
- If a large amount of coolant has been lost, do not refill the coolant until the engine has *cooled completely*. Heavy coolant loss is an indication of leaks in the engine cooling system. The engine cooling system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- Do not top up with coolant if there is no more coolant in the coolant expansion tank. Air could have entered the cooling system. Do not drive on! Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- When filling up service fluids, please make sure that the correct service fluids are filled through the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage. ◁

Brake fluid

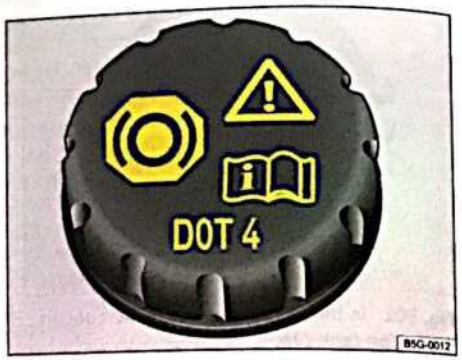


Fig. 302 In the engine compartment: cap on the brake fluid container.

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users depends on having a brake system that functions properly at all times → ▲.

Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed a brake fluid that has been optimised for the brake system in the vehicle. To ensure optimal operation of the brake system, Volkswagen recommends the use of brake fluid compliant with **VW standard 501 14**.

Before using a particular brake fluid, check that the specifications printed on the container correspond to the vehicle requirements.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 is available from Volkswagen dealerships.

If this brake fluid is not available and it is necessary to use another high-quality brake fluid instead, brake fluid that is compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 can be used.

Not all brake fluids that are compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 have the same chemical composition. ▶

Some of these brake fluids may contain chemicals that can damage or destroy brake system components over time.

Volkswagen therefore recommends the use of brake fluid that is compliant with **VW standard 501 14** to ensure sustained optimal operation of the brake system.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 fulfils the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

Brake fluid level

Brake fluid level is too low. **Do not drive on!** Check the brake fluid level.

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX marking on the brake fluid container or above the MIN marking → ▲.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models as engine components may partially conceal the brake fluid container. If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, seek expert assistance.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid should be changed by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be used.

WARNING

Brake failure or reduced braking effect can be caused by the brake fluid level being too low or by brake fluid that is too old or unsuitable.

- The brake system and brake fluid level must be checked regularly.
- The brake fluid should be changed regularly.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Please ensure that the correct brake fluid is used. Only use brake fluid that is explicitly compliant with VW standard 501 14.
- Any other brake fluid or a low-quality one can affect the functioning of the brakes and reduce their effectiveness.
- If a brake fluid compliant with VW standard 501 14 is not available, use a high-quality brake fluid compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4, but only in exceptional circumstances.
- The refilled brake fluid must be new.

WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic.

- In order to reduce the risk of poisoning, never use bottles or other containers to store brake fluid. These containers could encourage other people to drink out of them, even if they are labelled otherwise.
- Brake fluid must always be stored in its original sealed container and kept out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilt can damage the vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tyres. Wipe off brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled immediately from all parts of the vehicle.

Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly. ◁

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Warning lamp 364
- Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery 365
- Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery 367

The battery is a component of the electrical system and is designed to supply the vehicle with power. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

Do not work on the Electrical system unless you are familiar with the task, aware of the general safety procedures and have the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Serious injuries can be caused by carrying out work incorrectly → ▲. The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Location of the vehicle battery

Depending on the equipment level, the vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment or behind a cover in the luggage compartment.

Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	No fires, sparks, naked lights or smoking!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!
	Always keep children away from electrolyte and the battery!

⚠ WARNING

Any work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire and electric shocks. Always observe the following warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the vehicle battery.
- Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.
- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Do not smoke during the work, and never work near naked flames or sparks.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charge.
- Never short circuit the battery poles.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery. It can explode. Damaged vehicle batteries must be replaced as soon as possible.
- Damaged or frozen vehicle batteries must be replaced immediately. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- In vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment: ensure that the gas discharge hose is properly connected to the battery.

NOTICE

- Do not allow direct sunlight onto the vehicle battery for an extended period as the UV rays could damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the vehicle battery from frost. If it freezes it will be damaged.

When you start the engine after the vehicle battery has been totally discharged or after a successful jump start, you may find that system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged. ◁

Warning lamp

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 364.

Warning lamps and text messages may be shown in the instrument cluster display. Acoustic warnings may also occur. ▶

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy → ▲
	Fault in the alternator. Go to a qualified workshop. Have the electrical system checked. Switch off any electrical consumers that are not required. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator while the vehicle is in motion.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly in the instrument cluster as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds. ◁

Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery

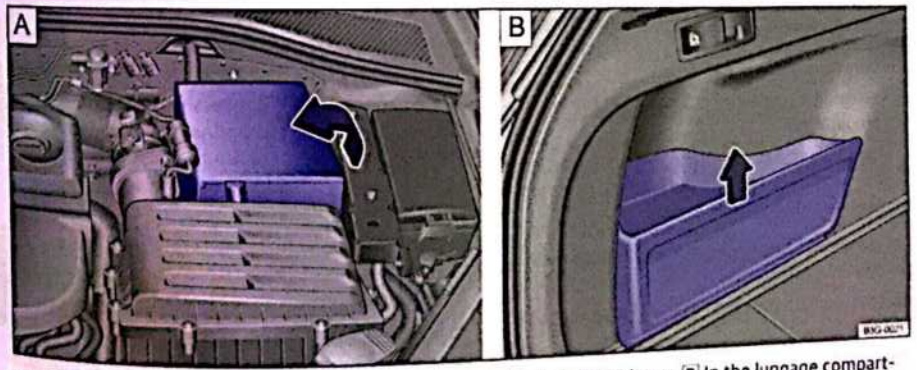


Fig. 303 [A] In the engine compartment: lifting the vehicle battery sleeve. [B] In the luggage compartment: removing the vehicle battery cover ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

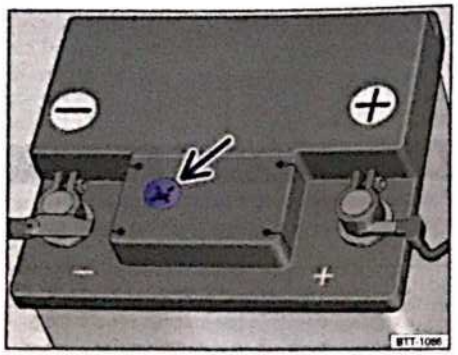


Fig. 304 A typical window on the top of the vehicle battery.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 364.

The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older vehicle batteries. The vehicle battery is otherwise maintenance-free.

Vehicles with a start/stop system → page 171 are fitted with special batteries. For technical reasons, it might not be possible to check the electrolyte level in these batteries.

Preparation

- Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment → page 350.
- Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 350 or in vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment open the boot lid → page 102.

Opening the battery cover (vehicle battery in engine compartment)

To *open*, fold up the cover in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 303 A.

To *close*, fold the cover against the direction of the arrow → Fig. 303 A.

Removing the battery cover (vehicle battery in luggage compartment)

- The vehicle battery is located behind a cover in the luggage compartment → Fig. 303 B.
- To *remove*, lift the cover upwards in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 303 B.
- To *install*, fit the cover in the original position in the opposite direction of the arrow → Fig. 303 B.

Checking the electrolyte level

- Ensure that enough light is available for you to clearly see the colours in the round viewer on the top of the battery → Fig. 304 (arrow). In vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, you can, if necessary, use a mirror to see the colour indicator better. Never use naked flames or glowing matter (e.g. cigarettes) as a light source.
- The colour displayed in the round viewer changes according to the electrolyte level in the battery.

Colour display	Action
Light yellow or without colour	The electrolyte level of the vehicle is too low. The vehicle battery should be checked and replaced by a qualified workshop if necessary.
Black	The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery is correct.

⚠ WARNING

Any work on the vehicle battery can cause serious chemical burns, explosions and electric shocks.

- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Never tilt the vehicle battery. Electrolyte may spill out of the battery vents and cause chemical burns.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- If acid is spilt in your eye or on your skin, rinse immediately for several minutes with cold water. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- If acid is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately. ◁

Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ on page 350 and ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 364.

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop, as the technology used in factory-fitted batteries requires voltage-limited charging → ▲. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If a vehicle battery has to be replaced, discuss the electromagnetic compatibility, size and necessary servicing, output and safety requirements for the new vehicle battery with a Volkswagen dealership before purchase.

Only maintenance-free vehicle batteries compliant with the standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 should be used. These standards must be dated July 2012 or later.

In vehicles with a special vehicle battery, e.g. *vehicles with a start/stop system* → page 171, the vehicle battery should be replaced only with a vehicle battery with the same specifications.

Have the vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

The battery in *vehicles with a start/stop system* must always be replaced by a qualified workshop, as the vehicle electronics must also be adjusted at the same time. Only qualified workshops have the technology required to carry out this adjustment correctly. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

Please observe the following if the vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition.
- Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery in order to avoid triggering the anti-theft alarm.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable → ▲.

Connecting the vehicle battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition before reconnecting the vehicle battery.
- First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative cable → ▲.

Various indicator lamps may light up after the vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. They will go out if you drive a short distance at a speed of approximately 15 – 20 km/h (10 – 12 mph). If the indicator lamps remain lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop.

If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods, the system may not able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due → page 54.

Vehicles with Keyless Access → page 91: If the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the vehicle battery, lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside. Then try to start the ignition again. Please contact an expert if the ignition cannot be switched on.

Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers

The intelligent vehicle electrical system automatically implements a range of measures to prevent the battery from discharging under high loads:

- The idling speed is increased so that the alternator provides more electricity.
- The performance of large electrical consumers may be reduced or they may be switched off completely.
- The power supply to the 12-volt sockets and the cigarette lighter is interrupted temporarily while the engine is being started.

The vehicle electrical system cannot always prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. For example when the ignition is switched on for an extended period with the engine off, or when the side or parking lights are on when the vehicle is parked for an extended period.

Battery switch-off in an accident with airbag triggered

In vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment: in the event of an accident in which the airbags are triggered, the electrical connection to the vehicle battery is disconnected automatically. This prevents short-circuiting. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

How the battery discharges

- Long periods at a standstill in which the engine is not running, especially if the ignition is switched on.
- The use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.
- When the auxiliary heater is being used → page 154.

WARNING

Incorrectly attaching the battery and using incorrect vehicle batteries can cause short circuits, fire and serious injuries.

- Always use maintenance-free and leak-proof batteries that have the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted vehicle battery.

WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is being charged.

- Vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated spaces.
- Never charge a vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- The vehicle battery has to be replaced if it has ever been frozen.
- Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.

NOTICE

- Never make or break connections between vehicle batteries if the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Never use a vehicle battery that does not correspond with the vehicle's specifications. This can damage the electrical system or electronic components, which can cause electrical faults.
- Never connect equipment that provides electricity, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket or to the cigarette lighter to charge the vehicle battery This can damage the vehicle electrical system.

Dispose of the vehicle battery as required by legislation. Batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

Electrolyte can pollute the environment. Clean up any service fluid leakages and dispose of them properly. ◁

Wheels and tyres

Tyre monitoring systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Types of tyre monitoring systems 369
- Indicator lamp for the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 370
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicator lamp 371
- Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 373
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 374

Tyre monitoring systems warn the driver about tyre pressures that are too low.

WARNING

The intelligent tyre monitoring technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Incorrect handling of the wheels and tyres can lead to a sudden loss of pressure in the tyres, tread separation and even tyre blow-out.

- Check tyre pressures regularly and always maintain the specified tyre pressure value → page 376. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Always maintain the correct cold tyre pressure as specified on the label → page 376.
- Check tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold. Adjust tyre pressure in the cold tyre to the recommended tyre pressure for the tyres installed on your vehicle as necessary → page 376.
- Check your tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.

When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.

Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.

Do not rely solely on the tyre monitoring system. Check your tyres regularly to ensure that they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of the tyre itself. ◁

Types of tyre monitoring systems

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 369.

There are 2 different tyre monitoring systems available for this vehicle. Their differing features are described below:

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

- Monitoring of the various parameters (for example rolling circumference) of all wheels using ABS sensors (indirect measurement).
- Indicator lamp (!) in the instrument cluster and text notification shown on the instrument cluster display.
- Setting the system via menus in the infotainment system → page 78.
- Operating the menu to update the system if the tyre pressure has been altered.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

- Monitoring tyre pressure by means of pressure sensors on each tyre valve (direct measurement). Tyre valve made of metal.
- Indicator lamp (!) in the instrument cluster and graphical display and text notification shown on the instrument cluster.
- Setting the system via menus in the infotainment system → page 78.
- Part load and full load pressures can be set.
- Tyre sizes can be set (if available).
- Automatic reprogramming if the tyre pressure has been altered. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Indicator lamp for the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 369.

Lit up	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
(!)	The tyre pressure of one tyre or several tyres has decreased considerably in comparison to the tyre pressure set by the driver, or the structure of the tyre is damaged. An acoustic warning will also be sounded, and a corresponding message may appear in the instrument cluster display.	**Do not drive on!** Reduce speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Do not undertake any extreme steering or braking manoeuvres! Check all wheels and tyre pressures, and correct if necessary → page 376. The damaged tyre should be replaced. The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator will have to be re-synchronised after changing the tyre pressure, or after changing one or more wheels → page 373.

Flashes	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
(!)	System faulty. Indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute and then lights continuously.	If the tyre pressure is correct after you switch the ignition off and back on again, but it is not possible to synchronise the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator and the indicator lamp is still flashing and is then lit steadily, please go to a qualified workshop. Have the system checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause tyre damage, tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the indicator lamp (!) lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check all the tyres → page 376.
- Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase wear on the tyres, reduce vehicle stability and increase the braking distance.
- Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause sudden tyre failure and lead to a tyre burst and the loss of control over the vehicle.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure of all tyres on the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure can be found on the label → page 376.
- The tyre monitoring system cannot function correctly until all cold wheels have the correct tyre pressure.
- Pressure in all tyres must always be appropriate to the vehicle load → page 376.
- Always inflate all tyres to the correct tyre pressure before every journey → page 376.
- If driven with insufficient pressure, the tyre flexes more. This could warm up the tyre to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst. This could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- High speeds and overloading of the vehicle may cause the tyres to heat up to such an extent that the tyre bursts, leading you to lose control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.

- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop and check and correct the tyre pressure → page 376.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated indicator lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Driving on unpaved roads for long periods, or a sporty driving style, can temporarily deactivate the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator. The indicator lamp shows the functional fault, but disappears if the road conditions or driving style change.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicator lamp

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 369.

If you have a flat tyre, if the tyre pressure is too low or if there is a system fault, the indicator lamp will light up or flash. Text messages may also appear in the instrument cluster display, and an acoustic warning may sound.

Lit up	Text message	Possible cause → ▲	Solution
(!)	FLAT TYRE	The pressure of at least one tyre is below 1.4 bar (20 psi/ 140 kPa) or a critical tyre pressure loss.	**Do not drive on!** Reduce speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Do not undertake any extreme steering or braking manoeuvres! Check all tyres for external damage and foreign bodies. Check the pressure of all tyres. If you do not need to change a tyre immediately, you may drive slowly to the nearest qualified workshop.
(!)	TYRE PRESSURES TOO LOW!	The warning indicates at least one tyre with a critical tyre pressure.	Check the tyre pressure of all tyres immediately. If you do not need to change a tyre immediately, you may drive at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop.

Scanned by CamScanner

Lit up	Text message	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
(!)	CHECK TYRE PRESSURES	The warning indicates at least one tyre with a reduced tyre pressure.	Check the tyre pressures on all tyres at the next opportunity and correct them → page 376. Avoid long distances and maximum speeds until the correction can be made.
---	CHECK TYRE PRESSURES	When the ignition is switched on, the warning shows that there is a loss of pressure from at least one tyre.	Check the tyre pressures on all tyres at the next opportunity and correct them → page 376. Avoid long distances and maximum speeds until the correction can be made.

Flashes	Text message	Possible cause → ⚠	Solution
(!)	---	Symbol flashes intermittently while the vehicle is in motion. There is a transmission fault between the sensor and the system. The function can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. two-way radio, remote control or toys).	If necessary, switch off or avoid the source of interference.
(!)	---	System faulty. Indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute and then lights continuously.	If the tyre pressure is correct, but the indicator lamp is still flashing and eventually lights up steadily after the ignition is switched off and back on again, please go to a qualified workshop. Have the system checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause tyre damage, tyre failure, loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the indicator lamp (!) lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check all the tyres → page 376.
- Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase wear on the tyres, reduce vehicle stability and increase the braking distance.
- Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause sudden tyre failure and lead to a tyre burst and the loss of control over the vehicle.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure of all tyres on the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure can be found on the label → page 376.
- The tyre monitoring system cannot function correctly until all cold wheels have the correct tyre pressure.
- Pressure in all tyres must always be appropriate to the vehicle load → page 376.
- Always inflate all tyres to the correct tyre pressure before every journey → page 376.
- If driven with insufficient pressure, the tyre flexes more. This could warm up the tyre to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst. This could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- High speeds and overloading of the vehicle may cause the tyres to heat up to such an extent that the tyre bursts, leading you to lose control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop and check and correct the tyre pressure → page 376.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated indicator lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so.

NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 369.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator uses data from the ABS sensors and other functions to check the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. Any change in the rolling circumference of one or more wheels is shown by the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator in the instrument cluster.

Changes in the rolling circumference

The rolling circumference of a tyre can change:

- If the tyre pressure has been changed manually.
- If the tyre pressure is too low.
- If the tyre has structural damage.
- If the vehicle is loaded more heavily on one side.
- If the wheels on one axle are loaded more heavily, e.g. high load level.
- If snow chains have been fitted.
- If a temporary spare wheel has been fitted.
- If one wheel per axle has been changed.

In certain circumstances, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator (!) may become slow or may not display anything, e.g. with a sporty driving style, in winter driving conditions, on unpaved roads, or when driving with snow chains.

Synchronising the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator will have to be re-synchronised after changing the tyre pressure, or after changing one or more wheels. This also applies when wheels are swapped, e.g. from the front to the rear.

The saved values must be reset before the system can be resynchronised.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the CAR infotainment button → page 78.
- Touch the ⚙ function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
- Touch the Tyres function button.
- Touch the SET function button.
- If all four tyre pressures are set to the correct values, touch the Confirm function button to store the tyre pressures.
- Touching the Cancel function button will prevent the current tyre pressures from being stored and the system will not be re-synchronised.

Once the saved values have been reset, the system calibrates itself independently to the fitted tyres and the tyre pressures filled by the driver during normal vehicle operation. The calibrated values are adopted and monitored after a long journey at various speeds.

If the wheels are loaded more heavily than normal, e.g. if the vehicle is carrying heavy payload, the tyre pressure must be increased to the recommended full-load tyre pressure before synchronisation → page 376.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator stops working if there is a fault in the ESC or ABS → page 260.

If a warning is given about tyre pressure being too low, the vehicle must remain stationary for approximately one minute and should not be moved. Alternatively, the ignition can be

Scanned by CamScanner

switched off and then back on again. The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator can only then be re-synchronised.

When driving with a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, incorrect messages may occur because the circumference of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel may differ from that of the other wheels.

When using snow chains, an incorrect display may be shown as the snow chains increase the tyre circumference.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

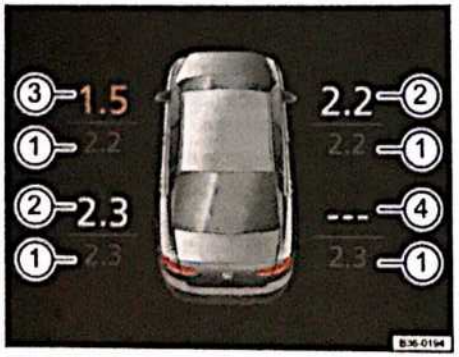


Fig. 305 Illustration of instrument cluster display (Saloon): current tyre pressures.

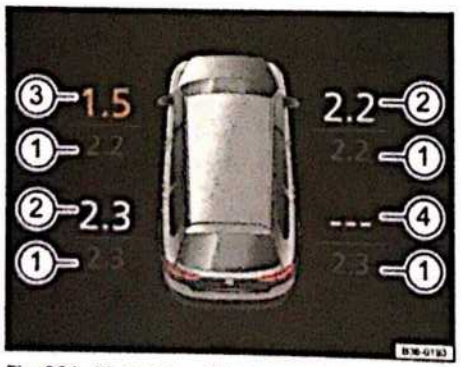


Fig. 306 Illustration of instrument cluster display (Estate): current tyre pressures.

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 369.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System monitors the tyre pressure of the four wheels while the vehicle is in motion using tyre pressure sensors on the tyres. Following a loss in pressure, the system will warn the driver using a visual or acoustic warning.

Display of tyre pressures on the instrument cluster

Open the menu **Vehicle status** in the instrument cluster display → page 54. The vehicle is displayed with the target and actual pressures in all the wheels → Fig. 305 or → Fig. 306. The graphical illustration may differ depending on the equipment level.

Key to Fig. 305 and Fig. 306:

Position numbers	Meaning
①	Target pressure in bar.
②	Actual pressure in bar.
③	Loss in pressure in front left.
④	System fault for rear right tyre.

When the ignition is switched on, the last received tyre pressures will be displayed first; these values are updated to the actual pressures and displayed when the journey is started. If the tyre pressure is too low, the relevant actual tyre pressures are highlighted → Fig. 305 or → Fig. 306.

If no tyre pressures are transmitted, the last received actual pressures are displayed in grey, e.g. when parking.

Switching Tyre Pressure Monitoring System on and off[1)]

Observe any country-specific legal requirements for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

For countries which apply ECE regulations: If a set of tyres is fitted to the vehicle, e.g. winter tyres, that do not have wheel sensors or which have wheel sensors that are not compatible with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, the indicator lamp (!) will flash for approximately one minute and then light up steadily. An acoustic signal may also be given. The tyre pressures are not monitored. **The system cannot be switched off.**

1) In some vehicles.

For countries which do not apply ECE regulations: If a set of tyres is fitted to the vehicle, e.g. winter tyres, that do not have wheel sensors or which have wheel sensors that are not compatible with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, the system will be automatically switched off after you start driving. A text notification will be displayed in this case. An acoustic signal may also be given. The tyre pressures are not monitored. As soon as the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System receives suitable sensor signals again while you are driving, it is switched on automatically.

Adjusting the tyre pressure

Following any relevant change in the load level, the tyre pressure **must** be checked and altered as necessary. The tyre pressures recommended for the vehicle are on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap or on the driver door pillar → page 376.

If the tyre pressure has to be altered on a warm tyre, you should inflate the tyre with 0.2 – 0.3 bar (2.9 – 4.4 PSI / 20 – 30 kPa) more than the value given on the tyre pressure sticker.

The readings on the manometer when filling the tyres and the reading on the tyre pressure sensors may be different. The electronic Tyre Pressure Monitoring System provides more accurate results.

Selecting target pressures for partial or full vehicle load level

The driver has to select the appropriate target tyre pressure for the partially or fully loaded vehicle depending on the vehicle load level.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the CAR infotainment button → page 78.
- Touch the Vehicle status function button.
- Touch the Setup function button.
- After selecting the menu option **Tyres**, you can choose between *Part load-Standard*, *Part load-Comfort* or *Full load*.

Selecting the tyre type

While changing the dimensions of the tyres, it may be necessary to adjust the target pressure for the new tyres. In this case, the correct tyre type must be selected in the vehicle and system settings. If no adjustment is necessary, the menu will not be available.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the CAR infotainment button → page 78.
- Touch the Vehicle status function button.
- Touch the Setup function button.
- The required tyre dimensions can be selected after selecting the menu option **Tyres**.

If the dimensions of the new tyres are different from those of the factory-fitted tyres, the corresponding target tyre pressures can be entered by a Volkswagen dealer.

Synchronising tyre pressure sensors

Manual synchronisation is not necessary after tyre pressure sensors have been replaced or tyres have been changed. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System automatically recognises new tyre pressure sensors and synchronises them immediately while driving.

Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel in the luggage compartment is **not** monitored.

Storing tyres

If the tyres are not being used, the sensors will not transmit the tyre pressure. This stops the sensor batteries discharging.

NOTICE

- The tyre pressure sensors are mounted on special aluminium valves on the wheels. These valves are securely screwed in. When inflating the tyres and checking the tyre pressure, do not bend the valves "into position".
- If valve caps are missing, the valve and tyre pressure monitor sensors could be damaged. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully. Do not use metal valve caps.
- Do not use "convenience" valve caps as they do not form a proper seal. This can cause damage to the sensors.
- Do not damage the valves and sensors when fitting different tyres.

Scanned by CamScanner

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Handling wheels and tyres 376
- Rims 378
- New tyres and replacing tyres 378
- Tyre pressure 379
- Tread depth and wear indicators 381
- Tyre damage 382
- Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel 383
- Tyre lettering and tyre type 385
- Winter tyres 388
- Snow chains 389

Volkswagen recommends that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by a qualified workshop. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts and the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

WARNING

New tyres or tyres which are old, worn down or damaged cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking power.

- Incorrect handling of wheels and tyres can reduce vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.
- New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect. Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.
- Check tyre pressures regularly when the tyres are cold, and always keep to the specified tyre pressure value. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Never drive with worn tyres or tyres that are damaged (cuts, cracks or blisters). Driving with tyres in this condition can result in blown tyres, accidents and serious injuries. Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced as soon as possible.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.
- The effectiveness of the driver assist systems and brake support systems depends on the tyre grip.
- If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the car immediately and check the wheels and tyres for damage.
- In order to reduce the risk of losing control of the vehicle, and the risk of accident and serious injury, never loosen the bolts on rims with bolted on rim rings.
- Do not use wheels or tyres if you do not know their history. Used wheels and tyres could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.
- Old tyres (even if never used) can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds. This can cause accidents and serious injuries. Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type. Refer to the vehicle documentation and ask a Volkswagen dealership if necessary. ◁

Handling wheels and tyres

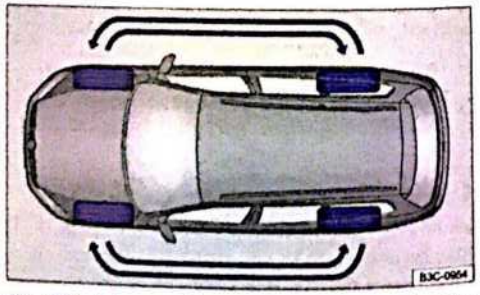


Fig. 307 Diagram showing how to swap wheels. ▶

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

The tyres are the most used and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Tyres are very important as the narrow tyre surfaces are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style handling and fitting.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

Avoiding damage to the rims and tyres

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive slowly and at a right angle if possible.
- Inspect the rims tyres regularly for obvious and hidden damage such as cracks or deformations → page 382.
- Remove foreign objects that are in the outer tyre tread and **have not penetrated the inner tyre** → page 382.
- Regularly check that the tyres are at the right pressure. Always respond to any warning messages given by the tyre monitoring system→ page 369.
- Damaged or worn tyres must be replaced immediately → page 382.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted → page 385.
- Protect the wheels, including the spare wheel, from contact with corrosive substances, including oils, lubricants, fuel and brake fluid → ⚠.
- Replace missing dust caps immediately.

Rotating wheels front to rear

Regularly rotating the wheels as shown in the illustration → Fig. 307 is recommended to help ensure that tyres wear evenly. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Volkswagen recommends having the wheels changed by a qualified workshop.

Tyres that are older than 6 years

Tyres age through physical and chemical processes that can impair their function. Tyres that are stored unused for an extended period will harden and become brittle more quickly than tyres which are in constant use.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tyres that are older than 6 years with new tyres. This also applies for tyres, including the spare wheel, which appear to still be in good condition and whose tread depth has not yet reached the minimum value stipulated by legislation → ⚠.

The age of a tyre can be determined from the manufacturing date, which is a component of the tyre identification number (TIN) → page 385

Storing tyres

Mark tyres before you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to mount them correctly when you replace them (left, right, front, rear). When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. **Do not** store tyres mounted on the rim vertically.

Any tyres not fitted on rims should be kept in suitable sleeves to protect against dirt and should be stored vertically (standing on the tread).

WARNING

Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which can cause the tyre to burst.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.

WARNING

Old tyres (even if never used) can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.

NOTICE

Avoid heavy impacts and drive round obstacles whenever possible. Tyres, particularly low-profile tyres, can be considerably compressed and deformed by potholes and curb edges especially. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

This can cause the tyre's webbing reinforcement to brake, and cause dents or rips on the side walls or deformations or cracks on the rims.

Old tyres should be disposed of as required by legislation.

Rims

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly → page 391.

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type.

The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque → page 391.

Rims with bolted-on rings

Rims with bolted-on rings consist of several components. These components are fastened using special bolts and special fastening technology. This ensures that the wheel functions properly, does not leak, remains safe and runs true. For this reason, damaged rims should be replaced. They may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose → ▲.

Rims with bolted-on trims

Rims may have removable trims that are attached to the rim with self-locking bolts. Damaged trims may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose → ▲.

Rim identification

In some countries, new rims are legally required to contain certain specifications on them. The following information may appear on the rims (varying from region to region):

- Seal of conformity
- Rim size
- Name of manufacturer or brand name
- Date manufactured (month/year)
- Country of origin
- Production number
- Raw materials batch number
- Product code

WARNING

The use of unsuitable or damaged rims can impair vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injury.

- Only use rims that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Check the rims regularly for damage and replace as necessary.

WARNING

Incorrect loosening and tightening of the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings.
- All work on rims with bolted-on rings must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

New tyres and replacing tyres

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

New tyres

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km with new tyres as the tyres have to be *run in*. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip → ▲ and braking effect → ▲.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.
- The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Replacing tyres

- Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together) → ▲.
- Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type. Ensure that the tyres used are correct in respect of size, diameter, load-carrying capacity and maximum speed.
- You should never use tyres whose effective size is larger than Volkswagen-approved tyres. Larger wheels could rub against the body or other parts of the vehicle.

Re-adapting the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be adapted again each time one or more wheels is changed. This also applies if the wheels have been swapped, e.g. from the front to the rear → page 369.

Vehicles with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

If you wish to replace factory-fitted wheels, please ensure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the factory-fitted Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. New wheels with sensors are *registered* and integrated into the system. The vehicle must be driven at a speed of over 25 km/h (15 mph) for an extended period so that the new tyre can be registered.

Volkswagen recommends that a new valve set and set of seals is used every time the sensors are replaced or modified. Further information is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

If tyres with dimensions other than those defined by Volkswagen for the vehicle and model are used, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System must be reprogrammed with the new tyre pressure values. Further information is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

If you use wheels that do not have a sensor, or which have non-compatible sensors, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System will not be able to *register* them. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System will then not be able to measure tyre pressures. A fault is displayed or the system is switched off.

Further information about the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, how it functions and what you must know → page 369.

WARNING

New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.

WARNING

Wheels must have the necessary freedom of operation. If the wheels do not have the necessary freedom of operation, the tyre could rub on parts of the running gear, the vehicle body and the brake lines. This can lead to a fault in the brake system and to tread separation and thus to a tyre bursting.

- The actual tyre size must not exceed the tyre dimensions of manufacturers approved by Volkswagen and must not rub on any vehicle body parts.

Despite identical size details, the actual size of the various tyre makes may vary from these specified dimensions, or the tyre contours may vary considerably.

Volkswagen-approved tyres are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. The salesperson will have to provide a certificate from the tyre manufacturer for other tyre makes to prove that the tyre is also suitable for the vehicle. This certificate must be stored in a safe place in the vehicle.

Tyre pressure

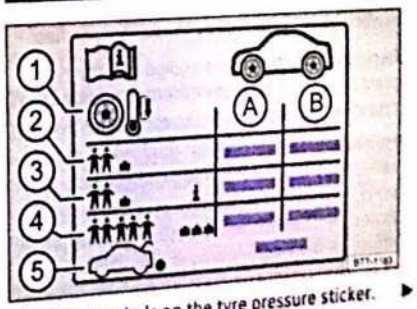


Fig. 308 Symbols on the tyre pressure sticker.

Scanned by CamScanner

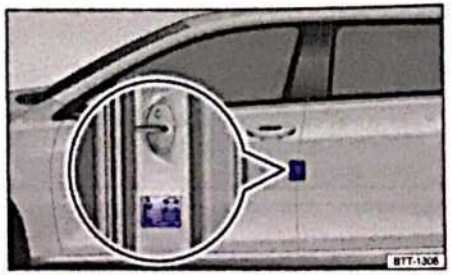


Fig. 309 On the driver door pillar: tyre pressure sticker (alternatively on the inside of the tank flap).

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

Information on the tyre pressure sticker→ Fig. 308:

Ⓐ Specified pressure for the tyres on the front axle.

Ⓑ Specified pressure for the tyres on the rear axle.

① Tyre pressure of the cold tyre.

② Tyre pressure for partial load.

③ *In some vehicles:* comfort tyre pressure for partial load.

④ Tyre pressure for full load.

⑤ Tyre pressure level for the spare or temporary spare wheel.

The tyre pressure sticker shows the correct pressure for factory-fitted tyres. This information applies to summer, all-season and winter tyres. The tyre pressure sticker is located either on the driver door pillar → Fig. 309 or inside the tank flap.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the tyre pressure sticker may look different. Additional tyre sizes may be present → page 385.

Maintaining the wrong tyre pressure lead to accelerated wear and a significantly shorter tyre service life, and may even cause a tyre to burst. Excessive or insufficient pressure has a negative effect on the vehicle's driving characteristics → ▲. The correct tyre pressure is particularly important at **high speeds**.

Comfort tyre pressure

In some vehicles, the tyre pressure sticker may show details of a "comfort" tyre pressure → Fig. 308 ③. This should make driving extra comfortable. Fuel consumption may increase when driving with comfort tyre pressure.

Checking tyre pressure

- The tyre pressure should be checked regularly: at least once a month and before every long journey. Always check all the tyres, including the spare if fitted. The tyre pressure should be checked more frequently in colder regions, but only if the vehicle has not been moved beforehand. The tyre pressure tester must function correctly.
- Only check the tyre pressure when the tyres have not been driven for more than a few kilometres at low speed in the last three hours. The given tyre pressure applies to **cold tyres**. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres. For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure.
- The tyre pressures must be adjusted to suit increased vehicle loads → Fig. 308 ④.
- After altering the tyre pressures, always screw the valve caps onto the valves and observe any information and instructions on setting the tyre monitoring system → page 369.
- Ensure that you are using the pressure specified by the vehicle manufacturer and not that given by the tyre manufacturer. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure which is given on the sidewall.

The **spare wheel** or **temporary spare wheel** is filled to the highest tyre pressure → Fig. 308 ⑤ permissible for the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Too high or too low a pressure may cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure or burst while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Fast speeds or overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and ripping of the tread surface and thus to a loss of control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Check tyre pressures regularly, at least once a month, and before every long journey.
- All tyres must have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.
- Never reduce excess pressure when the tyres are warm.

NOTICE

- When attaching the tyre pressure gauge, ensure that you do not position it at an angle to the valve shaft. This can damage the tyre valve.
- Missing valve caps, or valve caps that are not suitable or not screwed on properly, can cause damage to the tyre valve. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully.

Under-inflated tyres can contribute to an increase in fuel consumption.

If the tyre monitoring system warns that the tyre pressure in at least one tyre is too low, check tyre pressures with a functioning tyre pressure tester. Low tyre pressure cannot be determined exclusively by looking at the tyre. This also applies to tyres with a low profile.

Please refer to the special points of the tyre monitoring system when checking tyre pressures → page 369.

Tread depth and wear indicators

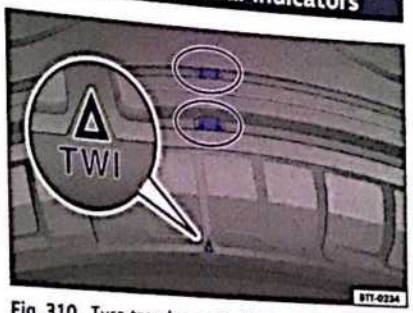


Fig. 310 Tyre tread: wear indicators.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

Tread depth

Difficult driving situations demand the deepest possible tread depth for the tyres and the same tread depth for the tyres on the front and rear axles. This applies in particular for driving in winter weather and cold temperatures and in wet conditions → ▲.

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Observe any country-specific legal requirements.

Winter and all-year tyres lose a large degree of their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Observe any country-specific legal requirements relating to the permissible minimum tread depths for winter and all-year tyres.

The tread depth of new tyres can vary according to type and manufacturer due to construction and tread design.

Tread wear indicator in tyres

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators running across the tread → Fig. 310. These wear indicators are positioned at set intervals around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tread depth is just down to the tread wear indicator.

Scanned by CamScanner

WARNING

Worn tyres are a safety risk and can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and cause serious injury.

- Tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Worn tyres have considerably less grip, particularly on wet roads, which can cause the vehicle to "float" along the road surface (aquaplaning).
- Worn tyres reduce the possibility of controlling the vehicle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distance and the risk of sliding. ◁

Tyre damage

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. Any unusual **vibrations** or signs that the car is **pulling to one side** may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged → ▲.

- Reduce your speed immediately if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.
- Check the tyres and rims for damage.
- If the tyre is damaged, do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Foreign bodies in the tyre

- Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre. However, foreign bodies that are stuck between the tyre tread blocks can be removed.
- *For vehicles with a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel:* where appropriate, change the damaged wheel → page 391. When the vehicle is towing a trailer, the temporary spare wheel must only be fitted to the front axle → page 299. If required, seek expert assistance when changing the damaged wheel. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- *For vehicles with a breakdown set:* if required, seal the tyre and pump it up using the breakdown set → page 396. Go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- *For vehicles with mobility tyres:* leave the foreign body in the tyre and go to a qualified workshop. Sealant inside the tyre encloses foreign bodies penetrating the mobility tyre and seals the tyre temporarily.
- Check the pressure and adjust it as required.

Tyre wear

The tyre wear is affected by several factors, e.g.:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Running gear setting.

Driving style – fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. The running gear should be checked by a qualified workshop if the tyres show excessive wear despite a normal driving style.

Unbalanced wheels – the wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration. Unbalanced wheels will affect levels of wear on the steering system and the suspension. In this case the wheels should be balanced again. New tyres have to be balanced after fitting.

Running gear setting – incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear.

WARNING

If you notice unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side while the vehicle is in motion, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.

- Reduce speed immediately and park the vehicle without obstructing traffic.
- Check the tyres and rims for damage.
- Never drive on if wheels or tyres are damaged. Seek expert assistance instead.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked. ◁

Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

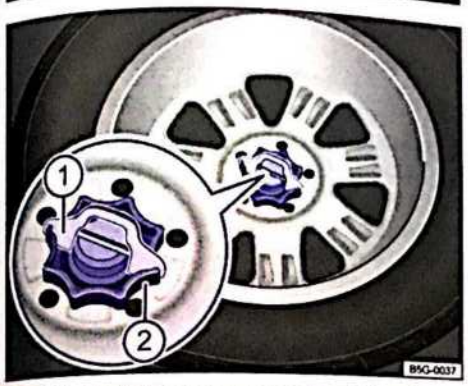


Fig. 311 In the luggage compartment: handwheel for securing the spare wheel.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

Removing the spare wheel (Saloon)

- Open the boot lid.
- Hook the luggage compartment floor onto the top edge of the luggage compartment → page 282.
- If necessary, pull the locating element wedge → Fig. 311 ① upwards.
- Fully unscrew the handwheel in the centre of the spare wheel → Fig. 311 ② anticlockwise and remove the spare wheel.
- Detach the luggage compartment floor and fold it back into its original position.
- Close the boot lid.

Removing the spare wheel (Estate)

- Open the boot lid.
- Raise or fold forward the luggage compartment floor → page 282.
- If necessary, pull the locating element wedge → Fig. 311 ① upwards.
- Fully unscrew the handwheel in the centre of the spare wheel → Fig. 311 ② anticlockwise and remove the spare wheel.
- Fold the luggage compartment floor back to its original position.
- Close the boot lid.

Storing the removed wheel (Saloon)

- Open the boot lid.
- Hook the luggage compartment floor onto the top edge of the luggage compartment → page 282.
- Place the removed wheel into the spare wheel well with the rim facing downwards with the central hole in the rim positioned exactly above the stud.
- Turn the handwheel → Fig. 311 ② clockwise on the threaded pin until the wheel is secured firmly.
- If necessary, insert the locating element wedge → Fig. 311 ① into the slot of the threaded pin so that the handwheel can no longer be turned.
- If necessary, place the vehicle tool kit back in the container in the luggage compartment.
- Detach the luggage compartment floor and fold it back into its original position.
- Close the boot lid.

Storing the removed wheel (Estate)

- Open the boot lid and raise the luggage compartment floor or fold it forwards → page 282.
- Place the removed wheel into the spare wheel well with the rim facing downwards with the central hole in the rim positioned exactly above the stud.
- Turn the handwheel → Fig. 311 ② clockwise on the threaded pin until the wheel is secured firmly.
- If necessary, insert the locating element wedge → Fig. 311 ① into the slot of the threaded pin so that the handwheel can no longer be turned.
- If necessary, place the vehicle tool kit back in the container in the luggage compartment.
- Fold the luggage compartment floor back to its original position.
- Close the boot lid.

If the spare wheel tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle

If the spare wheel is not the same as those mounted on the vehicle – for example if winter tyres or the temporary spare wheel are fitted – only use the spare wheel for a short period of time and drive with extra care → ▲. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

When the vehicle is towing a trailer → page 299, the temporary spare wheel must only be fitted to the front axle.

Refit the normal, functional road wheel as soon as possible.

Observe these driving guidelines:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel → page 389.
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel → page 379.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel should be checked together with the normal tyres, at least once a month. The spare wheel should have the highest pressure allowed for the vehicle → page 379.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, to collisions or other accidents and cause serious injuries.

- Never use a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- In some vehicles, the spare wheel could be smaller than the standard wheel. The small spare wheel has a sticker with the text "80 km/h" or "50 mph". This is the maximum speed at which you are permitted to drive with this tyre. The sticker must remain in place throughout the wheel's service life.
- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- Never drive further than 200 km with a temporary spare wheel if it is fitted to the drive axle.
- The temporary spare wheel should be exchanged for a normal wheel as soon as possible. The temporary spare wheel is designed for a short period of use only.
- The spare wheel or temporary spare wheel must always be secured firmly with the wheel bolts supplied ex works.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel that is a different size than the original tyres.
- Do not fit a temporary spare wheel to the rear axle when towing a trailer → page 299.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel that is a different size than the original tyres.
- After fitting the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible → page 379.

NOTICE

The spare wheel is not fitted with tyre pressure sensor. If the spare wheel is being used, the tyre monitoring system indicator lamp flashes in the instrument cluster display after approximately 10 minutes → page 369.

If possible, stow the spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment. In vehicles with a breakdown set, the removed wheel cannot be secured. ◁

Tyre lettering and tyre type

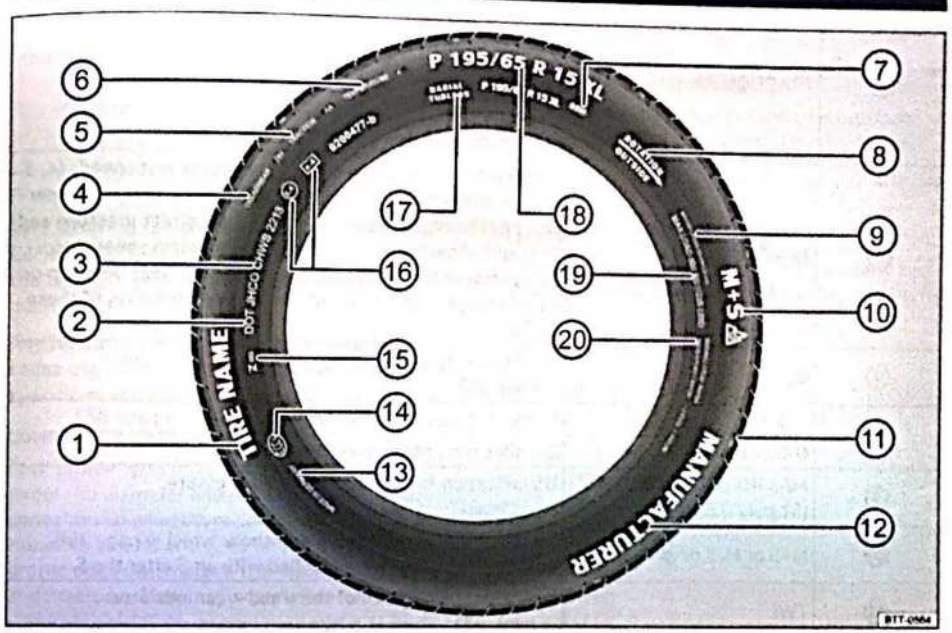


Fig. 312 International tyre lettering.

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

→ Fig. 312	Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning	
①	*Product name*	Individual tyre lettering from manufacturer.	
②	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the USA Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards.	
③	JHCO CHWS 2213	Tyre identification number (TIN[a]) – may only be on the inner side of the wheel) and date of manufacture:	
		JHCO CHWS	Identifier of producing plant and specifications of the tyre manufacturer on size and characteristics
		2,213	Manufacture date: 22nd week in 2013.
Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure) → page 404:			
④	TREADWEAR 280	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, with reference to a US-specific standard test. A tyre with the specification *280* is used up at a rate of 2.8 times more slowly than standard tyres which have a treadwear value of 100. The performance of tyres is determined by how they are used and can notably deviate from norm values due to driving style, maintenance, road surface and climatic conditions. ▶	

Scanned by CamScanner

→ Fig. 312	Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning
⑤	TRACTION AA	Wet braking response of the tyre (*AA*, *A*, *B* or *C*). This is tested under controlled conditions on certified testing routes. Tyres marked *C* have low traction performance. The traction value assigned to the tyres are based on linear traction tests and do not include speed, lateral stability, or aquaplaning and traction under high load.
⑥	TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at higher test speeds (*A*, *B* or *C*). *A* and *B* tyres exceed legal requirements. The temperature evaluation is based on tyres with correct pressure and does not allow for excess pressure. Excessive speed, incorrect pressure or excess pressure can cause heat build-up or tyre damage. This applies to one or a combination of these factors.
⑦	88 H	Load capacity index → page 387 and speed index → page 387.
⑧	Rotation and arrow	Denotes direction of rotation of the tyres → page 387.
	OR: outside	Denotes outside of tyres → page 387.
⑨	MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 psi / 3.51 bar)	US limitation for the maximum air pressure.
⑩	M+S *or* M/S *or* ❄	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres) → page 388. Studded snow tyres are labelled with an *E* after the *S*.
⑪	TWI	Indicates the position of the tread wear indicator → page 381.
⑫	*Brand name, logo*	Manufacturer.
⑬	Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.
⑭	CCC	Country-specific denotation for China (China Compulsory Certification).
⑮	⌶ 023	Country-specific denotation for Brazil.
⑯	E4 e4 0200477-b	Certification of conformity with international regulations. The next number is the code number of the country that granted approval. Approved tyres which comply with ECE regulations are denoted with *E*, tyres which comply with EC regulations are denoted with *e*. This is followed by the number of the type approval certificate.
⑰	RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyres.
⑱	P 195 / 65 R 15 XL	Size designation:
		P — Identification for passenger vehicle.
		195 — Tyre width from wall to wall in mm.
		65 — Height/width ratio in %.
		R — Tyre construction: radial.
		15 — Rim diameter in inches.
		XL — Heavy-duty tyres ("Extra Load").
⑲	MAX LOAD 615 KG (1235 LBS)	US load data for the maximum load per wheel.
⑳	SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Data on the tyre carcass components: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk).
	TREAD 4 PLIES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Data on the tread surface components: In the example there are 4 layers under the tread surface: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk), 2 steel belt layers and 1 nylon layer.

a) The TIN is the tyre serial number.

Tyre lettering can also be found inside the tyre. Certain labels may only be found on one side of the tyre, e.g. tyre identification number and manufacturing date.

Any further numbers and letters are internal codes used by the tyre manufacturer or country-specific denotations.

Low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter and lower side walls than conventional wheel/tyre combinations → ⓘ in *Handling wheels and tyres* on page 377. Low-profile tyres can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may however result in a less comfortable ride on uneven road surfaces and tracks.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in one direction only. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. The direction of rotation must be adhered to. This is the only guarantee for optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

Asymmetrical tyres

Asymmetrical tyres take into account the differing behaviour of the inner and outer areas of the tread pattern. The sidewalls of asymmetrical tyres are marked to indicate "inside" or "outside". Maintain the correct tyre positioning on the wheel rim. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

Tyre load

The load capacity index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded onto an individual tyre (tyre load).

Examples:

85	515 kg
87	545 kg
88	560 kg
91	615 kg
92	630 kg
93	650 kg
95	690 kg
97	730 kg
99	775 kg
100	800 kg
101	825 kg
102	850 kg
103	875 kg
104	900 kg

Speed index

The speed index indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven when particular wheels are fitted.

P	max. 150 km/h (93 mph)
Q	max. 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	max. 170 km/h (106 mph)
S	max. 180 km/h (112 mph)
T	max. 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	max. 200 km/h (125 mph)
H	max. 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	max. 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	max. 270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	max. 300 km/h (186 mph)
Z	over 240 km/h (149 mph)

Some tyre manufacturers use the code "ZR" for tyres with a highest permitted speed of over 240 km/h (149 mph).

Scanned by CamScanner

Vehicle-specific information on tyre load and speed range

Vehicles registered within the EU and the EU "user countries" are issued a EC certificate of conformity. This details the size, diameter and speed range of all tyres approved by Volkswagen for the relevant vehicle type.

The type plate shows whether there is an EC certificate of conformity for this particular vehicle. The type plate can be seen on the lower part of the door pillar when the door is open → page 408.

- If the type plate has a row marked "Permit" then the vehicle does have an EC certificate of conformity.
- If there is no type plate, or no row marked "Permit" the vehicle does not have an EC certificate of conformity. ◁

Winter tyres

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. Volkswagen urgently recommends the use of winter tyres or all-year tyres on all four wheels of the vehicle, particularly if winter conditions are expected on the roads. Winter tyres will also improve the braking response of the vehicle and will help to reduce braking distances in winter weather. Volkswagen recommends that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle at temperatures below +7°C (+45°F).

Winter tyres and all-year tyres lose their effectiveness when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Winter and all-year tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through **ageing** – regardless of the tread depth.

The following applies when using winter tyres:

- Observe any country-specific legal requirements.
- Use winter tyres on all four wheels at the same time.
- Only use in winter road conditions.
- Only use the sizes of winter tyre that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Winter tyres must have the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- Observe the maximum speed permitted by the speed index → ⚠.

Speed limitation

Winter tyres have a speed limitation depending on the speed index → page 385.

Speed warning settings can be made and adjusted in the infotainment system using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Tyres function buttons → page 78.

If you use **V-rated tyres** the speed limits and required tyre pressure will be determined by the engine size. You must ask a Volkswagen dealership about the highest permitted speed and required tyre pressure.

Four-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Thanks to its four-wheel drive, the vehicle will have plenty of traction in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, Volkswagen still recommends that winter tyres or all-year tyres should be fitted *on all 4 wheels* in winter, mainly because this will give a better *braking response*.

Please refer to the appropriate information and notes when using **snow chains** → page 389.

⚠ WARNING

The improved winter driving characteristics afforded by the winter tyres should not encourage you to take any risks.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the winter tyres that are fitted.

Summer tyres should be fitted in good time at the end of the winter. The vehicle handling is better if summer tyres are fitted at temperatures above +7°C (+45°F). They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

In the case of vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, the system must be resynchronised when new tyres are fitted → page 369. ▶

Volkswagen dealerships can provide details on permissible winter tyre sizes. ◁

Snow chains

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 376.

Please observe legislation and also the permitted speed when driving your vehicle with snow chains.

In winter conditions, snow chains will not only improve acceleration, but also braking response.

Snow chains **may only be fitted on the front wheels** – even on **four-wheel drive vehicles** (4MOTION) – and only with the **following wheel and tyre combinations:**

Saloon and Estate	
Tyre size	**Wheel**
215/60 R 16	6 1/2 J x 16 offset 41
215/60 R 16 M&S	6 1/2 J x 16 offset 42
215/55 R 17	6 1/2 J x 17 offset 41

Alltrack	
Tyre size	**Wheel**
215/55 R 17	7 J x 17 offset 38

Volkswagen recommends that you ask your Volkswagen dealership for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

If possible, use snow chains with fine-pitch links which do not protrude more than 13.5 mm, including the tensioner.

Remove wheel centre covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains → ⓘ. For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

Temporary spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the temporary spare wheel → page 383.

If you have to use snow chains with the temporary spare wheel fitted, the temporary spare wheel should be fitted to the rear axle even when a front wheel is damaged. You can then use the wheel taken from the rear axle to replace the damaged front wheel. Please note the direction of rotation. Volkswagen recommends fitting the snow chains before mounting the wheel on the car.

⚠ WARNING

The use of snow chains that are unsuitable for your vehicle or the incorrect installation of snow chains can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always use the correct snow chains.
- Observe the assembly instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for the snow chains that are fitted.

NOTICE

- Remove the snow chains when driving on roads that are free of snow. The snow chains will otherwise impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.
- Snow chains that are in direct contact with the wheel can scratch or damage it. Volkswagen recommends using snow chains with integrated rim protection.

In the case of vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, the system may have to be resynchronised when snow chains are fitted → page 369.

Snow chains are available in a range of sizes for a vehicle type. ◁

Hubcaps

📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Centre cover 390
- Wheel cover 390
- Wheel bolt caps 391

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps, or fitting them incorrectly, can cause accidents and serious injuries. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.
- Do not use damaged hubcaps.
- Always ensure that the airflow to cool the brakes is not restricted or reduced. This also applies if hubcaps are retrofitted. If the airflow is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

NOTICE

Remove the hubcaps carefully and fit them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle. ◁

Centre cover



Fig. 313 Removing the centre covers by pulling.



Fig. 314 Removing the centre covers by turning.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 389.

The centre wheel trim can be removed by pulling → Fig. 313 or turning → Fig. 314, depending on the design.

Vehicles with centre covers that can be removed by pulling

- *To remove*, take the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit and insert it into a hole in the cover → Fig. 313.
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- *To replace*, press the centre cover against the rim until you feel it engage.

Vehicles with centre covers that can be removed by turning

- *To remove*, turn the centre wheel trim clockwise or anticlockwise until it is released from the rim → Fig. 314.
- Reach behind one of the bars and remove the centre cover.
- *To replace*, place the centre cover in the middle of the rim.
- Press the centre cover against the rim until you feel it engage. ◁

Wheel cover



Fig. 315 Removing the wheel covers. ▶

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 389.

Removing the wheel covers

- Take the box spanner and wire hook from the vehicle tool kit → page 327.
- Insert the wire hook into one of the holes in the wheel cover.
- Push the box spanner through the wire hook → Fig. 315 and remove the wheel cover in the direction of the arrow.

Fitting the wheel covers

Before fitting the wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be screwed into position → Fig. 318 ② or → Fig. 318 ③. Otherwise, it will not be possible to fit the wheel cover.

The wheel covers must be pushed on to the rims with the hole for the valve aligned with the valve → Fig. 318 ①. When fitting the wheel cover, ensure that it engages securely around the entire circumference. ◁

Wheel bolt caps



Fig. 316 Removing the wheel bolt caps.

Please refer to ▲ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 389.

- Take the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit → page 327.
- Insert the wire hook through the opening in the cap → Fig. 316 and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a separate cap. It only fits onto the anti-theft wheel bolts and not onto conventional wheel bolts. ◁

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Preparations for changing a wheel 392
- Wheel bolts 392
- Lifting the vehicle with the jack 394
- Changing a wheel 395
- After changing a wheel 396

Some models are delivered without a factory-fitted jack or box spanner. If this is the case, the wheel should be changed by a qualified workshop.

The vehicle jack supplied with the vehicle is only designed for changing a wheel when one vehicle tyre is damaged and has to be replaced. If both tyres on one side of the vehicle, both tyres on one axle, or all tyres are damaged, seek expert assistance.

Only change the wheel yourself when the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary steps and safety procedures and you have access to all the correct tools. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

WARNING

Changing a wheel can be dangerous, especially when carried out at the side of a road. Please observe the following steps in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to carry out the wheel change.
- All passengers and children in particular must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work during the wheel change.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

- Ensure that the ground is flat and firm. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- Only change the wheel yourself if you feel confident carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.
- Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- Always switch off the engine, switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the position P or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.
- The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.
- In the case of vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, the system must be resynchronised immediately when new tyres are fitted → page 369.

Depending on the model variant, the luggage compartment may contain a loose box with a vehicle tool kit. This vehicle tool kit is intended for changing the winter tyres, where applicable.

Preparations for changing a wheel

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 391.

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel → ▲:

1. In the event of a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
2. Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 232.
3. With a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, move the selector lever to position P → page 174.
4. Switch off the engine → page 166.
5. Manual gearbox: select a gear → page 172.
6. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
7. Chock the wheel opposite the wheel being worked on with a stone or a similar object.
8. When towing a trailer → page 299: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
9. Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment.
10. If necessary, remove the subwoofer → page 274.
11. Remove the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel and vehicle tool kit from the luggage compartment.
12. If applicable, remove the hubcaps → page 389.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 317 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts.

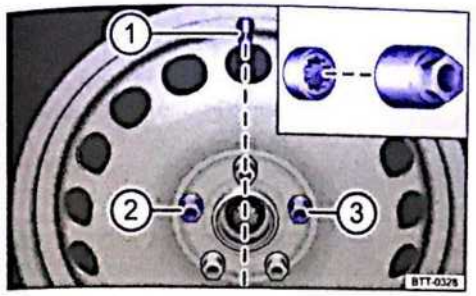


Fig. 318 Changing a wheel: tyre valve ① and locations of the anti-theft wheel bolt ② or ③.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 391.

Only the spanner delivered with the vehicle should be used to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

Loosening the wheel bolts

– Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go → Fig. 317.
– Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise → ▲.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

– Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit.
– Insert the adapter into the anti-theft wheel bolt. Push it in as far as it will go.
– Insert the box spanner into the adapter as far as it will go.
– Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise → ▲.

Important information about the wheel bolts

The design of the wheel rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-fitted wheels. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly.

In certain circumstances, wheel bolts from a vehicle of the same model series may not be used.

On wheels with a wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be bolted into position → Fig. 318 ② or ③ according to the position of the tyre valve ①. Otherwise, it will not be possible to fit the wheel cover.

Tightening torque for the wheel bolts

The tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **140 Nm**. The tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced and the wheel hub threads cleaned **before the tightening torque is checked.**

Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly tightened wheel bolts can loosen while the vehicle is in motion and cause accidents, serious injury, and loss of control of the vehicle.

- Only use wheel bolts that belong to the wheel.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs must be clean, free from oil and grease, and turn easily.
- Always use the box spanner placed in the vehicle at the factory to loosen and tighten the wheel bolts.
- Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.
- Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings.
- If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and rims can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and threads can be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Scanned by CamScanner

Lifting the vehicle with the jack

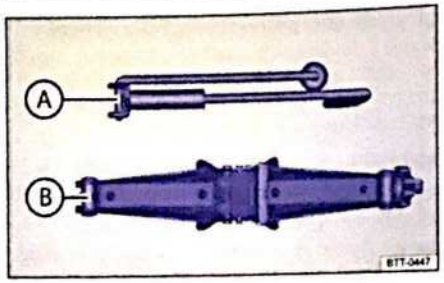


Fig. 319 Components of the scissors jack

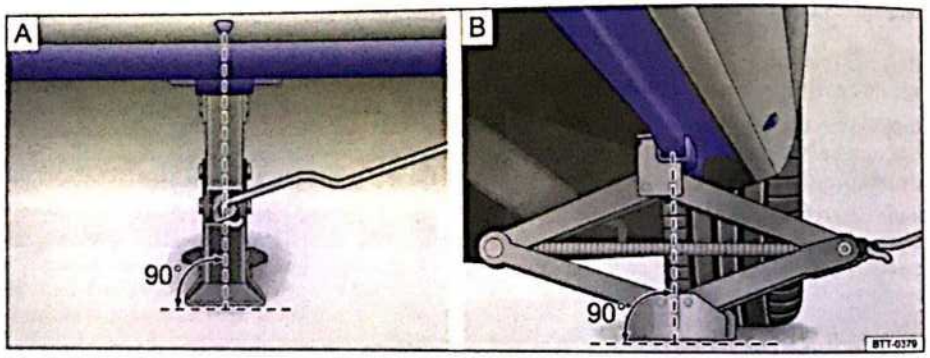


Fig. 320 Scissors jack at the rear on the left-side of the vehicle

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 391.

The jack may be positioned only at the reinforcements on the underbody, which are located behind the markings on the body → Fig. 320. Always use the lifting point closest to the wheel you are working on → ▲.

Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order → ▲:

1. Find a firm and level surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
2. Switch off the engine. Select a gear if the vehicle has a manual gearbox → page 172, or move the selector lever to position P if it has an automatic gearbox → page 174 and switch on the electronic parking brake → page 231.
3. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable objects.
4. When towing a trailer → page 299: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
5. Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed → page 392. Hook the hand-crank → Fig. 319 Ⓐ into position on the scissors jack Ⓑ.
6. Find the jacking point under the vehicle → Fig. 320 which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
7. Raise the scissors jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
8. Ensure that the entire surface of the foot of the vehicle jack is resting securely on the ground and that the foot of the vehicle jack is positioned precisely, i.e. vertically beneath the point of application → Fig. 320. ▶

Checklist (Continued)

9. Position the jack. At the same time, continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle → Fig. 320.
10. Crank the vehicle jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack, which can lead to severe injuries. Please observe the following to help reduce the risk of injuries:

- Only use vehicle jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Other vehicle jacks could slip out of position – this includes vehicle jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be firm and level. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the vehicle jack from slipping.
- Fit the vehicle jack only at the points described. The vehicle jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the side member securely → Fig. 320.
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. an arm or leg) underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the vehicle jack.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle when the engine is running, or if the vehicle is tilted to the side or on a gradient.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a vehicle jack. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures. ◁

Changing a wheel



Fig. 321 Changing the wheel: removing the wheel bolts with the screwdriver handle.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 391.

Removing the wheel

- Read the checklist → page 394.
- Loosen the wheel bolts → page 392.
- Jack up the vehicle → page 394.
- Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle → Fig. 321, completely unscrew the loosened wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

Fitting the spare wheel

Note any specific tyre running direction → page 376.

- Position the spare wheel / temporary spare wheel.
- Insert the anti-theft wheel bolt using the adapter at position → Fig. 318 ② or → Fig. 318 ③ and tighten it slightly in a clockwise direction.
- Screw in all the other wheel bolts in a clockwise direction and use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten them *gently*.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack. ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

– Use the box spanner to tighten all the wheel bolts securely in a clockwise direction → ▲. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anticlockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
– Fit the cover caps, centre covers or wheel covers → page 389.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect torque or incorrect use of wheel bolts can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep all wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs clean and free from oil and grease. The wheel bolts must be easy to turn and be tightened to the specified torque.
- The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle should only be used for turning wheel bolts, not use for loosening or tightening them.

After changing a wheel

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 391.

– Clean the tools as necessary and place them back in the foam rubber holder in the luggage compartment → page 327.
– Stow the spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment.
– The tightening torque of the wheel bolts should be checked immediately with a torque wrench → page 393.
– The damaged wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.

In the case of vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, the system must be resynchronised when new tyres are fitted → page 369.

Breakdown set

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

– Contents of the breakdown set 397
– Preparation 398
– Sealing and inflating tyres 398
– Test after driving for 10 minutes 399

The breakdown set can be used to temporarily seal any tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or punctures (up to approx. 4 mm in diameter). **Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre!**

Once the sealant has been added to the tyre, the tyre pressure must be checked again after approximately 10 minutes of driving.

Seek expert assistance if more than one vehicle tyre is damaged. The breakdown set is only designed for filling one tyre.

Only use the breakdown set if the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the required actions and safety procedures, and you have access to the correct breakdown set. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

The tyre sealant must not be used:

– If the rim is damaged.
– If the outside temperature is below -20°C (-4°F).
– If there are cuts or punctures in the tyre that are larger than 4 mm.
– If the tyre pressure is very low or the tyres are flat.
– If the use-by date on the tyre filler bottle has expired.
– In connection with mobility tyres. The word "Seal" appears on the outer wall of the tyre if your vehicle is fitted with mobility tyres.

⚠ WARNING

Using the breakdown set can be dangerous, especially if the tyres are inflated at the roadside. Please observe the following steps in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, and when safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to fill the tyre.
- Ensure that the ground is flat and firm.
- All passengers, and children in particular, must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.
- The breakdown set should only be used if you feel confident with carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.
- Tyres repaired with the breakdown set are intended for temporary, emergency use only. They should only be used until you can reach the nearest qualified workshop.
- Tyres that have been repaired using the breakdown set should be replaced as soon as possible.
- Sealant is hazardous to health and must be washed off immediately if it gets onto the skin.
- The breakdown set must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Never use a vehicle jack, even if it is approved for the vehicle.
- Always switch off the engine, switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the position P or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.

⚠ WARNING

Tyres that have been filled with sealant will not handle in the same way as a standard tyre.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Drive for just 10 minutes at no more than 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.

Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with legal requirements.

You can get a new tyre filler bottle from a Volkswagen dealership.

Observe the separate instructions from the manufacturer of the breakdown set.

Contents of the breakdown set

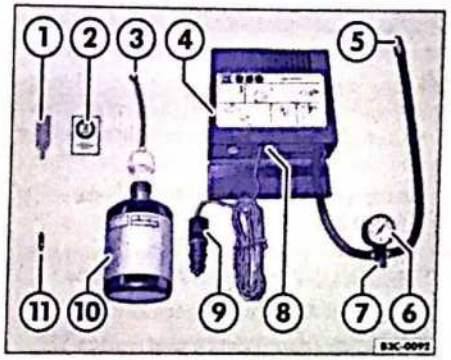


Fig. 322 The breakdown set.

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 396.

The breakdown set may be located in various places in the vehicle, e.g. in one of the side stowage areas in the luggage compartment or under the luggage compartment floor. It includes the following components → Fig. 322:

① Valve core extractor
② Sticker with the maximum permitted speed "max. 80 km/h" or "max. 50 mph"
③ Filler hose with plug
④ Air compressor
⑤ Tyre filler hose
⑥ Tyre pressure display[1]
⑦ Air bleed screw[2]
⑧ On/off switch
⑨ 12-volt plug
⑩ Tyre filler bottle with sealant[1]
⑪ Spare valve core

There is a slot on the lower end of the **valve core extractor** ① for the valve core. This is required for extracting and fitting the tyre valve. This also applies to the spare valve core ⑪.

[1] Could also be part of the air compressor.
[2] There may also be a button in the compressor instead.

Scanned by CamScanner

Preparation

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 396.

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for filling a tyre → ▲:

1. If you get a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
2. Switch on the electronic parking brake → page 231.
3. With a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, move the selector lever to position P → page 174.
4. Switch off the engine → page 166.
5. Manual gearbox: select a gear → page 172.
6. Ensure that all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
7. Switch on the hazard warning lights and position the warning triangle → page 37. Observe any legal requirements.
8. Check whether the puncture can be repaired with the breakdown set → page 396.
9. When towing a trailer → page 299: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly.
10. Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment.
11. Take the breakdown set out of the luggage compartment.
12. Take the sticker → Fig. 322 ② from the breakdown set and stick it on the dash panel within the driver's field of vision.
13. Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 396.

Sealing a tyre

- Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
- Use the valve core extractor → Fig. 322 ① to screw the valve core out of the tyre valve. Place the core on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre filler bottle → Fig. 322 ⑩ vigorously up and down several times.
- Screw the filler hose → Fig. 322 ③ tightly onto the tyre filler bottle in a clockwise direction. The plastic foil on the plug is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the filler hose → Fig. 322 ③ and place the open end fully on the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle upside down and inject the **entire** contents of the tyre filler bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre filler bottle from the valve.
- Use the valve core extractor → Fig. 322 ① to screw the valve core back onto the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the tyre filler hose → Fig. 322 ⑤ of the air compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the bleed screw → Fig. 322 ⑦ is closed.
- Start the engine and let it run.
- Insert the plug → Fig. 322 ⑨ into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets → page 272.
- Use the on/off switch → Fig. 322 ⑧ to switch on the air compressor.
- Run the compressor until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) → ▲. **The maximum running time is 8 minutes** → ⓘ.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If a pressure level of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) **cannot be achieved**, unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive (or reverse) the vehicle approximately 10 metres so that the sealing compound is more evenly distributed in the tyre.
- Screw the tyre filler hose for the air compressor firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
- If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance → ▲.
- Disconnect the air compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle no faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for **10 minutes** → page 399.

⚠ WARNING

The tyre filler hose and the air compressor can get hot during inflation.

- Protect your hands and skin from the hot components.
- Do not place the hot tyre filler hose and the hot air compressor on any inflammable materials.
- Allow the device to cool down fully before stowing.
- If the tyre will not inflate to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too damaged. The sealant is unable to seal the tyre. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.

ⓘ NOTICE

Switch the air compressor off after a maximum of 8 minutes to avoid overheating. Let the air compressor cool down for a few minutes before switching it back on.

Test after driving for 10 minutes

Please refer to ▲ at the start of the chapter on page 396.

Reconnect the tyre filler hose → Fig. 322 ⑤ and check the tyre pressure on the tyre pressure display → Fig. 322 ⑥.

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

- **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set.
- Seek expert assistance → ▲.

1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value → page 376.
- Resume your journey to the nearest qualified workshop. Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Have the damaged tyre replaced at the workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous as it can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not carry on driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower.
- Seek expert assistance.

Scanned by CamScanner

Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts

Accessories and parts

Volkswagen recommends that you seek advice from a Volkswagen dealership before purchasing accessories, replacement parts or service fluids, for example if the vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories or if parts have to be renewed. Volkswagen dealerships can recommend accessories, parts and service fluids suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

Volkswagen recommends you use only approved **Volkswagen accessories** and **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. And Volkswagen dealerships are qualified to install them correctly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of products **Volkswagen has not approved**. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must be approved by Volkswagen for use in your vehicle and bear the e mark (the European Union's authorization symbol). These devices include cruise control systems or an electronically controlled suspension.

Any **additional electrical components** fitted that do not serve to control the vehicle itself must bear the CE mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union). Such devices include refrigerator boxes, computers and ventilator fans.

WARNING

Incorrectly performed repairs or modifications to your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the airbags, cause faults, accidents and fatal injury.

- Never place, secure or mount objects, such as drink holders or telephone holders, either on or next to the airbag module covers or within the deployment zones of the airbags.
- Objects either on or next to the airbag module covers or are in the deployment zone of the airbags can cause serious or even fatal injuries should the airbags be activated.

Repairs and technical modifications

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications →▲.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause faults. As the electronic components are linked together in networks, these faults may indirectly affect the working of other systems. This can seriously impair vehicle safety, lead to excessive wear of components and also invalidate the type approval for the vehicle.

The Volkswagen dealership cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

The Volkswagen dealership is not responsible for damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly. Such damage is not covered by the Volkswagen guarantee.

Volkswagen recommends that all repairs and technical modifications be performed by an authorised Volkswagen workshop using **Volkswagen Genuine Parts**.

Vehicles with special auxiliary equipment or body parts

The manufacturer of these components must ensure that these parts (fittings) adhere to the stipulated environmental laws and regulations, particularly the EU directive 2000/53/EC concerning end-of-life vehicles and EU directive 2003/11/EC concerning the restriction on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The vehicle owner should keep all assembly documentation for these auxiliary fittings, and pass it on to any scrapping company later engaged. ▶

This is to facilitate environmentally responsible disposal for all vehicles, including refitted vehicles.

Windscreen repairs

To function properly, some equipment requires an electrical or electronic module, which may be located on the inside of the windscreen near the interior mirror. If the windscreen has been damaged in the viewing field of the electrical or electronic module, e.g. by stone impact, the windscreen must be replaced. Repairing the crack can lead to malfunction or functional faults in the equipment.

After changing the windscreen, the camera and sensors must be set up and calibrated by a qualified workshop.

Engine and transmission guard

An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the underside of the vehicle and to the engine oil sump.

Depending on where the vehicle is used, it may be a good idea to have an engine and transmission guard installed, e.g. if the vehicle will be driven over kerbs, on driveways or on unsurfaced roads. If you wish to have one fitted, Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.

WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause functional problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should be carried out only by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Unsuitable spare parts and accessories, incorrectly carried out work, modifications and repairs can lead to damage to the vehicle and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Volkswagen strongly recommends you use only approved Volkswagen accessories and Volkswagen Genuine Parts. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety.
- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Never fit parts to your vehicle that are in any way different from the factory-fitted parts.
- Never place, secure or mount objects, such as drink holders or telephone holders, either on or next to the airbag module covers or within the deployment zones of the airbags.
- Only use rim/tyre combinations which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.

Repairs and faults in the airbag system

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications →▲.

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the headliner, or the bodywork should be carried out by a qualified workshop. System components and airbag system sensors might be fitted on these vehicle components.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers could change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase. This can lead to the airbag ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications can cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease, therefore preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause function problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should be carried out only by a qualified workshop.
- Airbag modules cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Modifications to the vehicle's suspension, including the use of unsuitable tyre/rim combinations, can cause the airbag system to work differently and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Never install any components in the suspension system that do not have same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.
- Never use tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen. ◁

Information stored in the control units

Your vehicle is factory fitted with electronic control units which are responsible for engine and gearbox management. The control units also monitor the function of the exhaust system and the airbags.

These electronic control units continuously evaluate data relevant to the vehicle while the vehicle is being driven. Only these data will be stored if there are any faults recorded or any deviations from the specified values. This is generally displayed by the indicator lamps on the instrument cluster.

Special units are required to read and evaluate data stored in the control units.

These data are stored so that specialist workshops can diagnose and solve problems. The following data may have been stored:

- Engine and gearbox-relevant data.
- Speed.
- Direction of travel.
- Braking power.
- Seat belt monitor.

The control units never record conversations that take place in the vehicle. It is neither possible nor permitted to use the stored data to create movement profiles.

When the vehicle is being used, situations may arise in which the stored data (alone or in conjunction with other information such as accident reports, vehicle damage, witness statements etc.) can become assignable to a particular person, whereby consultation of an expert and use of the expert's information may be necessary.

In vehicles with an emergency call function via a mobile telephone or other units, the current location can be transmitted. In the event of an accident in which the control units register that an airbag has been triggered, the system can automatically send out a signal. This depends on your service provider. Transmission is possible only in areas with a sufficiently strong mobile telephone signal.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer, e.g. vehicle positioning in an emergency or Volkswagen Car-Net, allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from the vehicle.

Event data recorder

The vehicle is **not** fitted with an event data recorder.

Event data recorders temporarily store vehicle information. This provides precise information in the event of an accident. Vehicles with an airbag system may store accident-related data, e.g. impact speed, belt buckle states, seat positions and deployment times. The scope of the data is manufacturer-specific. ▶

An event data recorder may only be fitted if the owner has approved the procedure. This is covered by legislation in some countries.

Reprogramming control units

All data for the control of components are stored in the control units. Some convenience functions, such as lane change flash, single door unlocking and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If the convenience functions are reprogrammed, the descriptions in your vehicle wallet will no longer match the original functions. Volkswagen recommends that you have any reprogramming confirmed in the service schedule under "Workshop comments".

Information about possible reprogramming can be obtained from the Volkswagen dealership.

Reading the vehicle's event memory

There is a diagnostic interface for reading the event memories in the vehicle interior → ⚠. Data relating to the function and status of the electronic control units are stored in the event memory. Additional information on the stored data is available from qualified workshops.

In some vehicle models and with some levels of equipment, the diagnosis interface may be located in the footwell on the driver side on the underside of the instrument cluster or (possibly behind a cover) next to the bonnet release lever.

The event memory should only be read and reset by a qualified workshop.

After a fault has been rectified, the information in the memory pertaining to the fault is deleted. Other memory content is overwritten on an ongoing basis.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the diagnostic interface can cause faults, which can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- Never read the event memory using the diagnostic interface yourself.
- The event memory should only be read out via the diagnostic interface by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. ◁

Mobile telephones in the vehicle

Volkswagen recommends that you always use an external aerial to ensure reliable mobile telephone usage in the vehicle. This improves the connection quality and increases the range of the mobile device.

Electromagnetic radiation

When using a mobile device that is not connected to the external aerial, the electromagnetic radiation is not fully directed outside of the vehicle. This can pose a health risk → ⚠.

Using the telephone

In many countries it is mandatory to use a hands-free unit when making telephone calls, for example over a Bluetooth® connection or via the integrated telephone holder → Booklet *Infotainment system*. Secure mobile devices to a suitable holder before use → ⚠. Use existing stowage compartments in the vehicle for mobile hands-free units, for example in the centre console.

Use a compatible mobile telephone for hands-free units that support **SIM Access Profile (SAP)** technology.

Radios

Observe the relevant legislation and the manufacturer's operating instructions when using radio equipment. The retroactive installation of radio equipment requires a permit.

Ask your Volkswagen dealership for additional information about installing radio equipment.

⚠ WARNING

Mobile devices that are placed loosely in the vehicle or not properly secured could be flung through the interior and cause injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident.

- Secure any mobile devices and accessories located beyond the deployment zone of the airbags, or stow them safely.

⚠ WARNING

If a mobile device that is not connected to an external aerial is used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and ▶

Scanned by CamScanner

thus pose a health hazard to drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 cm between the antenna of the device and an active medical implant, such as a pacemaker.
- Do not carry an operational device close to or directly above an active medical implant, for example in a breast pocket.
- Switch off the device immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with an active medical implant or any other medical device. ◁

Information stickers and plates

Safety certificates, stickers and plates showing important vehicle operation information are factory-fitted in the engine compartment and on certain vehicle parts, such as the tank flap, front passenger sun visor, driver door pillar or under/on the luggage compartment floor.

- Never remove or damage the safety certificates, stickers and plates. They must remain legible at all times.
- If vehicle parts bearing safety certificates, stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement safety certificates, stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the new parts by the qualified workshop.

Safety certificate

There is a safety certificate on the door pillar of the driver door which states that all necessary safety standards and specifications from the transport safety authorities of the particular country were met at the time of production. The month and year of production and the chassis number may also be listed.

⚠ WARNING

Handling the vehicle incorrectly will increase the risk of accident and injuries.

- Comply with legal regulations.
- Observe the owner's manual.

NOTICE

Handling the vehicle incorrectly could lead to the vehicle becoming damaged.

- Comply with legal regulations.
- Carry out service jobs in accordance with the service schedule.
- Observe the owner's manual. ◁

Notes on the Volkswagen Emergency call service

The functioning and performance of the mobile data connection between the vehicle and the data server depend on factors that are beyond the control and responsibility of Volkswagen AG. In particular these include sufficient mobile telephone reception at the vehicle location and also any faults, impairment or interruption of mobile telephone reception caused by tunnels, garages, underpasses or other interference (including weather such as thunderstorms, jamming equipment, buildings, bridges or mountains, intensive use of the mobile network in the relevant radio cell etc.). The data connection between the vehicle and the data server can also be guaranteed only when the vehicle is located in a country in which it was first registered, with the approval of Volkswagen AG ("area of use"). The countries in a vehicle's area of use depend on the model, model year and vehicle equipment level.

Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits and uses personal data relating to the user in accordance with the law to ensure proper functioning and provision of the service. If an emergency call is initiated via the Volkswagen Emergency call service, the following data are transferred to Volkswagen AG: information about your vehicle, its location, the time of the emergency, number of occupants, severity and type of accident (head-on, side, rear damage or rollover), door status and the default language. Volkswagen AG processes these data and transmits them to an emergency control centre. ◁

Component protection

Some electronic components and control units are fitted with component protection as standard, e.g. the Infotainment system.

Component protection was developed as a protective mechanism in order to:

- Prevent any factory-fitted parts delivered with a vehicle from functioning fully if they have been installed into other vehicles (e.g. after theft),
- Prevent full function of components outside of the vehicle,
- Allow for legitimate installation or exchange of parts and control units by a professional in the case of service. ▶

JG0012720AC

Radio reception and aerials

In vehicles with a factory-fitted infotainment system, the aerial for radio reception can be installed at various locations in the vehicle:

- On the inside of the rear window, together with the rear window heating.
- On the inside of the rear side windows.
- On the inside of the windscreen.
- On the roof of the vehicle.

Aerials on the interior of the windows can be identified by thin wires.

NOTICE

Aerials located on the inside of the windows can be damaged by corrosive or acidic detergents, any other chemicals or if hard objects chafe against the window. Never apply stickers over the window aerials and never clean the aerials with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.

NOTICE

When retrofitting a radio or Infotainment system, ensure that the vehicle's standard integral aerial amplifier is compatible with the system in question, or else use an additional antenna adapter. Otherwise the aerial amplifier could be subjected to overvoltage damage. ◁

Scanned by CamScanner

Where	What appears:	Possible solution
Instrument cluster display	SAFE CP	Go to a qualified workshop.
Infotainment system display	Component theft protection: the infotainment system is not fully available at present. Switch on the ignition.	Switch on the ignition. If this does not deactivate component protection, seek professional assistance.

Volkswagen repair information

Volkswagen Service information and official Volkswagen repair information can be purchased from the following addresses:

Customers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, Central and South America

Please contact a Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop or order the literature you require from www.erwin.volkswagen.de.

WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause functional problems and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems and the airbag systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should be carried out only by a qualified workshop.

Declaration of conformity

The individual manufacturer declares herewith that the following products conform, at the time of vehicle production, with the basic requirements and other relevant laws and regulations, including FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

Radio-based equipment

- Electronic immobiliser.
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.
- Vehicle key.
- Remote control for the auxiliary heater → page 154.
- Keyless Access locking and starting system.
- ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control).
- Area monitoring system (Front Assist) including City Emergency Brake.
- Pedestrian monitoring.
- Traffic Jam Assist.
- Emergency Assist.
- Lane change assist system (Side Assist) including Rear Traffic Alert.

Electrical equipment

- 12-volt socket.
- 230-volt Euro socket.

Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres

Tyres fitted in the vehicle meet the requirement of BIS and comply with the requirements under the Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR), 1989.

Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles

Recycling end-of-life vehicles

Volkswagen has already made provision for you to recycle your vehicle in an environmentally responsible manner. The recycling system operating in many European countries will take back your vehicle at the end of its useful life. Once the vehicle has been recycled, a certificate of destruction will be issued to show that the vehicle has been disposed of correctly.

End-of-life vehicles are recycled free of charge, provided that national legislation is complied with.

Further information on the recycling of end-of-life vehicles can be found at a Volkswagen dealership.

Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag and the belt tensioners are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Information about vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle)

Observe the following points in relation to vehicles used to transport cargo with a maximum authorised mass of up to 3.5 tonnes (registered as N1 in Europe):

Variants and number of seats

There are different types of N1 vehicle based on a Volkswagen passenger. The number of seats may be restricted to 2 or 4.

Vehicles with 2 seats: there is no floor covering in the rear of the vehicle interior because there is no rear bench seat → ▲.

Vehicles with 4 seats: the centre seat on the rear bench seat **cannot be used** → ▲.

Transporting children safely

As in vehicles with passenger car approval (M1), approved child restraint systems can be installed on the seats → page 28.

Towing a trailer

Observe any country-specific regulations when towing a trailer and using a towing bracket.

The maximum speed when towing a trailer is just 80 km/h if the gross vehicle weight rating or the axle load on the rear axle is exceeded. This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted. Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.

The vehicle documents contain details of permitted excess loads. If no excess loads are shown, the vehicle can be driven at 100 km/h, taking account of the laws which apply in different countries.

Technical data

The technical data can be found in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

Risk of injury and electric shock from exposed cables.

- Do not have the luggage compartment removed until after delivery so that the cables in the rear of the vehicle are covered while the vehicle is in use.

WARNING

Risk of serious injury due to the incorrect transportation of people.

- Never transport a person or child in the centre of the rear bench seat.
- The lack of restraint systems such as seat belt and head restraints can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Risk of serious and fatal injuries.

- Do not travel with people in the luggage compartment.
- Observe the safety notes and information about the luggage compartment and transportation → page 279.

Scanned by CamScanner

Technical data

Information on technical data

Unless otherwise indicated or separately listed, the technical data apply to the basic model. The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different model versions, for special vehicles and vehicles for other countries. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data.

Engine

The vehicle data sticker and the official vehicle documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.

Weight

The values for the kerb weight in the following tables apply for the road-ready vehicle with driver (75 kg), service fluids including fuel tank carrying 90% of its capacity and, if applicable, tool kit and spare tyre → ⚠. Additional equipment and retrofitted accessories increase the stated kerb weight and reduce the maximum permitted load accordingly.

The load comprises the weights of the following:

- Passengers
- All luggage
- Roof load including the mounts or roof bars and the load carrier system.
- Drawbar load when towing a trailer

Performance figures

The performance figures were measured without equipment which may influence performance, such as a roof carrier or mud flaps.

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the power output and performance figures may differ.

In certain vehicles with heavy duty suspension, the engine could be governed to provide a maximum speed of 210 km/h.

Gross combination weight

The listed gross combination weight ratings apply to altitudes up to 1,000 m above sea level only. The gross combination weight rating must be reduced by approximately 10% for every further 1,000 m in altitude.

Explanation of the tables

Abbreviations for the gearboxes:

- MG = manual gearbox.
- DSG® = DSG® dual clutch gearbox.

MG6 = 6-speed manual gearbox.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weights, loads, dimensions, maximum speeds and axle loads can cause damage to the vehicle, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not exceed the permitted weights, gross combination weights, loads, dimensions and maximum speeds.
- The actual axle loads must never exceed the maximum permissible axle loads.
- The payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle. Adjust your speed accordingly.

NOTICE

The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment, they should be placed either in front of or over the rear axle in order to minimise the effect on the vehicle's handling.

NOTICE

Observe the instructions and information relating to vehicles with N1 approval→ page 407, *Information about vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle).*

Vehicle identification data

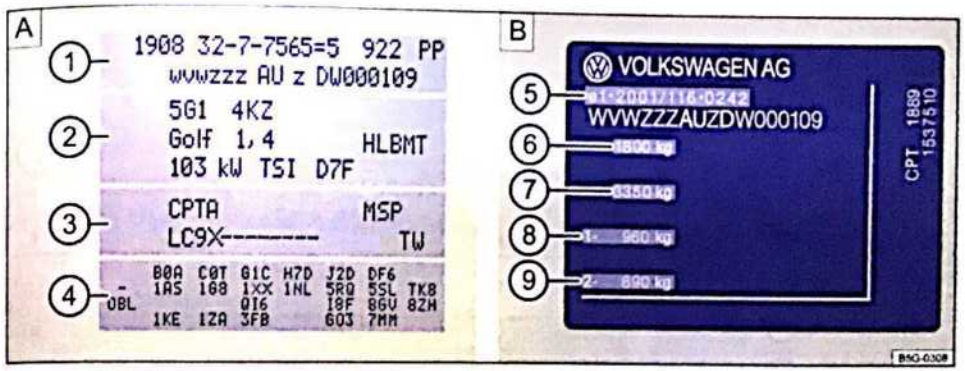


Fig. 323 Ⓐ vehicle data sticker: example shows a vehicle with engine code CPTA ③. Ⓑ type plate.



Fig. 324 In the windscreen: vehicle identification number.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen → Fig. 324. The viewer is located in the lower corner of the windscreen. The vehicle identification number is also stamped on the right-hand water drainage channel. The water drainage channel is located between the suspension turret and wing. You have to open the bonnet ⚠ to gain access to the vehicle identification number → page 350.

The vehicle identification number can be displayed in the Infotainment system using the CAR button and the ⚙ and Service function buttons → page 78.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker → Fig. 323 Ⓐ is located under the rear luggage compartment trim on the side of the luggage compartment. It contains the following data:

① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
② Vehicle type, engine power, gearbox type
③ Engine and gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment. In the example, the engine code is "CPTA" → Fig. 323.
④ Optional extras, PR numbers

These vehicle data are also contained in the service schedule.

Type plate

The type plate → Fig. 323 Ⓑ can be seen on the lower part of the door pillar when the door is open. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

The type plate contains the following data:

⑤ Permission
⑥ Gross vehicle weight rating
⑦ Gross combination weight (vehicle plus trailer)
⑧ Gross axle weight rating, front
⑨ Gross axle weight rating, rear

In some models, the engine code (EC) may be displayed on the instrument cluster → page 54.

Scanned by CamScanner

Dimensions

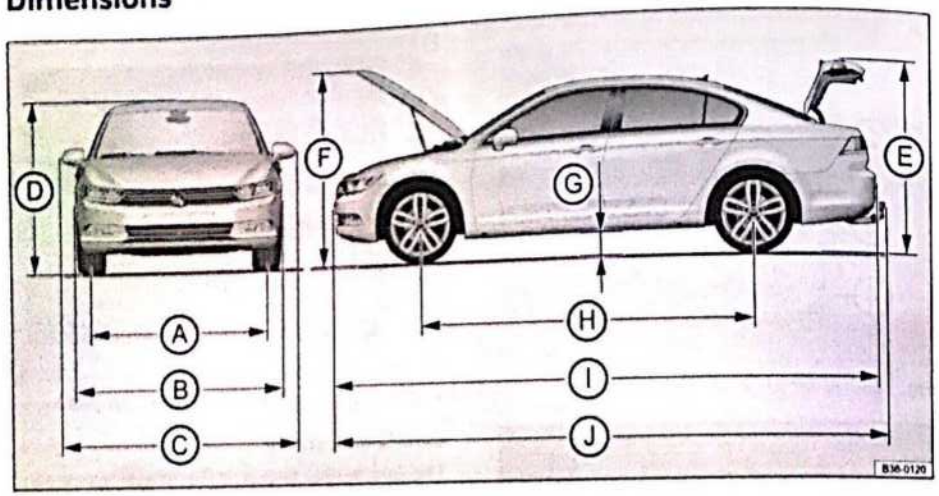


Fig. 325 Dimensions (Saloon).

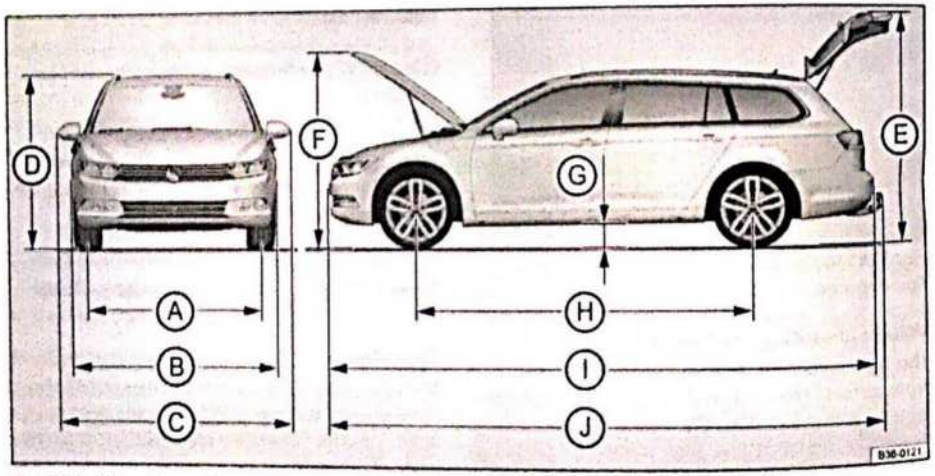


Fig. 326 Dimensions (Estate and Alltrack).

The data in the table apply to the most basic German model.

The specified values can vary due to different tyre and wheel sizes, if additional equipment is fitted, for different model versions, for retrofitted accessories, and for special vehicles. They can also vary in vehicles that have been manufactured for other countries.

Key for Fig. 325 and Fig. 326:		Saloon	Estate	Alltrack
Ⓐ	Front track	1,578 - 1,586 mm	1,578 - 1,586 mm	1,578 - 1,586 mm
	Rear track	1,562 - 1,572 mm	1,562 - 1,570 mm	1,561 - 1,569 mm
Ⓑ	Width excluding exterior mirrors	1,832 mm	1,832 mm	1,832 mm
Ⓒ	Width (from one exterior mirror to the other)	2,062 mm	2,062 mm	2,062 mm
Ⓓ	Height to the upper edge of the roof at kerb weight[a]	1,441 - 1,476 mm	1,462 - 1,516 mm	1,506 - 1,530 mm
Ⓔ	Height with open boot lid and kerb weight[a]	1,760 - 1,766 mm	2,027 mm	2,060 mm
Ⓕ	Height with open bonnet and kerb weight[a]	1,786 - 1,798 mm	1,798 mm	1,835 mm
Ⓖ	Ground clearance in road-ready state[b] between the axles	130 - 160 mm	130 - 160 mm	174 mm
Ⓗ	Wheelbase	2,786 mm	2,786 mm	2,786 mm
Ⓘ	Length (from bumper to bumper)	4,767 - 4,871 mm	4,767 - 4,887 mm	4,777 - 4,882 mm
Ⓙ	Length with fitted towing bracket (when factory-fitted)	4,874 - 4,879 mm	4,874 - 4,877 mm	- mm[c]
-	Turning circle diameter	Approx. 11.4 m	Approx. 11.4 m	Approx. 11.4 m

a) Kerb weight without driver, without payload.

b) Kerb weight with driver (75 kg) and service fluids.

c) Figures were not available at time of publication.

NOTICE

- Take care when driving in car parks with protruding kerbstones or bollards. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle.
- Drive carefully through dips in the road and over drive entrances, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

Fuel tank capacity

Fuel tank capacity

Petrol and diesel engines with front-wheel drive.

- approx. 59 - 66 l, of which 8 l reserve.

Petrol and diesel engines with four-wheel drive.

- approx 66 l, of which 8 l reserve.

E85 MultiFuel engine.

- approx. — l, of which approx. — l reserve [1].

Petrol engines

1.4 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 92 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	92 kW at 5,000 - 6,000 rpm		
Engine code	CZCA		
Maximum torque	200 Nm at 1,400 - 4,000 rpm		
Gearbox		MG6	DSG®7

1) Figures were not available at time of publication.

Scanned by CamScanner

Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	208[a]	208[b]
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	206[a]	206[b]
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,367	1,395
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,394	1,443
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	1,910 – 1,940	1,950 – 1,960
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	1,960	2,020 – 2,030
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	940 – 960	970 – 1,000
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	950	980 – 1,000
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,000 – 1,050	1,000 – 1,040
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,060	1,070 – 1,100
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	1,800	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	1,800	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	680	690
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	690	720
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,470 – 3,485	3,495 – 3,505
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,505	3,530 – 3,545

a) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.

b) Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.

1.4 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 92 kW

Power output	92 kW at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm
Engine code	CXSB
Maximum torque	200 Nm at 1,400 – 4,000 rpm
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

1.4 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 110 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	110 kW at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm		
Engine code	CZDA		
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,500 – 3,500 rpm		
Gearbox		MG6	DSG®7
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	220[a]	220[a]
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	218[a]	218[a]
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,381	1,419

Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,422	1,438
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	1,930 – 1,950	1,970 – 2,000
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	1,990	2,010 – 2,040
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	960 – 980	980 – 1,000
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	970	980 – 1,000
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,000 – 1,040	1,020 – 1,070
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1070	1,060 – 1,110
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,600	1,600
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,600	1,600
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	1,900	1,900
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	1,900	1,900
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	690	700
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	710	710
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,580 – 3,590	3,615 – 3,625
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,625	3,620 – 3,640

a) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.

1.4 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 110 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	110 kW at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm			
Engine code	CZEA			
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,500 – 3,500 rpm			
Gearbox		MG6	DSG®7	MG6 4MOTION
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	220[a]	220[a]	215
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	218[a]	218[a]	213
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,387	1,413	1,488
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,429	1,453	1,537
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	1,940 – 1,970	1,970 – 1,980	2,090
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,000	2,040 – 2,050	2,100
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	960 – 980	980 – 1,000	1,000 – 1,020
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	980	990 – 1,010	1,010
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,010 – 1,060	1,020 – 1,050	1,120 – 1,140
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,070	1,080 – 1,110	1,140
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,600	1,600	1,800

Scanned by CamScanner

Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,600	1,600	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	1,900	1,900	2,000
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	1,900	1,900	2,100
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	690	700	740
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	710	720	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,585 – 3,595	3,615 – 3,630	3,890
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,635	3,640 – 3,655	3,930

a) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.

1.8 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 132 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	132 kW at 5,100 – 6,200 rpm	
Engine code	CJSA	
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,250 – 5,000 rpm	
Gearbox		DSG®7
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	232[a]
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	230[a]
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,480
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,505
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,030 – 2,050
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,090 – 2,110
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,020 – 1,050
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,020 – 1,040
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,030 – 1,080
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,100 – 1,140
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	2,000
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	2,000 – 2,100
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	740
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,860 – 3,875
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,900 – 3,910

a) Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.

1.8 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 132 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	132 kW at 4,000 – 6,200 rpm	
Engine code	CJSC	
Maximum torque	320 Nm at 1,450 – 3,900 rpm	
Gearbox		MG6
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	232
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	230
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,468
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,504
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,020 – 2,030
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,080 – 2,100
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,010 – 1,030
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,010 – 1,030
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,040 – 1,070
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,100 – 1,140
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	2,000
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	2,000 – 2,100
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	730
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,850 – 3,860
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,890 – 3,900

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 162 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	162 kW at 4,500 – 6,200 rpm		
Engine code	CHHB, CXDA		
Maximum torque	350 Nm at 1,500 – 4,400 rpm		
Gearbox		DSG®6	DSG®7 4MOTION
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	246	-
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	244	-
Maximum speed (Alltrack)	km/h	-	231[a]
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,505	-
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,550	-
Kerb weight (Alltrack)	kg	-	1,677
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,080 – 2,090	-

Scanned by CamScanner

Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,130	-
Gross vehicle weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	-	2,270
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,040 - 1,060	-
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,020 -1,040	-
Gross axle weight rating, front (Alltrack)	kg	-	1,080
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,070 - 1,100	-
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,140 - 1,160	-
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Alltrack)	kg	-	1,240
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	2,000	-
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	2,000	-
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Alltrack)	kg	-	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	-[b]	-
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	2,100	-
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Alltrack)	kg	-	-[b]
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	750	-
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750	-
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Alltrack)	kg	-	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	4,080 - 4,090	-
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	4,130 - 4,140	-
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	-	4,470

[a] Maximum speed is reached in 6th gear.

[b] Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TSI®, 206 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	206 kW at 5,600 - 6,500 rpm	
Engine code	CJXA	
Maximum torque	350 Nm at 1,700 - 5,600 rpm	
Gearbox		DSG®6 4MOTION
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	250
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	250
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,615
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,674
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,200 - 2,220
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,250

Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,090 - 1,110
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,080 - 1,100
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,160
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,200 - 1,220
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	-[a]
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	-[a]
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	4,420
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	4,450

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

Diesel engines

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 81 kW

Power output	81 kW at - rpm with DPF[a]
Engine code	CLHC
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,500 - 3,000 rpm
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

1.6 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 88 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	88 kW at 3,500-4,000 rpm with DPF		
Engine code	DCXA		
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,500 - 3,250 rpm		
Gearbox		MG6	DSG®7
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	206	206[a]
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	204	204[a]
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,444	1,459
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,485	1,500
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	1,990 - 2,010	2,000 - 2,020
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,060 -2,080	2,060 - 2,090

Scanned by CamScanner

Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,030 – 1,060	1,040 – 1,070
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,020 – 1,040	1,030 – 1,050
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	980 – 1,030	980 – 1,030
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,070 – 1,110	1,060 – 1,110
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	1,800	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	1,800	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	720	720
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	740	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,545 – 3,555	3,560 – 3,570
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,605 – 3,615	3,620 – 3,630

a) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.

1.6 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 88 kW, BlueMotion

Power output	88 kW at 3,500–4,000 rpm with DPF	
Engine code	DCZA	
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,500 – 3,250 rpm	
Gearbox		MG6
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	210[a]
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	208[a]
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,474
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,505
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,020 – 2,040
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,070 – 2,100
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,010 – 1,030
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,000 – 1,020
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,040 – 1,080
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,100 – 1,150
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	730
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,535 – 3,545
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	3,575 – 3,600

a) Maximum speed is reached in 5th gear.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 88 kW

Power output	88 kW at 3600 – 4,000 rpm with DPF
Engine code	CVRB
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,600 – 3,250 rpm
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 110 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	110 kW at 3,500 – 4,000 rpm with DPF		
Engine code	CRLB		
Maximum torque	340 Nm at 1,750 – 3,000 rpm		
Gearbox		MG6	DSG®6
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	220	218
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	218	216
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,475	1,501
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,503	1,541
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,020 – 2,040	2,040 – 2,070
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,060 – 2,100	2,130 –2,140
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,050 – 1,070	1,070 – 1,090
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,040 – 1,050	1,070 – 1,100
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,000 – 1,040	1,000 – 1,050
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,060 – 1,110	1,080 – 1,120
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	2,000	2,000
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	2,000	2,000
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	–[a]	–[a]
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	–[a]	2,100
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	730	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750	750

Scanned by CamScanner

Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	4,065 – 4,080	4,095 – 4,105
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	4,115 – 4,125	4,155 – 4,170

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 110 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	110 kW at 3,500 – 4,000 rpm with DPF	
Engine code	DFEA	
Maximum torque	340 Nm at 1,750 – 3,000 rpm	
Gearbox		MG6 4MOTION
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	215
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	213
Maximum speed (Alltrack)	km/h	205
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,598
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,631
Kerb weight (Alltrack)	kg	1,670
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,200 – 2,220
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,220
Gross vehicle weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	2,260 – 2,270
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,080 – 1,100
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,070 – 1,090
Gross axle weight rating, front (Alltrack)	kg	1,080 – 1,100
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,170
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,180 – 1,200
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Alltrack)	kg	1,210 – 1,240
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Alltrack)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Alltrack)	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	4,405 – 4,420

Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	4,425 – 4,435
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	4,460 – 4,470

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 110 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	110 kW at 3,500 – 4,000 rpm with DPF	
Engine code	DFGA	
Maximum torque	340 Nm at 1,750 – 3,000 rpm	
Gearbox		DSG®6
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	220
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	–a)
Maximum speed (Alltrack)	km/h	–a)
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,504
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	–a)
Kerb weight (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,070 – 2,090
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	–a)
Gross vehicle weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,070 – 1,090
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	–a)
Gross axle weight rating, front (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,030 – 1,070
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	–a)
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	1,800
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	2,000
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	3,890 – 3,900

Scanned by CamScanner

Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	-[a]
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	-[a]

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 110 kW

Power output	110 kW at - rpm with DPF[a]
Engine code	DBGA
Maximum torque	320 Nm at - rpm[a]
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 130 kW

Power output	130 kW at - rpm with DPF[a]
Engine code	CRGA
Maximum torque	350 Nm at - rpm[a]
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 135 kW

Power output	135 kW at - rpm with DPF[a]
Engine code	CUPA
Maximum torque	380 Nm at 1,750 - 3,000 rpm
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 140 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	140 kW at 3,500-4,000 rpm with DPF			
Engine code	DFCA			
Maximum torque	400 Nm at 1,900 - 3,300 rpm			
Gearbox		MG6	DSG®6	DSG®6 4MOTION
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	237	235	230
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	235	233	228
Maximum speed (Alltrack)	km/h	-	-	220
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,505	1,549	1,614
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,590	1,581	1,674
Kerb weight (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	1,705
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,080 - 2,100	2,110 - 2,140	2,200
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,180	2,170 - 2,200	2,220 - 2,240
Gross vehicle weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	2,290 - 2,300
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,060 - 1,080	1,080 - 1,100	1,080 - 1,100
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,060 - 1,080	1,080 - 1,100	1,100 - 1,120
Gross axle weight rating, front (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	1,100 - 1,120
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,050 - 1,090	1,060 - 1,110	1,170
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,150 - 1,170	1,120 - 1,170	1,170
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	1,220 - 1,250
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	2,000	2,000	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	2,000	2,000	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	-[a]	2,100	-[a]
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	2,100	2,100 - 2,200	-[a]
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	-[a]
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	750	750	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750	750	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	4,080 - 4,100	4,125 - 4,140	4,400 - 4,420
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	4,190 - 4,205	4,185 -4,200	4,455 - 4,470
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	-	-	4,490 - 4,500

[a] Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 140 kW

Power output	140 kW at 3,500-4,000 rpm with DPF
Engine code	DDAA

Scanned by CamScanner

Maximum torque	400 Nm at 1,750 – 3,500 rpm
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 140 kW

Power output	140 kW at 3,500–4,000 rpm with DPF
Engine code	CVTA
Maximum torque	400 Nm at 1,750 – 3,500 rpm
Additional figures were not available at time of publication.	

2.0 l, 4-cylinder TDI®, 176 kW, BlueMotion Technology

Power output	176 kW at 4,000 rpm with DPF	
Engine code	CUAA	
Maximum torque	500 Nm at 1,750 – 2,500 rpm	
Gearbox		DSG®7 4MOTION
Maximum speed (Saloon)	km/h	240
Maximum speed (Estate)	km/h	238
Maximum speed (Alltrack)	km/h	234
Kerb weight (Saloon)	kg	1,721
Kerb weight (Estate)	kg	1,735
Kerb weight (Alltrack)	kg	1,776
Gross vehicle weight rating (Saloon)	kg	2,260
Gross vehicle weight rating (Estate)	kg	2,310
Gross vehicle weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	2,360
Gross axle weight rating, front (Saloon)	kg	1,160
Gross axle weight rating, front (Estate)	kg	1,140
Gross axle weight rating, front (Alltrack)	kg	1,160
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Saloon)	kg	1,150
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Estate)	kg	1,220
Gross axle weight rating, rear (Alltrack)	kg	1,250
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Saloon)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Estate)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 % (Alltrack)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Saloon)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Estate)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 % (Alltrack)	kg	–a)
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Saloon)	kg	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Estate)	kg	750
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked (Alltrack)	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Saloon)	kg	4,485
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Estate)	kg	4,525
Maximum gross combination weight rating (Alltrack)	kg	4,560

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

3G0012770AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
4MOTION	Four-wheel drive.
ABS	Anti-lock brake system.
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control.
ACT®	Active cylinder management (ACT).
AFS	Dynamic cornering light (AFS).
ANSI	American National Standards Institute.
ATA	Anti-theft alarm.
BAS	Brake Assist system.
ccm	Cubic centimetres. Unit of displacement.
CCS	Cruise Control System.
CO_2	Carbon dioxide.
DCC	Adaptive chassis control.
DIN	German Standards Authority (Deutsches Institut für Normung).
DPF	Diesel particulate filter.
DSG®	Automatic dual clutch gearbox DSG®.
E85	Ethanol fuel.
EC	Engine code.
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EDL	Electronic differential lock.
EN	European standard.
EPC	Engine management system (electronic power control).
ESC	Electronic stabilisation programme.
ETC	Electronic toll collection system.
FAQ	Frequently Asked Questions.
FSI	Fuel stratified injection.
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per kilometre.
kN	Kilonewton, pulling power.
kPa	Kilopascal, value for tyre inflation pressure.
kW	Kilowatt, engine power.
LED	Light-emitting diode.
LRP	Lead Replacement Petrol
MG5	5-speed manual gearbox.
MG6	6-speed manual gearbox.
N	Newton, pulling power.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
PRS	Particle reduction system.
psi	Pound force per square inch.
PVC	Polyvinyl chloride.

Abbreviation	Definition
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.
rpm	Revolutions per minute – engine speed.
SCR	Selective Catalytic Reduction.
TCS	Traction control system.
TDI®	Diesel engine with direct injection and turbocharging (turbocharged direct or diesel injection).
trip	Trip recorder.
TSI®	Petrol direct injection with turbocharging or twin charging (Turbocharged or Twincharged Stratified Injection).
XDL	Extension of the electronic differential lock.

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Index

Numbers and Symbols

12-volt socket 267

A

Abroad
- Extended trips with your vehicle 166
- Selling the vehicle 166

ABS
- see Brake support systems 262

ACC
- Operating 206
- Radar sensor 205
- see Adaptive Cruise Control 202
- Special driving situations 210
- Switching off temporarily 209

Accessing service schedules 72

Accessories 400

Acoustic warnings
- Light 128

Active cylinder management (ACT)
- Status display 58

Active Info Display 55
- Information profiles 56
- Navigation map 56

Adaptive chassis control (DCC) 183
- Warning lamp 183

Adaptive Cruise Control 202
- Displays 204
- Indicator lamp 204
- Malfunction 203
- Warning lamp 204

AdBlue
- Indicator lamp 314
- Information 315
- Minimum refill quantity 315
- Refilling 315
- Specifications 315
- Tank capacity 315
- Warning lamp 314

Adjusting
- Correct sitting position 8
- Electrically adjusted front seat 117
- Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards 118
- Headlight range 130
- Head restraints 121
- Massage function 125
- Mechanically adjusted front seat 116
- Memory function 124
- Steering wheel 114

Adjusting the driving mode to suit your requirements 186

Aerial 405

AFS
- see Dynamic cornering light (AFS) 132

Airbag system 19
- Automatic battery switch-off 367
- Curtain airbags 26
- Description 22
- Different front passenger front airbag systems 20
- Faults 401
- Front airbags 23
- Function 22
- Indicator lamp 21
- Knee airbags 27
- Locking the vehicle after triggering 99
- Repairs 401
- Side airbags 25
- Switching off the front passenger front airbag 24
- Switching off with the key-operated switch 24
- Using child seats 24

Air Care Climatronic 154

Air conditioning system 145
- Adjusting the temperature 147
- Air distribution 147
- Air recirculation mode 147, 150
- AUTO (automatic mode) 147
- Auxiliary heater and ventilation 154
- Blowers 147
- Controls 146, 149
- Cooling mode 147
- Defrosting windows/the windscreen 147
- General information 153
- Indirect ventilation 149
- Infotainment 147
- Infotainment system 148
- Malfunction 153
- Maximum cooling output 147
- Residual heat 148
- Setting temperature 149
- Steering wheel heating 153
- Switching off 147
- Temperature settings 148
- Tips 153
- Vents 149
- Water underneath the vehicle 154
- Windscreen heating 152

Air conditioning system (manual)
- see Air conditioning system 145

Air pressure
- see Tyre pressure 379

Air recirculation mode 150
- Air conditioning system 147
- Function 150
- Heating and fresh air system 147
- Switching off 150
- Switching on 150

Alarm 97

All-year tyres 388

Allergen filter 154

Alltrack
- Things to note 262

Analogue clock 67

Analogue instrument cluster 55

Angle of rising gradient 190

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 262

Anti-theft alarm 97
- Anti-tow alarm 98
- Description 97
- Interior monitoring 98
- Risk of false alarm 98

Anti-theft warning system
- Trailers 304

Anti-theft wheel bolts 327, 391, 392

Anti-tow alarm 98

App-Connect 278

Applications 278

Apps 278

Area monitoring system
- City Emergency Brake 212
- Displays 214
- Fault 213
- Operation 215
- Radar sensor 215
- Switching off temporarily 216
- System limits 216

Area monitoring system (Front Assist) 212

Area View 252
- Area View displays 255
- Bird's eye view 255
- Checklist 253
- Front camera 255
- Function buttons 255
- Rear camera 255
- Screen 254
- Side camera 255
- Things to note 253, 254
- Using Area View 254

Armrest 125

Ashtray
- Removable 271

Ashtrays 270
- Front 270

Assistance systems
- Driving profile selection 183

Assist systems
- Adaptive Cruise Control 202
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 262
- Area monitoring system (Front Assist) 212
- Area View 252
- Auto Hold 234
- Automatic Post-Collision Braking System 262
- Brake Assist system (BAS) 262
- Cruise control system 194
- Downhill speed control (dual clutch gearbox DSG) 186
- Driver Alert System 63
- Dynamic Road Sign Display 64
- Electronic differential lock (EDL) 263
- Electronic stability control (ESC) 261
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 264
- Emergency Assist 225
- Hill Descent Control (Alltrack) 187
- Hill Hold Assist 234
- Indicator lamps 187
- Lane change system (Side Assist) 226
- Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert 226
- Lane departure warning system (Lane Assist) 221
- Park Assist 247
- Parking aid 235
- ParkPilot 235
- Pedestrian monitoring 217
- Proactive occupant protection system 18
- Rear Traffic Alert 226
- Rear view camera system (Rear View) 241
- Recommendation for rest breaks 63
- Speed limiter 198
- Start/stop system 171
- Switching off 74
- Switching on 74
- Traction control system (TCS) 263, 264
- Traffic Jam Assist 224
- Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257
- Types of tyre monitoring systems 369
- Tyre monitoring systems 369
- Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 373
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 374

Asymmetrical tyres 387

Auto Hold 234

Auto Hold function
- Indicator lamp 232

Automatic gearbox
- see Dual clutch gearbox DSG 174, 179

Automatic Gearbox
- see Dual clutch gearbox DSG 174

Automatic headlight control 132

Automatic Post-Collision Braking System 262

Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers 367

AUX-IN socket 268

Auxiliary equipment or body parts 400

Auxiliary heater
- Immediate heating 148

Auxiliary heater and ventilation 154
- Activating 157
- Programming 157
- Remote control 155

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Remote control range (auxiliary heater and ventilation) 156
Switching off 155
Switching on 155
Auxiliary instruments
Off-road display 192
Performance monitor 83
Axle weight rating 408

B

Background lighting 135
Bag hook (Estate) 293
Bag hook (Saloon) 293
Ball head
Indicator lamp 302
BAS
see Brake support systems 262
Bass speaker
see Subwoofer 274
Battery
Discharged 155
Discharging 368
see also Vehicle battery 363
Before driving off-road (Alltrack)
Checklist 190
Belt retractor 17
Belt status display
see Seat belts 11
Belt tensioner 17
Disposal 17
Service and disposal 17
Belt tension limiter 17
Bench seat 119
Bicycle carrier
Fitting on the ball head 303
Maximum load 303
Biodiesel 313
Bonnet
Closing 352
Display 353
Opening 352
Warning lamp 353
Boot
see Luggage compartment 279
Boot lid 102
Closing 105
Driving with an open boot lid 164
Electric closing 106
Electric opening 106
Electric opening and closing 106
Locking 105
Locking and unlocking 93
Manual opening and closing 109
Opening 104
Unlocking 104
Bottle holder 269
Bottles 262
Brake Assist system (BAS) 362
Brake fluid 362
Specification 362
Brakes
Brake fluid 362
Brake fluid level 363
Brake pads 162
Brake servo 163
Brake support systems 261
Changing the brake fluid 363
Electronic parking brake 233
Emergency brake lights for hard braking 38
Emergency braking function 234
Fault 163
Indicator lamp 260
Parking brake 233
Running in brake pads 162
Warning lamp 260
Brake servo 163, 261
Brake support systems 261
ABS 261
BAS 261
EDS 261
ESC 261
Switching ESC on and off 264
Switching ESC Sport on and off 264
Switching TCS on and off 264
TCS 261
XDL 261
Brake system 261
see Brakes 163
Breakdown
Vehicle safety 37
Breakdown set 396
Contents 397
Inflating the tyre 398
More than one damaged tyre 396
Preparation 398
Sealing the tyre 398
Test after driving for 10 minutes 399
When not to use 396
Breakover angle 190
Bulb failure 329
see Changing bulbs 329
Button cell
Replacing in the vehicle key 91

C

Camera 246
Cleaning 246
Lane departure warning system 222
Pedestrian monitoring 218
Rear view camera system (Rear View) 246

Camera lenses
Care/cleaning 321
Capacities
AdBlue tank 315
Fuel tank 411
Washer fluid reservoir 354
Car-Net
Lending or selling the vehicle to others 278
see Volkswagen Car-Net 276, 277
Care
see Vehicle care 319
Car wash
Switching off Auto Hold 235
Switching off Hill Hold Assist 235
Catalytic converter 318
Indicator lamp 317
Malfunction 318
CCS
see Cruise control system 194
Central locking 91
Anti-theft alarm 97
Central locking button 94
Description 92
Keyless access 94
Locking and unlocking from the inside 94
Locking and unlocking from the outside 93
SAFELOCK 96
Single door unlocking 92
Centre armrest 125
Centre console 52, 53
Centre of gravity 190
Changing a wheel 391
After changing a wheel 396
Changing a wheel 395
Lifting the vehicle 394
More than one tyre damaged 391
Preparation 392
Wheel bolts 392
Changing bulbs 329
Checklist 331
Front bumper 334
Front bumper (Alltrack) 335
Indicator lamp 330
In the boot lid (LED) 135, 335
In the front headlights (halogen) 332
In the front headlights (LED) 135, 335
In the rear bodywork (LED) 135, 335
Number plate light (LED) 135, 335
Preparations 331
see Changing bulbs 329
Changing gear 174
Dual clutch gearbox DSG 176
Gear-change indicator 159
Selecting a gear (dual clutch gearbox DSG) 176
Unlocking the selector lever lock manually 180
Warning and indicator lamps 175
With Tiptronic 178
Changing gears
Manual gearbox 172
Selecting a gear (manual gearbox) 172
Changing wheels
Removing the subwoofer 274
Chassis number 409
Checking the oil level 358
Checklist
Area View 253
Before driving off-road for the first time (Alltrack) 188
Before driving off-road (Alltrack) 190
Before working in the engine compartment 351
Breakdown 37
Breakdown set 398
Changing bulbs 331
Checking the engine oil level 358
Checks when filling the tank 7
Driving abroad 6
Driving safely 6
Emergency 37
Lifting the vehicle with the jack 394
Preparation for changing a wheel 392
Preparing for a journey 6
Rear view camera system 245
Rear view camera system (Rear View) 242
Seat belts 14
Topping up the engine oil 358
Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 259
Useful accessories for off-road driving (Alltrack) 191
Using seat belts 14
Checks when filling the tank
Checklist 7
Checks when refuelling 6
Childproof lock 100
Child seat 28
Airbag sticker 30
Approval categories 29
Securing systems 31
Securing with a lockable seat belt 34
Securing with a seat belt 34
Securing with ISOFIX 32
Securing with the top tether upper strap (Saloon) 33
Standard 29
Switching off the front passenger front airbag 24
Weight classes 29
Child seat head restraint
Installing and removing 35
Cigarette lighter 267, 271
City Emergency Brake 212
Cleaning
see Vehicle care 319
Climatronic
see Air conditioning system 145

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Closing
- Boot lid 105
- Doors 99
- From the inside 94
- Sun blind (glass roof in Estate) 143
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 113
- Windows 110

Coasting 179
Coat hooks 268
Cockpit 46
Code number 327
Code of conduct for off-road driving 191
Comfort tyre pressure 380
Coming Home function 134
Commercial vehicle registration 407
Communication window 145
Compass display
- Compass display 59

Component protection 405
Computer
- Virus protection 276

Consumables 353
Consumer information 404
Continuous parking light 131
Controls
- Care/cleaning 324
- Electrically adjusted front seat 117
- Mechanically adjusted front seat 116

Control units 402
- Reprogramming 403

Convenience closing
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 113
- Windows 111

Convenience functions
- Reprogramming 403

Convenience opening
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 113
- Windows 111

Conversions 400
Coolant 359
- Checking the coolant level 360
- Filler opening 360
- Indicator lamp 70
- Refilling 360
- Temperature display 70
- Warning lamp 70

Coolant specification 360
Cornering light
- Dynamic 132
- see Static cornering light 132

Counter steering assistance 183
Cruise control
- see Adaptive Cruise Control 202
- see Cruise control system 194

Cruise control system 194
- Display 194
- Indicator lamp 195

Cruise control system (CCS)
- Indicator lamp 195
- Operating 195

Curtain airbags
- see Airbag system 26

Cylinder deactivation
- see Active cylinder management (ACT) 58

D

Dash panel 46
- Airbag system 19

Data Link Connector (DLC) 403
Data recorders 402
Daytime running lights 132
DCC 183
De-icing door lock cylinders 321
Declaration of conformity 406
Decorative films
- Care/cleaning 321

Defrosting
- Heating and fresh air system 147
- Manual air conditioning system 147

Diagnostic connection 403
Diesel 312
- Biodiesel 313
- Filter preheater 312
- Fuel gauge 69
- Misfuelling prevention device 310
- Refuelling 310
- Winter diesel 312

Diesel engines
- Technical data 417

Diesel particulate filter 318
- Gear-change indicator 159
- Indicator lamp 317
- Malfunction 318
- Regeneration 318

Differential lock
- see Electronic differential lock (EDL) 263

Digital clock 67
Digital instrument cluster
- see Active Info Display 55

Dimensions 410
Dipped beam 128
Display 55
- Cruise control system 194

Displays 58
- Adaptive Cruise Control 204
- Area monitoring system 214
- Bonnet 353
- Care/cleaning 324
- Doors 100, 103
- Dynamic Road Sign Display system 65
- Eco 59
- Engine code 59
- Front Assist 214
- Gear-change indicator 59
- Lane departure warning system 222
- Mileage displays 59
- Open doors, bonnet and boot lid 58
- Outside temperature display 59
- Pedestrian monitoring 218
- Proactive occupant protection system 18
- Selector lever positions 59
- Service interval display 71
- Speed limiter 198
- Speed warning 59
- Start/stop system 59
- Time 67
- Warning and information messages 62

Disposal
- Airbag system 406
- Belt tensioner 17
- End-of-life vehicle 406

Dividable luggage compartment floor (Estate) 284
Doors 99
- Childproof lock 100
- Display 100, 103
- Manual opening and closing 101

Door windows/windscreen
- Care/cleaning 324

Downhill speed control 186
Drawbar load 299
- Loading the trailer 305

Drink holders 269
- Lower part of the centre console 269
- Rear centre armrest 270

Driver Alert System 63
- Fault 64
- Function 63
- Operation by the user 63
- Switching off 63
- Switching on 63

Driver door
- Overview 49

Driving
- Before setting off 6
- Data recording 402
- Driving abroad 6
- Driving notes 6
- Economically 160
- Fuel gauge 69
- Fuel level too low 189
- Off-road 401
- Parking on a downward incline 231
- Parking on an upward incline 231
- Preparing for a journey 6
- Pulling away on an incline 179
- Stopping on an incline 179
- Through salt water 165
- Towing 349
- Water on the roads 165
- With a trailer 306
- with Dual clutch gearbox DSG 179
- With loaded vehicle 279
- With respect for the environment 160

Driving abroad
- Checklist 6
- Headlights 135

Driving data 60
Driving data display 60
Driving economically 160
Driving Mode Selection
- Function 184
- Operation 184

Driving notes 6
Driving out of a parking space
- Park Assist 252

Driving out of a parking space using Park Assist 252
Driving profile selection 183
- Indicator lamp 183

Driving safely 6
Driving through salt water 165
Driving through water 165
Driving tips
- Spare wheel 383
- Temporary spare wheel 383

Driving with respect for the environment 160
DSG
- Dual clutch gearbox DSG 174

Dual clutch gearbox DSG 174, 179
- Changing gear 176
- Coasting 179
- Driving 179
- Kickdown function 179
- Launch Control Programme 179
- Malfunction 180
- Pulling away on an incline 179
- see Changing gear 174
- Stopping on an incline 179
- Towing 346
- Unlocking the selector lever lock manually 180

Dust filter 154
Dynamic headlight range control 130
Dynamic main beam control 133
- see Main beam control 133
- Switching on and off 133

Dynamic Road Sign Display 64, 65
- Display 65
- Function 64
- Function limitations 66
- Speed warning 66
- Trailers 66

3C0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

E

E10
Filling 311
E85
Refuelling 310
Earth connection 343
EDS
see Brake support systems 263
Electrical consumers 38, 155, 272, 274, 305
Electrically folding
Ball head 302
Trailer 302
Electric panoramic tilting/sliding roof
see Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
Electric windows
see Windows 110
Electrolyte 366
Electromechanical steering 183
Electronic differential lock (EDL) 263
Electronic immobiliser 170
Electronic parking brake 233
Indicator lamp 232
Electronic stability control (ESC) 261
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 264
Emergency
Breakdown 37
Checklist 37
Hazard warning lights 37
Making you and your vehicle safe 37
Emergency Assist 225
Switching off 225
Switching on 225
Emergency brake 38
Emergency brake lights 38
Emergency braking function 234
Emergency breakaway cable 301, 304
Emergency call service 405
Emergency closing or opening
After the airbag has been triggered 99
Unlocking the selector lever lock manually 180
Emission control system for diesel vehicles 314
Engine
Noises 169
Not running smoothly 311
Running in 165
Engine and ignition 166
12-volt sockets 273
Automatic ignition switch-off 168
immobiliser 170
Indicator lamp 167
Preheating 169
Starting the engine 169
Stopping the engine with keyless access 170
Engine and transmission guard 401
Engine code 409
Finding 350
Engine compartment 321
Care/cleaning 359
Coolant 354
Engine oil 321
Plenum chamber 351
Preparation 363
Vehicle battery
Engine coolant 360
G 11 360
G 12 360
G 12 plus 360
G 12 plus-plus 360
G 13 359
see Coolant 360
Specification 317
Engine fault 317
Engine management system 317
Indicator lamp 354
Engine oil 357
Changing 358
Checking the engine oil level 357
Consumption 358
Dipstick 358
Filler opening 355
Indicator lamp 358
Refilling 356
Specifications 355
Warning lamp 408
Engine specifications
ESC
see Brake support systems 261, 264
ESC Sport
see Brake support systems 264
ESP
see Electronic stability control (ESC) 261
Ethanol
Refuelling 310
Ethanol fuel 313
Event data recorder 402
Event memory
Connector 403
Reading 403
Exhaust purification system 317
Indicator lamp 317
Exterior door release lever 42
Exterior mirrors 141
Automatic anti-dazzle 141
Driving with a trailer 301
Fault 142
Folding in 141
Saving settings for reversing 141
Synchronised mirror adjustment 141
Exterior views 40

F

Fabrics
Care/cleaning 324
Factory plate 409
Fall line 190
Fastening rings (Estate) 291
Movable 291
Fastening rings (Saloon) 290
Fault
230-volt Euro socket 273
Area monitoring system 213
Component protection 405
Driver Alert System 64
Electric exterior mirrors 142
Front Assist 213
Pedestrian monitoring 218
Rain/light sensor 138
Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 370
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 371
Fault memory
see Event memory 403
Filling
E10 311
Filling the tank
At the filling station 309
Fuel gauge 69
Indicator lamp 69
Misfuelling prevention device 310
Filter preheater 312
Fire extinguisher 38
Trailer 302
First aid box
see First aid kit 38
First aid kit 38
First aid set
see First aid kit 38
Floor mats 158
Fog lights 129
Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards 118
Four-wheel drive
Snow chains 389
Towing 346
Winter tyres 388
Front airbags
see Airbag system 23
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics 12
Front Assist
City Emergency Brake 212
Displays 214
Fault 213
Operation 215
Radar sensor 215
see Area monitoring system (Front Assist) 212
Switching off temporarily 216
System limits 216
Front fog lights 129
Front headlights (halogen) 332
Front headlights (LED) 135, 335
Front passenger front airbag
see Airbag system 19
Switching off with the key-operated switch 24
Front seat
Electrical controls 117
Electrically adjusting 117
Mechanical controls 116
Mechanically adjusting 116
Front seats 115
Fuel
Diesel 312
Ethanol fuel 313
Petrol 311
Fuel consumption
Driving economically 160
What causes it to increase? 318
Fuel gauge 69
Indicator lamp 69
Petrol or diesel 69
Fuel level
see Capacities 411
Function of the dual clutch gearbox DSG 174
Fuses 336
Changing 341
Colour coding of fuses 336
Dash panel 337
Designs 336
Detecting a blown fuse 341
Engine compartment 338
In the dash panel 339
In the engine compartment 340
Preparation for changing 341

G

G 12 plus 360
G 12 plus-plus 360
G 13 360
Gear-change indicator 159
General rules and driving tips
Off-road driving 191
Glasses compartment 268
Glass roof
Sun blind (glass roof in Estate) 143
Glass surfaces
Care/cleaning 321
Glove compartment
Lights 131
see Stowage areas 266
Gross vehicle weight rating 408
Ground clearance 190

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

H

Handbrake
see Parking brake 233
Hazard warning lights 37
Head-up Display 47, 57
Setting up 57
Switching off 57
Switching on 57
Headlight flasher 128
Headlight range control 47, 130
Automatic self-levelling suspension 130
Dynamic headlight range control 130
Headlights
Care/cleaning 321
Cleaning system 137
Driving abroad 135
Head restraints 121
Removing and installing 122
Heated seats 151
Heating and fresh air system 145
Adjusting the temperature 147
Air distribution 147
Air recirculation mode 147, 150
Blowers 147
Controls 146
Switching off 147
High-visibility waistcoat 38
Hill Descent Control (Alltrack)
Indicator lamps 187
Hill Hold Assist
see Auto Hold 234
Holder for memory cards 266
Horn 47
Hubcaps 389, 391
Centre cover 390
Wheel bolt caps 391
Wheel cover 390

I

Identification number 409
Ignition
see Engine and ignition 166
Ignition key
see Vehicle key 89
Ignition lock
see Starter button 167
Imitation leather
Care/cleaning 324
Immobiliser 170
Malfunction 166
In an emergency 37
Indicator lamp
Adaptive Cruise Control 204
AdBlue 314
Airbag system 21
Auto Hold function 232
Ball head 302
Brake pad wear indicator 162
Brake system 260
Catalytic converter 317
Central locking 92
Changing bulbs 330
Changing gear 175
Checking the oil level 355
Coolant 70
Cruise control system 194
Cruise control system (CCS) 195
Depress brake 260
Diesel particulate filter 317
Driving profile selection 183
Electronic parking brake 232
Engine and ignition 167
Engine management system 317
Engine oil sensor 355
Engine speed limitation 317
ESP 260
Exhaust purification system 317
Filling the tank 69
Fuel level 69
In the driver door 92
Lane departure warning system 222
Lights 127
Overview 75
Rain/light sensor 136
Remote control (auxiliary heater and ventilation) 155
Seat belts 11
Speed limiter 198
Start/stop system 171
Steering column lock 182
Towing bracket 300
Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 370
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 371
Washer fluid level 136
Wipers 136
Indicator lamp overview 75
Indicator lamps
Hill Descent Control (Alltrack) 187
In emergencies
Fire extinguisher 38
First aid kit 38
High-visibility waistcoat 38
Warning triangle 38
Information profiles 56
Information stored in the control units 402
Infotainment
Air conditioning system 147
Infotainment system
Air conditioning system 148
Display 78
Off-road display 192
Operation 78
Performance monitor 83, 85
Settings 78
Vehicle settings 79
Infotainment system settings 78
Driving mode 186
Vehicle settings 79
Infrared-reflecting windscreen 145
Inspection
see Service interval display 71
Instrument cluster 55
Display 55
Displays 58, 60
Indicator lamps 75
Instruments 55
Menu structure 60
Operation 73
Operation using the multifuncitoun steering wheel 74
Operation with the wiper lever 73
Service interval display 71
Symbols 75
Warning lamps 75
Instrument cluster displays 60
Instruments 55
Integrated child seat
Folding in and out 35
Installing and removing the child seat head restraint 35
Seat belt routing 36
Interior door release lever 49
Interior lights 131
Interior mirror 140
Interior monitoring 98
ISOFIX 32
see Child seat 28

J

Jack 394
Jump starting
Earth connection 343
How to 343
Jump lead connection point (positive terminal) 342
Jump leads 343
Positive terminal 342
Jump starts
Jump lead connection point (earth connection) 343

K

Kerb weight 408
Key
see Vehicle key 89
Key-operated switch
Switching off the front passenger front airbag 24
Keyless access 94
Locking and unlocking vehicle 94
Keyless Access
Press & Drive 167
Keyless access locking and starting system
Engine and ignition 170
see Keyless access 94
Keyless comfort start function
see Keyless access 94
Keyless Go
see Press & Drive 167
Kickdown function 179
Knee airbag 47
Knee airbags
see Airbag system 27

L

Lane Assist
see Lane departure warning system 221
Lane change assist system (Side Assist) PLUS 223
Lane change flash 132
Lane change system (Side Assist) 226
Driving situations 229
Function 227
Malfunction 226
Visual display in the exterior mirrors 227
Lane departure warning system 221
Camera 222
Display 222
Function 222
Indicator lamp 222
Malfunction 221
Switching off 223
Switching on 223
When do I switch it off? 224
Lap timer 68, 85
Lap times 68
Measuring lap times 85
Menu 68
Statistics 68
Stopwatch 85
Launch Control Programme 179
Leaving Home function 134
LED lights 135, 335
Lending the vehicle
Car-Net 278
Lifting the vehicle
Checklist 394
Jack 394
With the jack 394

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Light
- Acoustic warnings 128
- Background lighting 135
- Controls 126
- Dipped beam 128
- Functions 131
- Head-up Display 128
- Light switch 128
- Main beam lever 128
- Side lights 128
- Switching on and off 128
- Turn signal and main beam lever 128

Light Assist
- see Main beam control 133

Lights 126
- AUTO 132
- Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights 131
- Automatic switch-on of side lights and parking lights 129
- Coming Home 134
- Continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle 131
- Cornering light 132
- Daytime running lights 132
- Dynamic main beam control 133
- Fog lights 129
- Headlight range control 130
- Indicator lamp 127
- Instrument lighting 128
- Interior lights 131
- Leaving Home 134
- Main beam control 133
- Parking light 131
- Reading lights 131
- Side lights 131
- Static cornering light 132
- Switch lighting 128

Limiter
- see Speed limiter 198

Load-through hatch
- Estate 295
- Saloon 294

Load carrier system 296

Load compartment net (Estate) 289

Load compartment net (Saloon) 289

Loading
- Driving with an open boot lid 164
- Fastening rings (Estate) 291
- Fastening rings (Saloon) 290
- General notes 279
- Load-through hatch (Estate) 295
- Load-through hatch (Saloon) 294
- Load carrier system 298
- Luggage compartment 279
- Stowing luggage 279
- Trailer 305

Lock button
- Dual clutch gearbox DSG 177

Locking
- After the airbag has been triggered 99
- From the outside 93
- With keyless access 94

Lowering the front passenger exterior mirror 141

Luggage compartment 279
- Dividable luggage compartment floor (Estate) 284
- Luggage compartment cover (Estate) 280
- Luggage compartment floor (Estate) 282
- Luggage compartment floor (Saloon) 282
- Luggage compartment lights 131
- Luggage net (Estate) 289
- Luggage net (Saloon) 289
- Net partition (Estate) 286, 287
- Side stowage areas 288
- Sliding luggage compartment floor (Estate) 284
- Tensioning strap (Estate) 292

Luggage compartment cover (Estate) 280

Luggage compartment floor
- Dividable (Estate) 284
- Estate 282
- Saloon 282
- Sliding (Estate) 284

Luggage net (Estate)
- Luggage compartment 289

Luggage net (Saloon)
- Luggage compartment 289

M

Main beam 128

Main beam control 133
- Switching on and off 133
- System limits 134

Main beam lever 128

Malfunction
- Adaptive Cruise Control 203
- Air conditioning system 153
- Catalytic converter 318
- Diesel particulate filter 318
- Dual clutch gearbox DSG 180
- Immobiliser 166
- Lane change system (Side Assist) 226
- Lane departure warning system 221
- Park Assist 247
- ParkPilot 235
- Proactive occupant protection system 18
- Radio reception 274
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
- Towing bracket 305
- Traffic Jam Assist 225
- Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257

Manual gearbox
- see Changing gears 172
- Towing 172

Manual opening and closing 346
- Boot lid
- Driver door 109
- Front passenger door 101
- Rear doors 102

Manual release mechanism
- Tank flap 102

Massage function 309

Maximum speed 125

Mechanically positioned ball head 408
- Fitting a bicycle carrier

Memory function 303

Metal-coated windscreen 124

MFD 145
- see Multifunction display

Microfibre fabric 60
- Care/cleaning

Mileage indicator 324

Mirrors 55
- Blind spot 139
- Convenience functions 139
- Exterior mirrors 141
- Folding in the mirrors 141
- Interior mirror 142
- Lowering the front passenger exterior mirror 140
- Synchronised mirror adjustment 141

Misfuelling prevention device 141

Mobile 310
- Use without an external aerial

Mobile device 403
- Use without an external aerial
- Virus protection 403

Mobile phone interface 276

Mobile telephone 60, 267
- Stowage compartment
- Use without an external aerial 267

Mobility tyres 403

Modifications to the vehicle 382
- Plates 400

Movable fastening rings (Estate) 404

Multifunction display 291

Multifunction steering wheel 60

N

Natural leather 47
- Care/cleaning

Net partition (Estate) 324

New engine 286, 287

New tyres 165

3G0012720AC

Noises 378
- Adaptive Cruise Control 203
- Auxiliary heater and ventilation 155
- Brake support systems 263
- Engine 169
- Parking brake 234
- Regeneration 318
- Tyres 388

Number of seats 7

Number plate light (LED) 135, 335

O

Octane number 311

Odometer 55

Off-road display 192
- Altimeter 192
- Compass 192
- Engine coolant temperature display 192
- Oil temperature display 192
- Selecting instruments 192
- Steering angle display 192

Off-road driving
- Code of conduct 191
- Driving notes 191

Off-road driving (Alltrack)
- Before driving off-road 190
- Explanation of some technical terms 189
- Safety notes 188
- Useful accessories 191

Oil
- see Engine oil 354

Oil dipstick 358

Old tyres 377

On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 403

Opening
- Boot lid 104
- Doors 99
- From the inside 94
- Sun blind (glass roof in Estate) 143
- Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 113
- Windows 110

Operation
- Air conditioning system 146
- Heating and fresh air system 146
- ParkPilot 237

Outside temperature display 59

Overview
- Driver door 49
- Driver side 46
- Front view 40
- Headliner 50
- Indicator lamps 75
- Instruments 55
- Lower section of the centre console 52
- Luggage compartment (Estate) 50
- Menu structure 60

Scanned by CamScanner

Passenger side 48
Rear section of the centre console 53
Rear view 43
Side view 41
Turn signal and main beam lever 128
Upper section of the centre console 52
Warning lamps 75

P

Paddles
Tiptronic 178
Paintwork
Care/cleaning 321
Panorama roof
see Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
Panoramic tilting/sliding roof
see Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
Park Assist 247
Cancelling 248
Driving out of a parking space (parallel parking only) 252
Function 248
Malfunction 247
Parking 250
Parking parallel to the road 250
Parking perpendicular to the road 250
Requirements for parking 250
Parking 231
With the rear view camera system (mode 2) 244
Parking aid
see ParkPilot 235
Parking assistance
see Park Assist 247
Parking brake 233
Automatic switch-off 233
Automatic switch-on 233
Emergency braking function 234
Switching off 233
Switching on 233
Parking distance warning system
see Park Assist 247
see Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257
Parking distance warning system (PDW)
see ParkPilot 235
Parking light 128, 131
Parking lights 131
Parking using Park Assist 250
ParkPilot 235
Malfunction 235
Operation 237
ParkPilot menu 240
Signal tones and displays 238
Towing a trailer 238, 240
Vehicle path display 240
Parts 400
Pedals 9, 158
Pedestrian monitoring 217
Camera 218
Display 218
Fault 218
Operating 219
Radar sensor 218
Switching off temporarily 218
System limits 220
Pedestrian protection
see Pedestrian monitoring 217
Performance figures 408
Performance monitor 83
Accelerometer 83
Charge pressure display 83
Coolant temperature display 83
Oil temperature display 83
Power display 83
Selecting instruments 83
Personalisation
Setup 87
User management 87
Petrol 311
Additives 311
Fuel 311
Fuel gauge 69
Grades 311
Refuelling 310
Petrol engines
Technical data 411
Phone 60
Plastic parts
Care/cleaning 324
Plates 404
Pollen filter 154
Pollutant filter 154
Preheating 169
Preparation
Breakdown set 398
Changing a wheel 392
Checking the coolant level 360
Checking the engine oil level 358
Refilling coolant 360
Refilling engine oil 358
Vehicle battery 365
Working in the engine compartment 351
Preparations
Before every journey 6
Changing bulbs 331
Preparing for a journey 6
Press & Drive
Starter button 167
Proactive occupant protection
see Proactive occupant protection system 18

Proactive occupant protection system
Activating 18
Area monitoring system (Front Assist) 18
Deactivating 18
Displays 18
Driving profile selection 18
Malfunction 18
Tensioning belts 17
Progressive steering 183
Protection from the sun 142
Protective films
Care/cleaning 321
Provision for mobile telephone
see Mobile phone interface 267
Push-starting 166
Things to note 166

R

Radar sensor 205, 215, 218
Radio equipment 403
Radio reception
Aerial 405
Malfunction 274
Rain/light sensor 138
Fault 138
Ramp angle 190
Reading lights 131
Rear-view mirror 140
Rear Assist
see Rear view camera system 241
Rear backrest
Folding backwards 119
Folding forwards 119
Rear bench seat 119
Rear fog lights 129
Rear seats 119
Rear Traffic Alert 226, 229
see Rear Traffic Alert 226
Rear View
see Rear view camera system 241
Rear view camera
Checklist 245
Rear view camera system
Parking (mode 2) 244
Rear view camera system (mode 2)
Parking 244
Rear view camera system (Rear View) 241
Camera 246
Checklist 242
Cleaning 246
Mode 1 244
Operating 243
Operating information 242
Parking (mode 1) 244
Requirements 242
Settings 242
Switching on and off 243
Rear window heating 148
Recommendation for rest breaks 63
Function 63
Operation by the user 63
Switching off 63
Switching on 63
Recording data during a journey 402
Recycling end-of-life vehicles 406
Refitting 404
Refuelling
Checks when refuelling 6
Diesel 310
E85 310
Petrol 310
Tank flap 310
Regeneration 318
Remote control
Auxiliary heater and ventilation 155
Remote control key
see Vehicle key 89
Remote control (auxiliary heater)
Replacing the battery 156
Removable ashtray 271
Removing ice 321
Door lock cylinders 321
Removing snow 321
Removing wax residue 321
Renewing parts 400
Repairing stone chips (note) 401
Repairs 400
Airbag system 401
Plates 404
Stickers 404
Windscreen 401
Replacement key
see Vehicle key 89
Replacement wheel
see Spare wheel 383
see Temporary spare wheel 383
Reprogramming control units 403
Requirements
Rear view camera system (Rear View) 242
Rev counter 55
Reversible belt tensioning 17
Reversing camera (Rear View)
Crossing traffic (mode 4) 246
Mode 3 246
Mode 4 246
Trailer support (mode 3) 246
Rims 378
Bolted-on rings 378
Bolted-on trims 378
Identification 378

B5D01272D4C

Scanned by CamScanner

Road Sign Display
Switching the display on and off in the instrument cluster 65
Roll-back function
Sun blind (glass roof in Estate) 143
Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 114
Windows 111
Roof carrier 296
Roof load 298
Technical data 298
Rubber seals
Care/cleaning 324
Running gear
Adaptive chassis control (DCC) 183
DCC 183
Running in
Brake pads 162
Engine 165
The first kilometres 165
Tyres 378
Running in brake pads
see Brakes 162

S

SAFELOCK 96
see SAFELOCK 96
Safety 6
Safety features 22
Safety notes
Off-road driving (Alltrack) 188
Scrapping 406
Seat belt height adjuster 16
Seat belt protection 13
Seat belt routing 15
Seat belts 9
Belt retractor 17
Belt status display 11
Belt tensioner 17
Belt tension limiter 17
Care/cleaning 324
Checklist 14
Fastening 14
Not fastened 12
Seat belt height adjuster 16
Seat belt routing 15
Tensioning belts 17
Twisted seat belt 14
Unfastening 14
Using 14
Warning lamp 11
Seat covers
Care/cleaning 324
Seat cushions with seat heating
Care/cleaning 324
Seat functions 123
Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards 118
Seat heating 148, 151
Seats 7
Adjusting the head restraints 121
Electrically adjusted front seat 117
Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards 118
Massage function 125
Mechanically adjusted front seat 116
Memory function 124
Rear backrest 119
Removing and installing the head restraints 122
Seat heating 151
Seat ventilation 151
Seats with airbag components
Care/cleaning 324
Seat ventilation 148, 151
Selecting a gear
Dual clutch gearbox DSG 176
Manual gearbox 172
Selective Catalytic Reduction
see Emission control system for diesel vehicles 314
Selector lever lock
Dual clutch gearbox DSG 177
Selling the vehicle 4
Car-Net 278
In other countries/continents 166
Sensors
Care/cleaning 321
Service fluids 353
Service interval display 71
Service position 328
Setting
Time 67, 82
Settings
Infotainment system 78
Setting the time 67, 82
Setup
Head-up Display 57
Side airbags
see Airbag system 25
Side Assist
see Lane change system (Side Assist) 226
Side Assist PLUS
see Lane change assist system (Side Assist) PLUS 223
Side lights 128, 131
Side stowage areas 288
Signal tones
Seat belt not fastened 11
Warning and indicator lamps 75
Single door unlocking 92
Sitting
Adjusting the steering wheel position 7, 115
Correct sitting position 114
Number of seats 8
Sitting position 7
Incorrect sitting position 8
Sliding luggage compartment floor (Estate) 284
Sliding roof
see Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
Snow chains 389
Four-wheel drive 389
Temporary spare wheel 389
Sockets 272
12-volt 272
230-volt 272
Fault 273
Trailer 304
Spanner symbol 72
Spare fuel canister 309
Spare key 90
Spares 400
Spare wheel 383
Driving tips 383
Removing (Estate) 383
Removing (Saloon) 383
Speed index 387
Speed limiter
Displays 198
Indicator lamp 198
Operating 199
Warning lamp 198
Speed warning 62
Start/stop system 171
Indicator lamp 171
Starter button 167
Static cornering light 132
When reverse gear is engaged 132
Static cornering light on both sides when reverse gear is engaged 132
Status display for active cylinder management (ACT) 58
Steering 181
Counter steering assistance 183
Electromechanical 183
Indicator lamp 182
Power steering 183
Progressive steering 183
Pulling to one side 382
Steering column lock 183
Vibration 382
Warning lamp 182
Steering column lock 183
Steering wheel 114
Adjusting 114
Heated 153
Paddles (Tiptronic) 178
Stickers 404
Stopwatch
Lap timer 85
Storing vehicle data 402
Stowage areas 265
Driver side 266
Front passenger side 266
Glove compartment 266
Holder for memory cards 266
Stowage compartment lights 131
Vehicle wallet 266
Stowage compartment lights on the front passenger side 131
Stowage compartments
Front centre armrest 268
Front centre console 267
Stowing
Glasses compartment 268
In roof console 268
Stowing luggage 279
Subwoofer 274
Sunblind
Rear window 144
Side windows 144
Sun blind (glass roof in Estate)
Opening and closing 143
Roll-back function 143
Sun visors 142
Supplementary heating system
see Auxiliary heater and ventilation 154
Surround view
see Area View 252
Switch-off for electrical consumers 367
Symbols
see Indicator lamp overview 75
see Warning lamp overview 75
System limits
Main beam control 134
Systems
Proactive occupant protection system 18

T

Tailgate
see Boot lid 102
Tail light clusters
Care/cleaning 321
Tail light clusters (LED)
In the boot lid 135
In the rear bodywork (LED) 135
Tail lights (LED)
In the boot lid 335
In the rear bodywork (LED) 335
Tailpipes
Care/cleaning 321

B6000127204C

Scanned by CamScanner

Tank cap
Diesel 310
Ethanol 310
Petrol 310
Tank flap
Manual release mechanism 309
TCS
see Brake support systems 263, 264
Technical data
Axle weight rating 408
Capacities 354, 411
Capacity 408
Dimensions 410
Drawbar load 299
Engine oil specifications 356
Engine specifications 408
Factory plate 409
Gross vehicle weight rating 408
Kerb weight 408
Maximum speed 408
Output 408
Performance figures 408
Roof load 298
Trailer weight 408
Type plate 409
Tyre pressure 379
Vehicle data sticker 409
Weights 408
Technical modifications 400
Engine and transmission guard 401
Off-road 401
Plates 404
Stickers 404
Telematic services
see Volkswagen Car-Net 277
Temperature display
Coolant 70
Off-road display 192
Outside temperature 59
Performance monitor 83
Temporary spare wheel 383
Driving tips 383
Snow chains 389
Tensioning strap (Estate) 292
Things to note
Area View 253, 254
Auxiliary heater and ventilation 155
Car wash 320
Component protection 405
Disconnecting the vehicle battery 73
Engine juddering 311
Engine not running smoothly 311
Filling the tank with diesel 310
Folding in the mirrors 142
Hand wash 320
High-pressure cleaner 303, 320
Parking 232, 411
Parking for extended periods 91, 313
ParkPilot 237
Push-starting 166
Radio reception 405
Smoke 155
Switching off Auto Hold 235
Tow-starting 166, 345, 346
Towing 345, 347
Towing a trailer 306
Travel mode 132
Wipers 137
with engaged reverse gear 159, 177
With engaged reverse gear 173
Think Blue.
see Think Blue. Trainer. 161
Think Blue. Trainer. 161
Tightening torque
Wheel bolts 393
Tilt angle 190
Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
Closing 113
Convenience closing 113
Convenience opening 113
Malfunction 112
Opening 113
Roll-back function 114
Timer 67
TIN 385
Tiptronic 178
Tool kit
see Vehicle tool kit 327
Top tether
see Child seat 28
Torsional flexibility 190
Tow-starting 166, 345, 346
Things to note 166, 345
Towing 299, 345
Another vehicle 347
Driving notes 349
Dual clutch gearbox DSG 346, 347
Four-wheel drive 346
Front towing eye 348
Manual gearbox 346, 347
Rear towing eye 347
see Towing bracket 299
see Trailer 299
Technical requirements 301
Things to note 345, 347
Tow bar 346
Tow rope 346
When not to tow 346
With towing bracket 346
Your own vehicle 347

Towing a trailer
ParkPilot 238
Towing bracket 302
Fitting a bicycle carrier 303
Indicator lamp 300
Malfunction 305
Retrofitting 307
see Towing bracket 302
see Trailer 302
Traction control system (TCS) 263, 264
Traction (tyre lettering) 386
Traffic Jam Assist 224
Malfunction 225
Switching off 224
Switching on 224
When do I switch it off? 224
Trailer 240
Anti-theft warning system 304
Connecting 303
Drawbar load 299, 305
Driving 306
Electrically folding ball head 302
Emergency breakaway cable 301, 304
Exterior mirrors 301
Fire extinguisher 302
Headlight adjustment 306
Hitching 303
LED rear lights 301, 304
Loading 305
Malfunction 305
ParkPilot 240
Rear lights 301, 304
Releasing ball head 302
Retrofitting a towing bracket 307
Socket 304
Towing 306
Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257
Trailer stabilisation 306
Trailer weight 305, 408
Trailer Assist
see Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257
Trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist) 257
Automatic braking intervention 258
Checklist 259
Malfunction 257
Operation 258
Trailer stabilisation 306
Trailer weight
Loading the trailer 305
Max. permissible 408
Transporting
Bag hook (Estate) 293
Bag hook (Saloon) 293
Fastening rings (Estate) 291
Fastening rings (Saloon) 290
Load-through hatch (Estate) 295
Load-through hatch (Saloon) 294
Luggage net (Estate) 289
Luggage net (Saloon) 289
Transporting items 279
Driving tips 164
Driving with an open boot lid 164
Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards 118
Load carrier system 296, 298
Loading the trailer 305
Roof carrier 296
Side stowage areas 288
Stowing luggage 279
Towing 306
Trailer 299
Transporting loads
Trailer weight 408
Travel mode 135
Things to note 132
Tread depth 381
Tread wear (tyre lettering) 385
Trim parts
Care/cleaning 321
Trims
Care/cleaning 324
Trim strips
Care/cleaning 321, 324
Trip meter 55
Turn signal lever 128
Type plate 409
Types of tyre monitoring system 369
Tyre damage 382
Tyre load 386, 387
Tyre mobility set
see Breakdown set 396
Tyre monitoring system
Tyre pressure 380
Tyre monitoring systems 369
Types of tyre monitoring systems 369
Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 373
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 374
Tyre pressure 379
Checking 380
Comfort tyre pressure 380
Spare wheel 380
Temporary spare wheel 380
Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator 373
Fault 370
Indicator lamp 370
Replacing tyres 379
Tyre pressure monitoring system
Replacing tyres 379
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 374
Adjusting the tyre pressure 375
Display of tyre pressures 374
Fault 371

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Indicator lamp 371
Selecting target pressures for partial or full vehicle load level 375
Selecting the tyre type 375
Spare wheel 375
Switching on and off 374
Tyre repair kit
see Breakdown set 396
Tyres
see Wheels and tyres 376
Tyres with directional tread pattern 387
Tyre wear 382

U

Underseal 321
Unlocking
From the outside 93
With keyless access 94
USB socket 52, 53, 267, 268
Useful accessories for off-road driving (Alltrack)
Checklist 191

V

Valve caps 381
Vanity mirrors 142
Vehicle
Lending 278
Loading 279
Locking and unlocking from the inside 94
Locking and unlocking from the outside 93
Locking and unlocking with keyless access 94
Parking on a downward incline 231
Recycling 406
Safety in the event of a breakdown 37
Selling 278
Stopping on an upward incline 231
Vehicle battery 363
Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers 367
Charging 367
Checking the electrolyte level 365
Connecting 367
Discharged 38, 178
Discharging 91
Disconnecting 367
Disconnecting from vehicle network 367
Earth connection for jump starting 343
Electrolyte 366
Jump lead connection point (positive terminal) 342
Jump starting 343
Location 363
Preparation 365
Replacing 367
Switch off when airbag triggered 367
Symbols 363
Warning lamp 364
Vehicle care 319
Automatic car wash 320
Camera lenses 321
Camera's field of view 67, 134, 221
Controls 324
Decorative films 321
Displays 324
Door windows/windscreen 324
Electrically adjustable seats 324
Engine compartment 321
Exterior 321
External 319
Fabrics 324
Glass surfaces 321
Hand wash 320
Headlights 321
High-pressure cleaner 320
Imitation leather 324
Interior 324
Internal 319
Microfibre fabric 324
Natural leather 324
Paintwork 321
Plastic parts 324
Polishing (paintwork) 320
Protective films 321
Rubber seals 324
Seat belts 324
Seat covers 324
Seat cushions with seat heating 324
Seats with airbag components 324
Sensors 321
Service position 328
Tail light clusters 321
Tailpipes 321
Trim parts 321, 324
Trim strips 321, 324
Underseal 321
Vehicle washing 319
Waxing (paintwork) 320
Wheels 321
Window aerial 405
Winter conditions 320
Wiper blades 321, 328
Wooden trims 324
Vehicle data sticker 409
Vehicle identification data 409
Vehicle identification number 409
Vehicle interior
Driver door 49
Driver side 46
Headliner 50
Lower section of the centre console 52
Passenger side 48
Rear section of the centre console 53
Upper section of the centre console 52

Vehicle jack 391
Vehicle key 89
Assigning 89
Replacing the button cell 91
Spare key 90
Vehicle key set 89
Vehicle overview
Driver door 49
Driver side 46
Front view 40
Headliner 50
Lower section of the centre console 52
Passenger side 48
Rear section of the centre console 53
Rear view 43
Side view 41
Upper section of the centre console 52
Vehicle path display 240
ParkPilot 240
Vehicle settings
Infotainment system 79
Vehicle tool kit 327
Box supplied 392
Contents 327
Storage 327
Vehicle wallet stowage 266
Vehicle washing
Vehicle care 319
Vents 149
Visibility 136
Volkswagen Car-Net 276
Activation 278
Availability 277
e-Remote 278
Exchanging your system 278
Guide & Inform 278
Interferences 278
Registration 278
Security & Service 278
Service description 278
Services 277
User account 278

W

Warning lamp
Adaptive chassis control (DCC) 183
Adaptive Cruise Control 204
AdBlue 314
Alternator 364
Brake system 260
Changing gear 175
Coolant 70
Depress brake 204, 214, 260
Engine oil pressure 355
Overview 75
Seat belts 11
Speed limiter 198
Steering column lock 182
Vehicle battery 364
Water in fuel 69
Warning lamp overview 75
Warning triangle 38
Washer fluid
Checking 354
Indicator lamp 136
Refilling 354
Washing the vehicle
Folding in the mirrors 142
Sensors 235
Water in fuel
Warning lamp 69
Wear indicator 381
What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts 12
Wheel bolts 392
Caps 391
Tightening torque. 393
Wheel lock
see Anti-theft wheel bolts 392
Wheels
Care/cleaning 321
Wheels and tyres 376
All-year tyres 388
Asymmetrical tyres 387
Avoiding damage 377
Balancing 382
Changing a wheel 391
Foreign bodies 382
Handling wheels and tyres 376
Identification 385
Incorrect wheel alignment 382
Low-profile tyres 387
More than one tyre damaged 391
New tyres 378
Old tyres 377
Replacing tyres 379
Rims 378
Rotating wheels front to rear 377
Running in 378
Serial number 385
Snow chains 389
Spare wheel 383
Speed index 386, 387
Storing the removed wheel (Estate) 383
Storing the removed wheel (Saloon) 383
Storing tyres 377
Technical data 385
Temporary spare wheel 383
Tread depth 381
Tyre damage 382
Tyre identification number (TIN) 385
Tyre lettering 385
Tyre load 387

3G0012720AC

Scanned by CamScanner

Tyre pressure 379
Tyres with directional tread pattern 387
Tyre type 385
Tyre wear 382
Valve caps 381
Wear indicator 381
Wheel balancing 382
Winter tyres 388
Window aerial 405
Windows 110
Buttons 110
Closing 110
Convenience closing 111
Convenience opening 111
Malfunction 110
Opening 110
Roll-back function 111
Windows/windscreen
Defrosting (air conditioning system) 147
Defrosting (heating and fresh air system) 147
Windscreen
Checking for damage 67, 134, 221
Heated 152
Made of heat-insulating glass 145
Metal-coated 145
Repairing stone chips (note) 401
Repairing (note) 401
Replacing (note) 401
Windscreen wipers
Rain/light sensor 138
Windscreen wiper lever 136
Winter conditions
Camera's field of view 67, 134, 221
Filter preheater 312
Headlight washer system 138
Heated washer jets 137
Mirrors 139
Salt deposits 138
Snow chains 389
Tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof 112
Towing 299
Tread depth 381
Tyre pressure 380
Vehicle care 320
Winter diesel 312
Winter tyres 388
Winter diesel 312
Winter tyres 388
Four-wheel drive 388
Speed limitation 388
Wiper blades
Care/cleaning 321, 328
Replacing 328
Wipers 136
Folding back the wiper blade 328
Functions 137
Headlight cleaning system 137
Heated washer jets 137
Lifting the wiper blade 328
Service position 328
Things to note 137

X

XDL
see Brake support systems 263

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and further improve all models. Please understand that we must therefore reserve the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The data provided concerning scope of delivery, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards and vehicle functions are all correct at the time of going to print. Some of the equipment described might not yet be available in a particular vehicle (information can be provided by your local Volkswagen dealership), and some equipment may not be available in certain countries. The vehicle illustrated on the cover may have certain items of optional equipment which are only available at extra cost, or which are only available in certain markets. Your Volkswagen dealership will be able to inform you about variations in different countries. Subject to alteration and amendment. No legal commitment may be inferred from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany.

© Volkswagen AG 2016

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

Scanned by CamScanner

Owner's manual:
Passat, Passat Estate, Passat Alltrack
Stand: 01.04.2016
Englisch: 05.2016
Teile-Nr.: 3G0012720AC



3G0012720AC

3.042016

Scanned by CamScanner